WILFRID LAURIER UNIVERSITY
10394834

PR 1119 A2 no. 102 1988

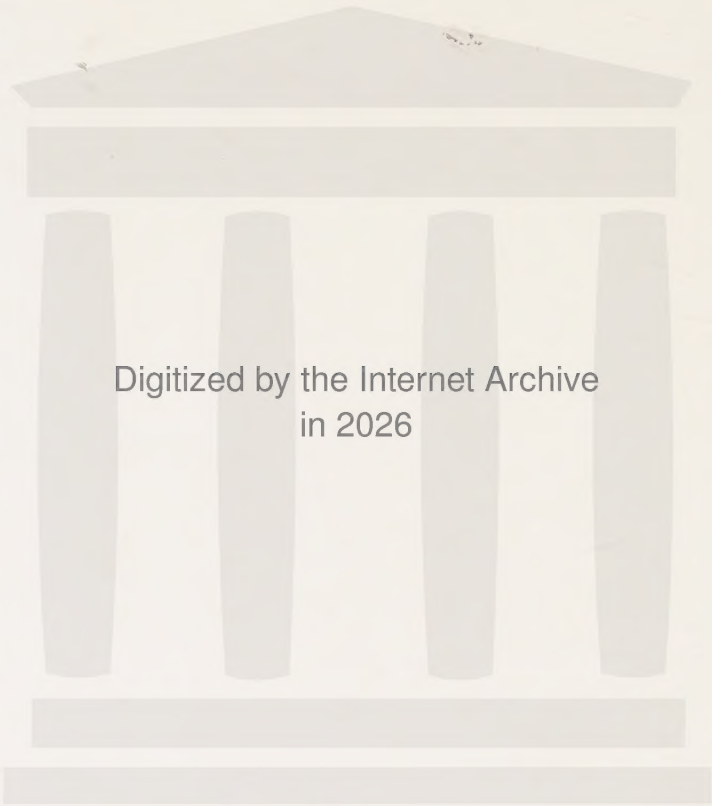
10394834

WLU

DUE DATE

201-6503

Printed
in USA


Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2026

https://archive.org/details/lanfranksscience0000lanf

# Lanfrank's "Science of Cirurgie."

edited by

Robert von Fleischhacker

Part I

(all published)

---

EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY

*Original Series,* 102

1894

**KRAUS REPRINT**
**Millwood, N.Y.**
**1988**

DISCARD
Property of the Library
Wilfrid Laurier University

The paper in this book meets the guidelines for permanence and durability of the Committee on Production Guidelines for Book Longevity of the Council on Library Resources.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Lanfranco, of Milan, 13th cent.
Lanfrank's "science of cirurgie".

Reprint. Originally published: London : Published for Early English Society by K. Paul, Trench, Trübner, 1894. (Early English Text Society. Original series ; 102- )
1. Surgery--Early works to 1800. I. Fleishchhacker, Robert von. II. Title. III. Title: Science of cirurgie. IV. Series: Early English Text Society (Series). Original series ; 102, etc.
RD30.L33 1988 617 87-31148
ISBN 0-527-00103-1 (pt. 1 : alk. paper)

*Unaltered Reprint produced with the permission of the Early English Text Society.*

**KRAUS REPRINT**

**Manufactured in the U.S.A.**

# Lanfrank's "Science of Cirurgie."

Early English Text Society.

Original Series, 102.

1894.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

# CORRECTIONS.

Page 18, line 17, *for* vndir oon of þese iij entencioun*s* *read* vndir þese iij entencioun*s* (note : both MSS. insert *oon of*)

,, 19, ,, 18, *for* vp on *read* vpon

,, 25, ,, 1, *for* white oute *read* white (note : MS. inserts *oute*)

,, 25, ,, 12, put a semicolon after *lungis*

,, 27, ,, 13, cancel *to* þe *maris*

,, 29, ,, 7, cancel the comma between *brayn* and *& þe nucha*, and put a comma after *þe nucha* and after *þe lymes*

,, 30, note 3, *for* fila *read* villi

,, 31, line 7, *for* vunnus *read* vulnus

,, 34, ,, 8, put a full stop after *senewe*, and transfer note 2 to the preceding *þat*

,, 38, ,, 10, *for* humourer *read* humoures

,, 39, ,, 14 and 33, cancel the semicolon after *lyme*

,, 43, ,, 10, put a comma after *drie*

,, 46, ,, 17, cancel the inverted commas

,, 49, ,, 6, put a comma after *myȝt*

,, 52, ,, 16, *for* eills *read* ellis

,, 55, ,, 18, cancel the inverted commas

,, 77, ,, 1, put an asterisk and ellipsis after *condicioun*

,, 77, ,, 19, put an asterisk after *askyth*

,, 83, ,, 1, cancel note 1

,, 89, ,, 6, p. 90, l. 16, p. 99, l. 6, *for* compouuned *read* compounned

,, 108, ,, 19, cancel the comma after *clepid*

,, 110, sidenote line 1, *for* Tassillus *read* Passillus

# CONTENTS.

*Ashmole MS.* 1396.

[1] **The firste tretis of surgerie** halt wiþinne him general ruelis & [1 leaf 1]
canones, & haþ .iij. techingis / þe firste techinge of þe firste tretis,
haþ þre chapitlis. ¶ **Cap. j.** of þe first tretis of þe firste techynge page 7
is of definiciones & of parties þat ben sugettis to surgerie / **Cap. ij.** page 8
is of þe qualite, foorme & maners of a surgien / ¶ **Cap. iij.** is of page 18
intencioun of a surgien / **The secunde** techynge of þe first tretis page 20
is on summe & oon chapitle of anotomie, & þat is to seie: þe
knouleche of þe foorme, & þe complexcioons, & þe helpingis of
alle þe senews, veines, grustlis, brawnis, guttis, bladdre, lyuere,
milte, & alle oþere synguler lymes, & of þe engendringe of þe child
in þe modir wombe / **The first[2] techinge of þe first tretis haþ** page 31
**.xv. chapitlis /**

¶ Cap. j. of þe þridde techinge of þe .j.[3] tretis [4]is of a comoun [4 leaf 1, bk.]
word of woundis, & olde woundis / p. 31

[2] *first*, mistake for *þridde*, as below. [3] Chafed: not room for *first*.

---

*Addit. MS. Brit. Mus.* 12,056.

[5]Assit Principio Sancta Maria meo [5 fol. 31 *a*]

þe ffirste tretys of surgerie halt with inne hym generall Rulys
& Canons, & hath þre techynges. þe ffurste techynge of þe furste
tretys haþ þre Chapyttles. Cap. j. of þe furste techynge of the firste
tretys of dyffiniciones & of partyes þat beþ suggettys to surgerye.
Cap ij. is of qualite, fforme & Maners of a Surgien.
¶ Cap. iij. ys of Intencioun of a Surgien. þe secunde techynge
of þe ffyrste tretys ys O summe & on Chapitell of a notamye, þat is
to sugge þe knowlechynge of þe forme, & þe complexion, & þe
helpynges of alle þe synwes, veyne, grustlys, brawnys, guttys,
bleddre, lyuere, Mylte, & alle oþere senglere lymes, & of þe engend-
rynge of þe child in þe modire wombe. The þridde techynge of þe
firste tretys hath xv. ChapyteHs. Cap. j. on of þe þridde techynge,
of þe þridde tretys, ys a comyn worde of woundes & olde woundes.

Ashmole 1396.

¶ Cap. ij. of heelynge of a wounde I-maad in fleisch / p. 33
¶ Cap. iij of heelynge of a wounde maad in senewe / p. 39
¶ Cap. iiij. of a wounde in þe boon / p. 47
¶ Cap. v. of a wounde maad wiþ smytynge / p. 50
¶ Cap. vj. of a wounde bollid and out of kynde, to hoot or to coold / p. 54
¶ Cap. vij. of a wounde of a wode hound or of a uenymous beest / p. 59
¶ Cap. viij. of a wounde þat is out of ioynte and to-broken / p. 62
¶ Cap. ix. of to miche flux of blood of a wounde / p. 64
¶ Cap. x. of dietynge of men þat ben woundid / p. 72
¶ Capitulum xi^m. of olde woundis / p. 77
¶ Capitulum xij^m. of a festre[1] / p. 89
¶ Cap. xiij. of a canker I-woundid / p. 92
¶ Cap. xiiij. of causis þat letten helynge of woundis and of olde woundis / p. 97
¶ Cap. xv. of crampe þat comeþ in a wounde / p. 99

The secunde tretis is of particuler woundis of alle lymes of office from þe heed to the foot, techinge þe anotomie of alle lymes from þe heed to þe foot, þat happiþ to be woundid; & þou haddist tofore þe anatomie [2]of veynes & senewis, & opere smale lymes. [2 leaf 2]

[1] After *festre* in a later hand is written *festula*.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ Cap. ij. off helynge of a wounde y-makyde in flesch.
¶ Cap. iij. off helynge of a wonde y-makyde in þe synwe.
¶. Cap. iiij. of a wounde in þe bon.
¶. Cap. v. of a wounde y-makyd with smytinge.
¶. Cap vj. of a wounde to bolled & out of kynde, to hote opere to colde
¶. Cap. vij. of a wounde of a wod hound, opere a venymouse beste.
¶. Cap. viij. of a wounde þat is out of Ioynte & to-broken.
¶. Cap ix. of to myche fflux of blod of wounde.
¶. Cap. x. of dyotynge of men þat beþ y-woundyde.
¶. Cap. xj. of olde woundes
¶. Cap. xij. off a ffestre
¶. Cap. xiij. of a cancre y-woundyd
¶. Cap. xiiij off causes þat lettyde helynge of woundes & olde woundes
¶. Cap. xv. of crampe þat comyth to wounde

---

¶. **þe secunde tretis** is of particulers woundes of alle lymes of office from þe hed to þe [3]flot, & techynge þe Anotamye of alle lymes from þe hed to þe fote, þat happyde to be woundyde; & þou haddist [3 fol. 31 b]

And so whanne þis tretis is ful eendid, þou hast anotamie of alle lymes of' þi bodi, & þis tretis vndir oon sum*m*e conteyneþ x. chapitlis. Ashmole 1396.

¶ Cap̄. j. of' þe secunde tretis is of wou*n*dis of þe heed and is anotamie / p. 106

¶ Cap̄. ij. is of woundis of þe face, and of' anotamie of þe same face / p. 141

¶ Cap̄. iij. is of anotamie of þe necke, and of woundis of' þe same / p. 145

¶ Cap̄. iiij. of' woundis of' schuldris, armes and hondis, & anotamie of þe same / p. 155

¶ Cap̄ v.[1] of' wou*n*dis of' þe brest, & lymes þ*at* be*n* wiþi*n*ne þe brest, & anotamie of þe same. p. 161

¶ Cap̄. vj. of' wou*n*dis of þe rigboon & of whirlebones of' þe rigge, & of anotamie of þe same / p. 166

¶ Cap̄ vij. of woundis of þe wesou*n*de þ*at* goþ to þe stomak, & of' þe stomak, and of þe guttis, and þe wombe anotamie / p. 167

¶ Cap̄. viij. of' wou*n*dis of þe lyue*re* & splene. p. 171

¶ Cap̄. ix. of woundis of þe ȝerde, þ*at* is, in þi pintil, and anotamie / p. 173

[1] v. above line.

---

to forn þe Anotamye of veynes & synwes, & op*er*e smale lymes, & so whan*n*e þis tretys is fully endyde þou hast anotamye of alle lymes of thy body. And þis tretys under sum*m*e *con*teynde x. Chapyttles. Add. MS. 12,056.

¶. Cap̄. j. of þe secu*n*de tretys is of wou*n*dys of þe hed, and hys Anotamye.

¶. Cap̄. ij. is of wou*n*des of þe face, & anotamye of þe same vysage.

¶. Cap̄. iij. of Anotamie of þe nekke, and of þe wou*n*des of þe same.

¶ Cap̄. iiij. of wou*n*dys of schuldre. Armys & hondys, & Anotamie of þe same.

¶ Cap̄. v. of wou*n*des of þe brest, and lymes þ*at* beth̄ wiþ ynne the brest, & Anotamye of þe same.

¶. Cap̄. vj. of wou*n*des of þe ruggebone & of whirele bonys of þe rugge, & Anotamye of þe same.

¶. Cap̄. vij. of wou*n*des off the wesand þ*at* goth̄ to the stomak, & of þe stomak, & þe guttes, & þe wombe, & Anotamie of the same.

¶. Cap̄. viij. of wou*n*des of þe lyffe*re* & the splene.

¶. Cap̄ ix. of wou*n*des of þe ȝerde, þ*at* ys thy*n* pyntel, & Anotamie.

Ashmole 1396. ¶ Cap̃. x. of woundis of þe haunche, þies & feet', and anotamie of' þe same / p. 176

sign. ij. *The Ashmole MS. breaks off here.*

---

Add. MS. 12,056. ¶. Cap. x. of woundes of the hanche, thyes, ffet, and Anotamye. 4

---

¶ þe þridde tretis is of cures of oþere seknesse, þat beþ noȝt woundes þat mowen falle to dyuers lymes from þe hed to þe fote, þat comyn to be helyde off a surgien, & haþ þre techynges:
þe furste techynge of þe þridde tretys hath̃ viij Chapyttles: 8
¶ Cap. j of the furste techynge of þe þridde tretys ys off Ornamentys of heer. p. 178
¶ Cap. ij ys of ffallynge off heer & of scabbe. p. 180
¶ Cap. iij of whelkys in þe vysage, & scalys and crustlys p. 188 12
[1 fol. 32 a] ¶ Cap. iiij of Morfu, ffrakles, [1]Goute, rosed of þe vysage, & Cicatrices of woundes p. 189
¶ Cap. v of ȝycchynge & scabbe p. 191
¶ Cap. vi of drye scabbe & wete scabbe p. 193 16
¶ Cap. vii of lepre, & of knowlechynge of leprys Man p. 196
¶ Cap. viii of fastnynge a lene lyme, & to lenen a fat lyme p. 199
¶ þe secunde techynge of þe þridde tretys is of apostemes, & hath̃ xvij Chapittles 20
¶ Cap. j of þe secunde techynge of þe þridde techynge, of generaciones of humour & here lyknesse p. 201
¶ Cap. ij of vniuersel word of enpostemes p. 204
¶ Cap. iij of enposteme of the hed & watire congregated in 24 children hedys. p. 214
¶ Cap. iiij of emposteme undire þe rote of þe ere. p. 216
¶ Cap. v of aposteme of þe nekke & þe þrote. p. 217
¶ Cap. vj of Aposteme undire þe Arme hole. p. 222 28
¶ Cap. vii of Aposteme þat cometh in the arme from þe schuldre to þe Elbowe. p. 223
¶ Cap. viij off Aposteme þat comyth̃ on þe sydes. p. 224
¶ [Cap.] ix of Aposteme þat cometh aboute þe Mouth̃ of þe 32 stomak. p. 226
¶ Cap. x of apostem that comyth̃ in þe grynde p. 226
¶ Cap. xj of aposteme þat comyth̃ in þe hanche & þe thyes. p. 227
¶ Cap. xij of Aposteme off þe pyntel & þe ballokes p. 228 36
¶ Cap. xiii of scrofules & glandeles, þat bub Curnellys þat comyth̃ in þe fflesch̃ p. 229
¶ Cap. xiiij of Cancre þat is nouȝt to-broke, & is cure p. 231
¶ Cap. xv of bocche þat hongyth̃ as swynes babbe undire here 40 nekkys p. 232
¶ Cap. xvj of Akþe of Ioyntes p. 233

¶ The þridde techynge of þe þridde tretys haþ xviij Chapittles Add. MS.
¶ Cap. I of seknesse of eyȝen, & Anotamye of þe same p. 240 12.056.
¶ Cap. ij of seknesse of þe eren p. 254
¶ Cap. iij of seknesse of þe nose p. 258
¶ Cap. iiij of seknesse of þe mouth̄ p. 260
¶ Cap. v of seknesse of a wo*mm*ans tetys . to grete, to fatte, [1] o*þer*e to lene. p. 265 [1 fol. 32 b]
¶ Cap. vi of ciphac þ*at* is to-broke, o*þer*e that is to lose p. 268
¶ Cap. vij of brokyn ballok p. 269
¶ Cap. viij of stone in þe bleddre p. 273
¶ Cap. ix of hermofrodite, þ*at* is to seye, þ*at* hath̄ þe schappe of Man & wo*mm*an, & o*þer*e of wo*mm*en þ*at* haþ scyne w*ith*yn*ne* here schape / þ*at* sche ne may nouȝt co*n*seywe þe seed of man
¶ Cap. x of wat*er* of me*n* þ*at* beþ in þe dropsye p. 281
¶ Cap. xj of fycus, þ*at* is, a waxynge up on þe hed of þe ȝerde cancre fleynge, bocche in þe pyntel & olde wou*n*de. p. 287
¶ Cap. xij of emeroydes, festre & rogadyes, þ*at* beþ slyttes in þe Erse p. 289
¶ [Cap.] xiij of cancrefis & malo mortuo, þ*at* buþ olde sores & olde scabbys on þe schyne. p. 293
¶ Cap. xiiij of veynes þ*at* buþ to grete in þe legges, & of þe leggys þ*at* buþ to grete out off kynde of flesch̄ p. 295
¶ Cap. xv of wryncles, & chynes of handes, & kybis on þe ffete, & wertys, & o*þer* schyn lyke flessch̄ p. 296
¶ Cap. xvj of helpynges þ*at* buþ in blod letynge p. 298
¶ Cap. xvij of helpys þ*at* buþ in bre*n*nynge w*ith* yren o*þer*e w*ith* gold p. 305
¶ Cap. xviij of helpe þ*at* is w*ith* bre*n*nynge of fyr*e*, hote watyr & oyle p. 312

---

¶ þe iiij tretys is of wrenchyngis of lymes, & haþ tweye techynges, o*þer*e tweye su*mm*es.

¶ þe firste techynge of þe furþe tretys haþ vij Chapyttles
¶ Chap̄ j of broken bonys an vniu*er*sel word [*missing*]
¶ Cap. ij of bonys þ*at* buþ broken of þe face p. 313
¶ Cap. iij of bonys þ*at* buþ broken of þe breste p. 316
¶ Cap. iiij of bonys þ*at* buþ brokyn of þe rybbes, & þe rugge bon. p. 317
¶ Cap. v of Armys þ*at* buþ broken p. 318
¶ Cap. vi of bonys þ*at* buþ bende w*ith*oute*n* brekynge p. 321
¶ þe [2] Secu*n*de techynge off þe ffurþe Tretys haþ v Chapytells [2 fol. 33 a]
¶ þe firste chapyttle of þe secu*n*de techynge a comyn word off wrenchynges out of Ioynte [*missing*]
¶ Cap. ij of dislocaciou*n* of þe cheke bon. p. 314
¶ Cap. iij of dislocaciou*n* of þe rugge bon. p. 322
¶ Cap. iiij of dislocaciou*n* of þe schuldre & about þe schuldre p. 323
¶ Cap. v of dislocaciou*n* of þe þyȝe bon & w*ith*ynne p. 326

Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ The ffyþe tretys is Antidotarie, & hatħ *with*ynne hy*m* vij chapitells

¶ Cap. j of castynge abache, & þe manere how þou schalt caste abacch̄ p. 328

¶ Cap. ij of resolueres & manere of vndoynge & makynge nessche p. 333

¶ Cap. iij of Maturatiuis, þat buþ Ripers p. 336

¶ Cap. iiij of Mundificatiuis, þat beþ clanseres p. 339

¶ Cap. v of glutinatiuis & *con*solidatiuis, þat buþ closeres & *con*souderes, & þe difference of he*m* p. 342

¶ Cap. vj of he*m* þat make*n* nessche hardnesse p. 353

¶ Cap. vij of Cauterisinge, that is to sugge bre*n*nynge, & opnynge þe extremites p. 349

*Ashmole MS.* 1396.

# SCIENCE OF CIRURGIE.

[1]Now þese chapitles of þis book ben y-ordeyned, I wole fulfille my purpos pursuynge ech chapitle bi ordre, & confermynge my wordis aftir þe auctorite of myn auctouris and wiþ experiment þat I haue longe tyme vsed wiþ þe help of god. // // // [1 lf. 2, bk.]

All þing þat we wolde knowe, bi oon of .iij. maners þat we moun knowe, eiþir bi his name, or by his worchinge, or bi his verri beynge schewynge propirte of him-silf / In þis þre maner we moun knowe surgerie bi expownynge of his name; for siurge comeþ of siros, þat is a word of gru, & in englisch siros is an hand, & gyros gru, þat is worchinge in englisch / For þe ende & þe profite of syurgie is* [of hand-wyrchynge. Of þe Name of a thynge Galyen seyth: he þat wyl knowe] soþfastnes of a þing, bisie him nouȝt to knowe þe name of a þing, but þe worchinge & þe effete of þe same þing / Therfore he þat wole knowe what siurgie is, he moot vndirstonde, þat it is a medicinal science, which techiþ us to worche wiþ handis in mannes bodi, wiþ kuttynge or openynge þe

Capm. jm

Surgery is from Greek *cheir* a hand, and *ergon* work.

It is a medicinal science:

---

*Addit. MS. Brit. Mus.* 12,056.

NOW the Chapitelles of þis bok buþ y-ordeynde, y wyl fulfylle my purpos, pursuynge every chapyteH by ordere, & confermynge my wordys after þe Autorite of myn Autores, & wiþ experyment þat y haue longe tyme y-vsyde with help of god.

AL thynge þat we wolde knowe, by on of þre maneres we mowe knowe, oþere by hys name ore by hys worchynge, oþere by hys verrey beynge schewynge propirte of hym selff. In þis þre manere we mowe knowe surgerie by expownynge of hys name; ffor syrugie cometh of syros, þat ys a word of grewȝ, & in englysscħe syros ys an hand, & gyros grewȝ, þat ys worchynge an Englysscħe; for þe ende & þe prophyte of surgerye ys* of hand wyrchynge. Of þe Name of a thynge Galyen seyth: he þat wyl knowe* soþfastnesse of a thynge, besye hym nozt to knowe þe name [2]of a thynge, bute þe worchynge & þe Effecte of þe same thynge; where fore he þat wyl knowe surgerie ys, he mote vndirstonde, þat yt is a medycineal sciense, whyche techiþ vs to worche with handes in Mannes body, in [2 fol. 33 b]

cutting, healing, and removing excrescences.

parties þat ben hole & *in* helynge þo þat' ben broken, or kutt, as þei were toforn, [1]or ellis as ny3 as a man may, & also *in* doynge awey þat is to myche skyn: as wertis or wennys, or þe fleisch to hi3e //

[1 leaf 3]

## ¶ þe secunde chapitle of þe firste tretis is of þe qualitees, maners, and kunnynge of a surgian //

¶ Cap^m ijm

A surgeon must be a temperate and well made man. An ugly man can't have good manners.

NEdeful it' is þat a surgian be of' a complexcioun weel proporcioun̄d, and þat' his complexcioun be temperat / Races sei þ, who-so is nou3t' semelich, is ympossible to haue good maners *[& Auicenne: euyle maners] but' folowen þe lijknes of an yuele complexioun/ A surgian muste haue handis weel schape, longe smale fyngris, and his body not quakynge, & al must ben of sutil witt', for al þing' þat' longiþ to siurgie may not' wiþ lettris ben writen. He muste studie in alle þe parties of philofie & in logik, þat he mowe vndirstonde scripturis; in gramer, þat' he speke congruliche; in[2] arte, þat techiþ him to proue his proporciouns wiþ good resoun; in retorik þat' techiþ him to speke semelich. Be he no glotoun, ne noon enuyous, ne a negard; be he trewe, vnbeliche,[3] & plesynglìche bere he him-silf to hise pacientis; speke he noon ribawdrie in þe sike mannis [4]hous /

He must know Philosophy, Logic, Grammar, and Rhetoric.

He must not be a glutton or a niggard, but pleasant with his patients,

[4 lf. 3, bk.]

sign. iij.

[2] Lat.: quod docet dialectica

[3] *humbilly* in margin, in smaller hand.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

kuttynge ore opnynge þo partyes þat ben hol, & in helynge þo that ben tobroken o*per*e kutte, as þey were to fore, o*per*e ellys as ny3 as a Man may, and al so in doynge aweye þat ys to myche above þe schyn: as wertys, o*per*e wennys, o*per* flesch̄ to hy3ħ.

## ¶ The secunde Chapiteħ of þe ffurste Tretys is of þe qualites, maners and cunnynge of a surgien.

Nedfful ys þat a surgien be of a Complexioun wel proporcyonede, & þat is complexioun be temperat. **Rasys** sei þ, whose face ys nou3t semlye, ys inpossible to hauen gode maners; *& **Auicenne**: euyle maners* beþ folwynge þe lyknesse of an yuele complexioun. A surgien moste han handys wel schape, longe smale ffyngres, and hys body nought quakynge, & alle hys lymes able to fulfyllen gode werkynges of hys soule. He most ben of sotyl wytt, ffor alle þynge þat longyteħ to surgerye may nought wiþ lettres ben wryten. He moste stodyen in alle þe partyes of natureħ ffylosophye & in logyk, þat he mowe vndirstonde scriptures; in gramere, þat he speke congrulyche; in art, þat techyteħ hym to preven ys proposiciones with gode resoun; in retoryk, þat techiteħ hym to speke semlyche; be he non glotoun, non spowsbrekere, ne Envyous, ne no nygarde; be he trewe, vnbelyche [5]& plesynglyche bere he hym-self to hys pacientis; speke he non Rybaudye in þe seke mannys house, ne in þe seke

[5 fol. 34. *a*]

ȝeue he no counseil, but if he be axid; ne speke he wiþ no womman in folie in þe sik mannes hous; ne chide not wiþ þe sike man ne wiþ noon of hise meyne, but curteisli speke to þe sijk man, and in almaner sijknes bihote him heele, þouȝ þou be of him dispeirid; but neuer þe lattere seie to hise freendis þe caas as it stant / Loue he noon harde curis, & entermete he nouȝt of þo þat ben in dispeir. Pore men helpe he bi his myȝt, and of þe riche men axe he good reward / Preise he nouȝt him-silf wiþ his owne mouþ, ne blame he nouȝt scharpliche oþere lechis; loue he alle lechis & clerkis, & bi his myȝt[1] make he no leche his enemye. So cloþe he him wiþ vertues, þat of him mai arise good fame & name; & þis techiþ etik. So lerne he fisik, þat he mowe wiþ good rulis his surgerie defende & þat techiþ fisik / Neþeles it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe alle þe parties and ech sengle partie of a medicyn. For if a surgian ne knewe nouȝt þe science of elementis, whiche þat ben firstmoost force of natural þingis & of dyuers lymes, he mai not [2]knowe science of coniouncions, þat is to seie, medlyngis & complexiouns þat ben nessessarie to his craft / A surgian muste knowe þat alle bodies þat ben medlid vndir þe sercle of þe moone, ben engendrid of foure

and must in desperate cases even promise recovery, but tell the truth to the patient's friends.

He should make the rich pay for the poor.

He shall not praise himself or blame other physicians.

He must know Physics, Medicine,

[2 leaf 3*]

and the science of mixtures.

[1] *myȝt* in margin.

---

Mannes house gif non counseyle bote he be y-askyde, ne speke he with non womman in no[3] folye in þe seke Mannes howse, ne chyde nought with þe seke Man ne with none of hys meyne; but curteslye speke to þe syke man, & in alle manere syknesse behote hym hele, þowȝ þou be of hym dyspeyred; but neuere þe lattere seye to hys frendys, þe cas as yt stant. Loue he non harde curys, & entyremete he nought of þo þat beþ in dyspeyre. Pore men helpe he be hys myght, & of ryche men aske he gode rewarde. Preyse he nought hymselff with hys owne mouth, ne blame he nought scharplye oþere lechys; loue he alle lechys & Clerkys, & by hys myght make he non leche hys enmye. So cloþe he hym with vertues, þat of hym mowe a-rysen gode fame & name, & þis techyth Etyk. So lerne he ffysik, þat he mowe with gode rulys hys Surgerye deffende, & þat techith ffysik. Naþeles yt ys necessarye a surgien to knowe alle þe partyes in eche sengle partye of a medycine, ffor ȝif a surgien knowe nouȝt þe sciens of Elementis, whiche þat buþ furst Meverys of natured þynges & of dyuerse lymes, he may nouȝt knowe sciense of coniunctiounes, þat ys to seye, medlynges & complexiouns þat beþ necessarye to hys crafte. A surgien most knowe þat alle bodyes þat ben medlyde, þat ben vndire þe cercle of þe Mone, ben engen-

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3] *no* above the line.

There are four elements: fire, water, earth, and air.

symple bodies, her lijknes ech in o*þe*re medlynge; þat' is to seie: fier & watir, er*þe* & eir: þese[1] elementis for þe vttirmeste eende, & þe vttermeste contrariouste of' here qualitees were fer drawen from

By mixture of their qualities new forms arise capable of being endowed with life.

bodilich lijf'; but' whanne her qualitees, þat' is to seie, maner of' beynge, comen into medlynge, so þat' þe leeste partie of' þat' oon entre into þe leeste partie of' þat' o*þe*r *par*tie, medlynge brekiþ her contrariouste; & þerof comen a newe foorme, & a newe complexcio*un* of' þe medlynge of' her substa*un*ce / Also þe medlynge of' qualitees & þe quantitees is fer drawen from þe contrariouste of' þe same elementis, & so complexioun is nyȝ brouȝt' to a mele; & so þat' þat is medlid is more able to resceiue þe noble foorme of lijf,

The noblest of all these is the human spirit.

þe which nobilite aboue alle bodies I-medlid is fo*un*den i*n* ma*n*nes spirit'. But for þat' þe qualitees þ*at* wiþ þo bodies of' elementis

sign. iiij. [2 If. 3*, bk.]

[2] comen into medlynge, & it' is vnpossible to departe þo qualitees from bodies þat' be*n* foure: hoot, coold, moist & drie, & complex-

There are 4 qualities and complexions,

io*un*s be*n* bi hem, it is nessessarie to fynde in bodies þ*at* be*n* medlid foure complexio*un*s / Complexioun is no þing' ellis but' a maner qualite medlid i*n* worchinge & suffrynge of' contrarious qualitees þat' ben founden in elementis, so þat' þe leeste partie of' ech element entre into þe leeste p*ar*tie of þe o*þe*re. & for þat ilke

[1] *ben* above line.

---

Add. MS. 12 056.

dryd of foure symple bodyes, here lyknesse eche in o*þe*re medly*n*g; þ*at* ys to sugge, fyr & eyre, er*þe* & water. þese elementys, ffor þe outemast ende & outemast *contrar*yousite of here qualites, were*n* fer

[3 fol. 34 *b*]

drawen fro*m* bodily lyffe; but whanne here [3]qualytes, þ*at* is to sugge mane*re* of beyinge, comyn in to medlynge, so þ*at* þe leste partye of þ*at* on entre in to þe leste partye of þat o*þe*re partye, medlynge brekyth here *con*trariosite, & þ*er*e of *com*me a newe forme & a newe *com*plexioun of þe medlynge of here *su*bstaunce. Al so þe medlynge of þe qualitees & þe quantites ys fer drawyn fro*m* þe *con*traryousite of þe same elementes, & so *com*plexioun is nyȝth brought to a mene, & so þ*at* þat ys medlyde ys more able to resseyue*n* þe noble forme of lyff, þe whiche noblete aboffe alle bodyes y-medlyde ys y-fo*un*den in Ma*n*nys spiryt. But for þat þe qualites, þ*at* wit*h* þo bodyes of Elementes comyth in to Medlynge—& yt ys vnpossible to departe þo qualites fro*m* bodyes—ben foure: hot, colde, moyst, & drye, & *com*plexioun*s* ben by ham, yt ys necessarie to fynden in bodyes þ*at* ben medlyde, foure *com*plexioun*s*; Complexioun ys noþynge ellys but a mane*re* qualite medlyde in worchynge, & suffrynge of *contrar*iose qualites þ*at* buþ fo*un*den in Elementis, so þ*at* þe leste p*ar*tye of eche elemente entre in to þe leste partye of þe o*þe*re partye. And for þ*at* þilke foure *com*plexioun*s*: hot, colde,

.iiij. complexiouns, hoot, moist, coold & drie, sumtyme ben y-com- hot, moist, cold, and dry.
poned, þat' is to seie, medlid, þer comen *in* hem .viij. as: hoot' & By mixing them we get 8;
drie, hoot' & moist, & coold & drie, and coold & moist' / Foure of
þese ben symple, and foure componed; & for þilke .viij. sumtyme and as these may be either with or without matter, 16;
ben wiþ mater, & sumtyme wiþoute mater / þer ben .xvj.; & for þilke
xvj. aftir sum consideracioun moun be naturel to summan, & summan
vnnaturel / þer moun be .xxxij. Neuereþelatter among' alle þe com- and as they are either natural or unnatural in some men, 32.
plexiouns þat man mai fynde, þat is componed of' dyuers qualitees, þere
ne is noon so temperat, as is mannes complexioun; & hauynge reward Compared with men's complexion,
to mannes complexioun, alle oþere þingis *[ys] I-clepid, hoot', coold,
moist, [1] eiþer drie. / Whanne [2] þat a mete or a medicyn haþ suffrid [1 leaf 4]
kyndely heete þat' is *in* man, þat heetiþ him nouȝt, ne drieþ him other things are hot, cold, moist, or dry.
nouȝt, ne moistiþ hym nouȝt, so þat mannes complexioun may not
conseyue wheþer it' coldiþ him, heetiþ or drieþ or moistiþ him: it' is A medicine which does not affect a man's complexion is called temperate.
clepid temperat' / & þilke þing þat we seie is hoot' in þe firste
degree, þat' is I-heet' of kyndely heete þat' is in oure bodies, & heetiþ
oure bodies wiþouten greuauncis / & þilke we seien to be hoot in þe A hot meat or medicine may be hot,
secunde degree, which þat' is het' of oure kyndely heete, so heetiþ
oure bodi þat' he ne myȝte heete us no more wiþoute greuaunce / in 1 *gradu*, in 2 *gradu*,

[2] A mistranslation from the Latin: Illam namque rem . . . dicimus esse temperatam, quæ cum *passa fuerit* a calore naturali, qui est in nobis, non calefit, etc.

---

moiste & drye, sumtyme ben y-componyd, þat ys to sugge medlyde, Add. MS. 12,056.
þere comen of hem VIII, as hote & drye, hote & moist, colde &
drye, colde & moiste; ffoure of þese ben symple, & foure ben com-
ponyd. And for þilke VIII sumtyme ben *with* mater, sumtyme
*with*oute mater, þere ben XVI; & for þilke XVI, after sum *con*- [3 fol. 35 *a*]
sideracioun mowe ben natureH to sum Man, [3]& to sum man vn
natureH, þere mowe ben XXXII. Nevere þe lattere amonge alle
þe *com*plexiouns þat man may fynden, þat is componyd of dyuerse
qualites, þere nys non so temperat as ys mannes *com*plexioun;
havynge rewarde to mannes *com*plexioun, alle oþere þynge ys*
clepyde colde, hote, moyste, oþere drye. Whanne þat a mete, oþere
a medycine, hath y-suffryde kendlye hete þat ys in Man, & hetyth
hym noȝt & colyth hym nauȝt, ne dryeþ hym noȝt, ne moysted hym
noȝt, so þat mannes *com*plexioun may noȝt conseyven wheþer yt
colde hym, ore hete, dryȝe, oþere moyste, yt is clepyde *temperat*; &
þilke thynge we sigge is **hot in þe firste degre**, þat ys y-hatte of
kendlye hete, þat ys in oure bodyes & hetyth oure bodyes *with*outen
grevaunce, & þilke we siggen be **hote in þe secunde degre**, whiche
þat ys y-hette of oure kendlye hete, so hetyth oure body, þat he ne
myȝte hete vs namore *with*outen greuaunce; **hot in þe þridde degre**:

in 3 gradu, þilke we seie to be hoot *in* þe þridde degree, which þat is het' of [1]kyndely heete bryngiþ to oure bodi sensible greuaun*ce*. & þilke

in 4 gradu. is *in* þe fourþe degree, þat' is hot' of [2]*vn*kyndely heete, distroieþ þe bodi openliche / & in þis same maner ȝe mou*n* knowe degrees þat ben colde / I mai p*re*ue in þis maner, þat' it' is nessessarie a surgian

.Nota. to knowe complexioun*s* of' bodies, lymes, & of' medicyns. Take .ij. men þat' ben of' oon age, & lete hem ben I-wou*n*did wiþ a swerd or a knyf[3] þwert' ou*er* þe arm *in* oon hour & in oon place; oon of'

[4 lf. 4, bk.] þe men is of' an [4]hoot complexiou*n* & a moist, þat' o*per* of' a cold

People of different complexions must be treated differently. 1. For a patient of a hot and moist complexion, use blood-letting, cupping and purging. complexiou*n* & a drie. þe comou*n* seiynge of' lewid men is þat' þei schulden bo*þe* be*n* helid on o maner; but' resonable surgerie I-p*re*ued techiþ us, þat' þei ne schulde no*t* bo*þe* be helid aftir oon maner / For he þat haþ an hoot complexiou*n*, & a moist, may liȝtly haue an hoot enpostym—þat' is an hoot swellynge—& þat may be cause of an hoot feuere. What' schalt þou þ*a*nne do? þou must loke, whe*þer* he haþ bled myche blood at his wou*n*de, and þ*a*nne it' is weel; ellis lete hi*m* blood of þe contrarious arme, or ellis*—of' þe oon same side, if strenkþe & age acorde; or ventose[5] hi*m* on þe two buttokkis, if þat he be feble. & if' he may not schite[6] oones a day, helpe hi*m*

[1] *vn* above line. [2] *vn* in different hand. [3] *ouer* above line.
[5] Lat. ventosare. Kersey, *Dict.* Ventose, a Cupping Glass.
[6] Lat. ascellare. Add. MS. translates accurately: *go to sege*. See below.

---

Add. MS. 12,056. þilke we sigge to be hot in þe þridde degre, whiche þat ys y-hatte of kendlye hete, bryngeþ to oure bodye sencyble greuaun*ce*; **hot in þe fourþ degre**: and þilke in þe fourþ gre þat is y-hat of kendly hete, dystroyeþ þe body opynlyche; & in þis same man*ere* ȝe may knowe degrees þat ben colde, & y may p*re*ve in þis man*ere* þat yt is necessarye a surgyne to knowe *com*plexioun*s* of bodyes, lymes, & of medycynes. ¶ Take two me*n* þat ben off one age, & lete he*m* ben y-wou*n*dyde w*ith* a swerd o*þere* a knyffe twarte offere þe arme, in

[7 fol. 35 *b*] one oure & in [7]one place. One of þo me*n* ys of an hote *com*plexioun & a moyste, þe o*þere* of a colde & a drye; þe comyne siggynge of lewyde me*n* ys, þat þey scholde bo*þe* by helyde aftere o man*ere*. But resonable surgye wel y-proved, techiþ vs þat þey ne schulle noȝt bo*þe* ben y-helyde aftere on man*ere*; for he þat haþ an hot *com*plexioun & a moyst, may lyȝtliche haue an hote enposteme, þat ys an hote swellynge, & þat may be cause of an[8] hote ffevyre. What schaltou þ*a*nne do? þ*o*u moste loke whe*þer* he haue y-bled myche blod at hys wou*n*de, & þ*a*nne it ys wel, ellys lete hy*m* blod of þe *con*traryose arme, o*þere* ellys* on þe fot on þe same syde; ȝif strengþe & age acorde, o*þere* ventuse hym on þe tweye buttokkys; gif þat he be feble, ȝif he may noȝt go to sege onys a day, helpe hy*m* þereto

[8] *an* above the line.

þerto, or *with* clisterie, or wiþ suppositorie. & brynge þou þe *par*ties of þe wou*n*de togidere þoru3 sowynge, or wiþ plumaciols—þat ben smale pelewis—or wiþ byndynge, if' þat' sewynge be nou3t nesses- sarie, & þa*n*ne worche aboute þe wou*n*de, as it is told aftir *in* þe book. But aboute þe wou*n*de leie a medicyn defensif', of bole ar- monyac[1], oile of rosis, & a litil vynegre; so *þat* [2]þe medicyn touche þe brynkis of þe wou*n*de, þat' humouris moun not' haue her cours to renne to þe wounde; & we forbede*n* hi*m* wiyn, mylk & eiren & fisch þat engendriþ myche blood / But he schal ete for his mete growel maad of' otemele, eiþir of barli mele wiþ almau*n*dis; & gene*r*aliche he schal vse a streit' dietynge, til *þat* he be sikir *þat* he schal haue noon hote enpostym. & if *þat* we ku*n*ne fende hi*m* fro a feuere & apostym, þe science of his complexiou*n* techiþ us, *þat* he may of his sijknes soone be hool / þe o*þe*re of' þe cold complexiou*n* schal not be leten blood ne ventusid, for blood schulde be kept' *in* hi*m*, as for tresour / Forbede hem neiþir wiyn ne fleisch, for þe stomak þat' is so feble ne my3te nou3t engendre nessessarie mater of blood *þat* longiþ to þe wou*n*de / Ne we drede nou3t *in* hi*m* þe feuere, for his complexiou*n* is nou3t able to resceyue þe feue*r*e / We mou*n*

Close his wound with compresses or with bandages,

and apply an vng*uentum* defens*ivum*. [2 leaf 5]

He must keep a strict diet.

2. Keep the blood in a patient of cold complexion; give him wine and meat.

Compare: *a Sege of a Privay*; gumfus. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 328. Compare the French: aller à la selle.

[1] *Bole Armoniack.* See N. E. Dict.

---

20 o*þe*re *wit* clysterye, o*þe*re *with* suppositorye; & brynge þou þe *par*tyes of þe wou*n*de to-gedire, o*þe*re *with* sowynge, o*þe*re wiþ plu- maciolus—*þat* beþ smale pelewys—o*þe*re *with* byndynge, 3if *þat* sowy*n*ge be no3t necessarie. And þe*n*ne worche aboute þe wou*n*de, 24 as it ys tolde aftere in þe boke; but aboue þe wou*n*de leye a Medycine defensiue, of bol Armonyac, oyle of rosys, & a litel vynegre, so *þat* þe medycine touche þe sydes of þe wou*n*des, þat humours mowe no3t haue*n* here cours to re*n*ne to þe wou*n*de. And 28 we forbyde hy*m* wyn, Milke, & eyren, & fysc*h*, *þat* engendrit*h* myche blod; but he schal ete for his Mete gruc*h* y-made of ote Mele, o*þe*re barly mele *with* Almau*n*des, & gene*r*aliche he schal vse*n* a streyt [3]doynge, tyl þou be sykere *þat* he schal haue no*n* enposteme. 32 And 3if *þat* we cu*n*ne dyffende*n* hy*m* fro*m* a ffevyre & ap*o*steme, þe science of hys *com*plexiou*n* techyt*h* vs *þat* he may of hys seknesse sone be hol. ¶ þe o*þe*re of þe colde *com*plexiou*n* ne schal no3t be leten blod ne ventusyde, ffor blod scholde be kepte in he*m* as for 36 tresoure; forbyde hy*m* neiþere wyn ne flesc*h*; for þe stómak *þat* ys so feble, ne my3te nou3t engendre necessarie mater of blod *þat* longyt*h* to þe wou*n*de; ne we dredyt*h* no3t in hy*m* þe ffevyre, for his *com*plexiou*n* ys no3t able to resceyuen þe ffevyre. We mowe

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3 fo. 36 v°

**vitriol has a different effect on different complexions.**

fynde a medicyn maad *in* oon mane*r* þat worchiþ dyuers effectis, & he be I-leid to dyu*er*s *com*plexiou*n*s / Grene vitriol, & he be do to a man of a drie complexiou*n* engendrith fleisch[1]; & if þou leie [2]*him* on moist complecciou*n*, he greueþ nouȝt oonliche, but corrodith it; and neþeles vitriol haþ but oon maner worchinge, þouȝ þat he worche dyuersliche *in* dyuers complexiou*n*s / Riȝt as þe worchinge of þe su*n*ne is dyuers, nouȝt for þe su*n*ne, but for þe worchinge of dyuers bodies into whom he worchiþ / Vitriol drieþ wondirfulliche myche: *in* drie bodies he defendiþ[3] þe smale lymes myȝt[4] to aȝenstonde his miȝt, wh*er*fore he may nouȝt but drie þe super*fluytees* þat he fyndiþ *in* þe wou*n*de; & whanne þo ben y-dried, kynde engendriþ fleisch. *In* moiste bodies, for þat þe smale lymes ben feble & mou*n* not wiþstonde þe strenkþe of þe vitriol, þe fleisch meltiþ vndir it, & so bi vitriol þe fleisch rotiþ. & þ*at* is seid of dyuers

**Galien**

complexiou*n*s, is y-seid of dyuers lymes / Galiou*n* seiþ: If þat tweye woundis ben euene I-quytturid, & þe oon be a drie lyme, & þe o*per* a moist lyme, þ*at* þat is þe drie lyme nediþ þe moister medicy*n* / And if þ*at* .ij. lymes leeue[5] ben I-wou*n*did þ*at* ben lich

**Limbs of different complexions must be treated differently.**

[2] lf. 5, bk.

[1] *fleisch* in margin. [3] *defendiþ*, mistake for *fyndiþ*; see below.
[4] *myȝt* for *myȝty*; see below. [5] *leeue* for *leche?*

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

fynd*en* a Medycine made in o manere þ*at* wirchith dyu*er*se effect*is*, & he be y-leyde to dyu*er*se *com*plexiou*n*s. Grene vytreole, & he be done to a Man of dryȝe *com*plexiou*n*, engendrith flessch; & ȝif þou legg*en* hy*m* on a moyste *com*plexiou*n*, he greuyth noȝt onlyche, but coroduþ yt. And naþeles vitreole haþ but one man*er*e wyrchinge, þouȝ he wirche dyu*er*slyche in dyu*er*se *com*plexiou*n*s, ryȝte as þe wirchynge of þe so*n*ne ys dyu*er*se—noȝt for þe so*n*ne, but for þe wyrchynge of dyu*er*se bodyes in whom he wyrchyth. Vitreole dryeþ wond*er*lyche muche, & in dryȝe bodyes he fyndeþ þe smale lymes myghty to ageyne stond*en* hys strengþe. Wh*er*efore he may nought but drye þe super*fluites* þ*at* he fynte in þe[6] wou*n*de; & wh*en*ne þo ben y-dreyede, kynde engendryth flesch. In moyste bodyes, ffor þ*at* þe smale lymes beþ feble, & mowe noȝt w*ith*stande þe strengthe off þe vytreole, þe flesch meltyth vndire yt, & so be þe vitreole þe flesch rotyth; & þ*at* þat ys seyde of dyu*er*se *com*plexiou*n*s, ys y-seyde of dyv*er*se lymes. **Galyen**: ȝif þ*at* tweye wou*n*des [7]ben evyne i quyt*er*, & þe on be in a dryȝe lyme, & þe o*per*e in a moyste lyme, þ*at* þat is in þe dryore lyme nediþ þe dryore medycine. And ȝif þ*at* two lymes ben y-wou*n*ded þat ben lyche in

[7] fol. 36 *b*

[6] *wound*, cancelled because blotted after *in* þe and re-written.

in complexioun, & þe oon haþ myche quytture & þe toþer litil, he þat haþ þe myche quytture, nediþ to han þe drier medicyn /

[1 lf. 6]

Iohannes damascenus seiþ, Medicyns & enplastris schulden ben acordynge to þe lymes þat þei ben leid on / Galienus: a kyndly þing schal be kept wiþ a þing þat is kyndly þerto / And þat is ayen kynde schal be doon awei with þing þat is contrarie þerto / If þat a surgian knew not complexiouns of lymes & of bodies, he schal nouȝt conne to schewynge hise medicyns aftir þat kynde askiþ. A surgian must knowe generacioun of humouris, if he wolde knowe þe science & þe helynge of apostymes, as it schal be declarid in þe tretis of apostymes. He muste knowe þe dyuersitees & þe profitis & þe officis of lymes, þat he mowe knowe, what lymes han a greet worchinge in mannes body, & whiche ben of greet felynge, & whiche moun bere a strong medicyn / & þe vertues of lymes þou must knowe, þat he se, whanne þe worchinge of ony vartu failiþ in ony lyme, þat he mowe helpe þe vertu & þe same lyme failynge. & if he haue þe science of knowynge of vertues, þe science of spiritis schal nouȝt be hid fro him. Alle þese þingis bifore seid ben but natureles, & þei [2]ben but techinge of medicyns speculatijf /

Galienus

nota

A Surgeon must know the generation of the Humours, and the different offices of the Limbs.

[2 lf. 6, bk.]

He must also know the things which are not

Also he muste haue knoulechinge of þingis þat ben not naturels, þat he kunne chese good eir to him þat is woundid or ellis haþ

---

complexioun, & þat on haþ myche quyter and þe oþere lyte, he þat haþ myche quyter nedyth to haven þe dryere medycine. **Iohannes damacenus**: Medycines & enplastres scholde ben acordynge to þe lymes þat þey ben y-leyde on. **Galienus**: a kendlye thynge schal be kepte with þynge þat ys kendlye þere to; and þat þat is ayeyne kynde schal be done away with þynge þat is contrarye þere to. ȝif þat a surgien knowith noȝt complexiouns of lymes & of bodyes, he schal noȝt kunne to chaungen hys medycines aftere þat kynde askeþ. A surgien moste knowe generacioun of humours, ȝif he wolde knowen þe sciense & þe helynge of Apostemys, as yt schal ben declared in þe tretys of apostemes; he moste knowyn þe dyuersite, & þe profytes, & þe offices of lymes, þat he mowe knowen what lymes han grete wyrchynge in mannys body, & whiche ben of grete felynge, & whiche mowe bere a stronge Medycine; & þe vertues of lymes he moste knowe, þat he se whanne þat þe worchynge of enye vertue fayleþ in enye lyme, þat he mowe helpe þe vertue in þe same lyme faylinge. And ȝif he haue þe science of knowynge of vertues, þe sciense of spiritus ne schuH noȝt ben y-hud from hym. Alle þese þynges before seyde beþ natureles, & þey beþ techynge of medycine speculatyff. Also he moste han knowynge of thynges þat beþ noȝt natureles, þat he kunne chesen gode eyre to hym þat is y-woundyde,

Add. MS. 12,056.

natural, as the effect of the air on a wound.

a boch[1] / Woundis moun not be[2] dried in a moist eir & a vapouris, but þei þat ben woundid musten ben chaungid fro þat moist eir to a swete cleer eyr & a drie / In wyntir he muste kepe him fro cold;

*nota*

for no þing greueþ so myche boones & senewis as cold[3] þat ben I-woundid / & in somer he muste haue temperable eir. It is nessessarie þat he kunne dietyn his pacient, as I schal telle in þe same chapitle of dietinge / also he muste ordeyne meuynge & reste,[4]

He must know how to prescribe moving or rest.

as it nediþ to þe same sijk man / for if þat he be woundid in þe heed eiþer haue ony puncture of ony senewe, it is nessessarie þat he reste & dwelle in stillenes & haue an esy bed & a soft; lest he suffre ony traueile of his lymes / But if þat olde woundis wiþout akynge weren in his armes, it were good to him, þat is sijk, to walke on his feet, & lete his arme be bounde to his necke; & if þat þe wounde be in hise schynes & in hise feet, it were good þat he lay & traueilide wiþ hise hondis / Also a [5]surgian, in al þat he myȝte, he muste tempere a sijk mannes slepinge; for to myche slepinge engenderiþ superfluyte & febliþ his vertewes, & coldiþ & lesiþ al his bodi / To myche wakinge dissolueþ & confoormeþ[6] hise spiritis &

[5 lf. 7]

*Nota*

He must regulate the patient's sleep,

[1] *boch*, Latin apostema; M. E. botch. See N. E. Dict.
[2] *heelid* cancelled.
[3] *as cold* misplaced; see below. [4] *to* cancelled after *reste*.
[6] *confoormeþ*, erroneously for *consumeþ*, as below. Lat. Orig.: dissolvunt et consumunt.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

[7 fol. 87 *a*]

oþere ellys haþ a bocche. Woundes mowe nȝt ben y-dryȝed in a [7]moyste eyre & a vaporose, but þey þat ben y-woundyde most bene y-chaungyde from þat moyste eyre to a swote cler eyre & a dryȝe. In wyntere he moste kepe hym from colde, ffor noþinge grevyth so myche bonys & synwes þat buþ y-woundyde as colde. And in somere he moste han a temperable eyre; hit ys necessarye þat he kunne dyoten hys pacient, as y schal tellen in þe same Chapyteł of dyotynge. Also he moste ordeyne moffynge & reste, as yt nedeþ to þe same syke man; ffor ȝif þat he be woundyde in þe hed, oþere haue eny puncture off enye synwe, it ys necessarye þat he reste: dwelle he in stylleneſſe, & haue an euene bed & a softe, leste he suffren enye trauaylle of hys lemys; but ȝif þat olde woundes, wiþouten akynge, weren in hys Armes, hit were gode to hym þat ys seke to walken on hys fete, & bere hys arme y-bounden to hys nekke; & ȝif þat þe wounde be in hys schynys & in hys ffete, hit were gode þat he leyȝe & trauellyde with hys handes. Also a surgien, in alle þat he myghte, he moste atempre a syke Mannes slepynge, ffor to myche slepynge engendreþ superfluyte, & feblyth his vertues, & coldyth & losyth alle hys bodye; to myche wakynge dyssolfiþ & consumeþ hys spirites, & mekyth scharpe hys humores,

makiþ scharpe hise humouris; it bryngiþ vnkindly drowþe to woundis, & is cause of akynge / Also he muste kunne evacuener him þat is ful of yuel humouris & fulfille him þat is waastid, þat he brynge sike men to good temperaunce; ellis a wounde mai not be heelid / Entempre he þe herte of him þat is sijk, for to greet wraþþe. makiþ þe spiritis renne to myche to þe wounde & þat is caus of swellynge; to greet drede, ouþir vttereste[1] of heelþe of his wounde, holdiþ þe spiritis wiþinne his bodi, þat mater mai not come to heele his wounde / Þese .vj. þingis ben clepid vnnaturel,[2] which techiþ a man speculatijf of leche craft.

free the patient from evil humours

and take care that the heart is temperate.

He muste knowe þe sijknes: as olde wounde, festre, cankre & alle opere soris, þat he traueile not in veyn & brynge þe sike man to his deeþ / For ech dyuers soor nediþ dyuers helpingis. He muste knowe þe cause of þe wounde / ffor a wounde, þat is [3]maad wiþ a swerd eiþer a knyf, must operwise be heelid, þan he þat is maad wiþ stoon eiþer fallinge / And a wounde þat is biten wiþ an hound schal operwise be heelid, þan he þat is biten with a wood hound; as þou schalt fynde soone told in þe book herafter / & he muste knowe þe accidentis þat ben aboute a wounde / for þe wounde schal neuere heele, til þe accidentis be remeued awey / accidentis is

He must know the different kinds of wounds,

**Nota**

[3 lf. 7, bk.]

and the **accidentes** which betid a wound.

[1] *uttereste*, only known as an adj.: extremus, erroneously for *untryste*. See below.

[2] Lat. quæ sunt secundum membrum theoricæ medicinæ.

---

& hit bryngeþ vnkyndly drowþe to woundes, & ys cause of akynge; also he moste kunne evacuen hym þat ys ful of euele humores, & fulfylle hym þat ys wastyde, þat he brynge seke men to gode temperaunce; ellys a wounde may noȝt ben helyd; entempre he þe hert of hym þat ys seke, ffor to gret wratthe makyþ þe spirites renne to myche to þe wounde, & þat ys cause of swellynge; [4]to grete drede, opere vntryst of helpe of hys wounde holdiþ spyrites withynne hys body, þat mater may nouȝt come to hele þe wounde. Þese sixe thynges ben y-clepyde vnnatureH, whiche techith a Man speculatyff of leche craft. He mot knowen þe seknesse, as olde wounde, festre, cancre, & alle opere sores, þat he traveylle noȝt in deveyne, & brynge þe seke man to hys deþ: ffor eche dyverse sore nedith dyverse helpynges. He mote knowe þe cause of þe wounde; ffor a wounde þat is mad with a swerd opere a knyff mote opere weys ben helyde þen he þat is y-makyde with ston, opere with fallynge, & a wounde þat is byten with an hounde schal opere weys ben helyde þen he þat ys y-byten with a wod hound, as þou schalt fynde tolde in þe boke hereaftere. And he mot knowe þe Accidentes þat buþ aboute a wounde, ffor the wounde schal nevere hele tyl þe Accidentes ben remevyde awey. Accidentis ys a þynge þat falliþ to þe wounde out

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 37 *b*]

He must know how to prescribe appropriate diet.

a þing þat falliþ to a wounde out of kynde as hoot, cold, drie, eiþer to myche moistnes, crampe & oþere þinges aȝens kynde / A surgian muste ordeyne dietynge in dyuers maner, as it is told in þe chapitle of dietynge; & whanne it is nedeful, he muste ȝeue dyuers drinkis / 4

.Galien.

Galien: Laxatiues & vometis ben nedeful to hem, þat han olde rotid woundis & stynkynge / For whanne þe bodi is purgid fro wickide humouris, þe wickidnes of þe mater renneþ fro þe wounde & so þe wounde is sunner helid / He þat biholdiþ alle þe parties of 8 a medicyn, he may weel se þat it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe phisik, & oþer dyuers science, as I haue told tofore in þe book.

## ¶ þe .iij c°. of þe firste techinge is of intencioun of a surgian / 12

[1 lf. 8]
¶ Capm 3m
¶ .1.
.2.
.3.

[1] Al þe entencioun of a surgian, how diuers þat it be, it is on* [of] þre maners / þe first is vndoynge of þat, þat is hool / þe secunde to hele þat, þat is broke / þe .iij. is remeuynge of þat, þat is to myche; so þat it be don with hand craft / ffor al entencioun of 16 a surgian is vndir oon of þese .iij. entenciouns, or ellis vnder oon of hem. A surgian vndoiþ þat þat is hool, whanne he letiþ blood, eiþer garsiþ,[2] eiþer brenneþ, eiþer settiþ on watirlechis, for þis is a

A surgeon 1. either undoes what is whole,

[2] garsiþ] Lat. scarificat; Fr. gerçer; med. Lat. gersa, garsa. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 150.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

of kynde, as hete, colde, drowþe oþere to gret moistnesse, crampe, & 20 oþere þynges aȝeyne kynde. A surgien mot ordeyne dyetynge in dyverse manere, as it is tolde in þe Chapiteł of dyetynge. Whenne þat it is nedful, he mote ȝyve dyverse drynkes. **Galien**: laxativis & vomytes buþ necessarie to hem þat han olde, rotyde, stynkynde 24 woundes; ffor whanne þat þe body is purgyde from evyle humours, þe wykkednesse of þe matere renneþ from þe wounde, & so þe wounde is sonnere y-helyde. He þat byholdeþ alle þe partyes of a

[3 fol. 38 *a*]

medycine, he may wel se [3]that it is necessarie a surgyne to knowen 28 ffysyk and oþere dyverse science, as hit is tolde tofore in þis boke.

## ¶ The þridde Chapitele of þe furste techynge is of Intencioun off a Surgyne.

Alle þe entencioun of surgerye, how dyverse þat it be, yt is on 32 *of þre maneres: þe ffurste ys undoynge þat þat is hol; secunde ys helpynge of þat þat is tobroke; þe þridde ys remevynge of þat þat is to myche, so þat it be do with hande crafte; ffor alle þe entencioun of a surgien ys vndire one of þis þre entensiouns, oþere ellys 36 vndire one of hem. A surgyne vndoþ þat þat ys hol, whanne he letyth blod ore garsyth oþere brenneþ, oþere setteþ on waterlechys,

surgiens craft; þouȝ we for oure *pri*de haue left it to barbou*ri*s & to wy*mm*en / for Galion & Rasis diden it w*ith* her hondis, as her bookis telle*n*. And we vndoon þat, þat is hool, wha*nne* þat we kutten þe veynes, þat ben in þe templis & þe forheed & maken cauterizacio*un*s for þe sijknes of þe yȝen / And wha*nne* þ*at* we maken cauteries in þe heed & in dyuers placis of þe bodi, as I schal telle i*n* þe chapitle of cauterisynge / þe secu*n*de entencio*un* is to hele þ*at*, þ*at* is broke*n* as wou*n*dis, olde wou*n*dis, festris, cankris & in bringyng to her placis ioyntis þ*at* be*n* oute & *in* helynge boones þ*at* ben to broke*n* / þe .iij. intencio*un* is to remeue þ*at*, þ*at* is to myche, as [1]scrofulus of þe heed & þe necke & o*per*e pa*r*ties of þe bodie / cataractis[2]—is a watir þat comeþ bitwene þe white of þe iȝen & þe appil; sebel—þat ben veynes þat ben *in* þe whiȝt of þe iȝe*n* & beþ ful of blood / vngula—is a þi*n*g, þ*at* bigy*nn*eþ bi þe nose & goiþ ouer þe iȝe til he keue*re* al þe iȝe—& knottis, þ*at* be*n* in þe iȝe & o*per* siknes of þe iȝe; & *in* doynge awey polippis, þat is fleisch þat growiþ wiþi*nn*e þe nose; wertis & we*nn*ys; ficus, þ*at* is super-fluyte þat growen vp on þe skyn of þe pintils hede wiþoute, emerawdis[3] & a skyn þat enclosiþ a wo*mm*a*n*s *pri*uy membre, þe

Nota. G. R.

as when he bleeds, scarifies or cauterizes;

or 2. he heals wounds, &c.,

or 3. he removes excrescences, sign. 2j [1 ll. 8, bk.]

as cataracts,

polypuses,

and wens.

[2] cataract, sebel and ungula. See Notes.
[3] The Latin text has: superfluitatem hermaphroditis.

---

ffor þis ys a surgyns craft, þawȝ we for oure pride have y-lefte yt to laborers & to wo*mm*en, for Galien & Rasys dyden it wiþ here handes as here bokys telly þ. And we vndoþ þ*at* þat is hol, whe*nne* þ*at* we kutteþ þe veynes þ*at* ben in þe templys & þe forhed, & makyth cauterisaciones fro*m* þe seknesse of þe eyȝen, & whe*nne* þ*at* we maken Cauteries in þe hed & in dyve*r*se places of þe body as y schal telle in þe chapiteH of Cauterysynge. þe secu*n*de entencio*un* ys to hele þ*at* þat is tobroke as: wou*n*des, olde wou*n*des, ffestres, Cancres, and in bringynge to here place Ioyntes þat bene oute, & in helynge bonys þat ben tobroke*n*. þe þridde entencio*un* is to remevyn þ*at* þat ys to myche as scurffyls of þe hed & þe nekke, & o*per*e partyes of þe body, & Cataractis þat ys a wate*r* þat comyth bytwene þe whyte of þe eyȝe & þe Appul. Sebel þat beþ veynes þ*at* buþ in þe whyte of þe eyȝe, & beþ ful of blod. Vngula, [4]þat ys a thynge þat bygy*nn*eþ by þe nese & goth ovee*r* þe eyȝe, tyl he kefiere alle þe eyȝe & knottes þat ben in þe eyȝe, & o*per*e seknesse of þe eyȝe, & in doynge awey polippes þat is flesch þat growiþ w*ith* y*nn*e þe nese, wertys & we*nn*ys, ficus þ*at* is a super*fl*uyte þ*at* growiþ vp on þe skyn off þe pyntellys hed w*ith*outen, emeraudes & a schyn

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 3 b.]

sixte fingre of þe hond & manye superfluytees þat beþ nouȝt semelich to a mannys body

## ¶ þe firste chapitle of þe secunde tretis is an vniuersal word of smale lymes & her helpingis, & of generacioun of embrioun, þat is þe child, in þe modir wombe // / /[1]

de anotho-[m]ia. A Surgeon must know Anatomy.

GAlienus seiþ, þat it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe anotamie; ne leeue we nouȝt þat ech brood ligament is a skyn, & ech round ligament to be a senewe, so bi his opinyoun he myȝte falle into errour / þerfore I þenke to ordeyne a chapitle of þe kynde & of the foorme & helpinge of alle smale lymes / Auicen seiþ / knoulechinge of a þing, þat haþ cause, mai nouȝt be knowen, but bi his cause. þerfore we moten knowe þe cause, *membriorum consimilium*, þat is to seie, smale lymes. & I wole telle þe generacioun of embrioun: þat is to seie, how a child is I-gete in þe modir wombe / Galion & auicen tellen, þat of boþe þe spermes of man & of womman, worchinge & suffrynge togideris, so þat ech of hem worche in oþir & suffre in oþir, embrioun is bigete / But the worchinge of mannes kynde is more myȝtiere, & wommans kynde

Auicen. [2 lf. 9]

†The Embryo .G† is engendered of the seed of man and woman.†

[1] See *Vicary*, ed. Furnivall, p. 78.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

þat enclosyth a wommans prive membre, þe sixte fynger of þe hand, and manye superfluytes þat beth nought semlye to mannys body.

## ¶ The ffurste Chapiteⱨ of þe secunde tretys ys an universel word off smale lymes, & here helpynges of generacioun of enbrion þat is child in þe moder wombe.

GAlien seith þat it ys necessarie a Surgien to knowe Anotomye, ne leffe henoȝt þat iche brode ligament þat ys a schyn, & iche rounde ligament to ben a synwe, & so be hys opynioun he myȝte fallen in erroure. þerefore i þynke to ordeyne a Chapiteⱨ of þe kynde & of þe fforme & þe helpynge of alle smale lymes. Avycene seith, knowlechynge of a þynge þat haþ cause may noȝt be knowe but by hys cause, þerefore we mote knowe þe cause membrorum consimilium: þat ys to sigge smale lymes. Y wyl telle þe generacioun of embrion, þat ys to sigge, how a childe ys bygete in þe modire wombe. Galien and Avycene tellen þat of boþe þe spermes of Man & womman—wirchynge & sofferynge togedires, so þat iche of hem wirche in oþere & suffren in oþere—embrion ys bygete. But þe worchynge of Mannes kynde is more myȝtyere, & wommans [3]kynde

[3 fol. 39 *a*]

more febler / For riȝt as þe roundeles[1] of chese haþ bi him-silf wei of worchinge & þe mylk bi wey of suffrynge, so to þe generacioun of embrion mannes sperme haþ him[2] bi wei of worchinge & wommans sperme bi wey of suffrynge / & riȝt as þe rundelis[1] & þe mylk maken a chese, so boþe þe spermes of man & woman maken generacioun of embrioun. Þouȝ þat alle þe smale lymes of a child ben I-geten of boþe two spermes, neþeles, to cloþe hem with fleisch & wiþ fatnes, comeþ to hem menstrue [3]blood / þe maris[4] of woman haþ an able complexcioun to conseiuen; & of hir kynde he castiþ þe spermes to þe deppest place of hir; & of hir nature he closiþ hir mouþ, þat þer myȝte not entre the poynt of a nedle / & þanne þe foormal vertu which almyȝty god haþ ȝeue to þe maris ordeyneþ & diuidid euery partie of þese spermes in her kynde, til þat þe child be born / Vndirstonde þat þe fleisch & þe fatnes is mad of menstrue blood, þe boones & gristlis, ligamentis & senewis, cordis, arteries, veynes, panniclis—þat ben smale cloþis—& þe skyn beþ engendrid of boþe þe spermes, as auicen & oþere auctouris tellen / If þat ony of þe lymes þat ben engendrid of þe spermes ben doon awey *[he] moun neuere veriliche be restorid, for þe mater of hem is þe sperme of þe

†And as rennet curdles milk and the two make cheese, so does the seed of man and woman make the Embryo.† sign. ȝij [3 lf. 9, bk.]

The flesh and the fat are formed from the menstrual blood.

The Matrix closes itself after having conceived.

The whole body is developed in the Matrix (except the flesh and fat) from the seed of the man and woman.

Auicen

[1] *roundeles, rundelis.* Add. MS. *rendelys,* coagulum. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 429, *renlys, or rendlys.* Comp. O. Du. rinsel, runsel.

[2] *mannes sperme haþ him,* Lat. ita sperma viri se habet. [4] *maris,* matrix.

---

ys more ffeblere. Ffor ryȝt as þe rendelys of chese haþ hym by weye of worchynge, & þe Mylk be weye off suffrynge, so to þe generacioun of embrion, Mannes sperme[6] hath hym be weye of worchynge, & wommans sperme[6] be weye of suffrynge, & ryȝt as þe rendles & þe mylk makyth a[5] chese, so boþe þe spermes[6] of man & woman makyþ þe generacioun of embrion. Þowȝ þat alle þe smale lymes of a childe be y-geten of boþe two spermes,[6] naþeles to cloþe hem with fflesch & with fatnesse comeþ to hem menstrewe blod. Þe marys of a woman haþ an able complexioun to conseyven, & of here kynde sche castyth þe spermes to þe deppeste place off here, and of here nature sche closyth hire mouth þat þere myȝte nouȝt entre þe poynt of an nedle. And þenne þe formal virtue whiche þat almyghty god haþ ȝeuen to the marys, ordeyneþ & deff[e]ndeþ every party of þese spermes in here kynde, tyl þat þe childe ben ybore. Understande þat þe flesch & þe fatnesse ys y-mad of menstrewe blod, the bonys & þe grustlys, ligamentes, synwes, cordes, Arteries, veynes, pannycles, þat buþ smale cloþes & þe schyn buþ engendred of boþe þe spermes, as Avicene & oþere Autores tellyn. ȝif þat enye of þe lymes þat buþ engendrede off the spermes be don away, *he may nevere verrelyche ben restoride, ffor þe matere of

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5] Above line. [6] MS. *spernes.*

fadir & of þe modir; but þe fleisch the which mater is blood, þat is aldai engendrid in us, may weel & verriliche be restorid / þese smale lymes han dyuers foormes, complexcioun*s* & helpingis aftir þe dyuersitees of þe proporcioun*s* of þe mater, which þat þei ben maad of[1] / for þouȝ þat alle þe lymes ben maad of oon mater I-medlid, [1 lf. 10] neþeles in ech of þe smale ly[1]mes þer is a dyuers proporcioun of mater, for þe which mater þei taken dyuers foormes & dyuers helpingis. Almyȝti god ȝeueþ to ech þing[1] of his foorme after þat his mater is* proporciound disseueþ /

*consimile membris.*** 1st Member The Bone. Its functions:

þe boon is þe first of[1] þe consimile membris—þat is oon of[1] þe smale lymes; þe which ben[2] cold & drie & he haþ dyuers foormes in mannes bodi: for he helpiþ dyuerslich / þe cause whi þer ben manye dyuers boones in mannes bodi is, for sumtyme it is nede to

to move limbs, protect them, support the body, and fill the hollows of joints.

meene oon lyme without anoþir & þat were impossible, if[1] þat al þe bodi were but oon boon / Anoþer cause whi þer ben manye boones: for summe defenden þe principal lymes from harm, as þe brayn scolle from[3] þe brayn of þe heed / summe ben foundementis, as þe boones of[1] þe rigge & of þe schenes & of[1] þe armes / summe ben as additamentis þat ben in þe side of þe rigge boon, & summe to fulfille the holownes of summe ioyntis, as þe handis & þe feet;

[2] *ben* for *is*, see below. [3] *from*, erroneously inserted.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

hym ys þe sperme of þe fadire & þe modere. But þe flesch whose matere ys blod þat is al day engendred in vs may wel & verreliche be restoryde. þese smale lymes han dyverse formes, complexioun, & helpynges after the dyversite of þe proportiouns of þe mater [1 fol. 39 b] whiche þat þey ben[4] mad of; ffor þowȝ þat alle the lymes be mad of on matere y-medlyde, naþeles in eche of þe smale lymes þere is a dyverse proposicioun[5] of matere, for the whiche matere þey taken dyverse forme & dyverse helpe. Almyghty god gevyth to effrye þynge of[1] hys forme after þat hys matere *proporcioned deservyt.

þe bon is furst of consimile membris þat is on off smale lymes, þe whiche ys colde & drye, & he haþ dyverse formes in mannes bodye, for he helpiþ dyversliche; þe cause why þere ben many dyverse bonys in mannys body is,[6] ffor sum tyme it ys nede to meffyn o lyme without an o*þ*ere, & þat were inpossible, ȝif in alle þe body were but on hol bon. An o*þ*ere cause is why þere ys many bonys; for sum diffenden þe principal lymes from harme, as þe brayn scolle þe brayn of[1] þe hed; somme ben ffundamentys, as þe bonys of þe rugge, & of þe schynes, & of þe Armes. Some ben as armure, as additamentys, þat ben in þe syde of þe rugge bon, & somme fulfylle þe holwenesse of somme Iuntes, as þe handys & þe

[5] read "proporcioun." [6] *is* above line.

& sum*m*e þ*er* be*n* þ*at* þe rou*n*dnes of þe boon my3te entre i*n*to þe holownes of þ*at* o þ*er* boon / & non les schulde not lacke his meuynge as þe schuldre boones & þe hipe boones. Þ*o*u maist fynde sign. 2iij
how manye boones þ*er* be*n* *in* þe .ij. tretis, [1]where schal be told [1 lf. 19, bk.]
pleynlier þe anotamie of consimile membris of al þe bodi from þe heed to þe foot.

A gristil is cold & drie, & is neischere þan a boon, & hardere þan 2nd Member, The Gristle; the six uses of Gristle.
þe fleisch, and *in* þe fleisch he haþ sixe helpi*n*gis / þe firste, þ*at* þ*at* schulde be a meene bitwene þe vttir ende of þe hard boon & þe .1.
neische fleisch / þe .ij. þ*at* þe harde schulde not hirte þe neische, .2.
nameli *in* þe tyme of compressiou*n*, & in þe tyme of smyti*n*ge / þe
.iij. þ*at* þe eende of þe boones whiche þ*at* be*n* in þe ioyntis schulden .3.
haue a softere confutacio*u*n[2] in her ioyntis / þe fourþe, þ*at* he schulde .4.
fulfille þe office of þe boon to susteyne a brawne, meuynge a membre
þ*at* haþ noon boon, as þe ou*er* lid of þe i3e / þe fifþe: for it is .5.
nessessarie a gristil to ben *in* place, þ*at* is nou3t ful hard as þe þrote
bolle; for þe eende of þe þrote bolle is gristeli / þe .vj.: for it is .6.
nessessarie su*m*me lymes to han a sustentacio*u*n, and applicacio*u*n,[3]
þ*at* is foldynge, to be streyned & drawen abrod as þe nose þrillis &
þe gristile of þe eere.

[2] *confutacioun*, erroneously for *confricacioun*. See below.
[3] *applicacioun*. Read *a plicacioun*.

---

fete, & so*m*me þ*ere* ben þ*at* þe rou*n*dnesse of on bon my3te entre in Add. MS.
to þe holwenesse of þe o þ*ere* bon & naþeles scholde no3t lakken hys 12,056.
meffynge, as þe schuld*er* bonys, & the hepe bonys. Þ*o*u maiste fynde
how many bonys þ*ere* ben in þe secu*n*de tretys where schal be tolde
plenerliche—þe Anotamye of *con*simile me*m*brys of alle [4]þe body, [4 fol. 40 *a*]
from þe hed to þe fot. A grustyH ys cold & drye, & is nesschere
þe*n*ne a bon, & hardere þa*n*ne þe flesch, & in þe flesch̄ hath̄ vi
helpynges. ¶ Helpynge þe grustel. The ffurste þ*at* þ*ere* scholde be
a Mene, bytwene þe vtt*er* ende of þe hard bon, & þe nessch̄ flesch̄.
¶ þe secunde, þ*at* þe harde scholde no3t hurt þe nessche, namlyche,
in þe tyme of *com*prission, & in þe tyme of smytynge. ¶ The
þridde, þ*at* þe ende of þe bonys, whiche þ*at* ben in þe Iunttes
scholde han a softe*re* *con*fricatio*u*n in here Iunttes. ¶ þe iiij, þ*at*
he scholde fulfille þe office of þe bon, to susteyne a brawne meff-
ynge, a me*m*bre þ*at* haþ no*n* bon, as þe ov*er*e lyd of þe ey3e. ¶ þe
v. for his necessarie a grustyH to be[5] in a place þ*at* ys no3t ful
hard, as þe þrote bolle; ffor þe ende of þe þrote bolle ýs grustlye.
¶ þe vi. for it is necessarie some lymes to han a sustentacio*u*n &
a plicacio*u*n, þ*at* is a foldynge, to be streynde & drawe*n* abrod, as þe
nese þrylles & þe grustle of þe ere.

[5] *no3t* above line.

3rd Member, ligamentis. [1 lf. 11]

Lygament is cold & drie, and goþ out of þe boones & haþ þe foorme of a senewe. & he may be bowid, but he feliþ nouȝt; & he [1]haþ foure helpingis / þe firste is, þat he knyttiþ oon boon wiþ anoþer / it is nessessarie, þat oon boon be knytt wiþ anoþer, þat many boonys myȝten make oon bodi as oon boon, & neuereþelatter ech membre myȝte meue bi him-silf, & þerfore þe ligament is as bowable & incensible / for if þat it hadde be censible, þei myȝten nouȝt han I-susteyned þe traueile & þe meuynge of þe ioyntis / & if þat he hadde be inflexible as a boon, of whom he comeþ of, oon lyme myȝte not han meued wiþouten anoþer / þe secunde help is, þat he is ioyned wiþ senewis to make cordis & brawnes / þe þridde help is þat he schulde be a restynge place to summe senewis / þe fourþe þat bi him þe membris, þat ben wiþinne þe bodies, schulden ben y-teied, þe whiche þat neden hangynge.

The four uses of Ligament.
.1. It binds the bones together,
.2. it joins with Sinews to make *Cordes*, i.e. Tendons and Muscles,
.3. it is a resting-place for Sinews,
.4. it sustains the parts within the body.

A corde[2] is cold & drie, & he comeþ from þe brayne, eiþer from þe mucha[3]; þat is þe marie of þe rigge boones // From þe brayn comen .vij. peire cordes. & þei ben clepid sensible senewis / ffrom þe nucha þer comen xxx peire cordis & oon bi him silf & þei ben mouable / And alle þe cordis þat comen of þe [4]brayn & nucha, haþ

4th Member, Sinews (Nerves). They start from the brain or Spinal Cord.

[4 lf. 11, bk. sign. 2iij]

[2] There is a constant confusion in all the mediæval medical books between nerves and sinews. See further Notes.

[3] *mucha*, an error for *nucha;* med. Lat. *nucha*. Dufr.: postera pars colli. Fr. nuque. Littré gives references from the 14th cent. for the signification, marrow. See Notes.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

Ligamente is colde & drye, & goþ out of þe bonys, & haþ þe forme of a ȝenewe, & he may be bowyde, but he feliþ noȝt, & he haþ iiij helpynges. þe fyrste ys þat he knytte on bon *with* an o*þere*. It is necessarie þat o bon be knytte *with* an o*þere*, þat manye bonys myȝte make on body as on bon, & nev*ere* þe lat*er* eche mem*b*re myȝte meffyn by hym-self*e*, & þ*ere* fore þe ligamente was bowable & insensible; for ȝif þat yt had y-be sensible, þey myȝte nouȝt have susteynde the travaylle & þe meffynge of þe lunttys; and ȝif þat he hadde be inflexible as a bon, of whom þat he comyþ of, [5]on lyme myȝte noȝt han meflyde *with*outen an o*þere*. þe secunde help ys, þat he ys joynede *with* ȝenewys to make cordys & brawne. þe þridde helpynge ys, þat he scholde ben a restynge place to summe senewys. þe fourþe, þat be hym þe mem*b*ris þat ben *with*ynne þe body scholde ben tyede, whiche þat nedyþ hongynge.

[5 fol. 40 *b*]

A corde ys colde & drye, & he comyth from þe brayn o*þere* fro þe nuca, þat ys þe marye of þe rugge bonys. ¶ From þe brayn comeþ vij peire cordys, & þey buþ y-clepyde sensible ȝenewys, from þe nuca þere comyth xxx peire cordys, and on by hym selffen & þey buþ mevable; & alle þe cordys þat comyth of þe brayn, & þe nuca

bope felynge & meuynge. & þe cordis ben white oute, bowable, strong & towȝ. & of her kynde þei bryngen meuynge & felynge to lymes. & for þat it is long & dyuydiþ[1] alle þe parties of þe senewis *[in þe secunde tretys y schal ordeyne Anotamye of ȝenewes & here place] as þei ligge; in þe whiche placis þou must be war whanne þou schalt kutte eiþer brenne / whanne þat we schulen ordeyne anotamie of official membris & of her woundis / Official membris is to seie: a fyngir, a ioynt, an hand, eiþer a foot *[ore] opere lymes of office /

Nerves of Feeling spring from the Brain: those of Motion from the Spinal Cord.

Official membris.

Arteries ben hoote nouȝt of her owne kynde, but for þe hoot blood & lijf þat goiþ in hem from þe herte. Of her kynde þei ben colde & drie & þei han two clopis, outcept oon þat goiþ to þe lungis þe ynnere corde is stronger & grettere, þat he mowe wiþholde a meuable mater & an hoot. & her bigynnynge is in þe lift side of þe herte. & þere bigynnen two arteries; oon goiþ to þe lunge & haþ but oon coote and sprat in þe same lunge, & þere endiþ & bringiþ blood to þe lunge, bi whom he is norischid, & spirit of lijf, and þat he myȝte bringe from þe lunge eir to þe herte for to entempre þe fumosite of hete of þe herte. & þis arterie[2] is [3]y-clepid venales. & it [3 lf. 12]

5th Member, *Arteries* spring from the heart, and have two coats,

[1] & dyuydiþ] a mistake for *to dyvyde*. Latin: De divisione vero membrorum multum longa est doctrina.

[2] *Arteria venalis*, Pulmonary vein. It was taken to be an artery, as it carries arterial blood. See *Vicary's Anatomie*, ed. Furnivall, p. 58, note 1.

---

habbeþ bope felynge & meffynge. & þe cordys ben whyte, bowable, stronge, & towȝ; & of here kynde þey brynge meffynge & felynge to lymes. & for þat hit is longe to devydeþ alle þe partyes of ȝenewes; *in þe secunde tretys y schal ordeyne Anotamye of ȝenewes & here place,* as þey ligge; in þe whiche place þou moste be ware, whenne þou schalt kutte opere brenne, whenne þat we schulle ordeyne Anotamye of official membris & of here woundes. Official membre ys to sigge: a ffynger, a Ioynt, an hand, opere a fote *ore opire lymes of ofyce.

Add. MS. 12,056.

Arteries beþ hote, nouȝt for here owne kynde, but for þe hote blod & lyf þat goþ in ham from þe herte. Of here kynde þey ben colde & drye, & þey han tweye clopes, outsepte on þat goth to þe longes. þe innore cote [4]is grettere & strengere, þat he mowe withholde a Mevable matere & an hote. & here bygynnynge is of þe lyfte syde of þe herte. & þere bygynneþ tweye Arteries, on goþ to þe longe & haþ bot on cote & sprat in þe same longe, & þere endyth & bryngeþ blod to þe longe, by whom he ys y-norysschyde, & spirit of lyf, & þat he myȝte brynge from þe longe eire[5] to þe herte, for to entempren þe fumose hete of þe same herte. & þis Arterie ys clepyde [4 lf. 81]

[5] MS. *eipere*.

save *Arteria venalis*, and that has but one.

is a maner veyne, for as myche as he ne haþ but oon coote, and þerfore he is þe more obedient to be drawe abrood þoruȝ out alle þe lungis; & also þat þe blood þat norischiþ þe lungis myȝte liȝtly swete out of þis arterie / þe toþer arterie þat comeþ out of þe lift- 4
side of þe herte haþ two cootis, bi cause þat oon myȝt not aȝenstonde þe strenkþe of þe spiritis; & also þat, þat is wiþinne þe arterie, is

The uses of Arteries: .1. to bring cold air to the heart; .2. to cast out the fumosity; .3. to carry life to the whole body.

ful derworþe & nediþ greet kepinge / þer ben þre helpingis of þe arteries: oon is þat cold eir myȝte bi hem be drawe & I-brouȝt to 8
þe herte whanne þe arterie is drawe abrod. þe secunde is, þat þe fumosite myȝte be cast out whanne he is constreyned / þe þridde is, þat þe spirit of lijf myȝte be brouȝt bi hem to al þe bodi / þese arteries ben deuydid many weies; whos dyuysiouns man mai nouȝt 12
conseyue bi his witt, ne þei ben nouȝt dredful to[1] surgiens craft, but whanne þou schalt drede þe arteries I schal telle þee in her placis /

6th Member, vaynes. [2 lf. 12, bk.]

Veynes bi cause of her bodies ben deemed cold & drie; for þe 16
blood þat is withynne hem þei ben deemed hoot; & alle þe veynes han her bi[2]gynnynge at þe lyuere, in þe which lyuere .ij. veynes han pryncipal bigynnynge / oon veyne bigynneþ of þe holowȝ side of þe lyuere.

Veins spring from the liver.

& is clepid porta[3]—þat is a ȝate / & her office is to drawe *[Chilum] 20

[1] *a* erased. [3] *Vena Porta.* See *Vicary*, p. 22, note 1.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

*venalis*, & yt is a manere veyne, ffor as myche as he may haue but o cote, & þerefore he is þe more obedient to be drawen abrod þorwe out alle þe longes & also þat þe blod þat norysschith þe longe myȝte liȝtlekere swete out of þis arterie. þe opere Artery, þat 24
comyth out of þe lefte syde of þe herte, haþ two cotys, because þat on myȝt noȝt ageyne stonde þe strengþe of þe spirites, and also þat þat is wiþynne þe Arterye is ful derwarde & nediþ gret kepynge. þere ben þre helpynges of þe Arteries: on is þat colde eyre by hem 28
myȝte be drawe & y-brouȝt to þe herte, whenne þe arterye is drawe abrod; þe secunde ys pat þe fumosite myȝt be caste out, whenne sche is *con*streynyde; þe þridde ys þat þe spirite of lyf myȝte be brouȝt by hem to alle þe body. þese Arteries beþ devydyde many 32
weyes, whose divisiones Man may noȝt *con*seyve by hys wyt, ne þey ne beþ noȝt dredful to surgiens crafte; but whenne þou schalt drede þe arterye i schal tellen þe in here places.

Veynes by cause of here bodyes beþ y-demyde colde & drye; but 36
for þe blod þat is withynne hem þey beþ y-demyde hote, & alle þe
[4 fol. 41 *b*] veynes han here [4]bygynnynge of þe lyffere, in þe whiche lyffere two veynes han pryncipal begynnynge. On veyne bygynneþ of þe holwe syde of þe lyvere, & ys y-clepyde **Porta**, þat ys a ȝatte, & here ofyce 40
is to drawe **chilum** from þe stomake & þe guttes by mene of þe

fro þe stomak & þe guttis bi mene of þe veynes miseraices[1]; & þilke chilum spredi þoru3 al þe lyuere bi mene of veynes capillares / Chilum[2] is þe licour of þe mete, whanne it goiþ out of þe stomak & þe guttes / Veynis miserak[1] ben smale veynes þat comen out of þe veyne þat is clepid porta & cleueþ on þe stomak & þe guttis / Venes capillares, þat ben veynes as it were heers of a mannes heed / The Mesaraic veins bring Chilum to the Portal Vein.

After hem comeþ panniclis—þat is to seie smal clooþ, þat is maad of sutil þredis of senewis, veynes & arteries / wherfore þei ben colde & drie & censible / & þei han þre helpingis / þe firste is: þat þei moun bynde manye þingis in oon foorme, as þe panicle of þe heed byndiþ seuene boones / þe secunde Iuuament is: þat þei hangen & bynden summe membris wiþ opere as þe reynes to þe rigge & þe maris to þe maris[3] to þe rigge / þe þridde helpinge is: þat þe membris þat ben incensible bi her kynde, bi þe panniclis þat wrieþ hem velen bi accident: as þe lungis, þe lyuere, & þe splene, & þe reynes. Þes lymes bi her kynde han no felynge, but what þei felen it is bi accidens of þe pannicle þat wrieþ hem. 7th Member, panikelles. the fleshy membrane. The uses of the Pannicle. .1. .2. .3. [4 ff. 13]

Þe[5] fleisch is not hoot, but it is moist & haþ þre maner lijknes: oon is a symple fleisch, & his helpinge is to fulfille þe voide placis 8th Member Flesh. 3 Maner of fleisch.**

[1] *Veynis miserak.* See *Vicary*, p. 66, note 7.
[2] *Chilum.* See *Vicary*, p. 68, note 2.
[3] MS. þe maris to þe maris to þe rigge. The second *maris* is cancelled.
[5] Latin: Caro vero calida est et humida.

---

**veynes miscraykus**; þilke chylum spredeþ þorwe al þe lyffere by mene of **veynes Capillares**. **Chilum** ys þe licoure of mete & of þe drynke, whenne yt goþ out of þe stomake & þe guttes. Veynes miserayke beþ smale veynes, þat comyth̄ out of þe veyne þat is y-clepyde **porta**, & clevyth̄ on þe stomake & þe gottys. Veynes capillarys þat beþ veynes, as yt were herys of a Mannes hed. Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ After hem comyth̄ pannyceles, þat ys to sigge, a smal cloth̄, þat ys mad of sotyH̄ þredys of synwis veynes & arteries, where fore þey ben colde & dryȝe & sensible, & þey han þre helpynges. Þe firste is þat they mowe bynden manye þynges in on forme, as þe pannicle of þe hed bynde vii bonys; þe secunde Iuvament is þat þey hongen & bynden somme membrys with opere, as þe reyns to þe rugge & þe marys to þe rugge bon; þe þrydde helpynge ys þat some membrys þat beþ insensible by here kynde, by þe pannycles þat wreyeþ hem ffeliþ by accydent, as þe longes, þe lyffere, & þe splene, & þe reynes; þese lymes by here kynde haþ non felynge, but what þat þey felyn it ys by Accident of þe pannycle þat wreyeþ hem.

Þe flesch̄ is noȝt hot, but yt is moist, & haþ þre manere lyknesse; on ys symple flesch, & hys helpynge ys to fulfylle þe voyde placys

1. Simple flesh fills up hollows.
2. Glandulous flesh turns blood into milk, and makes sperm into spittle.
3. Brawny or muscular flesh.

of smale lymes to brynge hem to a good schap, & þat ech hard lyme schulde nouȝt hirte oþer wiþ confucacioun[1] togidere / Anoþer maner fleisch þer is þat is glandelose, þat is as it were accornis,[2] & his Iuuament is þat he turne[3] humedites, þat is to seie moistnes to her heete; as þe glandelose fleisch of wommans brestis þe which þat turneþ þe blood þat is drawen from þe maris into mylk; & þe glandelose fleisch of þe ballockis, þat turneþ þe blood into sperme / & þe glandelose fleisch of þe chekis þat engendriþ spotil / þe þridde maner fleisch is a fleisch þat is in brawnys, þat is clepid a brawn fleisch, for he is medlid wiþ sutil þredis of cordis, as I schal telle after þe whiche helpingis schal be told in þe [4]anotamie of þe brawn.

[4 lf. 13, bk.]

9th Member, Skin. It is temperate.

At þe laste is þe skyn þat is temperat in al her qualitees; & it is maad of smale þredis of veynes, senewis, & arteries, þat makiþ him sensible, & ȝeueþ him liȝf & worching, þat ben gouernouris of al þe bodi. & þe skyn is maad temperat, for he schulde knowe hoot, coold, moist, & drie, soft, hard, scharp, & smoþe / & if þat þe skyn were as sencible as a senewe, þanne a man myȝte not dwelle in erþe ne in hoot eir; ne þe skyn of þe fyngris endis þe whiche þat is more temperat þan ony oþir skyn of þe bodi ne schulde nouȝt be a

[1] *confucacioun.* Addit. *confricacioun.* See page 23, note 2.

[2] *accornis*, glandes.

[3] Latin: eius juvamentum est, ut convertat humiditates ad eius colorem. The English translator read: calorem.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5 fol. 42 *a*]

of smale lymes, to bryngen hem to a gode schappe, & þat iche harde lyme [5]ne scholde nouȝt hurten oþere with confricacioun togedire. An oþere manere flesch̄ ys þat is glandelose, þat ys as lyt were achcharnes, & hys Iuvamente is þat he turnyth̄ vmydites to here hete: as þe glandelose flesch̄ of wommans brestys, whyche þat turnyth̄ þe blod þat ys drawe from þe marys into þe mylk, þe glandelose flesch of þe ballokes, þat turnyth̄ þe blod into sperme, & þe glandelose flesch off the chekys þat engendreþ spotel. Þe þridde manere of flesch̄ ys a flesch̄ þat is in brawnys, þat ys y-clepede a brawny flesch̄, ffor he ys medlyde wiþ sotyl þredys of cordys, as y schal tellyn aftere, whose helpynge schal be tolde in þe Anotamye of þe brawne.

At þe laste is þe schyn, þat is temperat in al here qualite, & is y-mad of smale þredys of veynes, synwes, & Arteries, þat makeþ hym sensible, and geveþ hym lyf and norisschynge, þat he be governoure of alle þe body. & þe skyn ys y-mad temperat, for he scholde knowe hot, colde, moyste & drye, softe & hard, scharpe & smeþe; & ȝif þe skyn were as sensible as a ȝenewe, a man myȝte noȝt dwellen in colde eyre, ne in hote eyre; ne þe skyn of þe fyngres endys, whiche þat ys more temperat þenne eny oþere skyn of þe body, ne scholde

good demere in knowynge hoot, cold, hard, scharp, soft, eiþer neische.

Brawnes þouȝ þat þei be maad of mater medlid, neþeles þei ben rekened among membris consimiles, for þei comen to þe making of membris officials / Brawn is maad of fleisch, senewe, & ligamentis, & þei ben instrument voluntarie meuynge. þe senewe þat comeþ fro þe brayn, & þe nucha & goiþ forþ to meue þe lymes is medlid wiþ a ligament / & whanne þe senewe & þe ligament ben medlid togidere, it is clepid a corda / & þe corde is maad for þre skilis. þe firste[1] for a symple sinewe is to cen²sible; þe senewe bi him-silf myȝt not suffre gret traueile & meuynge, but þe felowschipe of þe ligament þat is incensible lettiþ þe felynge of þe senewe, & bringiþ him to a profitable temperaunce / þe senewe haþ .ij. oþere defautis: neischenesse and liȝtnesse. But þo .ij. defautis þe medlynge of þe ligament fulfilliþ[3]; for þe neischenes is temperid & strenkþid, & þe litilnes is maad more. þe neischnes comeþ of þe brayn for it is myche, & þe litilnes comeþ of þe nucha, for it is litil. þat þat is maad of þis nerf & þis ligament is clepid a corde; þe which þat meueþ þe lymes to þe wille of þe soule, whanne þat it is schortid

9th Member, Muscles are instruments of moving. Cords are made from Sinews and Ligaments,

[2 lf. 14]

the Sinew alone being too sensible,

too soft,

and too small. cordis.

[1] *þe firste* in margin.

[3] *fulfilliþ*, supplet. See *Cath. Angl.*, p. 145, *to Fulfylle*, supplere vicem Alterius.

---

nozt ben a gode demere in knowynge hot, cold, hard oþere scharpe, softe oþere nessche. Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ Brawnys þowȝ þey ben mad of matere y-medlyde, nevere þe latere þey beþ y-reknyde amonge membrys consimiles, for þey comen to þe makynge off Membrys-officiales. Brawne ys y-mad of fflesch, ⁴ȝenewe, & ligamente, & þey ben Instrument off voluntarie mevynge. þe ȝenewe þat comyth from þe brayn & þe nuca, & goþ forþ to meve the lymes, ys y-medlyde with a ligamente, & whenne þe ȝenewe & þe ligamente beþ medlyde togedyre, yt ys clepyde a corde, & the corde ys y-made for þre skylles: þe ffurste for a symple senewe ys to sensible, & þe ȝenewe by hym-self ne myȝte nozt suffren to grete travaylle & mevynge, but þe felawschipe of þe ligamente, þat ys insensible, lutliþ þe felynge of þe synwe, and bryngeþ hym to a profitable temperaunce. þe ȝenewe hadde tweyne oþere defautes: nesschenesse & litylnesse, but þo tweyne defautes, þe medlynge of þe ligament ffulfilleþ; for the neschenesse ys entempred & y-strengthyde, and þe lytelnesse ys y-made more. The nesschenesse comyth of þe brayn, ffor it ys nessche; and þe lytelnesse comeþ of þe Nuca, for it ys lytel. þat þat is mad of þis nerff & þis ligamente ys clepyde a corde, whiche þat meviþ þe lymes to wyl of þe soule,

[4 fol. 42 b]

Muscles are made from cords and flesh.

ou*þer* drawe*n* after *þat* þe lyme bouwiþ. To þis[1] corde, þer is asocied a symple *[fflesch̄] for to make a brawn for þre *profitis* / þe firste
.1. *profiʒt*ᵗ *þat* is in drawynge & wiþdrawynge ofᵗ þe corde, þe fleisch schulde be as a pelewe vpon þe which he myʒt reste / þe secu*n*de,
.2. *þat* þe fleisch *þat* is neische & moist schulde kepe þe corde, þatᵗ he drie nouʒt in her meuynge / þe þridde, *þat* þe makynge of lymes
.3. were þe more schaploker./ þe brawn is m*aad* bowynge as a bowe
[² lf. 14, bk.] *þat* is bent; & for þe kynde wolde kepe þis complexiou*n*, he cloþide
When the Cords enter the Muscles, they are divided into many threads. ²þe brawn wiþ a pa*n*nicle / þe corde wha*n*ne he entriþ into þe brawn is departid into many smale þredis, & þei ben clepid villes[3]—þat is to seie wrappingis. & þese villes be*n* ofᵗ .iij. ma*ner*: in lenkþe bi þe which ve*r*tu, þatᵗ drawiþ haþ myʒt, in brede, bi þe which ve*r*tu *þat* castide out haþ myʒt / in þwert ouer bi þe which ve*r*tu *[þat] *with* halt haþ myʒt / & atᵗ þe eendis of þe brawn þilke þredis ben gaderid togidere to make a corde, aftir *þat* it is nessessarie / many cordis ei*þer* brawnes to ben engendrid. *&* official membris be*n* m*aad* ofᵗ þese consimile membris, þe whiche þat be*n* instrumen*t*es to resonable soule. And in þe ij. tretis I wole telle þe anotamie ofᵗ lymes of office.

[1] Lat.: Huic autem chordæ—associatur caro simplex. Comp. Add. MS.
[3] *villes*. Lat. fila.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

whe*n*ne *þat* it is schortid o*þer*e y-drawe, after*e* *þat* þe lyme bowyth to þis corde. ffor *þer*e ys Asosyed a symple *fflesch̄ forto maken a brawne for þre *proffytes*: þe furste profyt, *þat* hoþe in drawynge & wiþdrawynge of þe corde, the flesch̄ scholde be as a pylwe, vp on whom he myʒte reste; þe secu*n*de cause, *þat* þe flesch̄ *þat* is nessche
[⁴ fol. 43 *a*] & moyst schulde kepe*n* þe corde, þat ⁴sche dreyʒede noʒt in here mevynge; þe þridde, þat þe makynge of lymes were þe more schaplokore. þe brawne is made bowynge, as a bowe *þat* ys y-bent; & for þat kynde wolde kepe þys *compositiou*n, he clothyde þe brawne wyþ a pa*n*nycle. þe corde whe*n*ne he entrith̄ in to *þat* brawne, ys departyde in to many smale þredys, & þey ben clepyde vylles, *þat* ys to sugge, wrabbynges. *&* þese villes bene of þre maners, in lengþe—by whom vertue *þat* drawe*þ* haþ myʒt, in brede—by whom vertu *þat* castyth̄ out haþ myʒt, in twart ofere—by whom vertu *þat* wiþhalt haþ myʒt; & at þe ende of þe brawne þilke þredys be*þ* gadride to gedre to maken a corde, after *þat* it is necessarie, many cordys o*þer*e brawnys to ben engendride. *&* official membrys ben y-mad of þese *con*simile m*em*brys, whiche þat be*þ* instrument to resonable sowle. And in þe secu*n*de tretys y wyl telle*n* þe anotamye of lymes of office.

## The firste chapitle //

¶ Capm. jm

¶ þe .iij. techinge is of difference of woundis & of generall cures / We schulen undrestonde þat wounde, & old wounde, festre & cankre woundid, & boon out of ioynte, & a boon to-broken, & apostyme, alle þese ben clepid vndoynge of þat þat is hool. & alle þese sijknessis, & many oon oþir as weel, moun falle to consimile membris as to official membris / vunnus is a newe wounde / vlcus is an old rotid wounde. [1]I schal tellen in her placis þe difference of festre & cankre & apostyme; plage comounly is taken for an oold wounde, & ofte tymes we fynde þat an old wounde is clepid vulnus, as ypocras seiþ / vulnera anua necesse est in eis os taliefieri[2] & cicatrices concauas fieri: þat is to seie, it is nedful[3] þat þe boon in an oold wounde to be rotid & þe cicatrices to be holowȝ / Cicatrice is þe place of þe schynboon[4] þe wounde, whanne þat it is hool / Summe woundis ben symple, & summe compound / in two maner he is clepid a symple wounde / oon maner, for he haþ not lost of fleisch / anoþer maner for he haþ noon oþir sijknesse wiþ him, ne is nouȝt distemperid / A wounde compound is clepid contrarie to him þat is symple / but boþe symple & compoundis sumtyme is in þe fleisch or

de vulneribus

[1 leaf 15]

ypocras

Wounds are either woundis sempell or compound,

[2] Read *tabefieri*. [3] *it is nedful* in margin.
[4] *schynboon*, read *schyn above*. See below.

---

## The ffurste Chapitle of þe þridde techynge is of difference of woundes & olde woundes & off generall cures.

Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ We schulle vndirstonde þat wounde, olde wounde, ffestre, cancre y-woudyde, a bon out of loynt, a bon tobroken, Apostume, alle þese ben y-clepyde vndoynge of þat þat ys hol, & alle þese seknesse & manye oþere as wel mowe fallen to consimile membrys. as to oficial membris. Vulnus is a newe wounde. Vlcus ys an olde rotyde wounde. I schaH [5]tellen in here place þe dyfference of festre & cancre & apostemys. Plage comynliche ys y-taken of an olde wonde; and ofte tyme we fynden, þat an olde wounde ys y-clepyde Vulnus, as Ipocres seiþ: *Vulnera Annua necesse est in eis os tabefieri & cicatrices concavas fieri.* ¶ That is to sugge, it ys ned, þat þe bon in an olde wounde to be rotyd, & þe Cicatrices to be holwe. Cicatrice ys þe place of þe skyn above the wounde, whenne þat yt is hol. Some wounde buþ symple & some ben compoñyde. In tweye manere he ys clepyde a symple wounde. On manere, for he haþ noȝt leste of flesch; an oþere maner, for he haþ *non* oþere seknesse with hym, ne is noȝt distempride. A wounde componed ys y-clepyde contrarye to hym þat is symple. But boþe symple & also com-

[5 fol. 43 *b*]

in þe senewe, or in þe boon, or in þe veynes, or in þe arterie / also þese
and have different causes, both internal
woundis han dyuers cause. Summe comen fro wiþinne of þe malice,
eiþer of to greet multitude of humouris. *[forto gret multitude of
humores] oþirwhile tobrekiþ þe membre & wiþholdiþ & woundiþ
him / Cold matere streyneþ, drie mater kuttiþ, moisture wiþoute
[1 lf. 15, bk.] mater makiþ no wounde, but selden with [1]mater, but he drawe þe
and external. lyme to brode. & also þe cause wiþoute[2] mai be dyuers oþirwhile
wiþ a swerd eiþir wiþ a þing þat kuttiþ along, oþerwhile wiþ a knyf
or wiþ a spere or an arowe þat prickiþ, & summe ben maad wiþ a staf
or wiþ a stoon eiþir wiþ fallynge, & summe ben maad wiþ bityngе of
an hound ouþir a wood hound; & alle þese ben diuers aftir þe dyuersite
The object of healing is to close a wound, and to restore what has been lost.
of her causis; & also þe maner of helynge is dyuers / Al þe intencioun
of helynge of woundis is for to sowden or to helen & to restoren
þat, þat is departid, þe which þat mai not ouer al be doon / for if
Nota
þat membris of office ben kutt of, þei moun neuere be restorid, ne
noon of þe consimile membris mai be restorid, if he be doon awey:
Bones, ligaments, and similar parts cannot be restored;
as boonis, pelliculis, gristlis, ligamentis & skyn / For þe cause of
her generacioun is þe sperme of þe fadir & of þe modir, as I tolde
tofore / but in place of þing þat is I-lore, kynde restoriþ þat, þat is
moost conuenient to þe place; but fleisch mai be restorid bi cause

[2] *The cause wiþoute*, causa exterior.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.
ponyd some tyme is in þe flesch̄ opere in þe synwe oþer in bon,
opere in veyne, opere in arterie. Also þese wondes han dyverse
causes. Some comen from wiþynne of þe malice, opere of to gret
multytude of humores; *forto gret multitude of humores opere while
tobrekyth̄ þe membre, þat wiþholdiþ & woundiþ hym cold matere
streyneþ, drye matere kutteþ, moistnesse withouten matere makeþ no
wounde, but selden with matere, but he drawiþ þe lyme to brode.
And also þe cause wiþout may be dyverse, oþerwhyle with a swerd,
ore with a þynge þat kutteþ alonge, oþerwhile with a knyff, opere a
[3 fol. 44 a] spere, opere an arwe þat [3]pryketh̄, & somme ben made wiþ a stafe,
opere with a ston, opere with fallynge, & somme ben mad with byt-
inge of an hound, opere of a wod hounde; & alle þese ben dyverse,
after þe dyverste of here cause; & also þe manere of helynge ys
dyverse. Alle þe entensioun of helynge of woundes, ys forto sowdyn
& to helyn, & to restoren þat þat is departyde, whiche þat may noȝt
overe al be don. Ffor ȝif þat membres of offyce ben kutte of, þey
mowe nevere ben restoryd; ne non of þe consimile membres may be
restoryde, & he be don awey: as bonys, pellicules, grustles, liga-
mentis & schyn. Ffor þe cause of here generacioun is þe sperme of
þe ffadire & þe modere, as y tolde tofore; but in place of thynge
þat is lore, kynde restoryth̄ þat þat is most convenient to þat place;
but the flesch̄ may be restoryd, by cause þat þe blod ys engendred

þat' þe blood is engendrid al day in us, & þe blood is þe mater of' þe fleisch / & sum*m*e seien þat veynes, arteries, & senewis myȝt not' be restorid as þei were tofore; but þei mou*n* [1] be restorid as boonys be*n* / But Galion and Auicen & I þat' am expert' here seiynge,[2] we[3] seie þat' þei mou*n* be restorid wiþ ver*i* consolidacio*un*, wha*n*ne þat' her kuttynge is litil, & wha*n*ne þat' þe senewis þat' ben newe kutt' &[4] soude aȝe*n*; but' þei mou*n* not' be consoudid, wha*n*ne þat' her kuttynge is myche & greet'; & resou*n* graun*t*iþ it' / Senewis bi kynde be*n* neische & viscouse; & þ*er*fore þei mou*n*[5] ben consoudid, & þe veynes & þe arteries mou*n* be consoudid bi resou*n* of' þe blood þat' is *in* hem. I þenke to ordeyne ech chapitle bi him-silf' after þe dyuersite of' lymes & of' placis, þe whiche þat' þei ben maad ynne / & I wole bigynne at' a symple wou*n*de ma*a*d in fleisch /

fleish, veins, and arteries can be.

[1 leaf 16]

G. A.

vaynes & arteres may be consouded but not senewis.

## þe secunde chapitle of þe þridde techinge / ijo. co.

NOw we wolen trete of' a wou*n*de maad in fleisch. We wolen bigynne at' a symple wou*n*de maad wiþ knyf' or wiþ swerd, or spere or arowe, or wiþ ony oþir þing' semblablele to hem.

Of wounde maad in fleisch.

[2] *I þat am expert here seiynge.* Lat.: ego qui sum expertus eorum dicta.

[3] *we*, added above line. [4] *&*, mistake for *ben*.

[5] *not*, erroneously added above line.

---

al day in vs, & þe blod ys þe matere of flesch̄; & somme suggen þat veynes, synwes, & arteries myȝte nouȝt be restoryde as þey were tofore; but þey mowe be restoryd as bonys buþ. But Galien & Avycene, & I þat am expert here suggynge, suggen þat þey mowe be restoryde with verrey consolidacioun, whanne þat here kuttynge ys lyteH, & whenne þat þe synwys þat buþ newe kutte beþ so wyde aȝeyne; but þey mowe noȝt be consouded, whanne þat here kuttynge ys gret & myche; & resoun grauntyth̄ yt. Synwys by kynde buþ nessche and viscose; & þerefore þey mowe ben consouded. þe veynes & þe arteries mowe be consouded by resoun of þe blod þat ys in hem. I þynke to ordeynen eche Chapitell [6] be hym selven, aftere þe dyversite of lymes & of placys, whyche þat þey buþ y-made yn; & y wyl begynne at a symple wounde y-mad in flesch̄.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[6 fol. 44 b]

## ¶ þe secunde Chapitell off þe thridde techynge off the ffurst tretis is of cure of a wounde y-mad in fflesch.

Now we willen treten of a wounde y-makyd in fflesch̄. We wylle begynne at a symple wounde, y-mad wiþ knyff' opere wiþ swerd ore spere, opere with arwe, opere with enye opere thynge

Simple wounds, if painless, will close if only bandaged,

Bynde togideris þilke wou*n*de *with* a boond þat[1] closiþ þe wou*n*de togideris, & kepe þilke wou*n*de from swellynge wiþ þe whi3t[1] of[1] an ey leid aboue þe wou*n*de, & lete þe wou*n*de be *in* reste; & *þer* nediþ noon

[1 lf. 16, bk.] o*þer* cure, namely, [1]whanne þe wou*n*de is wiþoute akynge; but, & *þer* be in þe wounde greet akynge, þanne it is a tokene, þat *þer* is a senewe prickid vndir þe wou*n*de, ei*þer* a pa*n*nicle þat is bitwene þe fleisch and þe boon; & þanne *þer* is ano*þer* cure, as I schal telle *in* þe chapitle

Naracio. of pu*n*cture of[1] a senewe þat I haue heelid a man þat[2] was *[sefenty 3ere olde þat was] smyte wiþ a spere þoru3 þe fleisch of þe buttoke,

Ego curauy homo. as has been shown in the case of an old man. bi þe lenkþe of a fote, *[& more] but þilke wou*n*de touchide no senewe, & þat I wiste sikirliche, for he hadde noon akynge / I heeld þe wounde open aldai wiþ a litil smal tent & a schort, þat I my3te wite, if[1] þat he schulde aken on þe morowe, & I comau*n*dide hi*m* to reste / & on þe morowe I foond noon inflacio*u*n ne akynge; & þa*n*ne I took awey þe tent & lete þe wou*n*de closen, & so comau*n*dide I hi*m* to reste þe secu*n*de dai / I*n* þe þridde day he was hool. & if a wounde were ma*a*d wiþ a swerd or wiþ ony þing[1] þat bitiþ *in* lenkþe,

Treat slight wounds with puluis *consolidativus* anoo*n* þou must loke if[1] þe wou*n*de be so litil þat he nede no sowynge, & þanne brynge þe *par*ties of þe wou*n*de togideris, þat it may be weel ioyned, & leie aboue þe wou*n*de a pou*n*dir m*a*ad oon p*ar*tie

[2] þat, scribal insertion.

---

Add. MS. 12,056. semblable to he*m*. Bynde togedyre þilke wou*n*de *with* a band þat close þe wou*n*de to gedire, & kepe þe wou*n*de fro*m* swellynge, *with* þe whyte of an eyȝe y-leyde aboue þe wou*n*de, & lete þat wou*n*de ben in reste, & þ*er*e nedyth none o*þ*ere cure, namlye, whanne þe wou*n*de ys *with*outen akynge; but and þ*er*e be in wou*n*de gret akynge, þanne þ*er*e is a tokne þat þere ys a synwe p*r*ikyde vndire þe wou*n*de, o*þ*ere a pa*n*nicle þat ys betwene þe flesch̄ & þe bon, & þanne þ*er*e ys al an o*þ*ere cure, as y schal telle in þe chapiteH of the pu*n*cture of a synwe. And y haue helyd a ma*n* þat was *sefenty ȝere olde, þat was y-smyte*n* *wi*þ a spere þorwe þe flesch̄ of þe buttok*e* by þe lengþe of a fote *& mor*e*, but þilke wonde touchyde no*n* synwe; & þat y wiste sykerliche, for he had no*n* akynge; y helde the wou*n*de opyn al a day, *with* a lyte smal tente & a schert þat y myȝte wyte, ȝif þat he scholde ake on þe morwe & I comau*n*dyde hy*m* to reste, and on þe morwe y fonde no*n* inflacio*n* ne akynge, & þe*n*ne y caste aweye þe tente & lete þe wou*n*de closen, & so y comau*n*dide hy*m* to reste, & wiþy*n*ne þe þridde day he was al hol. And ȝif þat a wou*n*de were mad wiþ

[3 fol. 45 *a*] a swerd, o*þ*ere *wi*þ eny þynge þat [3]kutteþ in lengþe, a ma*n* most loke ȝif þe wou*n*de be so litel þat he nede no*n* sowynge, & þe*n*ne brynge þe parties of þe wou*n*de togedyre, þat it may wel ben y-joynede, & leye above þe wou*n*de a poudere y-mad of on partye of ffranke-En-

of frankencense, & of two *par*ties[1] of' sandragou*n*,[2] & of' þre *par*ties of' quyk lym, & lete nou3t þe poudre entre bitwene *in* þe wou*n*de but' aboue, for þer schal no þing' entre *in* þe wou*n*de, & kepe þe *par*ties of þe wou*n*de þat ben brou3t togidere wiþ a plumaciol[3] .iij. corne*re*d *maad* of herdis or of towe in þis *maner*: ◁ oon bi þe sidis of þe wou*n*de, so þat boþe þilke plumaciols holde þe wounde þus iclosed[4]: ◁ ⊢ ▷ & ioyned togidere as it' was ioyned arst, or it were kutt / & bynde þe wou*n*de togidere aboue þe plumaciols wiþ a rolle þat goiþ ouerþwert aftir þis lettre .X. & take a ly*n*nen clooþ & wete hi*m* in two parties of þe white of an ey, in oon *par*tie of' oile of' rosis, þei ben togidere medlid, undir þe plumaciols, leid aboue þe wou*n*de þat is brou3t togidere, for to kepe þe[5] poudre; & do nou3t' awey þi medicyn til .iiij. daies ben goon, but' if þat þe wou*n*de ake or be to-swollen. & þa*n*ne bynde þe wou*n*de as it was biforn wiþ þe white of' an ey; oile, poudre, & plumaciols. But' if' þe wou*n*de were so myche, þat byndynge wolde nou3t suffice, or were kutt ouerþwert' ou*er* þe lyme, so þat þe *par*ties of þe lyme my3t nou3t' wel be [6]brou3t togideris, þa*n*ne sowe þe wou*n*de on þis maner / Ioyne þe lippis of' þe wounde, & be war þat noon oile *[ne dust] ne no þing' ellis, þat lettiþ consolidacio*u*n, falle bitwene þe lippis of' þe

[1 leaf 17]

Way of dressing a wound with compresses.

Nota

Large wounds and those which run athwart the limb are to be stitched

[6 ff. 17, bk.]

[2] *Sandragoun.* Sanguis draconis: the gum of the Dragon-tree. Kersey. 1706. See Notes. [3] *Plumaceoli:* Bolsters used by Surgeons. Kersey. 1706.
[4] *iclosed*, inserted in margin. [5] MS. *wounde*, cancelled.

---

sence, & of two *par*tyes of sandragou*m* & of þre parties of quyke-lyme, & lete no3t þe poudre entre wiþynne þe wou*n*de but above, for þere schal noþynge entre wiþynne þe wou*n*de, & kepe þe parties of þe wou*n*de þat buþ brou3t togedire *with* a plumacyole þre corneled y-made of hurdes o*per*e tow3 in þis manere ▷ on be þe sydes of þe wou*n*de, so þat boþe þilke plumacioles holde þe wou*n*de þus y-closyde ◁ | ▷ & joynde togedire, as yt was joyned ere þenne yt was ykutte; & bynde þe wou*n*de togedire abouen þe plumacioles, *with* a rolle þat goth twartoffere *after* þis lettere XX, & take a ly*n*nen cloth & wete hy*m* in two *par*ties of whyte of an eyze, & in on *par*tie of oyle of roses i-bete togedire, vndire þe plumacioles abofe þe wou*n*de, þat ys y-brow3t togedyre, forto kepe þe poudre, & do no3t awey þe medycine tyl foure dayes ben ago, but 3if þat þe wou*n*de ake, o*per*e ellys be to-swollyn; & þenne bynde þe wonde as yt was toforne, *with* þe whyte of þe eyze, oyle, poudre, & plumacioles. But 3if þe wou*n*de were so myche, þat þe byndynge wolde no3t suffice, o*per*e were kutte twart offere þe lyme, so þat þe *par*tyes of þe lyme my3t no3t wel be brow3t togedire, þa*n*ne sowe þe wou*n*de on þis manere: joyne þe lippes of þe wou*n*de togedire, & ware þat no*n* oyle *ne dust, ne noþynge ellys þat lattyd consolidacio*u*n, falle bytwene

Add. MS. 12,056.

with an acus triangulum.

Way of stitching a wound.

wounde, & haue a nedle þre cornerid, whos iȝe schal be holid on boþe sidis, so þat þe þred þat is in þe nedle may lie in þe holowȝ place, & þilke þred schal be twyned, & wiþoute knotte, & I-wexid, & þe lippis of þe wounde schal be sowid togideris; & þe þred schal be knytt wiþ two knottis in þe firste place, & in þe secunde place wiþ oon knotte; & so make as manye poyntis, as it' is nessessarie, & ech poynt schal be from oþir bi þe brede of' a litil fyngir, & streyne þe wounde with knottynge & þe sewynge of' þe lippis of þe wounde togidere þat he ake sumwhat, but' nouȝt to myche. & if þat þer nede mo poyntis to be þere þan two, euermore þer schal be odde poyntis. as .iij. v. or .vij. & þe oon poynt schal be first from þe oon eende of þe wounde, bi þe space of a litil fyngir, & þe toþir poynt schal be at þe oþir ende of' þe wounde, & þe þridde poynt' schal be in þe myddil of þe wounde / & if it' be nede to haue mo poyntis, þanne schalt' þou [1]bigynne at' þe myddil poynt', & make as manye poyntis on boþe sidis as it' is nede, til þou come to boþe eendis / For bi þis maner of' sowynge neiþir partie schal be crokid, & so þe place mai faire be restorid, & euermore take kepe þat' *[ȝif] þe wounde be not' depe, þi sowynge schal be nouȝt' deep / & if' þi wounde be deep, þi sowynge schal be deep, þat alle þe parties of' þe wounde moun

Number of the stitches and their distance from each other.

[1 leaf 18]

The stitches must be deep enough

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

[2 fol. 45 *b*]

þe lippes of þe wounde, & haue an nedle [2]þre kornerde, whose eyȝe scholde be holyde on boþe sydes, so þat þe [3]þrede þat is in þe nedle may ligge in þe holwe place, & þilke schal be twynede, & without knotte & ywaxide, & þe lippes of þe wounde schulle ben sowyde togedyre, & þe þrede schal be knette with two knottes in þe firste place; in þe secunde place with on knotte, & so make as manye punctis as yt is necessarie, & eche puncte schal be from opere by þe brede of a lytel ffyngere, & streyne þe wounde wiþ knettynge, & þe sowynge of þe lippes of þe wounde togedire þat he ake sumwhat, but nozt to myche, & ȝif þat þere nede mo punctis to be þere þen two, efire more þere schal be odde punctys, as þre, fyfe, opere seuene; & þe on puncte schal be fyrst from þe on ende of þe wonde by þe [4]brede of a litel fyngire, & þe opere puncte schal be at þe opere ende of þe wounde, & þe þridde puncte schal be in þe myddul of þe wounde; & ȝif it be nede to haue mo punctis, þou schalt begynnen at þe myddel puncte, & make as manye punctes on boþe þe sydes, as yt ys nede, tyl þou come to boþe endys; ffor by þis manere of sowynge neiþere partye schal be crokyde, & so þe place may fairere ben restoryde. And euere more take hede, *ȝif þe wounde be nozt depe, þy sowynge schal be nouȝt depe. And ȝif þy wounde be depe þy sowynge schal be depe, þat alle þe parties of þe wounde mowe

[3] *þridde* cancelled before *þrede*.

[4] *sp.* cancelled before *brede*.

be ioyned / For if þe wounde were deep, & þi sowynge not deep, to leave no hollows in the wound.
nede *þer* muste be *in* þe deppe of þe wounde a greet holownes, to
þe which holownes blood & quyttere schulde be cast; & þilke
quyttere & blood schulde lette þe helynge of þe wounde. & þe
poudre *þat* is seid in þe same chapitle, schal be leid aboue on þe
same wounde; & þou schalt kepe þe sewynge & þe *par*ties of þe
wounde *þat* I brouȝte togidere wiþ plumaciols þre cornerid, & wiþ
alle þe o*þ*ere þingis *þat* ben *in* þis chapitle tofore seid / And if *þat* To wounds exposed to the air apply a cleansing ointment.
a wounde haþ be to longe *in* þe eir open, which *þat* is þe cause of
quyttere *þat* lettiþ consolidacioun, þanne we muste*n* clense þe wounde
wiþ þis mundificatif *þat* is maad of flour of wheete & hony & wate*r* a mundificatif. [1 lf. 18, bk.]
& mel roset, [1] I-colat, *þat* is to seie, clensid from þe rosis, and of
barly mele / Of þese mundificatyues þou schalt haue a ful techinge
*in* þe laste tretis /

But if þe wounde be compound, a leche muste haue as manye
intencioun*s* as þer ben accidentis to þe wounde / I sette an ensaumple. Nota
I suppose þat a wounde be compound wiþ holownes & lesynge of
fleisch & of skyn, & *þer*e be myche quytte*r*, & also þat þer be If pus and pain come on,
apostyme, & þer be a greet akynge; al þis is clepid a wounde com-
pound / þanne schule*n* we nouȝt onliche take hede to consolidacioun
of þat wounde: *þat* is to seie, helynge; but first we schulen aswage

---

be joyned togedire. Ffor ȝif þe wounde were depe, & þy sowynge Add. MS. 12,056.
were noȝt depe, nedys *þer*e moste be*n* in þe deppe of þe wounde a
gret holwene-se, to þe whiche holwenesse blod & quyte*r* scholde be
cast; & þilke quyte*r* & blod scholde lette þe [2] helynge of þe wounde. [2 fol. 46 *a*]
And þe poudre *þat* ys seyde in þe same chapytell schal be leyde
aboue þe same sowynge, & þou schalt kepe*n* þe sowynge & þe parties
of þe wounde, *þat* buþ brouȝt togedyre, *with* plumacioles þre cornelyd
& *with* alle o*þ*ere þynges *þat* beþ in þis chapytel forseyde. And ȝif
*þat* a wounde haue be to longe in þe eyre opyne, whiche *þat* ys
cause of quyte*r* *þat* latteþ *con*solidacioun, þenne we moste clense þe
wounde *with*[3] þis mundificatyff, *þat* is mad of floure, of whete & hony
& watyre o*þ*ere mel rosate, & colat *þat* ys y-clansed from þe roses, &
of barly mele. Of þese mundyficatyfes þou schalt han a ful tech-
ynge in þe laste tretys. But ȝif þe wounde be y-*com*poned, a leche
moste han as manye intensiones as *þer*e ben accidentys to þe wonde.
Y sette ensaumple: y suppose *þat* a wounde be *com*poned *with* hol-
wenesse & lesynge of fflesch & of skyn, & *þer*e be myche quyte*r* &
al so *þer*e be a posteme & *þer*e be grete akynge, al this ys clepyde a
wounde *com*ponyde. þanne we schulle noȝt only take hede to *con*-
solidacioun of þilke wounde, *þat* is to sigge helynge, but firste we

[3] MS. *þat*.

deal with the symptoms separately,

and *first* relieve pain.

*nota.*

Auicen

[2 leaf 19]

G. & .A.

A purulent wound must be cleansed, before closing it or putting on a "regeneratif."

akþe & apostymes, as it schal be teld *in* þe chapitle of an enpostyme & of akynge / Aftirward we schulen clense þe quytture, & aftir þat regen*er*e fleisch, & at þe laste brynge ou*er* cicat*rice*. In alle þe worchingis of medicyns, where þat akþe is, first we schulen aswage akþe, for aboue al oþir þing strong akynge ou*er*comeþ myȝt of v*er*tu & strenkþe / & also resou*n* telliþ; membris[1] þat han akþe, þilke akþe is cause of drawynge from þe oþ*er*e plac*is* to þe membre þat akiþ þe worste [2]þing of þe humouris / Auicen seiþ: humou*r*is ben drawen to lymes þat aken for .ij. causis: o cause, for kynde *[& Spiritus and humourer re*n*nyth þedyre; þe secu*n*de cause, for akþe feblyth þe lyme, & humours] & spiritis re*n*nen to þe feble lyme / þe swellynge schal eer be heelid þan þe wou*n*de / Galion & Auicen tellen: þat al þing þat consowdiþ þe wou*n*de greueþ þe wou*n*de, if þat þ*er* be apostyme wiþ þe wou*n*de / & þe quytture schal be clensid or þou leie ony regeneratijf to holowȝ wou*n*dis. Auicen telliþ þe cause, whi þat yuel fleisch growiþ *in* a wou*n*de / If þat a leche wolde bisie him wiþ a medicyn regeneratijf to regendre fleisch *in* a wou*n*de, & er þan þe quytture were clensid / & wha*n*ne þat þe wounde is clensid, þa*n*ne we schulen fulfille þilke holownes wiþ fleisch or þat þe wou*n*de be

[1] Lat., Membra quoque dolorem habentia, dolor ipse est causa attrahendi aliunde humorum pessimitatem.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 46 *b*]

schul aswage*n* akþe & aposteme, as yt schal be tolde in þe chapitle of aposteme & of akynge; aftirwarde we schullen clanse þe quyt*er*, & aftere þat regenere fflesch, & at þe laste brynge ou*er*e a Cicatrice. In alle þe werkynges of medicine, where þat akþe ys, ffirste we schulle aswage*n* akynge; ffor abouen alle oþ*er*e þynge stronge akynge, ou*er*e comeþ myȝte of vertu & strengþe, & also resou*n* tellyth; membrys þat han akþe, þilke akþe ys cause of drawynge from oþ*er*e places to þe me*m*bre þat akeþ [3] þe worste þynge of þe humoures. Avicene seyth humours beþ drawe*n* to [4]lymes þat aken for two causes: On cause, for kynde *& Spiritus and humoures re*n*nythꝫ þedyre; þe secu*n*de cause, for akþe feblythꝫ þe lyme, & humours *& spirit*is* re*n*ne to þe feble lym*m*e. Þe swellynge schal ere ben y-helyde þe*n* þe wou*n*de. Galien & Avycene telle*n* þat alle þynge þat co*n*soudeþ þe wou*n*de, grefyþ þe wou*n*de, ȝif þat þ*er*e be aposteme wi*th* þe wou*n*de, & þe quyt*er* schal ben y-clansyde, ere þe*n*ne þou legge enye generatyff to holwe wou*n*dys. Avicen*n*e tellyth a cause, why þat yvele flescꝫ growithꝫ in a wou*n*de, ȝif þat a leche wolde besy hy*m* wi*th* a medycin regenerat*y*ff to engendre flescꝫ in a wou*n*de, ere þanne þe quytire were clansede. And whe*n*ne þat þe wou*n*de ys clensyde, þe*n*ne we schulle fulfyllen þilke holwnesse wi*th*

[3] MS. *akþe*.

heelid, lest *per*auenture[1] þat þer dwelle an holownesse vndir þe wou*n*de, wha*n*ne þat he is helid, *in* whom þat quytture schulde be engendrid, þerwith[2] ech dai schulde augmente þilke holownesse, & so we moten be constreyned to opene anoþir tyme þat, þat was heelid tofore / þou maist[t] fynde *in* þe chapitle of wou*n*dis of senewis, how þou schalt aswage akþe, & *in* þe .vj. chapitle of[f] þis techi*n*ge þou schalt[t] fynde þe cure [3]of[f] a wounde þat[t] haþ a swellynge, & is out of kynde distemp*er*id ; & þou schalt[t] haue i*n* þe chapitle of[f] olde woundis, how þou schalt[t] clense quytture & regendre fleisch /

[3 lf. 19, bk.] in þe co. of olde wou*n*dis in þe antedotarie.

## The þridde techinge of[f] þe firste tretis is of[f] heelynge of a wounde maad *in* senewe /

¶ 3o. co De vulnere incarne.

Almy3ti god hath 3eue to senewe greet[t] felyng[t], & if þat he be hirt[t], he suffriþ greet[t] akynge / Galion seiþ : a senewe þat is more felynge þa*n* ano*þer* *[lyme] ; it[t] is nessessaric þat he haue gretter*e* akþe / Vndirstonde þat a wounde þat is maad *in* a senewe, mai not be wiþoute akynge. Ne[4] wou*n*dis þat ben maad *in* senewis, ou*þer* þat ben *in* lenkþe or *in* brede / þe woundis þat ben maad *in* lenkþe of þe[2] senewe, ben lesse p*er*ilous þan[5] þo þat ben maad *in* brede of[f] þe

Galion

A wound cutting the nerve lengthwise, a fissura, is less dangerous than one crossing it, a sissura.

[1] *perauenture.* See N. E. Dict., adventure, 1. b.
[2] *þerwiþ*, scribal error for *þe which.*
[4] *no*, scribal error for *þe.* [5] *þan* erroneously inserted.

---

flesch, ere þa*n*ne þat wou*n*de be*n* y-helyde ; leste þat þere dwelle*n* an holwnesse vndire þe wou*n*de whe*n*ne þat he ys helyde, in whom þ*at* quyt*er* schol*d*e be engendryde, þe whiche eche day schol*d*e augmente þilke holwnesse, & so we moste be*n* *con*streynede to opyne an o*þ*ere tyme þ*at*, þat was helyde tofore. þou mayste fynde*n* aftere in þe chapyteH of wou*n*dys of synwes how þou schalt aswagen akþe, and in the sixte ChapiteH of þis techynge þou schalt fynde þe cure of a wounde, þat hatħ a swellynge, and ys out of kynde dystempryde, and þou schalt have in þe chapitle of olde wou*n*dys ; how thou schalt clense, quytyre, and regendre flesscħ //

Add. MS. 12,056.

## [6]Cap. iii. of the þridde techynge of the ffurst tretis is of helynge of a wounde y-makyde in synwe.

Almi3tie god hath 3ife to synwe gret felynge, & 3if þat he be hurt he suffrede grete akynge. Galien : a synwe that is more felynge þen ano*þ*ere *lyme ; yt is nessessarie þat he have gretter akynge. Vndirstonde þat a wou*n*de þat is y-makyde in a synwe, may nou3t ben wiþouten akynge. The wou*n*des þat beþ y-makyde in synwe, o*þ*er þey ben in lengthe o*þ*ere þey beþ in brede. wou*n*des þat beþ y-mad in lengthe of þe synwe beþ lasse peryl-

If the nerve is cut through, the limb becomes insensible;

if the nerve is pricked by a punctura, then there is danger of cramp. Spasmos. [1 leaf 20]

Loss of feeling and cramp happen when a sinew or muscle is cut or pricked.

Senewe, corde & Brawne.

When the nerve is pricked, but the skin whole,

senewe ben moost perilous / Oþerwhile a senewe is kutt' al atwo / & þanne þilke lyme, to whom þat senewe serueþ, lesiþ his meuynge & þe felynge, þat þilke senewe brouȝte to him from þe brain. & þilke senewe oþirwhile is not' kutt' al atwo, but he is I-prickid, & þanne it' is perilous lest þe crampe come for to greet' akþe / For akþe entriþ into þe part of' þe senewe þat is kutt' or prickid; & bi þe [1]partie of' þe senewe þat is hool, akþe is brouȝt to þe brayn. & so þe crampe mai come to þe wounde bi oon of þre weies: þat is to greet' akþe, cold, or rotynge. Of' þese þre or of' oon bi him-silf' mai come a drawinge togidere of' a senewe þat is cause of a crampe / & þat þat is seid of a wounde of a symple senewe may fallen ofte-tymes in a wounde of' a corde & a brawn, & nameliche of a corde þat is in bigynnynge of' a brawn. Þo woundis þat ben in þese þre consimile membris, þat is *[to] seie senewe, corde, & brawn han o. drede in cours of' þe crampe, & also o. drede of' felynge, lesynge & meuynge / &[2] þerfore be-war in þe cure of' a wounde maad in senewe, whether þat' it' be a prickynge or þat it be kutt ouerþwert', or ellis be kutt' oonly bi his lenkþe. If' oonly he be prickid þe wounde of' þe skyn is hool, & þanne it is clepid a blynde puncture; either þe wounde is open, & it' is clepid an open puncture / In a blind puncture it' is

[2] *&*, above line.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

& þo þat beþ in brede of þe synwe beþ more perilous. Opere whyle a synwe ys y-kut al atwo, & penne þilke lyme to whom þilke synwe serfede, lesiþ þe menynge & þe felynge þat þilke synwe brouȝt to hym from þe brayn. Opere while þulke synwe is nouȝt y-kut a two, but he is y prikyde, and penne it is perel lest þe crampe come for to gret akþe. For akþe entritħ in to þe part of þe synwe þat is y-kut oper priked, & by þe party of þe synwe þat is hol akþe is brouȝt to þe brayn, & so crampe may comen to þe wounde by on of þre weyes, þat is to gret akþe colde oper rotynge. Of þese þre opere ellys of on by hym self, may come a drawynge togedre of a synwe þat is a cause of a crampe; & þat þat is seyde of wounde of a symple synwe, oft-tymes may fallyn in a wounde of a corde & a brawn, & namlyche of a corde þat is in þe bygynninge of a brawn. Þe woundes þat ben in þese þre consimel membris, þat is *to sigge, synwe, corde, & brawn, habben on drede in course of þe crampe, & also on drede of lesynge, felynge, & menynge, & perfor be war in þe cure of a wounde i-makyde in synwe, whether þat þere be a prikynge, opere þat þe synwe be y-kut twartofere, oper ellys be y-kut only by his lengthe. ȝif only he be y-prikyde þe wonde of þe skyn is hol, & penne it is clepyde a blynde puncture, oper þe wounde is opene & it is clepide an opene prikynge. In a blynde

nessessarie to opene þe skyn, & aftirward heelde into þe hoole as hoot as he mai suffre, hoot' oile of rosis swete smellynge, þat is maad of' oile de oliue þat is nouȝt ripe, til al þe wounde be ful. & aboue þe wounde leie whiȝt' tere[1]bentine[2] I-drawe abrood bitwene two clowtis, & anoynte alle þe membris aboute þe wounde wiþ hoot oile of rosis maad þicke with bool armoniak. & aftir þat leie a lynnen clooþ I-het' aboue, & aftir þat a good quantite of' tow I-tosid, & bynde þe lyme softliche wiþoute streynynge; & if þe akþe wiþ þis medicyn wole not ceessen, remeue & chaunge þis medicyn ofte tymes in þe dai & in þe nyȝt' / & if' þe prickynge be in þe foot, anoynte þe grynde[3] wiþ hoot' comoun oile; & vndir þe arme holis & in þe necke pitt', if' þat þe prickynge be in þe hand, for þis enoynture rarefieþ & eueneþ þe placis bi whom akþe goiþ to þe brain, & it' lettiþ drawynge togidere of' þe senewe / & þouȝ þat þou seest' nouȝt' þe akþe ceesse in summen as hastiliche as þou woldist, neuer-þe-lattere chaunge not' þi medicyn, for þer may be no bettere medicyn. But if' þat akþe dure ouer longe, it is not yuel to putte a litil opium to þe oile of þe rosis & þe bole armoniak, þat þou leidist' aboute þe wounde. þe sike man muste reste & bi no wey he

open the skin and apply hot oil, R

and dress the wound. [1 if. 29, bk.] N

If the pain endures renew the dressing frequently, N

and add opium to the ointment. N R

[2] *terebentine*, from Pistacia Terebinthus, L. The *Alah* of the Old Testament, and the τέρμινος of Theophrast.: now almost obsolete.

[3] *þe grynde*, inguina. *W. Wr.*, p. 589. 39, 15th cent.: inguen, the grynde.

---

prikyne hit is necessaric to opyn þe skyn, & afterwarde held in to þe hole, as [4]hot as he may suffren, oyle of roses swote smyllynge, þat is y-made of oyle de olyffe, þat is nouȝt rype tyl þe wounde be al ful. & aboue þe wounde leye whyte terbentyne y-drawe abrod betwene tweye cloutes, & anoynt al þe membris about þe wounde wiþ hote oyle of rosys, y-made þikke wiþ bol Armonyak, & after þat leye a lynne cloth̃ y-hat aboue, & after þat a gode quantyte of towȝ y-tosyd, & bynde þe lyme[5] softlyche wiþout streyninge; & ȝif þe akþe wiþ þis medycine wolde nouȝt cese, remeffe & chaunge þis same medycine oft tymes in þe day & in þe nyȝt, & ȝif þe prikynge be in þe fot, anoynte þe grynde wiþ hote comyn oyle, & vndire þe Arme holys & in þe nekputte, ȝif þat þe prikynge be in þe hande. For þys vncture ratefieþ & efenyþ þo placys by whom akþe goth̃ to þe brayn, & it lattiþ drawynge togedre of þe synwe, & þowȝ þat þou sest nouȝt akþe, sese in some men, as hastly as þou woldy- nevere þe later chaunge nouȝt þy medycine, for þere may be no bettere medycine. But ȝif þat akþe dure ouere longe yt is nowȝt efel to putte a lutyl opin to þe oyle of rosys and þe bol armoniak. þat þou leydest aboute þe wounde. þe seke man most reste, & l

Add. MS. 12,056. [4 fol. 47 b]

[5] MS. lynne.

schulde nouȝt be wroþ; his bed muste be *maad* soft, euene, &
[1 lf. 21] smoþe, & þat he [1]myȝte haue reste / Whanne þat þe akþe aswagiþ
& þe wou*n*de ȝeueþ su*m* quytture, þanne þe sike man is saaf from al
Ypo*cras*. maner pe*r*el, but if he do ony newe errour / Of þis wou*n*de Ypocras
It is a bad sign if no pus is discharged. spekiþ: *in vulneribus malis & fortibus sanie non apparante*—þat
is to seie: *in* yuel wou*n*dis and strong wou*n*dis, if no quytture
appere it is yuel / Strong woundis ben clepid wou*n*dis þat sore
aken / Yuel wou*n*dis ben þo, to whom scharpe humouris re*n*nen
& ben nouȝt obedient to kyndeli heete, to be turned *into* quit-
Ypo*cras*. ture / And þe*r*fore Ypocras seide: þat wha*n*ne akynge & quytture
appereþ it is a tokene of heele / þe þridde signe a man muste
*Laymen* frequently apply a wrong ointment, which causes cramp, or put the injured limb in hot water, Gal*ion*. knowe *in* þis place, þat lewide men, seyinge akynge & swellynge
*in* a lyme þat is wou*n*did, leie þe*r*to a potage *in* maner *maad* of
eerbis & swynes greece & wate*r* & wheete flour, corruptyn þe
lyme, & þilke corrupcio*un* is cause of þe crampe / For Galion seiþ:
þat a senewe is *maad* of moist mater & a cold, & þerfore he
rotiþ of heete and moistnes / Also su*m*me*n*, for to aswage akþe as[2]
*nota*. a senewe þat is pr*i*ckid, puttiþ þe lyme *in* hoot watir *[oþer ellys
[3 lf. 21, bk.] Gal*ion*. caste it on þe lyme] þe which mate*r*[3] is þe moost greuau*n*ce [4]to
þe senewe / Galion seiþ / Hoot watir, þouȝ it aswage akþe to þe

[2] *as*, error for *of*; see below. [3] *mater*, error for watir.

---

Add. MS. 12,056. no weye he scholde nouȝt be wroþ, hys bed most be made softe
euene & smeþe þat he myȝte haue rest. Whanne þat þe akþe
aswagyth & þe wou*n*de gyueth su*m* qyte*r*, þan þe syke man ys saf
from al mane*r*e pe*r*yle, but ȝif he do enye newe error. Of þis
wou*n*de ypocras spekiþ: In vulneribus malis & fortib*us* sanie no*n*
aparente malu*m*, þat is to seye: in evyle wou*n*dys & stronge
wou*n*des, ȝif no quyte*r* apere, hit is yuele. Stronge wou*n*des ben
y-clepyde wou*n*dys þat sore aken. Iuel wou*n*des beþ þo, to whom
scharpe humo*r*es re*n*nyth & beþ nouȝt obedyent to kyndlie hete to
ben tu*r*nyde into quyte*r* & þe*r*efore ypocras seyde, þat wha*n*ne þat
akynge sesyth & quyte*r* aperith, yt is a tokne of hele. þe þridde
[5 fol. 48 *a*] signe a ma*n* moste [5]knowe in þis place, þat lewyde me*n* seyne
akynge & swellynge in a lyme y-wou*n*dyde, legge*n* þereto a mane*r*
potage y-mad of erbys & swynes grese, wate*r*, & floure of whete,
corupyn þe lyme, & þilke corupcio*un* is cause of þe crampe; for
Galyen seiþ þat a synwe is mad of a moiste matere & a cold, & he
rotyth of hete & moistnesse. Also su*m* me*n* forto aswage þe akþe
of a synwe þat is y-pr*i*kyde, putteþ þe lyme in to hote wate*r*,* o*per*
ellys caste it on þe lyme hot wate*r*,[6] þe whiche wate*r* is most grefes
to þe synwe. Galyen: hote wate*r* þowȝ it aswage akþe, to the

[6] hot water, insertion.

prickynge of a senewe is most greuaunce / Cold also greueþ sore þe senewe as wel in somer as in wyntir / And Ypocras seiþ in þe .v. part of his auforismus: cold is bitynge & greuous to senewis & woundis, & also in þe chapitle next folowynge, but it be in a crampe wiþoute wounde / Galion seiþ in þe eende of his coment: coold is moost greuous to a senewy lyme þat is woundid & is sore swollen; namely, & he haue þe crampe. It schewiþ[1] þanne þat an hoot medicyne & a drie is moost acordynge to senewis þat ben woundid; but nouȝt to hoot a medicyn, lest peraunt̃re þat he make þe lyme to swelle; & if it be drie nouȝt wiþ stipticte, an aunt̃re if þat he closiþ þe poris of þe skyn / Galion seiþ: þat it is yuele to close þe poris of a lyme þat is pricked. þe medicyn þanne muste be hoot & drie with subtiliate as terebentine to moiste bodies; & to drie bodies he muste be medlid wiþ a litil enforbium, azafetida[2] is best medicyn if þou make of him enplastre, serapinum,[3] & þe fecis[4] of a litil wex, & þe filþe of þe vessels of been, alle þei ben gode to a senewe þat is prickid, þouȝ þat þou putt [5]ech of hem bi him-silf or ellis compound / & þow schalt fynde a ful techinge of þese medicyns in þe antidotarie of þis book / þou schalt nouȝt close a

Ypocras.

and the heat is as dangerous as great cold.

Galion.

Galion N.

The pores of a wounded limb must be kept open.

R

[5 lf. 22]

[1] *schewiþ* for *sewiþ*; see below.

[2] *Asa fœtida*, a sort of gum pressed out of a certain plant, which grows in Persia.

[3] *Serapinum* = Sagapenum . . . A gum resin obtained from the Ferula Persica. See *Notes*.

[4] *fecis*, Lat. fæces, dregs.

---

prikynge of a synwe ys most greuest; colde also gefyth sore þe synwes as wel in somere as in wyntere. Ypocras in þe forthe partye of his Amphorismes: colde is bytinge and grefes to woundys; and also in þe chapitell nexte folwynge, bot it be in a crampe wiþ out wounde. Galyen seiþ in þe ende of his comente: colde is most grefest, to a synwe lyme þat is y-woundyde & ys toswolle, namly, & he haue þe crampe. Hit sewiþ þenne þat an hote medycine & a drye is most accordynge to synwes þat beþ y-woundyde; bot nouȝt to hot a medycine, leste þat he make þe lyme toswellyn; & drye nouȝt wiþ stipticite, lest he close þe pores of þe schyn. Galyen seiþ: it is yuel to close þe pores of a lyme þat is y-prikyde. þe medicyne þenne most ben hote & drye, wiþ subtilite as terbentyne to moiste bodyes; & to drye bodyes, he most be medlyde wiþ a lytel enforbium. Asa fetida is best medycine, ȝif þou make of hym emplastre serapinum, & þe feces of wax, & þe fylthes of vessells of been, alle þey ben gode to a synwe, þat is prikyde, whether þou put it he be hymself oþer opyn hem; & þou schalt fynden a ful techynge of þese medycines in þe Antitodarie of þis boke. þou schalt nouȝt closen

Add. MS. 12,056.

The nerve must be cleansed and healed before the wound is closed.

.*Galion.* relates, how a physician, by not so doing, caused the death of his patient.

wounde where þat þe prickynge of a senewe is, til þat þe senewe be perfiȝtly clensid & heelid, & til þat þou be sikir þat þe place schal not swelle / Galion telliþ of a man þat was prickid with a poyntel in þe pawme of þe hand, to whom came oon of tisilies[1] clerkis þe which took hede to heele alle woundis generaliche; & he leide to þilke prickynge a consowdynge oynement þat was more acordynge to a wounde maad in fleisch; & he leide þerto a plastre maturatijf, wherfore al þe hand rotide & he fel into a crampe, & so he diede, or þat þe .vij. daies weren passid / & if þat ilke leche hadde maad þat wounde broddere, & þanne þat he hadde helt into þe wounde hoot oile of rosis, & þanne þat he hadde do[2] comen out quytture wiþ hoote medicyns sotil & driynge, & nouȝt wiþ moist medicyns, þat man schuldo not haue be deed /

**Tederik.** [4 lf. 22, bk.] The ends of the nerve ought to be sewn at the same time as the skin, and a medicine applied,

If þat a senewe hadde ben I-kutt ouerþwert ouer al atwo þanne, þouȝ þat Tedericus[3] & summe opere scien þe contrarie, it is good þat þow [4]sowe togidere þe eendis of þe senewis þat ben kutt wiþ þe sowinge of þe skyn. & aboue þilke maner of sowinge, þe firste dai leie oile of rosis, in þe which oile, maddockis[5]—þat ben wormes

[1] Lat., unus de secta Thessali. Thessalus lived in Rome at the time of Nero, and enjoys the reputation of being the first great quack.

[2] Lat., Si . . saniem . . subtiliter desiccantibus expectasset. Add. MS. translates literally, abyde. The use of *do* (= faire) is further illustrated by Mätzner. See *don* .6.

[3] Theodoricus, an Italian (?) monk of the 13th century, was the author of a *Surgery*.

[5] *maddock*, O.E. maček, Dan. maddik. See Skeat, *Etym. Dict.*, under maggot and mawkish.

---

Add. MS. 12,056. [6 fol. 48 b.]

a wounde, where þat þe prikynge of a synwe is, ere þan þe synwe be perfitlye clansyde & helyd, & ere þou be sykere þat þe place schal nouȝt swelle. Galyen tellyth of a man wiþ a poyntel in þe pawme of þe hand, to whom come one of [6]Tesilies clerkys, þe whiche toke hede to helyn alle woundis generalyche, & he leyde to þilke prikynge a consoudynge oygnement þat was more acordynge to a wounde y-makede in flesch, & he leyde þereto a maturatyif plastre, where fore al þe hand rotyd, & he fel into a crampe, & so he dyede ere þe vii dayes were passyde; & ȝif þat þilke leche hadde y-made þilke wounde braddere, & þenne & hadde y-helde in þe wounde hote oyle of rosys, and þenne hadde abyde quyter wiþ hote medycines sotyl & dreying, & noȝt wiþ moiste medycines, þilke man ne scholde nouȝt haue ben ded. ȝif þat a synwe hadde ben kut twart ouer al atwo þenne, þawȝ þat tedericus & summe opere sigge þe contrarye, hit is good þat þou sewe togedre þe hedys of þe synwys þat beþ y-kutte, wiþ þe sowynge of þe skyn & abouen þilke maner of sewynge, þe first day leye oyle of roses, in þe whiche oyle

of þe erþe—han be boilid, & caste aboute þe wounde þe poudre þat kepiþ þe sowynge .o. day or two aftirward, & kepe þe sowynge wiþ plumaciols .iij. cornerid, & wiþ byndynge, & kepe þe lyme from swellynge, for bi sich a maner sowynge of a senewe þou maist consowde þe senewe aȝen; for þe lyme schulde han be lost *in partie* or in al, þe meuynge þat was brouȝt vnto him fro þe braun, for bi þat senewe þe lyme mai rekeuere his felynge, & so þe restoringe of þe braun may be fastere & schapliker. þou schalt nouȝt drede of þe akynge þatt schulde be maad of prickynge[1] of þe senewe, for þe akþe schal be doon awei wiþ oo leiynge to eiþer tweyne of þilke oile / Ne sich maner akþe may nouȝt make þe crampe, for þe senewe is al kutt atwo ne no man *[make an] obiecciouⁿ wiþ Galion wordis, þat we schulden be war *in* ioynynge *par*ties of a wounde togidere *[þat non here ne oyle ne scholde nouȝt entre wiþynne þe lippes of a wounde, þat beþ y-brought togedre] To þilke obiecciouⁿ we answeren: þat þe stipticite [2]of þe rosis & þe oile þat was nouȝt ripe, & þe glutinosite of þe wormes of þe erþe remeuen þe akþe of þe senewis & al þe harm þat schulde come of þe ilke sowynge.

then the limb may regain its motor powers.

.Galion.

Nothing should enter into the wound.

[2 lf. 28]

If þat a senewe were wounded *in* lenkþe, he mai wel & liȝtliche

[1] *prickynge of þe senewe.* The Latin, *acus punctura*, is correctly translated in Add. MS. See below.

---

Maddokkys, þat beþ wormys of þe erthe, haue ben boyllede; and caste aboute þe wounde þe poudre þat kepyth þe sowynge a day oþer two afterward, & kepe þe sowynge wiþ plumacioles þre kernellyde & wiþ[3] byndynge, & kepe þe lyme from swellynge, ffor by swyche a manere sowynge of þe synwe þou maiste consoude þe synwe ageyn, for þe lym scholde haue lost in party oþer in al the meuynge, þat was y-browȝt to hym from þe brayn, for by þilke synwe þat lyme may rekeueren hys felynge, & so þe restorynge of þe brayn may be more schaplokere & fastere. Ne þou ne schalt nouȝt drede of þe akynge þat scholde be made of þe prekynge of þe nelde, for þe akþe schal be don awey by one leggynge to oþere tweyne of þilke oyle; ne swyche manere akþe may nouȝt make þe crampe, for þe synwe ys al kutte atwo. Ne no man *make an obiectiouⁿ wiþ galyens wordys, þat we scholde be ware in ioyninge þe partyes of a wounde togedre, *þat non here ne oyle ne scholde nouȝt entre wiþynne þe lippes [4]of a wounde, þat beþ y-brouȝt to gedre.* To þilke obiectiouⁿ we answeren, þat þe stipticite of þ roses & þe oyle þat was nouȝt ripe, & þe glutinosyte of þe wormys of þe erthe remywen þe akþe of þe synwes, & al þe harme þ scholde comen of þilke sewynge. ȝif þat a synwe were wounde in lengþe he may be wel & lyȝtlyche y-soudyde togedire. wi

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3] *wiþ* above line.

The wounded limb must be kept from swelling.

be sowdid togidere wiþ ioynynge of lippis, & wiþ þe sowynge & wiþ þe kepinge of þe lyme þat he swelle nouȝt / Vndirstonde here in þis place: þat *per* is no þing more worschipful to a leche ne more

Nota.

profitable to a sijk man þan to kepe a lyme woundid fro swellynge, & neþeles it is hard to kepe senewis þat ben woundid from swellynge / Neþeles a leche here schal take heed aftir þe techinge þat schal be ȝeue him in þe chapitle of þe cure of a wounde, whanne þat *per* is wiþ him a swellynge. If þat a wounde were chaungid of þe eyr and made quytture, þat þe sowynge were to-broke and þe

If there is swelling, and if the wound is purulent, apply a mundificative, and keep the wound tented.

puncture were vndir,[1] þanne make a medicyne mundificatif & leie him abrood on a lynnen cloop & leie it aboue þe wounde, & putte a litil smal tent in þe eende of þe wounde þat is moost lynynge,[2] & þilke tent schal touche no senewe ne make noon akþe vndir[3] þat,

[4 lf. 23, bk.] þat ilke wounde be [4]weel dried. A mundificatijf medicyn of

a mundificatif medicyne

senewis woundid is maad in þis maner: Take mel roset colat ℥ .iij. smal flour of barly & medle hem togidere & boile hem slili þat þei brenne nouȝt, & remeue hem fro þe fier & bete hem "longe" togidere wiþ a spature;[5] & þanne putte þerto ℥ j. of whit terebentyne; & if þou mowe finde noon whiȝt terebentyne, þanne waische o*þere*

[1] *undir*, mistake for *undo*. See below. [2] *lynynge*, for *declynynge*.
[3] *undir þat*, donec. [5] *spatur*, spatula.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

ioynynge of þe lippys & wiþ sowynge & wiþ kepynge of þe lym, þat he scholde[6] noȝt. Understande here in þis place, þat þere is no þynge more worschipful to a leche ne more profytable to a seke man, þenne to kepe a lyme y-woundyde from swellynge, & naþeles it is hard to kepe synwys þat beþ woundyde from swellynge. Naþeles a leche here schal take hede aftere þe techynge þat schal be geuen to hym in hys chapyteH of þe cure of a wounde, whanne þat þere ys wiþ hym a swellynge. ȝif a wounde were chaungyd of þe eyre and mad quyter, þat þe sowynge were tobroke, & þe punctis weren vndo, þenne make a medycine mundyficatyff, & leye hym abrod on a lynne cloth, & leye it aboue þe wounde, & put a lytel smal tent in þe one ende of þe wounde þat is most declynynge; & þilke tent schal touche non synwe, ne make non akþe, vndire þat þat þilke wounde be wel dryede. A mundificatyff medycine of synwes y-woundyde ys y-made in þis manere: R. mel rosat colat ℥ iii smal floure of barly ℥, & medle hem togedre & boyle hem slyȝly þat þey brenne noȝt, & remywe hem from þe fyre & bete hem togedre longe wiþ a spator, & þenne put þere to ℥. of whyte terbentyne, & ȝif þou maiste fynde no whyte terbentyne

[6] *scholde*, error for *swelle*, or it belongs to: *scalle, scalde, scalled, scab.* See W. Wright, and *Cathol. Angl.*

terebentyne *with* cold watir til it' be whiȝt', & whane þat be þis medicyn þis wounde is almoost' drie, þanne putte *in* þe same medicyn a litil poudre of' fra*n*kencense mastik & sau*n*dragou*n*, medle hem togidere & leie aboue þe wounde til it' be hool / & wha*n*ne þat it is hool manye daies aftir, leie flex *in* good strong' wiyn het' hoot' til it be perfiȝtli al hool, & if þat þer leue ony hardnes *in* meuynge, after þat' it' is hool, þanne þou schalt' vse þe techinge þat' schal be ȝouen to þee *in* þe laste tretis þat' schal be antidotarie *in* þe chapitle of' medicyns mollificatyues ; þere þou schalt fynde þe mane*r* how þou schalt helpe best lymes þat ben heelid and moun not' riȝt weel meuen / Any remaining stiffness of the limb may be removed by a mollificative medicine.

## Þe firste[1] techi*n*ge of' þe firste tretis is of' heelynge of' a wou*n*de m*aad* i*n* boon /

Cm. 4m. **Off woundes made yn the bonis**

Wha*n*ne þat wou*n*dis ben so depe þat' [2]oonly fleisch is not wou*n*did but' þe boon þat' is vndir þe fleisch & þe senewe / þanne a man muste biholde, wher þat þe boon be kutt al atwo, as ofte-tyme it' may happe *in* þe boon of' þe thie & schene boonys & þe boonys of' þe armes. And þanne þilke wounde is ful perilous ; & nameli if' þe boonys of' þe thie ouþir þe boon of' þe arme from þe schuldre to þe elbowe be kutt' al atwo, so þat þe marie go out'. But' ofte-tymes

[2 lf. 24]

It is dangerous if the thigh bone or the bone of the upper arm has been cut in two.

[1] *firste*, mistake for *furþe*.

wassche it wyth̄ colde watyre, tyl it be whyt ; & whe*n*ne þat by þis medycine þe wou*n*de is almost drye, þe*n*ne put in þe same medycine a lite smal poudre of franke ensence, mastike, & sank dragou*n*, & medle hem to gedre, & leye aboue þe wou*n*de tyl it be al hol ; & wha*n*ne þat it is hol manye dayes aftere, leye flax in gode stronge hot wyn, tyl yt be al hol perfitlyche. & ȝif þat þere leue enye hardnesse [3]in mevynge, after þat it is hol, þe*n*ne þou schalt vse the techynge þat schal be geue*n* to þe in þe laste tretys, þat schal be antitodarye in þe chapitle of medycine, molyficatyffes ; þere þou schalt fynde þe mane*r*e how þou schalt helpyn beste lymes, þat beþ y-helyde & mowe noȝt ryȝt wel meffen.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3 fol. 49 b]

## The furþe techynge of þe firste tretys is of helynge of a wou*n*de y-makyde in bon.

Whe*n*ne þat wou*n*des beþ so depe þat only þe flesch̄ is nouȝt y-wou*n*dyde, but þe bon þat is vndire þe flesch̄ & þe synwe, þe*n*ne a man most byholde whe*r*e þat þe bon be kut al atwo, as ofte tymes yt may happen in þe bon of þe thyȝ & þe schynebonys, & þe bonys of þe Arme, & þe*n*ne þylke wou*n*de is ful perylouse ; and namlye, ȝif þe bon of þe thyȝ ore þe bon of þe arme, from þe schuldre to þe elbowe, be y-kutte al atwo, so þat þe marye gon out. But ofte tymes

oon boon of' þe schene or o. boon of' þe armes is kutt' al atwo ouertwert' ouer & neþeles afterward may be restorid; ouþer a boon is not kutt' al atwo but' sum of' his substaunce is don awey, & þilke substaunce, ouþer he is doon awey or ellis he hangiþ togidere / A general rule is in cure of' woundis in whom boonys ben woundid: þat neuere bi a leche fleisch schal ben I-sowdid aboue þe boon, but' first' pleynerliche bi repeire[1]; for þe boon may neuere be[2] wiþ verri consolidacion be consowdid, for his mater was þe sperme of' þe fadir & of' þe modir; but' in summe children, for þe age[3] is toward ofte tyme þat þei were sperme / but þer schal be maad a maner of' restorynge in place of' þe boon þat was broken eiþer lost, þat men clepen [4]poris sarcoides or ellis caro poroydes, & a[5] maner þing' þat is restorid is hardere þan þe fleisch & neischere þan þe boon / & if' þat' ilk mater þat' is restorid be nyȝ as hard as is þe boon, it' is clepid porus sarcoides / & if' þat ilke mater be not hard but sumwhat neische, it is clepid caro poroydes / & if' þat a neische fleisch were & a moist nouȝt' regenered vpon boonys þat ben sett togidere, a man schulde not' haue his purpos to heele & consowde þe wounde. Loke þanne whether þe boon be kutt' atwo altogidere ouerþwert' ouer, þat

The wound ought not to be closed before the bone has been repaired.

*Nota*

In the place of the missing bone, there grows either a hard substance

[4 lf. 24, bk.]

poris sarcoides.

or a soft one:

caro poroides.

[1] *repeire*, erroneously for *repeired*.
[2] *be* has to be cancelled.
[3] *for þe age is toward ofte tyme*, for, *for þe nyȝte of tyme*. See below.
[5] *a*, above line.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

on bon of þe schyne, oþere in bon of þe Arme, ys ykutt al atwo twartofere, & naþeles afterward may be restoryde; oþer a bon ys nouȝt ykut al atwo, but sum of his substaunce ys done aweye, and þilke substaunce oþere he ys don al aweye, oþere he hongyth̄ to gedre. A general rule ys in cure of woundes in whom bonys ben woundyde, þat neuere by a leche flesch̄ shal be y-sowdyd aboue þe bon, but first þe bon plenerlyche be repeyrede; ffor þe bon may neuere with verrey consolidacyoun ben consouded, for his matere was þe sperne of þe fadire & þe modire, but in somme children for þe nyȝte of tyme þat þey were sperme (*sic*); but þere schal be mad a manere restorynge in plas of þe bon þat was broken oþere lost. þat men clepen porrus sarcoydes oþere ellys caro poroydes, & þat manere thynge þat is restoryd is hardere þe flesch̄ & nesschere þen þe bon; & ȝif þat þilke mater þat is restoryde by neye[6] as hard as yt were a bon, yt is clept porus sarcoydes; & ȝif þat þilke mater be nouȝt harde, but sum[7]what nessche, yt is clepyde caro poroydes; ȝif þat a nesch̄ fflesch & a moist were noȝt regenered vpon bonys þat ben set togedre, a man scholde noȝt han his purpos to helyn & to consoude þe wounde. Loke þenne whepere þe bon be kutte a-

[7 fol. 50 *a*]

[6] MS. neþe.

þou bryngist togidere & bindist þe parties of' þe wounde, as it' schal be told in þe .viij. chapitle folowynge, where þou schalt' haue how a wounde schal be heelid þat is out' of' ioynte I-kutt' atwo & to-broken / & if' a wounde[1] be not' kutt' atwo al togidere ouerþwert ouer, loke if' ony pece of' þe boon dwelle sadliche with þe opere partie of' þe hool boon / & þanne if' þou myȝt' brynge þilke pece to þe place þat he was yn tofore wiþ þristynge doun þilke pece wiþ sum instrument' acordynge þerto, & sowde þilke pece wiþ þe hool boon wiþ þe poudre þat I shal telle aftirward; for so the [2]schap of' þe lyme mai dwelle[3] faire & strengere / & if' þat ilke pece haue no fastnes to þe hool boon, do þat pece awey & regenere in þe place of' þe boon þat' þat[4] was lost' a repeirement' / For þouȝ þat' ypocras & Galion tellen þat' it' is nessessarie after quantite of' þe boon þat is lost', an holowȝ cicatrise to be alwey, neþeles wiþ þis poudre þe generacioun of' þese poris may be mendid, not' a litil, but' riȝt' myche / þis is þe poudre: take frank-encense, mastik, mirre, dragagantum, gumme arabik, ana. ℥ ij. flour of' fenegrek, .℥. s' caste þis poudre vpon þe defaute of' þe boon þat is lost', til þat' þou holde a pleynere repeirement *[& a restauracioun. Þenne & noȝt ere brynge ouere fflesch ouere þe repeyrment wiþ] regeneratiuis, mun-

A portion of the bone can either be refastened,

[2 lf. 25]

or it must be removed.

ypocras & Galion.

poudur incarnatyff[5]

[1] *wounde*, erroneously for *boon*.
[2] The second *þat* has to be cancelled.
[3] *hool*, cancelled after *dwelle*.
[5] *incarnatyff* in a later hand.

---

two al togedre twartofere, þat þou brynge togedre, & bynde the partyes of þe wounde as yt schal be tolde in þe eyȝte chapyteH folwynge, where þou schalt han hou a wonde schal ben helyde þat is out of joynt, y-kutte atwo & tobroke. & ȝif þat a bon be noȝt kutte atwo al togedre twartofere, loke ȝif enye pece of þe bon dwelle sadlyche to þe on partye of þe hole bon, & þenne ȝif þou myȝte brynge þilke pece to þe place þat he was yn tofore with þrustynge don þilke pece with sum Instrumentis acordynge þereto, & sowde þilke pece wiþ þe hole bon with þe poudre, þat y schal tellyn afterwarde; for so þe schap of' the lyme may dwelle fairere & strengere. & ȝif þat þilke pece haue no fastnesse to þe hole bon, do þat pece awey, & þenne regenere in þe place of þe bon þat was lost a repairment. Ffor þowȝ þat ypocras & Galyen tellyn þat it ys necessarie aftere þe quantite of a bon þat is lost, an holwe cicatrice to be alwey, naþeles wiþ þis poudre þe generacioun of þese pores may be mendyde noȝt a lytel, but ryȝt myche. Þis is þe poudre: Take ffrank ensence, Mastyke, Mirre, dragagantum gu. arabyke ana. ℥. ij., flour of ffenngreke, ℥, ß, cast þis poudre a godo quantite vpon þe defaute of the bon þat was lost, tyl þat þou haue a plenere repeyrment *& a restauracioun. Þenne & noȝt ere brynge ouere fflesch ouere þe repeyrment with *generatyfles, mun-

Add. MS. 12,056.

dificatiuis & consolidatiuis aftir þe techinge þat þou haddist biforn / Undirstonde þat al þing þat is seid of boonys *in* þis chapitle is of alle þe boonis of þe bodi saf þe heed / I schal make a chapitle by hym-silf //

¶ Capm vm Wondis made *with* conteschoun l. h.

## THe fifþe chapitle of þe þridde techi*n*ge of þe firste tretis of wou*n*dis þat ben maad wiþ smytynge of staf or stoon, or fallynge or smytynge of an hors, or wiþ ony oþir þi*n*g se*m*blable.

[1 lf. 25, bk.] must be attended to in a different manner to incised wounds.

To he*m* happe*n* greet differe*n*ce [1]fro woundis þat ben maad wiþ kuttynge, as wiþ swerd, knyf, eiþir arowe p*r*ickynge; & *in* oþe*re* maner þei schulen ben I-heelid / For þouȝ þat verry consolidacioun be þe firste & p*r*incipal ente*n*cioun of heelynge of a wounde, to þis chapitle it acordiþ nouȝt, for in smytynge, þe fleisch & þe veynes, & senewis, & arteries ben brusid, for *in* þe y*n*nere p*ar*t of þe lyme þe boon aȝenstondiþ, & on þe ouer p*ar*t [2]of þe þi*n*g þat is smyte*n* knyttiþ nouȝt / Wherfore it is nessessarie, if þ*er* schulde be a wou*n*de, þat alle þe smale lymes þat be*n* bitwene þe boon & þe þi*n*g

All the soft parts are bruised

with or without the skin being divided.

[2] The passage is corrupt; the correct version is given by Add. MS.: *þe þynge þat smyteþ & kutteþ noȝt.*

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

dificatyfes, & *con*solidatyfes, aftere þe techynge that þou haddyst toforn. Undirstonde þat alle þynge þat ys seyde of bonys in þis chapitle, ys of alle þe bonys of þe body saff þe hed; & of þe bonys off the hed y schal make a chapytle by hym-selff.

[3 fol. 50 *b*]

## Þe ffye Chapitle of þe þridde techynge of þe furst tretis is of wou*n*dis [3]that beth y-mad with smytinge.

The wou*n*dys þat beþ mad wiþ brosynge, as wiþ smytynge of a staf, oþe*re* ston, oþ*er* fallynge, oþe*re* wiþ smytynge of an hors, oþ*er* wiþ enye thynge semblable to hem, habbiþ̄ gret differens fro*m* wou*n*dis þat beþ y-made wiþ kuttynge: as wiþ swerde, knyf, ore arwe p*r*ikynge, & in oþe*re* mane*re* þey schulle ben helyde. For þowȝ þat verreye consolidacioun be þe first & þe p*r*incypal Intencioun of helynge of a wou*n*de, to þis chapitle it acordyþ̄ noȝt, ffor in smytinge, þe flesch̄ & þe veynes, synwes & arteries ben y-brusyde; for in þe y*n*nere part of þe lyme þe bon aȝeyne stonde, & on þe vtter part þe þynge þat smyteth̄ & kutteþ noȝt, wherefore it is necessarie, ȝif þat þ*er*e scholde be*n* a wou*n*de, þat alle þe smale lymes þat beþ bytwene þe bon & þe þynge þat smyteth̄, scholde be brusyde; &

þat' smytiþ, schulde be brusid, & oþerwhile þe fleisch & þe oþere consimile membris ben brusid wiþoute wounde / Wherfore þe curis of' boþe I wole ordeyne in þis chapitle. If' þat' a leche wolde enforse him to ioyne togidere wiþ consolidatiuis þe wounde þat' is maad wiþ smytynge, nedis quytture & corrupcioun bi þilke consolidatif' muste be vnder þe wounde; þe which quytture schulde corrupte þilke lyme & brynge him to putrifaccioun, but' if' þat kynde were so myȝty, þat' he myȝte eftsoone opene þilke wounde, þat was consowdid bi a sori leche[1]; or wiþ[2] a good leche come & knowe þilke dispo[3]sicioun & knowe helpe, wiþ propre eir[4] to rectifien þe corrupcioun of' þilke lyme / What' schalt' þou þanne do? Þou muste loke whereper þat' þe bodi be ful of' wickide humouris, eiþer be clene; if' þat' he be ful late him blood, if' alle particuler þingis acorden, as vertu, age, complexioun & consuetude; & þese þingis moten alwey[5] taken in mynde, þouȝ alwey þei be not' I-nempned & namely vertu; & he be not' strong' & alle oþere þingis acorden, þou schalt' not' lete blood, but' þou maist ventosen, if' þat it' be nessessarie, or ellis [lose] * þe wombe if' þat' he be costif[6]; & if' þat he be feble, & þe brosure were in þe ouer parti of' þe bodi, voide þe fecis of' his wombe bi clisterie. &

Such wounds, when joined too soon, will slough.

[3 lf. 26]

If the patient is plethoric use blood-letting;

if he is feeble, cupping and purging.

*Nota*

Clisterie

[1] *bi a sori leche*, a malo medico. See Halliwell, *Dict.*, sorry Laten.
[2] *wiþ*, mistake for *þat*.
[4] *eir*, read *cur*. [5] *be* wanted after *alwey*.
[6] *costif*, costive, subject to be bound in body.—Kersey.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

oþerwhyle þe flesch & þe oþere consimele membris beþ brusyde witout wounde, wherefore þe cures of boþe y wyl ordeyne in this chapytle. ȝif þat a leche wolde enforce hym to Iune to gedire with consolidatyfes þe wounde þat is mad wiþ smytinge, nedys[7] quyter & corupcioun by þilke consolidatyff', most be vndire þe wounde; þe whiche quyter scholde corumpe þylke lyme & brynge hym to putrefactioun, but ȝif þe kynde were so myȝtye, þat he myȝte eftesonys opyne þylke wounde, þat was consouded by a sorye leche, oþere þat a gode leche come & knewe þilke dispocisioun, & coupe helpe wiþ propre cure to rettefien þe corupcioun off' þilke lyme. What schaltou þanne do? Þou most loke whereþere that þe body be ful of yuell humores, oþer be clene; ȝif þat he be ful, lete hym blod, ȝif alle partikelere þynges acorden: as vertu, Age, complexioun & consuetude; & þese þynges þou most alweye taken in þy mynde, þowȝ alweye þey ben nouȝt y-nempnyde, & namlye vertue; & he be nouȝt stronge & alle oþere þynges acorden, þou schalt nouȝt leten blod, bot þou [8]maiste ventosen, ȝif þat it be necessarie, oþer ellys lose * þe wombe ȝif þat he be costyff'; & ȝif þat he be feble, & the brosure were in þe ouere party of þe body, voyde þe feces of hys

[8 fol. 11 *a*]

[7] MS. nedyth.

if þou wolt lete blood, þou schalt lete blood on þe contrarie p*ar*tie of þe veyne, bryngyng norischi*n*ge to þe lyme þat was hirt; & þilke veyne þou schalt knowe, if þat þou knowist pleynerliche anotamie, þat I haue tau3t þee i*n* þis same book / & wha*n*ne þat þe bodi is clensid, if þat þe brosour be wiþoute þe wou*n*de, anoynte þe me*m*bre þat is brosid, which bigy*n*neþ to haue an enpostym, w*i*th hoot oile of rosis, & caste aboue a poudre maad of þe seed of mirtilles, & bynde it softly; [1]for ofte-tymes it nediþ noon oþer eir[2] / For þis medicyn fastneþ þe place, & defendiþ hi*m* fro putrefacciou*n*. & þou3 þat þis medicyn mowe not letten al þe mater fro*m* rotynge, neþeles it defendiþ myche of þe same mater fro rotynge / & if al þe mater mai not be defendid fro*m* putrifaccio*u*n, but su*m* p*ar*tie þerof putrifieþ, opene þe place & exclude þe quytture, & clense al þe place. & his cure schal be seid in þe chapitle of apostymes[3] & of exito*ur*s / But if[4] þat a brusour were wiþ a wou*n*de, anoynte aboute þe wou*n*de or eills þe place þat is brusid wiþ þe forseid oile of rosis, & caste aboue þe forseid poudre of mirtilles, for it fastneþ þe place, ne it lettiþ nou3t þe corrupcio*u*n to spreden eiþer to be drawe*n* abrood; & it castiþ to þe wounde þe corrupt mater þat is i*n* þe

concussio membri nervosi cura I. h.
oile Roses
[1 lf. 26, bk.]
An antiseptic powder.
Treatment of a contusion, if the wound is open.

[2] *eir*, read *cur*.
[3] Latin, *de apostematibus exituris*, apostems which discharge pus.
[4] *if*, above line.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

wombe by clisterye. & 3if þou wilt lete blod, þou shalt lete blod on þe co*n*trarye party of þe veyne, bry*n*gynge norysschynge to þe lyme þat was hurt; & þilke veyne þou schalt y-knowe, 3if þat þou knowist plenerlyche Anotamye, þat y haue tau3te þe in þis same boke. & whe*n*ne þat þe body ys y-clansyde, 3if þat þe brosure be wiþout þe wou*n*de, anoy*n*t þe me*m*bre þat is y-brusyde, whiche þat begy*n*neþ to han a postu*m*, wiþ hote oyle of roses, & cast aboue a poudre y-mad of þe sed of mirtylles & bynde it softlye, for ofte tymes it nedyth no*n* oþer cure. For þis medycy*n*e fastnyth þe place, & defendyth hy*m* fro*m* putrefaciou*n*, & þow3 þis medycine mowe no3t letten alle þe mater fro*m* rotynge, naþeles yt deffendyth myche of þe same matere fro rotynge; & 3if þat al þe matere may nou3t be defendyde fro putrefactiou*n*, but su*m* partye þereof putrefieþ, opene þe place & exclude þe quyter, & clanse al þe place. & his cure schal be seyde in þe tretys of apostomes & of exitures. But 3if þat þe brosure were wiþ a wou*n*de, anoynte about þe wonde oþere ellys þe place þat is y-brusyde, wiþ þe forseyd oyle of roses, & caste aboue þe forseyde poudre of mirtillyes, for þis medycine fastnyth þe place, ne yt ne letteþ no3t corupcio*u*n to spredyn, oþere to be drawe abrod, & it castith to þe wou*n*de þe corupt mater, þat

place þat is brusid / Wiþinne þe wounde leie þe ȝelke of an ey, wiþ oile of rosis, with stupis, or ellis wiþ lint.[1] Leid[2] aboue þe wounde a potage maad of .iiij parties of watir & oon partie of oile de olyue, & flour of wheete þat sufficiþ to þe medicyn, & leie þis medicyn to þe wounde, til þat þe akþe be aswagid, & til þat þe quytture be engendrid; aftirward clense [3]þe wounde, aftir þe clensynge regenerer, & at þe laste cicatrice. & þou schalt haue a ful techinge in þe antidotarie of mundificatiuis & cicatriȝatiuis / But if þe membre þat was brusid be ful of senewis, as þe hand ouþer þe foot, þou schalt not chaunge þi cure if þat þer be no wounde; but þouȝ þer be a brusour in senewy membre I-woundid, leie not þere þe potage tofore seid, but oonly hoot oile of rosis, & aboue þe oile poudre of mirtillis, & aboue þe wounde leie terebentine I-waischen & drawen abrood bitwene two lynnen clooþis. & make a plastre of pich & hony & bene flour, & leie aboute þe lyme þat is ful of senewis, as þe hand, þe foot, & speciali whanne þe flux of humouris ceessen not / & þouȝ þat þi cure be drawe along, ne go not awei from þis cure / & whanne þat al þe akþe is ceessid and þe swellynge is aswagid, for to clense þe wounde, vse þe medicyn of mel roset colath with barly mele, seid in þe wounde of senewis / R N R N plaster

Treatment of a contusion, if the injured limb is full of nerves, *e. g.* hand or foot.

olium Rosarum

[1] *lint.* *Prompt. Parv.*, schauynge of lynnen clothe.
[2] *leid*, mistake for *leie*.

---

is in þe place þat is brusyde. Wiþynne þe wounde leye þe ȝolke of an eye with oyle of roses, with stupes oþere ellys wiþ lynte; & leye aboue þe wounde a potage y-made off foure partyes of water & o partye of oyle d'Olyve & floure off Whete þat suffyseþ to þe medycine, & leye þis medycine to þe wounde, tyl þat þe akþe be aswagyde & tyl þat þe quyter be engendryde; afterwarde clanse þe wounde, aftere þe clensynge regenere, & at þe laste cicatryce, & þou schalt haue a ful techynge in þe Antiodarie of mundificatyfes, maturatyfes, & ȝicatrisatifes. [4]But ȝif þat þe membre þat was y-brusyde ys ful of synwes, as þe honde oþer þe fot, þou schalt noȝt chaunge þy cure ȝif þat þere be no wounde; but þawȝ þat þere be a brusure in a synwy membre y-woundyde, ne leye noȝt þere þe potage forseyd, but only hote oyle of roses, & aboue þe oyle poudre of mirtilles, & aboue þe wounde leye terbentyne iwassche & drawe abrod betwene tweye cloþes lynnen. & make enplastre of pych, hony & bene flour, & leye aboute a lym ful of synwes as þe fot oþere þe hand, & specialyche whenne þat þe flux of humours seseþ. & þawȝ þat þi cure be drawe along, ne go noȝt awey fro þis cure; & whenne þat al þe akþe ys y-sesyd, & alle þe swellynge ys aswagyde, forto clanse þe wounde, vse þe medycine of mel rosat colat with

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 51 *b*]

Galion

þis cure is apreued bi galion, & I haue preued þis medicyn ofte tymes /

## ¶ Þe sixte chapitle of þe þridde techinge is of woundis þat han enpostymes & be distempered //

[1 lf. 27, bk.]

### Off woundes Impostemede.

¶ Capm vjm If the wound is tumorous or distempered, the tumour and the "dyscrasia" must be removed first.

A Wounde þat haþ enpostym or an yuel discrasiam—þat is to seie out of kynde distemperid, eiþer to cold eiþer to hoot—he mai not be heelid, ne he schal not ben heelid, but first he[2] be aswagid *in* þe yuel discurciour be amendid / & as I haue seid *in* anoþer place, it is profitable to þe sijk man, & worschipe to þe leche, if þat he mowe defende þe lymes þat ben woundid from enpostyme & from an yuel discrasie. For þanne a leche schal kepe þe canoun

Galion.

o[3] galion, þat is oon of þe .iiij. canouns; oon is to kepe lymes in her owne kyndely complexcioun. For woundis moun not ellis be heelid, but if þei be brouȝt first into her owne kynde / & a wounde mai be kept from apostyme & an yuel discrasie if þat þe leche be kunnynge & do his deuer, & þe sike man be obedient to þe leche / þe leche muste loke if þat þer go blood y-nowȝ out at þe wounde;

If necessary

& if þat þe wounde haue not bled blood y-nowȝ, þe pacient muste

[2] The correct version is given by Add. MS.

[3] *o*, mistake for *of*.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

barly mele, y-sayd in the wounde of synwes. þis cure ys aprefyde by galyen, & y haue preffyde þis medycine ofte tymes.

## ¶ The sixte Chapitle of þe þridde techynge is of Woundes þat han enpostemes, & beþ dystempryde.

A wounde þat hatħ aposteme oþer an yuel discrasie—þat is to sigge, out of kynde distempride, oþere to hote oþere to cold, he may noȝt ben helyd, ne schal nouȝt ben heled, but first þe posteme be aswagyde, & þe yucle discrasie be amendide. & as y haue seyde, in an oþere place, yt is profitable to þe syke man, & worschipful to þe leche, ȝif þat he mowe dyffende þe lymes þat beþ woundyde fro eny postemys, & fro an euyħ discrasie. For þenne a leche schal kepe þe canon of galyen, þat is on of foure canones; on is to kepyn lymes in here owne kendlye complexioun. For woundys mowe noȝt ellys ben y-helyd, but ȝif þey ben brouȝt first to here owne kynde, & þe wounde may be kepte from aposteme & an yueħ discrasie, ȝif þat þe leche be kunnynge & do hys deffere, & þe syke

[4 fol. 52 *a*]

man be obedyent to þe leche. þe leche mot loke [4]ȝif þat þere haue go blod ynowȝ out of þe wounde; & ȝif þat the wounde haue noȝt bled blod ynowȝ, þe pacyent most ben lete blod, oþere ellys ben

be lete blood or ellis ventusid, takynge reward to alle particuler þingis tofore seid / & ordeyne him a couenable dietynge, as schal be told in þe chapitle of dietynge; & leie a defensif aboute þe wounde, ℥ j. of bole armoniak distemperid wiþ oile of [1]rosis, & a litil vinegre: as þicke as hony tempere it / & if þat þe tyme of þe ȝeer were hoot, putte to þis medicyn þe ius of sum cold erbe: as morel,[2] penywort,[3] virge pastoris. Late not þe lyme hange; but if it be the arm, hange it aboute þe necke / & if it be þe foot eiþer þe schene, lete him ligge / & if þat þe lyme ake, aswage þe akþe wiþ an oynement of hoot oile of rosis / For as Galion seiþ: þer is no þing more noious to a wounde þan is akþe & declinacioun of a lyme, for þese .ij. maken soone an hoot swellynge, þe which is to þe feuere as a welle, & to þe bodi as an ouene / þe woundid man muste absteyne him after þe chapitle of dietynge techiþ, & boþe þe sike man & þe leche, & alle þat ben aboute þe sike, moten absteyne hem fro fleischly knowynge of a womman, [ne a womman] *in tyme of menstrue,[4] ne loke not on þe sike man / & oonys in þe dai þe sike man schal go to priuy;[5] & if he mai not schite "oonys" kyndeli in

use blood-letting or cupping, prescribe a proper diet and a deffensiuum. [1 lf. 28]

Put the injured limb in a proper position.

*Galion.*

The patient and the physician must live chastely.

Regulate the patient's stool.

[2] *morel*, Lat. Solathrum. See Notes.
[3] *penywort*, Lat. umbilicus Veneris.
[4] See Notes.
[5] *privy*. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 414, Pryvy or gonge (or Kocay), Latrina, cloaca, ypodromium; p. 202, Goo to pryvy, or to shytyn, Acello. *Pryvy* still used in Yorkshire.

---

ventusyde, takynge rewarde to alle partikelere þynges tofore seyde, & ordeyne hym a couenable dyotynge, as schal be tolde in þe Chapiteℍ of dyotynge; & leye a defens aboute þe wounde: ℥ j of bol Armonyake, distemperid wiþ oyle of rosys & a lytel vynegre, to þe þiknesse of hony; & ȝif þat þe tyme of þe ȝere were hot, put to þis medycine þe jus of sum colde erbe: as morel, nyȝtschode, penywort, virge pastoris, oþere sum oþer colde erbe; & bynde noȝt þe lyme to harde, ne lete noȝt þe lyme hongyn; but ȝif it be þe arme, honge him aboute þe nekke; & ȝif it be þe fot oþer þe schyne, lete hym ligge; & ȝif þat þe lyme akþe, aswage þe akþe wiþ anoyntynge of hote oyle of roses. Ffor as Galyen seyth: þere is noþynge more grefes, þan ys akynge & declynacioun of a lyme, for þese two makiþ sone an hote swellynge, the whiche is to þe ffeuyre as a welle, & to þe body as an Ovyn. þe woundyde man most absteynen hym, aftere þat þe chapiteℍ of dyetynge techithℍ; & boþe þe syke man & þe leche, & alle þat ben aboute þe syke, mote absteynen hem from fleschlye knowlachynge of a womman, ne a womman *in tyme of menstrewe, ne loke noȝt on þe syke man; & onys in þe day þe syke man schal schyte, & ȝif he may noȝt schyte kendly onys in þe day,

Add. MS. 12,056.

a clisterie
If a tumour develops,
[1 lf. 28, bk.]
use a maturatif,
℞
and remove the pus.
If the tumour is caused by the pricking of a nerve use an ointment.

þe dai after þe quantite of mete þat he takiþ, make him a clisterie ouþer a suppositorie oonys ech day. & if þou myȝt not wiþ alle þese þingis defende þe lyme from apostyme, it is an yuel signe, for þe lyme is [1]feble, & þe humouris arn wickide; þanne bigynnen[2] to materen þe swellynge wiþ potage maad of flour, oile & watir, or ellis wiþ þis maturatif / Take malowe leues & leues of violet, & þe rote of holihocke; seþe hem weel in water, & staumpe hem, & take a pound of water, þat þei ben soden ynne, & comoun oile; ℥ .iij.; of wheete flour ℥ .iij.; of flour of lynseed ℥ j.; of flour of fenegrek dj.[3] ℥.; of erbis I-staumpid half a pound. & boile alle þese togidere in a panne ouer þe fier, & stire it weel wiþ a spature; & þis maturatif leie on a lynnen clooþ, & leie it on þe postyme til þat it be maturid / & whanne þat þe postyme is maturid, make þe quytture, if þou maist, be cast to þe wounde; & if it mai not be cast to þe wounde, opene þe place þat is moost lowist þere, as þe quytture mai best goon out; & þanne hele þe wounde, as I schal telle in þe þridde chapitle of apostymes / Take hede alwey to þis techinge; & if þe postyme were for þe prickynge of a senewe, ne leie not þerto þis potage maturatijf, but wiþ þe oynement of oile of rosis, & of opere þingis, as it is seid in þe woundis of senewis /

[2] *bigynnen*, mistake for *bigynne*. [3] *dimidium*.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.
maturatyff
[4 fol. 52 *b*]

after þe quantyte of mete þat he haþ takyn, make hym a clistry, oþer a suppositorye onys iche day. & ȝif þou maiste noȝt with alle þese þynges defendyn þe lyme from aposteme, yt is an yuele signe, for þe lyme ys feble, & þe humores ben wykkede; þen begynne to maturen þe swellynge, with potage y-made of flour, oyle & water, oþer ellys with þis maturatyff: ℞ malwe leuys, leffys of vyolett, & þe rote of holy hokke; seþe hem [4]wel in water, & þanne stampe hem, & take a pounde of þe water þat þey be sodyn yn, & of comyn oyle ℥ iij, of whete flour ℥ iij, of flour of lynsed .℥. j, of flore vynegreke ℥ ß, of erbys i-stamped lb.[5] ß; & boylle alle þese togedire, in a pan ouere þe fyre, & stire yt wel wiþ a spator; & þis maturatyff leye on a lynne cloth̃, & leye on þe posteme, tyl þat yt be maturyd; & whanne þat þe posteme is matured, make þe quyter, ȝif þou maist, ben y-cast to þe wounde; & ȝif it may noȝt ben y-cast to þe wounde, opyne þe place þat ys most lowest þere, as þe quyter may best gone out; & þan helyn þe wounde, as y schal tellyn, in þe þridde chapyteH of Apostemys. Take hede alweye to þis techynge, þat ȝif a posteme were for þe prikynge of a synwe, ne leye noȝt þereto þis potage maturatyff, but wyt þe vncture of oyle of roses & of oþer þynge, as yt is seyde in þe woundys of synwys. þou schalt

[5] MS. lj

þou schalt knowe þe yuel discrasie of a wounde, [1] if þat þou seest þe skyn þat is aboue þe wounde to reed & to hoot *in* felynge, þanne þe wounde is discrasie in hete; namely, if þat *per* come out of þe wounde[2] a sotil quytture, reed; þilke discrasie þou schalt helpe wiþ coldynge þe lyme aboute þe wounde *with* oile of rosis & vnguentum album, Rasis of ceruse, which þou schalt fynde *in* þe antidotarie, & *with* þe ius of þe opere eerbis colde. [1 lf. 29] 1. A hot dyscrasia, Nota

& þou schalt knowe a cold discrasie bi þe whiȝtnes eiþer þe wannesse of þe place / & whanne þe place is cold *in* towchinge, & whanne þat þe quytture is þicke; þe which discrasie þou schalt remeue bi þe enoynture of hote oiles, as oile of coste,[3] oile of laurine, oile of enforbium, & so opere hoote oilis / 2. a cold dyscrasia, discrasies l. h.

A moist discracie þou schalt knowe bi þe neischenes of þe place, & bi aboundaunce of whiȝt liquide rotenes, þe which þou schalt helpe wiþ desiccatiuis: as wiþ waischinge of wiyn & hony togidere, *in* þe whiche ben soden balaustie,[4] gallis & þe ryndis of some garnadis, or alle or summe bi hem-silf / 3. a moist dyscrasia, R

þe drie discrasie þou schalt knowe bi þe smalnes of þe lyme, & þe smalnes of þe lippis of þe wounde, & litil quytture, if þat þe quytture be þinne; þe which discrasie þou schalt [5]helpe: *with* 4. a dry dyscrasia. [5 lf. 29, bk.]

[2] MS. erroneously inserts *quytture* after *wounde*.

[3] *oile of coste*, Lat. cum oleo de castoreo.

[4] *balaustie*. Balaustium, the floure of the wylde Pomgranate. Halle. *Table*, p. 16.—1565. Turner, *Herbal*, II., fol. 49 b., calls it Balaustrum.

---

y-knowe þe euyH dyscrasie of a wounde, ȝif þat þou sest the schyn þat is aboute þe wounde to reed, & to hot in felynge, þenne þe wounde is discrasyede in hete, namly ȝif þat þere come out of þe wounde a sotyH qyter & a red; & þilke discrasye þou schalt helpen *with* coldynge þe lyme aboute þe wounde, *with* oyle of roses, & *with* vnguentum album—rasis of ceruse—whyche þou schalt fynde in þe Antodarie, & wiþ ius of opere colde erbys. & þou schalt knowe a colde discrasye by þe whitnesse oþer þe wannesse of þe place, & whanne þe place ys colde in touchynge, & whanne þat þe quyter is thykke; the whiche discrasye þou schalt remeffen, by þe vncture of hote oyles, as oyle of cost, oyle lauryne, oyle of enforbium, & so oþer hote oyles. A moiste discrasie þou schalt knowe by þe nesschenesse of þe place, & by þe Abundaunce of whit lyquyde rotnesse, þe whiche þou schalt helpyn *with* defficatyffes: as *with* wasschynge of wyn & honye togedres, in [6]þe whiche bulþ y-sode balaustye, gallys, & þe ryndes off poume garnettys, oþer alle oþer some by hem-selffen. þe drye dyscrasye þou schalt knowe by þe smalnesse of þe lyme, & þe smalnesse of þe lippes of þe woundes & litel quyter, ȝif þat the quyter be þenne; þe whiche discrasye þou Add. MS. 12,056. [6 fol. 53 a.]

castynge on of hoot water til þat þe lyme wexe reed, & wiþ an oynement þou muste[1] grece, as hennes, goos, & dokis, þe marie boon of a calf, & wiþ plenteuousnes of good mete þat norischiþ: as þe broþis of fleisch, & temperate wiyn, & rere eyren, & smale fischis, & wiþ reste, & softnes of al þe bodi, & of þe lyme þat is hirt; &

As soon as the dyscrasia is removed, alwey to þis techinge take hede þat as soone as a membre is brouȝt to his kyndeli disposicioun, anoon aȝenstondiþ[2] wiþ contrarious

try to heal the wound itself. medicyns, & turne aȝen to þe principal cure of þe wounde. But þenke nouȝt to heele þe wounde as longe as it is enpostemed, or ellis haue an yuel discrasie; but first remeue þilke discrasie, or þat þou heele þe wounde / For whanne two þingis þat schulden ben heelid ben togidere, & þe oon of hem mowe not be helid wiþoute helynge of þat oþere, first we schulen heelen him, þat mai nouȝt be heelid wiþoute þat oþer helyng, as þe apostyme eiþer þe dis-

Auicen crasie / þus Auicenne techiþ in þe laste chapitle of þe firste book. Neuer-þe-lattere forȝete nouȝt þe principal cure, þat whanne þe accidentis ben asesid turne aȝen to þe principal cure //

[1] *þou muste*, mistake for *of moiste*.
[2] *aȝenstondiþ*, mistake for *aȝenstonde*.

---

Add. MS. 12,056. schalt helpen wiþ castynge on of hote water, tyl þat þe lyme wexe rede, & with an oyntynge of moiste grecys, as hennys, gosys & dokys, & þe marye bon of a Calff, & with plentefoste of gode mete, þat norysschyth̄, as þe brothys of flesch̄, & temperat wyn, & rere eyren, & smale fyssches, & oþere gode þynges, & with reste and with softnesse of alle þe body & of þe lyme þat is y-hurte; & alwey to þis techynge take hede, þat as sone as a membre ys y-broȝt to his kendlye dysposicioun, anon aȝeyne stonde with contrarye ouse medycine, & turne aȝeyne to þe pryncipal cure of þe wounde. But þynke nozt to helyn þe wounde, as longe as þe wounde ys apostomyde, oþere ellys haþ an yuele discrasye, but first remywe þilke discrasye ere þan þou hele þe wounde. For whenne þat tweye þynges þat scholde ben y-helyde, buþ togedres, & þe on of hem mowe nozt ben y-helyde without helynge of þe oþer, ffirst we schulle helyn hym, þat may nozt be helyde without helynge of þe oþere, as þe posteme oþer þe dyscrasye; & þus Avycene techith̄ in þe last chapiteH of þe first bokys. Ne nevere þe latere ne forȝete nozt þy pryncipal cure, þat whanne the accidentes ben asesyde, turne aȝeyne to þe princypale cure.

¶ Þe .vij. chapitle of þe .iij. techinge is a wounde maad with a wood hound, eiþer of ony oþer venemous beest /

[1 lf. 30] [2] ¶ Capm vijm

Bite of a dog.

Ascertain whether the dog was rabid.

4 [1] BVt whanne an hound haþ biten a man, loke first if þat þe hound be wood; & if þat þe hound be not wood, heele þe wounde as þou doist oþere comoun woundis; & if þat þe hound were wood, þou schalt knowe it bi certeyn cause & disposiciouns / 8 For a wood hound fleeþ mete & water; & he renneþ hidirward & þidirward as a drunken man, wiþ open mouþ & his tail bitwene hise leggis; his tunge hangiþ out, but he wolde biten alle men; ne he knowiþ not þo men þat ben in houshold. He berkiþ not / & if 12 þat he oþirwhile berke, his vois is ful hors, & oþere houndis fleen fro him & berken vpon him. Also þou schalt knowe bi disposicioun of þe same wounde. For if þat þou wetist a crumme of breed in þe blood of þe wounde, & 3euest it to anoþer hound to ete, he 16 wole not ete it; & if þat he ete it, he wole die / Or ellis take an ote, & staumpe it, & leie it on þe wounde al ny3t, & on þe morowe 3eue it to an hen; & þe hen wole not ete it / & if þe hen ete it, þe hen schal die /

Food saturated with blood of the wound kills other animals.

[2] Heading to leaf 30, in a later hand, *Off woundes betten with doges.*

---

20 ¶ The vij Chapitelle of þe þridde techynge is off a wounde y-made of a wod hounde, oþere of eny oþere venymouse bestys.

Whenne þat an hounde hath byten a man, ffirste loke 3if þat þe 24 hounde be wod; & 3if þat þe hounde be no3t wood, hele þe wounde as þou dost oþere comyn woundys; & 3if þat þe hounde were wood, þou schalt y-knowe yt by certeyne causes, & by dispo[3]siciouns. Ffor a wod hounde fleyth mete, & ffleyth watere, & oþerwhyle he dyeth 28 whenne þat he seþ water; & he rennyth hydirwarde & þedirwarde, as a dronken man, wiþ opyn mouþ & hys taylle bytwene his leggys, hys tunge hongyth out, he wolde byte alle men, ne he ne knowyth no3t þo men þat ben his housholde, he berkyth no3t; & 3if þat 32 he oþerewhyle berke, hys voys ys ful hors, & oþere houndys flen from hym & berkyn vpon hym. Also þou schalt y-knowe by dysposicioun of þe same wounde, for 3if þat þou wetyst a crumme bred in þe blod of þe wounde & geuyste yt to an oþer houde to 36 etyn, he wyl no3t etyn yt, & 3if þe hounde etyþ yt he wyll deyen; oþere ellys take a note & stampe yt, & leye on þe wounde al ny3t, & on þe morwe 3if yt to an henne, sche wyl no3t etyn hyt; & 3if sche etyth yt sche wyl deyen. & anone as þou wost þe hounde ys

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3 fol. 53 b.]

If the dog was rabid, withdraw the blood from the wound by cupping, cauterization, [1 lf. 30, bk.] and attrahent remedies.

And anoon as þou woost þat þe hound was wood, sette a greet ventuse aboue vpon þe wounde, & drawe out þe myche blood out of þe wounde, & aftirward drawe abrood þe wounde; & aboue al oþere þing, brennynge of hoot yren to þe ground of þe wounde is moost profitable. & leie aboue þe wounde actractiuis, to drawe out þe venym / Summe of þese actractiuis ben symple, & summe compound / Symple beþ: þe lyuere of þe same wood hound þat boot þe man, garlik stampid, salt fisch, aischis of wiyn lies, appoponak þat is woudirful, þe leeues of a gourde,[2] & þe rote of fenegrek, þe gile[3] of fisch, & amptyn I-stampid / Þese medicyns ben compound: vreyne of a ȝong man wiþ nitre; ouþer mintis stampid[4] wiþ salt, & distemperid wiþ vynegre, & maad an enplaster. Anoþer medicyn compound: take floris eris & salt, of ech .x. parties, & þe fatte of a calf, & of a wolf þat sufficiþ, & make a plastre / Anoþer: take schepis talow & buttere, & make a plaster / Þis wounde schal be holden open at þe leeste fourty daies, & þis schal be do aboute þe place. In anoþer maner regimen / Vndirstonde þat þe man þat is biten, schal not be lete blood in þe bigynnynge, lest þe venym be drawe abrood bi oþere lymes; ne þou schalt ȝeue him no laxatif, lest it drawe þe venym to þe entrailis wiþinne; but þou schalt sette

Simple remedies. Haue it [?]

Compound remedies.

Another treatment:

[2] *gourde*, cucumer. See *Prompt. Parv.*, 203, *Goord*, Cucumer, cucurbita, colloquintida.

[3] *gile*, ne. gill. See Mätzner, *Dict.*, p. 268. The Latin has, *gluten*, glue.

[4] *stampid*, in margin.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

wod, sette a gret ventuse aboue þe wounde & drawe out myche blod out of þe wounde, & afterwarde drawe abrod þe wounde; & abouen alle oþere thynge brennynge of hote eyren to þe depþe of þe wounde ys most profitable, & aftere leye aboue þe wounde attractyfes, to drawe out þe venym. Some of þese attractifes beþ symple, & some beþ componyd. Symple ben: þe lyffere of þe same wod hounde þat bote þe man, garlyke y-stampyde, salt fyssch, asschys of vyne, Opopanac ys wondirful, þe leuys of a Gourde, & þe rote of ffyne-greke, þe gele of fysschs, & amptes y-stampyde. Þese medycynes ben componyde: vryne of a ȝonge man, with nytre oþer myntes, i-stampyde with salt & distempred with vynegre, & y-mad in emplastre. An oþere medicyne componyd: R floris eris & salt an ten parties, & þe fat of a calff twelf partyes, & make a plastre. An oþere: take schepys talwȝ & buttre, & make emplastre. Þis wounde schal ben y-holde opyne at þe leste fourty dayes; al þis schal be do about þe place. [5] In an oþere manere regimen vndirstande, þat þe man þat is y-bete ne schal nouȝt be lete blod in the bygynnynge, lest þe venym be drawe abrod by oþere lymes. Ne þou ne schalt ȝif hym non laxatyff, lest yt drawe þe venym to þe entraylles withynne; but þou schalt setten on þe place a stronge

[5 fol. 54 *a*]

vpon þe place a strong' ventuse, as it' is seid tofore, [1]þat' it' mowe drawe miche of þe blood. And whanne þat' .iij. daies ben passid, it' is not' yuele to lete blood & to purge with a litil purgacioun, þat' purgiþ þe malencolie, as with decoccioun epithimum,[2] wiþ gotis whey; & norischiþ him with dieting', þat' fattiþ & makiþ him glad & bliþe; & waische his heed with decoccioun of' water, þat' þe feet' & þe heed of a weþer were soden ynne. Ne late him not' þirsten ne hungren, suffren, ne traueilen; & so if' þat' god wole, þou maist' him kepe from perile / & ech dai to a monþis eende he schal take opere symple medicyns or compounned / *— — Take þe ayschis of' crabbis I-brent in an ouene .iiij. parties, of' frankencense vij. parties, & make hem into a poudre / þe pacient' schal take ech dai of' þis poudre .ij .ʒ. / Anoþer medicyn: take þe pouder of' crabbis brent' vj. parties, gencian .iij parties, terre sigillate oon partie, make poudre / If' þat' þou were not' at' þe bigynnynge, & it' bigynne to haue yuel accidentis: as yuel þouʒtis, soruful metynge in his sleep, & þat he be wroþ & grucche, & woot' not' whi; & if' men aske him ony þing', & ʒeueþ no good answere þerto, & fley lith,[3] & he haþ alle opere signes of' malencolie, [4]þanne ʒeue to him a

use first cupping, [1 lf. 31]

then blood-letting and a purgative.

Keep the patient in good spirits.

During a month he must take every day a simple or a compound medicine.

If the patient seems melancholy, [4 lf. 31, bk.]

[2] *Epithemum.* See Notes.

[3] *fley lith*, altered to *fleyntlith* with different ink. Read: *fleyth liʒt.*

---

ventuse, as yt is seyde tofore, þat he mowe drawe myche of þe blode. & whenne þat þre dayes ben passyde, yt is nouʒt yuele to leten blod, & to purge with a lyʒt purgacioun, þat purgith þe malyncolye, as with decoccioun of Epytemum, with gotys wheyʒ; & norissche hym with dyetynge, þat fattytħ hym & make glad & bliþe; & wassche hys hed with decoccioun of water, þat þe fet & þe hed of a weþire ben y-sodyn yn. Ne lete hym nouʒt þrustyn, ne suffren hungyre ne traueħ, & so ʒif þat god wyl, þou maiste kepen hym from peryle. & euery day to a moneþ ende, he schal taken opere symple medycynes, oþer componed. *Symple buþ: Asa ffetida. Asa dulsis, polm,[5] terra sigillata, Wermot, Kockuħ,[6] mirre & gencyane. Medycynes componed gode: *R þe assches of crabbys y-brent in an Offyn .iiij partyes, of ffrankensens vij partyes, make a poudre; þe pacient schal take iche day of þis poudre ʒ .ij wiþ wyn. An oþer: R þe poudre of crabbys y-brende vj partyes, of gencyane iij. parties, terre sigillate one partie, make poudre. ʒif þat þou were noʒt at þe bygynnynge, & he bygynneth to haue yuele Accidentes, as yuele þouʒtes, schrewyde metynge in his slepe, & þat he be wroth & grucche & wot noʒt why, & ʒif men aske hym enye þynge he ʒeuyth no gode answere þere to, & ffleyþ lyʒt, & he hath alle opere signes of malencolye, þanne ʒif to hym a medycine y-made

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5] *polium*, Paley. [6] *Kockull*, Nigella. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 86.

give him troches composed of cantharides and spices, ℞ N

medicyn m*aad* of' cantarides / Take old grete cantarides, & do awei þe heed & þe wyngis, .ij dragmis; lentis[1] I-clensid, .ʒ j.; safron, spikenard, clowis, canel, .ana .ʒ s'.; bete hem weel, & make of' hem smale ballis, þat' ech bal weiȝe a dragme. & ȝeue o. bal at þre tymes, at' ech tyme þe weiȝte of' þre cornys of' wheete, til þat' he pisse blood; þanne he schal be saaf' / For whanne þou art' sikir, heele þe wou*n*dis aft*er* þat' fourti daies ben passid, i*n* þe same man*er*. If' þat' þe wounde were m*aad* of' bitinge of' an eddre or of' ony o*per* venemous beest', þe leche schal take heede to drawe abrod þe wou*n*de, & sette aboue a uentuse, & drawe out' miche blood; & it is miche worþ to enuyrou*n*ne þe place aboute þat' is biten wiþ brome I-stampid / For if' þat' þe p*r*ickynge be i*n* þe foot' or i*n* þe hand, if' þou enuyrou*n*ne þe arme w*ith* brome, it' lettiþ þe venym to go vpward; & ȝeue hi*m* þe medicyns writ*en* aboue, & also lete þe wou*n*de be open, til þe venym be excludid /

until he micturates blood.

Treat bites from venomous beasts similarly.

¶ Capm viijm

## THe .viij chapitle of þe þridde techi*n*ge of þe firste tretis of a wou*n*de m*aad* in a ioynt, & is dislocate /

Wha*n*ne þat' a wou*n*de is i*n* a lyme, & þe boon of þe same lyme is to-broke [2]atwo & dislocate—þat is to scie out' of' ioynte, þa*n*ne

[2 lf. 32]

[1] *docsnet* above *lentis;* meaning ?

[2] Heading to leaf 32 in a later hand: *Off wo*u*ndes in Jintes.*

Add. MS. 12,056.

of cantarydes. Take *olde* grete kantarydes & do aweye þe hed & þe wynges ʒ. ij., lentys I-clansed ʒ. j., saferen, spikenard, clowys, canell ana ʒ. ß.—in o*per*e bokys—ipone hem wel & make of hem smale ballys þat weyȝen j. penye wyȝt; & ȝif a baꝺ at þre tymes, at iche tyme þe wyȝt of vij cornys of whete, tyl þat he pysse blod, for þenne he schal be saff'. Ffor whenne þou art sykere, hele þe

[4 fol. 54 b]

[4] wou*n*de aft*er* þat fourty dayes ben passyde, in þe same man*er*. ȝif þat a wou*n*de were mad of þe bytinge of an eddre, o*per*e of eny o*per*e venymouse beste, þe leche schal take hede to drawe abrode þe wou*n*de & setten abou*en* a ventuse & drawe out myche blod, & yt is myche worþ to enviro*un* þe place about*en* þat is y-betyn wiþ brome y-stampyde. Ffor ȝif þat þe p*r*ikynge be in þe fot o*per*e in þe hande, ȝif þou enviro*un* þe arme o*per*e þe legge w*ith* brome, yt latteþ þe venym to gone vpwarde; & ȝif hy*m* þe medycines y-wryten aboue, & also tryacle, & lete þe wou*n*de be opyne, tyl al þe venym be escludyde.

## The viij. Chapytelle of þe þridde techynge of the ffirste tretys is of a wou*n*de y-made in a joynt & is dislocat.

defensiffe

Whenne þat' a wou*n*de is in a lyme & þe bon of þe same lyme ys tobroken atwo & is dislocat—þat is to sigge, out of joynt,

it' is good þat' þou putte in þe wounde whanne þe blood is staunchid, & also aboue þe wounde þe ȝolke of' an ey wiþ oile of rosis, & anointe al þe lyme aboute þe wounde with two parties of' oile of' rosis, & half' oon partie of' vynegre maad þicke wiþ bole armoniak, til þe quytture be engendrid, & þat' þou be sikir þat' no postyme schal come. Ne take noon hede to brynge togidere þe parties of' þe boon þat' is to-broken or dislocate, til viij. daies ben goon in þe wyntir, & v. in þe somer; for þanne it schal make quytture, and be sikir from swellynge; & þanne brynge togidere þe brynkis eiþer þe disiuncture after þe techynge þat' schal be seid in þe chapitle of' algebra. & if' þat' þe prickynge eiþer þe dislocacioun nediþ splentis, make þat þe splentis & byndynge faile aboue þe wounde. þat' þou may do if' þat' þou kutte þe splentis & þe bindynge aboue þe wounde with a knyf' or a rasour, & in drawynge abrood þe hoole of' þe wounde[1] aboue þe wounde wiþ a nedle, so þat' þou maist' bi þat' hole ech day chaunge þi medicyn of þe wounde wiþoute choudynge[2] of' þe boond þat' þou madist' first' aboute þe boo[3]nys þat' weren broken ouþer dislocate; þe which boond þou schalt' nouȝt' remeuen til tyme schal be teld in his place, but þou schalt' bynde aboue þilke

If the wound is accompanied by fracture or dislocation of a bone, ℞ dress the wound, and do not join the bone before some time elapsed.

Cut a hole in the splints or bandages, through which the wound can be dressed.

[3] lf. 32, bk.]

[1] *wounde*, error for *bonde*. [2] *choudynge*, error for *chongynge*.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

þanne it is gode þat þou putte in þe wounde, whanne þe blod is y-staunchyde, & also aboue þe wounde, þe ȝolke of an eyȝe, with oyle of roses, & anoynt alle þe lyme aboute þe wounde, wiþ two partyes of oyle of' rosys, & wiþ half on party of vynegre, y-made þikke with bol Armonyake, tyl þat þe quyture be engendered,[4] & þou be sykere þat none Aposteme schaH come. Ne take none hede to brynge togedere þe parties of þe bon þat is tobroken oþere dislocat, tyl viij daies ben go in þe wyntire, & fyff' in the somere; for þenne yt schal make quytere, & be sykere from swellynge; & þenne brynge togedire þe brekynge oþere þe dysynncture aftere þe techynge þat schal be seyde in þe ChapyteH of **Algebra**. & ȝif þat þe brekynge oþere þe dyslocacioun nedyþ splyntes, make þat þe splyntes & þe byndynge faylen aboue þe wounde; & þat þou maiste do, ȝif þat þou kyttest þe splyntes & þe byndinge aboue þe wounde with a knyf oþere a rasoure, & in drawynge abrod þe hole of þe bonde aboue þe wounde [5]wiþ a nedle, so þat þou maiste by þilke hole euery day chaungen þe medycine of þe wounde withouten chaungynge of þe bonde, þat þou madest firste aboute þe bonys þat were broke oþere dislocat. þe whiche bonde þou schalt nouȝt remeffen, tyl þe tyme þat schal be tolde in hys place; bote you schalt bynde aboue þilke

[5 fol. 55 a]

[4] MS. engenderes.

boon a newe boond, which þou schalt' remeue as ofte as þou chaungist þi wounde. & whanne þat' þou art sikir fro þe enpostemynge, & whanne þat' þou hast' sett' togidere þe boonys þat' were sett' togidere & dissolate, þanne leie vpon þe wounde bi þe hole
℟ þat' þou madist' in þe boond, a mundificatif' of' mel roset' colat', & of' barli mele til þe wounde be clensid; & leie on þat' a[1] mundificatif', þredis of' oolde whiȝt' lynnen cloþ, til þat' þe wounde be ful clensid; aftirward regendre fleisch, & aftirward consowde with regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis, whiche þat' schulen be seid in þe ende of þe book /

¶ Capm ixm

## THe nynþe chapitle of þe .iij. techinge of þe firste tretis is of fluxblood of a wounde /

Hæmorrhage arises from an injury, corrosion, or weakness of the veins and arteries—

þer ben ij. maner of' causis þat' makiþ blood to blede out' of' a mannys body; þe oon cause is clepid—cause coniuncte; & þe toþer—cause antecedent' / þe enchesoun of' cause coniuncte is compounned of' þe mouþis of þe veynes and arteries, or ellis whanne þat þe veynes ben kut' atwo, or ellis corrosion of' þe bodies of' þe
[2 lf. 33][3] 2 same veynes & arteries, or ellis to greet' febilnes or to greet' losenes / And þer ben manie enchesouns of' cause antecedentis: as to

[1] *a*, erroneously inserted.
[3] Heading to leaf 33, *Off fflux off blode in woundes.*

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

bonde a newe bonde, þe whyche þou schalt remeffe, as often as þou chaungiste thy wounde. & whanne þou art sykere from empostomynge & þou haue sette togedire þe bonys þat were sette togedire & dislocat, þenne leye vpon þe wonde by þe hole þat þou madyst in þe band a mundifycatyff' of mel rosat colat, & of barlye mele, tyl þe wonde be clansyde; & leye on þilke mundyficatyff' þredys of olde clene whyte lynne cloþ, tyl þat þe wounde be ful clansyde; afterward regenere fflesch, & afterward consoude wiþ regeneratyfes & consolidatyfes, whiche þat schullen ben seyde in þe ende of þe boke.

## The ix Chapitle of þe þridde techynge is of fflux blod off a wounde.

þere beþ two maners causes þat makyth blod to bleden out of' mannes body; þat on cause is clepyde cause conjuncte, & þat oþer cause antecedent. þe encheson of cause conjuncte ys openynge of þe mouþes of þe veynes & þe Arteries, oþer ellys whanne þat the veynes beþ kut atwo, oþer ellys corosion of þe bodyes of þe same veynes & arteries, oþer ellys to gret feblenesse, oþere to gret losnesse. & þere beþ manye enchesouns & causes antecedente: as to myche

myche frelenes[1] of blood, or ellis to myche acute of blood, & also manye opere causis þer ben þat ben clepid cause of[2] primitif: as smytynge þat woundith, to greet lepinge, criyng; wraþe, chidynge, & so manye opere; & ech of þese causis tofore seid haþ his maner heelynge by him-silf in fisik medicinal. But it is not þe entencioun of þis book to treten[3] of blood þat bledi þ of wounde, þat is maad with wounde, þe which may be restreyned with craft of ciurgie. In flux of blood þat comeþ of a wounde, þe leche muste loke þe disposicioun, þe abitude, age, vertu, & complexioun of him þat is woundid; if þat þese acorden, & he be myȝty in vertu, he schal blede myche blood at þe wounde, þouȝ þat þe leche be clepid at þe bigynnynge, but if it be so þat he be[4] feble ouer greetliche. & if þat nede constreyne þe leche to staunche blood, he muste loke if þat þe blood go out at þe veynes capillares, þat ben smale veynes as hecris of a mannys heed / & þanne oonly þe whiȝt[5] of an ey leid aboue with towȝe of flex suffisiþ / whanne þat þe parties of þe wounde ben brouȝt togidere; & if þou caste aboue poudre of lym aforeseid in þe chapitle of sowynge of woundes, it schal be þe bettere; for þat poudre wiþstreyneþ þe blood & consoudiþ þerparties

from fullness of blood—causæ antecedentes; from an accident—causæ primitiva.

If the patient is strong, let him bleed freely; if he is weak use a mild styptic when the blood is lost from the capillaries; [5 lf. 33, bk.]

[1] *frelenes*, mistake for *fulnesse*. [2] *of*, erroneous insertion. See below. [3] *but*, omitted. Latin: Non est huius libri intentio tractare nisi de fluxu sanguinis. . . [4] *be*, added in margin in same hand.

---

fulnesse of blod, oþer ellys to myche Acuyte of blod & also manye oþere causes; and þere beþ oþere causes þat beþ clepyd causes prymytiff; as smytinge þat wondiþ, to gret lepynge, cryinge, wraþþe, chydinge, & so many[6] oþer & iche of þese causes tofore seyde haþ hys manere helynge by hym-selfen in fesyke medecynal. Bot it ys noȝt þe entencyoun of þis boke, to tretyn but of blod, þat bledi þ of wounde, þat is y-mad wiþ wounde, the [7]whiche may be restreynde by crafte of surgerye. In flux of blod, that comyth of a wounde, þe leche most loke þe disposicioun, þe Abytude, Age, vertu & complexioun of hym þat is y-woundyde; & ȝif þat þese acorden, & he be myȝtye in vertue, he schal blede myche blod at hys wounde, þowȝ þat þe leche be clepyde at þe byggynninge, bot ȝif it so be þat he feble ouere gretlyche. & ȝif nede constreyne þe leche to staunche þe blode, he most loke ȝif þat þe blod go out of þe Veynes capyllares, þat beþ smale veynes as herys of mannys hed; & þanne only þe whyte of an eyȝe, y-leyde aboue wiþ towȝ of flex suffiseþ, whenne þat þe parties of þe wounde beþ brouȝt togedire; & ȝif þou cast aboue þe poudre of lyme, tofore seyde in the chapyteH of sowynge of woundes, yt schal be þe betyre; for þe poudre wiþstreyneþ þe blod & consoudeþ þe partyes of þe wounde, togedire.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[7 fol. 55 *b*]

[6] MS. may.

when it is lost from a larger vein use a stronger styptic;

when it is lost from an artery press the artery until a clot is formed,

and apply a styptic

Renew the remedy carefully.

of' þe wounde togidere. & if þe blood come fro grete veynes he mai nouȝt so sumtyme be constreyned, but' it' nediþ a stronger medicyn & also a more cautele / & if' þat' þe blood go out' of' arterie, þou schalt' knowe it' bi construccion & dilatacion of' þe same arterie—þat' is to seie, þat' þe blood go out wiþ lepinge & oþerwhile wiþ wiþdrawinge[1]; & þanne sette þi fyngir vpon þe mouþ of' þe grete veyne or ellis on þe arterie, & holde þi fyngir þeron bi a greet' hour; for þanne by grace sum greet' drope of' blood may be congelid togidere & þere-bi vertu may be myche comfortid; aftirward leie plenteousliche of' þis medicyn vpon þe veyne eiþer þe arterie þat' is kutt' atwo / Take frankencense, whiȝt' gummis, & fatt' .ij. ȝ., aloes .ȝ. j., make poudre & distempere with þe white of' an ey as þicke as hony / after take heeris of' an hare smal kutt', [2 lf. 34] [2]medle alle þese togidere, & þer is no medicyn so good as þis medicyn is in streynynge of' blood & consowdynge of' þe veyne / But' whanne þat' þou comest' to chaunge þat' medicyn of' þe wounde, do nouȝt' þe medicyn awey wiþ strenkþe, but' leie aboue of' þe same medicyn[3] moist', to neische þe firste medicyn, þat' it' myȝte falle awey bi him-silf' / Neþeles it' is possible þat' a medicyn caustik, þat' is to seie, a medicyn þat' brenneþ, sumner staunchiþ

℞

[1] Lat.: quod sanguis exit cum saltu secundum constrictionem et dilatationem ipsius arteriæ.

[3] MS. *medicyn*, repeated.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

*&* ȝif þe blod come from gret Veynes, he may noȝt so sumtyme be constreynde, but it nediþ a strengere medycyne & also a more cautele; & ȝif þat þe blod go out of an arterye, þou schalt y-knowe yt be construction & dilatacioun, of þe same arterye—þat is to sigge, þat þe blod goþ out with lepynge, & oþer whyle with wiþdrawynge, & þenne sette þy fyngere vpon þe mouþ of þe gret veyne, oþere ellys þe Artarye, & holde þy fyngere þere on by a grete oure; for þenne by hap sum grete drope of blod may be congelyde togedre, & þereby vertu may be myche y-comfortyde. Afterewarde leye plentyfullyche of þis medycine vpon þe [4]Veyne oþere þe arterye þat is kut atwo. ℞ ffrancencens, whyȝt gommous & fat ȝ. ii., Aloes ȝ. i., make poudre & distempre with þe whyȝt of an eyȝe as þykke as hony; after take herys of an hare smale & kutte, medle al þis pynge togedire, & þere ys no medicyne so gode as þis medycine is, in streyninge of blod & consoudynge þe Veyne. Bot whanne þat þou comyst to chaunge þe medycine of þy wonde, do noȝt awey þe medycine [5 fol. 56 *a*] wiþ strengþe, but [5]leye aboue of þe same medycine moist, to nessche þe firste medycine, þat yt myȝte fallyne awey by yt-selff'. Naþeles yt is possible, þat a medycine caustyke, þat ys to sigge a medycine

[4] *wounde*, cancelled before *veyne*.

blood þan þis medicyn of frank encense; & þou schalt haue greet plente of medicyne caustik *in* þe antidotarie, but we ben nouȝt sikir þat þe blood of þe veyne eiþer arterie anoþir tyme wole goon out, whanne þat þe schorf of þilke caustik Medicine[1] is remeued awey / but þis medicyn of encense *with* þe heeris of an hare not oonliche staunchiþ þe blood, but also sowdiþ[2] þe veyne & þe arterie, as I haue preued it ofte tymes / And for to ȝeue autorite I sette a saumple þat come sumtyme to myn hondis: A child of þre ȝeer old hadde a litil knyf *in* his hond, & he fel on þat knyf *in* þe former partie of þe þrote persched þe veyne organise; þer cowde no man it staunche, & þanne I was clepid, & I cam to þe child in greet haaste, & he hadde almost lost his siȝt; for hise iȝen *in* his heed weren turned vp so doun;[4] & þe blood come out at þe wounde whiȝt as whey, vnneþe he hadde no pouste[5] / & þanne I leide my fyngir on þe heed of þe veyne, & I heeld it faste þat þer myȝte no þing go out; & so I heeld þe veyne a greet hour, & þanne vertu of his bodi þat was almost lost quykenede aȝen, & þe pouse bigan to appere febiliche as it were a smal þred / þanne I sente to þe spiceris

The styptic is a surer remedy than a caustic.

*Nota bene*

*1st Example.* A child having cut its throat with a knife,

[3 lf. 34, bk.] the loss of blood caused collapse.

The vein was pressed,

[1] *medicine*, added in margin. [2] MS. *sowdynge*.

[4] *up so doun*. See Mätzner, *Dict.*, s. v. "doun." Latin: oculos habebat in capite revolutos.

[5] *unneþe he hadde no pouste*. This passage is corrupt; for the correct version see below.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

þat brennyth, sennore staunchyth blod, þenne þis medicine of encense; & þou schalt haue gret plente of medycine caustyke in þe antidotarye, but we beþ nouȝt sykere þat þe blod of þe Veyne, oþere þe arterye an oþer tyme wyl gon out, whanne þat þe serche of þylke caustyke medycine ys remywed awey. But þy medycine of ensence, *with* þe herys of an hare, noȝt only staunchiþ þe blod, but also *con*soudeþ þe Veyne, & þe Arterye, as y haue preuyde yt ofte tymes. And forto ȝif Autorite, I sette an saumple, þat come sum tyme to myn handys: A childe of þre ȝere olde, hadde a lyte knyf in hys haude, & he fel on þat knyf, & þe poynt of þe knyf, in þe fore partye of þe þrote, persyde þe Veyne organys; ne þere ne couþe no man yt staunche, & þanne y was y-clepyde & y come to þe child in gret haste, & he hadde almoste loste hys syght; for hys eyȝen in hys hed were turnyde vp so doun, & þe blode come out of þe wounde, whyte as wheyȝe, ne he ne hadde no pous, & þenne y leyde my fyngere on þe hed of þe veyne, & y helde faste þat noþynge myȝte go out, & so y helde þe veyne by a grete houre, & þe vertue of hys body þat was almost lost quyknede aȝeyne, & þe pous bygan to apere ffeblyche as yt were a smal þreed. þanne y

schoppe þat' was a greet' weye fro me / ne I remeuede not' awey my fyngir fro þe place, til þat' þe messanger cam aȝen, and þe child bigan þanne to opene hise iȝen; & þanne I ordeynede þis medicyn
a styptic applied, the to be maad, & plenteuousliche I leide it aboue þe wounde, & I
wound bandaged boond þe wounde wiþ plumaciols & with stupis[1] I-leid in whit' of' an ey, & with a boond I boonde it' streitly, and comaundide hem to ȝeue him crummys of' breed leid in water; & on þe morowe I come aȝen, & þanne I foond þe child comfortid / & neuere þe lattere I nolde nouȝt' vndo þe medicyn / þe fader preiede me wiþ greet' in-
[2 lf. 35] staunce to vndo þe medicyn, [2]but I wolde not'; & so I lete it' lie
and left undisturbed for four days. stille, til iiij. daies weren passid without remeuynge / & neþeles I visitide him ech day; & þe .iiij. day I vndide þe wounde, & þe medicyn was drie aboue þe wounde, so þat' I myȝte not' han remeued it' wiþoute greet' violence. & þanne I leide aboue þe whiȝt' of' an ey wiþ a litil oile of rosis, & so I lefte it lie oon day til on þe morowe I turnede aȝen; & þanne I remeuede awey þe medicyn
The child recovered on the fifth day. wiþouten violence, & I foond þanne þe wounde & þe veyne al hool. & of' þis heelyng' his fadir & alle hise neiȝeboris hadden greet'
If necessary wondir / And if' þat' wiþ þis medicyn þou maist' not' sowde þe arterie ne þe veyne, ne þow maist' not constreyne þe blood for sum

[1] "*Stupes* (in Surgery), Pledgets of Tow, Cotton, etc., dipt in scalding hot Liquors and apply'd to the diseased Part."—Phillips.

---

Add. MS. 12,056. sente to þe spysers schoppe, þat was a grete weye from me, ne y ne remywede nozt awey my fyngere from þe place tyl þat þe messagere come aȝeyne, & þe childe þenne bygan to opene hys eyȝen; and þanne y ordeynde þilke medycine to be mad, & plentyfuliche y leyde it abouen þe wounde, and y bonde þe wounde with plumaceoles & with stupes y-leyde in whyȝt of an eyȝe, & with a bande y bonde yt streytlye, & y comaundede hem to gyuen hym crommys of brede, y-leyde in water; and on þe morwene y come aȝeyne, & þenne y fonde þe childe y-cunffortede & neuere þe latere y wolde nouȝt vndo
[3 fol. 56 b] þe medycine; þe fladire [3]preyde me wiþ grete instaunce to se þe wounde, but y wolde nouȝt; & so y lete yt be, tyl foure dayes were passyd, withouten remeffynge & naþeles y vysitede hym every day; in þe fourþe day y vndyde þe bande, & þe medycine was drye aboue þe wounde, so þat y myȝte nozt haue remywede hyt withouten grete Vyolence. & þenne y leyde aboue þe whyte of an eyȝe, with a lytel oyle of roses, & so y lafte yt by on day. On þe morwen y turnyde aȝeyne, & þenne y remeffyde awey þe medycine withouten Vyolence, & þenne y fonde þe wounde & þe Veyne al hol. And of þis helynge þe fadire & alle his neyȝhboures hadden gret wondire. And ȝif þat with þis medicyne þou maiste nozt soude þe Arterye, ne þe Veyne, ne þou ne maiste nozt constreyne þe blod for sum opere Impedement,

oþer inpediment: þanne þou must ouþer bynde þe veyne, or drawe hir out of hir place, & bynde þe heed of þe veyne or arterie, ouþer þou must brenne hir wiþ hoot iren, & make on hir heed a greet cruste & a depe. ¶ Anoþer ensaumple: þer was a child of .xv. 3eer oold þat smoot him-silf with a smal knyf, & þilke knyf per-side o. senewe of þe arm & prickide a ueyne þat lay vnder þilke senewe. & for þe prickynge of þat senewe [1]he hadde greet akynge, & blood drewe doun to þe wounde & nou3t a3enstood [2] for alle þe staunchis of medicyns þat me my3te do þerto, it wolde not staunche, þe blood ran out at þe wounde. & colde medicyns ben greuous to senewis þat is prickid, for þei stoppen þat lyme, & þat is contrarious a3ens senewis; & þanne I demede nessessarie to drawe out al þe veyne out of her place & to bynde hir & to helpe þilke senewis wiþ oile of rosis / But þe modir of þat child sente for a lewde leche which þat repreuede foule my doom, & he bihi3te to heele safly þe child. He dwellide on þe cure, & I wente my wey / þe which leche took hede to him .x. daies, þat neiþir þe akynge ceesside ne þe blood was not staunchid, & so þe sijk man was ny3 deed / & at þe laste I was clepid, & I wolde not come to þe pacient / þanne a fisician þat was frend to þe freendis of þe pacient blamede þe modir & hir freendis þat þei hadden left counseil for þilke idiotis

use a ligature or torsion or cauterization of the bleeding artery or vein.

**Nota** *2nd Example* Case of a child which had pricked a nerve and a vein in its arm.

[1 lf. 35, bk.]

Lanfranc suggested tying the vein and applying oil of roses to the nerve.

A lay physician attempted another treatment,

but for ten days the child suffered acute agony and bleeding;

[2] *a3enstood*, for *a3enstondyng*.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

þan þou moste oþere bynde þe Veyne, oþere drawyne here out of here place, & wynde þe hed of þe Veyne oþer Arterye, oþer þou most brenne here wiþ hote yren, & maken on here hed a grete croste & a depe. An oþere exaumple: þere was a childe of xv 3ere olde, þat smot hym-self with a smal knyff, & þilke knyff persyde on Veyn of þe Arme, & prikyde a Veyne þat lay vndire þilke synwe. & for þe prikynge of þilke synwe he hadde grete akynge, & blod ran to þe wounde & no3t a3eynestondynge medycines þe blod ran out at þe wounde. Kolde medycines weren profitable to bledynge of wounde, and colde medycines beþ greffes to prikynge of synwes; for þey stoppyn þat lyme & þat ys contraryus a3eyns þe synwys; and þenne y demyde necessarye to drawe out alle þe Veyne out of here place & to bynde here & to helpen þilke synwe with oyle of roses. But þe modire of þilke childe sende for a lewyde leche, whyche þat reprevyde fouliche my doom, & he behy3te to helyn saffliche þe childe. He dwellyde on þe cure, & y went my weye. þe whyche leche toke hede to hym be ten dayes, þat neiþere þe akynge sesyde ne þe blod was no3t y-staunchyde, & so þe syke man was [3]ny3h ded. And at þe laste y was clepyde & y wolde no3t come to þe pacient. But þenne a ffysisyen þat was frende to þe man of þe pacyent, blamyde þe modire & here frendys, þat þey hadde lefte my consaylle

[3 fol. 57 a]

biheeste; & þilke fisician *pur*posyde, *after* þat he hadde herd my *coun*seil, þat *per* was noon o*per* wey þat myȝte saue þe sike *man* from deeþ, & he axide of þe sirurgi*an* wheþ*er* he coude do as I
[1 lf. 36] hadde seid bifore. & [1] he seide, þat he coude so doon, & so he 4
finally a surgeon tied the vein and saved the child. dide / He kutte þe skyn aboue þe veyne & twynede þe veyne *in* hise handis, & boond þe eende of þe veyne *with* a þred; & *after* he helde on þe senewe hoot oile of rosis, & so bi þis *coun*seil he was restorid aȝen to heelþe / But who so wolde aske how þat he 8
myȝte so manye daies be kept from þe crampe for þat he suffride so
Nota The bleeding of the wound prevented cramp. greet akþe / I answere & seie: þat þe cause was, for þat he bledde at þe wounde ech day, so þat þe senewe [2] miȝt not be to myche replete eiþ*er* ful of blood / Alle þese þ*in*gis I haue told, þat he þat 12
When styptics fail, use cauterization; rediþ he*m* mai þe visiloker *in* semblable causis worchen. & if bi þis medicyn he myȝte nouȝt sikirliche be restorid or restreyned þat falliþ riȝt seelde whane [3] / þ*an*ne we mote*n* bre*n*ne þe heed of þe veyne eiþ*er* of senewe [4] wiþ hoot iren, & þilke hoot iren myȝte 16
make an hard cruste. & be war þat þ*ou* touche not þe lippis of þe wou*n*de ne þe senewe, ne noon o*per* þ*in*g but oonly þe veyne wiþ
Nota hoot iren. & if al þis craft wole not helpen, we musten drawe

[2] *senewe*, error for *wounde*. Add MS. has the same mistake.

[3] *riȝt seelde whane*. *Polychron*, i. 133, wel silde whanne. Stratm., seldhwonne.

[4] *senewe*, error for *arterie*. The same mistake in Add. MS.

---

Add. MS. 12,056. for þe byhestys of þylke ydyote; & þilke fisysyens *pro*posyde, 20
after þat he had herde my co*un*seylle, þat þere was no*n* o*per*e wey þat myȝte saue þe syke *man* fro*m* þe deþ, & þe*n*ne he askyde a surgyne, wheþ*er*e he coube don as y hadde seyde byfore; & he seyde þ*at* he coube so don, & so he dyde. He kutte þe skyn aboue 24
þe Veyne, & twynede þe veyne in his handys, & bonde þe ende of þe Veyne wiþ a þrede, & afterwarde he hylde on þe synwe hote oyle of rosys, & so by þis co*un*seyle he was restoryde aȝeyne to hele. But ho so þ*at* wolde aske how þ*at* he myȝte so manye dayes be 28
kepyde fro*m* þe crampe, for þat he suffryde so grete akþe, I answere & sigge: þ*at* þe cause was, for he bledde at þe wou*n*de eche day, so þ*at* þe synwe ne myȝte noȝt be to myche replet o*per*e fulfyllede of blode. Alle þese thynges y haue tolde, þat he þat redyth̄ he*m* may 32
þe wyslocor in semblable causes wyrchen. And ȝif be þis medycyne he myȝte noȝt sykerliche be restreynede, þ*at* fallyth̄ ryȝte selden, þe*n*ne me moste bre*n*ne þe hed of þe Veyne o*per*e of þe synwe wiþ hote yren, þat þilke hote yren myȝte maken an harde croste. And 36
be war þ*at* þou touche noȝt þe lippes of þe wou*n*de, ne þe synwe, ne no*n* o*per*e thynge, bot only þe veyn *with* hote yren. And ȝif al þis crafte wolde noȝt helpyn me, me*n* most drawen out þe Veyne, &

out' þe veyne & fle þe fleisch aboue here, & wynde þe veyne sadliche & bynde hir heed wiþ þin han[1]dis.—Bi[2] my witt' I[3] trowe amene þat' a bodi schulde make þeron a knotte I-knytt' of' him-silf' or ellis knytt' wiþ a þred. I woot' neuere wheþer he meneþ; for he seiþ in anoþer place tofore þat' I schulde knytte it' wiþ a þred, & þerfore I suppose bi my witt' þat' I schulde make a knotte þeron of' his owne silf' bi my witt'.—& sumtyme it' happiþ þat' an arterie is broken ouþer kutt' & þe fleisch þat' is aboue is hool & nouȝt' to-broke neiþir I-kutt', or ellis þe fleisch þat' is aboue þe arterie is helid tofore & not' þe arterie; & vndir þe fleisch þer is a swellynge of' blood þat' is clepid aperisma[4] ouþer mater sanguinis, & þerof' þe pacient' haþ greet' drede, lest' þat' þe skyn to-breke & þe blood go out', þe which blood is hard to restreyne / for of' þis maner sijknes spekiþ galion & seiþ þat' a seruaunt' of' sich a disposicioun was helid of' a lewde man þat' tauȝte him þat' he schulde leie snow on his siknes. Wherfore a man may vndirstonde þat' to siche enpostymes colde medicyns & drie ben nessessarie. // // // // // // //

and if this fails, torsion and a ligature.

[1] If. 36, bk.]

In the case of rupture of an artery an aporisma is formed.

.Galion.

[2] An insertion of the scribe.

[3] *I trowe a mene*, "I believe to mean."

[4] *aperisma*, Lat. ophorisma seu mater sanguinis. Dufr. Gloss. med. Lat.: Aporisma—collectio sanguinis in aliquo membro extra venas non putrefacti maxime sanguinis arterialis.

---

flene þe flesch̄ aboue here & wynde þe Veyne sadlyche & bynde here hed *with* þyn handys. And sum tyme yt happyth̄, þat an Arterye is y-broke opere y-kutte, & þe flesch þat is abouen ys hol & noȝt to-broke ne y-kutte, opere ellys þe flessch̄ þat is aboue þe Arterye ys y-helyde & noȝt þe Arterye, & vndire þilke flessch̄ þere is a swellynge of blode [5]that is y-clepyde **Aporisma** opere matere **Sanguis** & þere of þe pacient hath̄ grete drede, lest þat þe skyn tobreke & þe blod gone out, þe whiche blod is hard to restreyne. Of þis manere seknesse spekyth̄ **Galyen**, & seiþ þat a seruaunt of swyche a dysposisioun was y-helyde of a lewyde man, þat tauȝte hym þat he scholde legge snowȝ vpon þat seknesse, wherfore a man may vndirstande, þat to swyche empostemys colde medicynes & drye beth̄ necessarye.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5] fol. 57 *b*]

¶ Capm xm

## The .x. chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste tretis [1] is of gouernaunce & diete [1] of men þat ben woun[2]did /

[2 lf. 37]

off dietynge for woundes.

Some physicians give nourishing food and wine,

pretending that water is harmful;

others allow only bread and water and sodden apples.

Both are dogmatic.

Þer ben manye men þat discorden of dietynge of men þat ben woundid, for sum men ȝeuen to alle men þat ben woundid, whebir þat it be in þe heed or in ony opere place, good wiyn & strong fleisch of capouns & of hennes; & þei affermen þat bi sich a maner wey sike woundid men ben sunnere heelid / for þei seien þat water putrifieth lymes þat ben woundid & engendrib enpostymes & corrumpib & feblib complexcioun & makib manye harmys / & summe opere men gouernen alle maner of sike men þat ben woundid wib breed & watir & applis soden til ten daies ben goon / And if god wole eende þis book, it schal be remeuynge errouris & declarynge & openynge doutis / I seie þat þese bobe sectis erren in her opynyouns, for þei taken hede oonly to her experimentis not considerynge resoun of complexioun of him þat is woundid / þe firste secte of þese two *[seyth] þat summen oonly eten breed & watir in so myche þei ben feblid þat blood & mater in her bodies may nouȝt be restorid; þe [3] which were sufficient to hele with her woundis,

[1—1] added in margin. [3] þe cancelled in MS.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

## ¶ The x Chapitle of þe þridde techynge of þe firste tretys is of men that beth y-woundyde.

Many men discorden of dietynge of men þat ben woundyde, for sum men ȝeuen to alle men þat ben woundyde, whebyer þat it be in þe hed oþer in enye opere place, gode wyn & stronge flesch of capouns & of hennys; and þey affermen þat by swyche a manere weye seke woundyde men sonnere ben y-helyde, ffor þey siggen þat watyre putrefyeb lymes, þat beþ woundyde, & engendrith Apostemys & corumpyth & feblyth complexiouns, & makyth many harmys. Sum opere men gouernen alle manere of syke men þat beþ woundyde with brede & water & Applys y-sodyn, tyl x dayes ben passyde, & ȝif þat god wyl ende þis bok, yt schal be remeffynge awey Errores, & declarynge & opnynge Dowtous. Y sigge, þat bobe þese sectes erryn in here opyniouns, ffor þey taken hede onlyche to here experymentys, nouȝt considerynge resoun of þe complexioun of hym þat is y woundyde. The firste secte of þese *seyth þat some men, onlye etynge bred & watere, in so myche ben y-feblyde, þat blode & matere in here bodyes may nouȝt be restoryde; þe whiche were suffi-

but' þei be*n* so feble þat' þei [1]dien, or ellis þei languren [2] longe tyme; ne þe lymes may not' receyue resonable ver*tu* as þei schulde; & þese maner men ben of' cold complexciou*n* & drie & her bodies weren feble or þei weren wou*n*did, & her stomak & her entrailis wiþi*n*ne weren feble / þe secu*n*de secte seiþ: þat' su*m*me þat' drinken wiyn & eten fleisch hadde i*n* þe me*m*bre þat' was wou*n*did a greet' enpostyme & a febre—& þo ben 3onge men þat' ben of' an hoot' complexiou*n* & a moist'—wherfore þei comau*n*dide to alle maner o*per*e of' complexiou*n* þat' þei schulden drynke no wiyn ne ete no fleisch / 3e schulen vndirsto*n*de þat' boþe þese sectis ben nou3t'; & þerfore I folowynge þe doctryne of' rasis, auicen, & galion & of' o*per*e doctouris, & also exp*er*imentis þat' I haue longe p*re*ued, I seie þat' it' is nedeful þat' a wou*n*did man i*n* þe bigy*n*nynge absteyne hi*m* fro wiyn, & namely if' þat' þe wou*n*de be i*n* þe heed eiþir in ony p*ar*tie of' a senewe. for þ*er* is no þi*n*g' þat' so soone smytiþ greuau*n*ce i*n* þe heed or þe senewis as wiyn; for he is soone co*n*uertid of' ky*n*dely heete & for he is so sotil, he p*er*siþ swiþe i*n*to þe senewis, & he assendiþ soone into þe heed, bryngynge wiþ hi*m* humouris & spiritis. It' [3]troubliþ a ma*n*nys witt', & wiyn greueþ alle me*n* þat' ha*n* a feble heed / & þ*er*fore i*n* alle maner wou*n*dis of'

[1 lf. 37, bk.]

The patient ought, according to **Rasis. & A. Galion.** to abstain from wine at the beginning.

**Nota** if he is wounded in his head or in a nerve,

[3 lf. 38]

[2] *languren*, languent. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 286, *Languryn yn sekenesse* langueo. And *ibid.* note 5.

---

sau*n*t to hele *with* here wou*n*dys, bot þey ben so feble þat þey dy3en, o*per*e ellys þey langoren longe tyme; ne þe lyme may no3t resseyuen resonable ver*tue*, as he scholde; & þese mane*re* of me*n* ben of a colde *com*plexiou*n* & a drye, & here bodyes weryn feble.—*The secunde secte seyth þat some þat dronken [4]wyn & etyn flesch hadde in þe membre þat was y-wou*n*dyde a gret enposteme & a ffeuyre—and þo beþ 3onge me*n* þat beþ of an hot *com*plexiou*n* & a moyst—wherefore þey comau*n*dyde to alle o*per*e mane*re* *com*plexiou*n*s, þat þey scholde no3t drynke*n* no wyn, ne eten no*n* flesch. þe vnderstandynge of boþe þese sectes nys no3t comendable and þerefore y folwynge þe doctryne of rasys, Avence, galien, & of o*per* doctoris, & also exp*er*ymentis, þat y haue longe y-p*re*uyde, sigge þat it is nedefuƚ in þe bygy*n*nynge þat a wou*n*dyde man Absteyne hy*m* fro*m* wyn & namlye 3if þat þe wou*n*de be in þe hed, o*per*e in eny p*ar*tye of a synwe. For þ*er*e nys noþynge þat so sone smyteþ *with* grevau*n*ce þe hed o*per*e þe synwe as wyn; for he ys sone co*n*uertyde of' kendlye hete, and for he ys so sotyƚ, he p*er*syth swiþe into þe synwes & he assendyth sone into þe hed, bryngynge *with* hy*m* humo*re*s and spirites. Yt trublyth a ma*n*nys wyt, & wyn greuyff' alle me*n* that haþ a feble hed; & þ*er*e fore in alle mane*re* wou*n*dys

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 58 *a*]

if his complexion is hot and moist;

if he has a cold complexion he may have a little wine, but in general a specially prepared beverage.

þe heed & of senewis he schal be forbode *in* þe bigy*n*nynge namely to þo þi*n*gis[1] þat han hoot complexiou*n*s & moist *into* þe tyme þat þe cure be ful endid / & to þo þat ben of a cold complexiou*n*, wha*n*ne .iij. daies ben passid, þou maist ȝeue to drynke smal tem- 4
per*at* wiyn, & after*w*ard a litil strengere, aftir þat þou art sikir þat þer schal nouȝt come to þe mem*b*re noon enpostyme. But þis[2] drinke schal be watir of barlich, eiþ*er* wat*er* of crum*m*es of breed bene soden in whit[3] wy*n*,[4] or ellis lète þe breed lie in cold watir 8
raþ*er*e þa*n* þou faile þat he schal drynke / but he may tende weel to heete it, & nameliche *in* somer / & to þat ben wo*u*ndid[5] to drynke watir, or ellis with þe x. par*t*ie of wiyn of pome garnates or ellis w*ith* þe sixte par*t*ie of wiyn agrestis þat is smal brusk[6] 12
wiyn, or ellis þis is a per*f*iȝt drynke to wou*n*dis of þe heed & to
℞ senewis: / Take a potel of wat*er* & of barly clensid .iiij. ℥., juiube,[7] sebesten[8] ana. 3. ß., of drie prunis of damascenes ℥ j, sugre of rosis .℥ ij., seþe hem[9] to .iij par*t*ies ben co*n*sumed, & þa*n*ne lete him 16
[11 lf. 88, bk.] drynke. To asaye it softly[10] / [11]þis drynke is alteratijf: þat is to seie, chau*n*ging*e*, ne it swelliþ not, & it lettiþ fumosite to arise

[1] þi*n*gis, inserted. [2] *þis*, error for *his*. [3] *whit*, error for *with*.
[4] *wyn*, inserted. [5] *woundid*, error for *wonid*. Lat. homini assueto.
[6] *brusk*, Roman brusco (Lat. rusticus ?), harsh. See later reference in *N. E. Dict.*
[7] *Jujube*, a kind of prune growing in Italy. Kersey—1721.
[8] *Sebesten*, Arab. sebesten. Name for Cordia mysa vel sebastena.
[9] Corrupt passage. Lat.: donec consumetur tertia pars.
[10] *softly*, error for *soþly*.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

of þe hed & off synwes, he schal be forebode in þe bygy*n*nynge, & namlye to þo þat han hot *com*plexiou*n*s & moiste, into þe tyme þat 20
þe cure be ful endyde; & to þo þat beþ of colde *com*plexiou*n*, whe*n*ne þre dayes ben passyde, þ*o*u maiste ȝeue*n* to drynke a smal temp*er*at wyn, & aftere*w*arde a lyte strengore; aftere þat þou art sykere, þat þ*er*e schal noȝt come*n* to þe membre no*n* Aposteme. But 24
his drynke schal be watyre of barlyche o*þ*ere watire þat cro*m*mes of brede ben sodyn yn, wiþ o*þ*ere colde watyr & namlye in so*m*mere, & to þo þat beþ wou*n*dyde drynke watyre, o*þ*ere ellys wiþ tenþe par*t*ye of wyn of pome garnettys, o*þ*ere ellys wyth sixte par*t*ye of 28
wyn agreste þat is smal broske wyn, o*þ*ere ellys þis is a per*f*yte drynke to wondys of þe hed & of synwys: Take a potell of watyr & of barlyche y-meynde ℥. iij, juiube, sebesten, ana .3 ß, of drye prunes of damacynes 3 .j., sucre of rosis ℥ ij, sethe hem to þre 32
par*t*yes ben *con*sumed, & þenne lete hy*m* drynke*n* yt. Sothlye þis drynke ys alteratyff: þat ys to sigge chau*n*gynge, ne hyt ne swel-
[12 fol. 58 *b*] lyth noȝt. & yt latteþ fumosites to arysen to þe brayn. [12] Of mete

to þe brayn. Of mete I seie: to *him* þat is of a moist complexicioun & hoot / bi no maner wey schulde not be ȝouen fleisch, fisch, mylk, eiren, ne no comfortable mete, but if þei weren ouercomen wiþ to greet febilnes; but he muste holde *him* content wiþ ius of barli or ellis of ootis wiþ almaunde mylk; outake[1] wounde of þe heed, were[2] I ne apreue nouȝt almaundis ne noon oþer vaperous fruyt: as notis eiþir walnotis eiþer avellanes; for þei han a maner fumose properte greuynge þe heed / he may eten amidoun, betis, letuse, & breed I-waische wiþ sugre if þat he were feble. & if þat he myȝte not absteyne *him* fro fleisch, ȝeue *him* fleisch of smale chikenes & of smale briddis & kidis & lambis & calues I-sauered *with* agresta eiþer wiþ wiyn of pome garnatis; & þilke dietynge he schal vse til he be sikir fro swellynge & þat þou schalt knowe whanne þat akynge swellynge & extencioun of þe lyme ben ceessid & þe wounde almoost consowdid. If þat it was a wounde [3] þat was sowid eiþer brouȝt togidere *with* byndinge, *in* whom quytture was nouȝt engendrid, & if þat it was a wounde maad wiþ smytynge or ellis chaungid wiþ þe eyr, *in* whom it is nedeful engendrynge of quytture, þanne it is siker þat it schal not enpos-

A patient of a hot and moist complexion should eat vegetables only;

Nota

if he cannot abstain from meat, chickens or veal may be given him.

[3 lf. 39]

[1] *outake*, except. See *Catholicon Angl.*, p. 264, Oute take, note.
[2] *were*, error for *where*.

---

y sigge: þat to hym þat is of an hot & moiste *com*plexioun, be *non* manere weye ne scholde noȝt be ȝeffen flesch, ffysch, Mylke, eyren, ne no manere *con*uertyble mete, bot ȝif þey weryn ouere come *with* to gret febylnesse; but he mos'e holde hym content *with* Iuse of barlyche, opere ellys of otys wiþ almaunde mylke; out take wounde of þe hed, where y ne Apreue noȝt Almaundys, ne non opere vaporose frutys, as notys oþer walnottys oþer Avelanes, for þey hauen a manere fumose proprete greuynge þe hed; he may etyn Amidun, betes, letuse & bred y-wassche wiþ succre, ȝif þat he were feble. And ȝif þat myȝte noȝt Abstynen hym from flesch, ȝif hym flesch of smale chyknes, & of smale briddys: as larkys & opere sengle briddys, & kyddes & lambres, & kalffes I-saveryde *with* agresta, oþer *with* wyn of pom garnett; & þis dyetynge he schalt vse, tyl he be sykere from swellynge, & þat þou schalt y-knowe, whenne þat Akynge, swellynge & extencioun of þe lyme ben secyde & þe wounde is almost *con*souded. ȝif þat it was a wounde þat was sowyde opere brouȝt togedyre *with* byndynge, in whom quyter was noȝt engendryde, and ȝif þat it was a wounde y-maad wyth smytinge—opere ellys y-chaungyde *with* þe eyre, in whom yt is nedfull engendrynge of quyter, þenne yt is sykere þat yt schal nouȝt

Add. MS. 12,056.

tyme, whanne þat he makiþ quytture plenteuousliche ; & whanne
Improve this diet when he gets better. þat þe lyme is weel disposid & not to swolle ne drawe abrood & is
wiþoute akynge ; þanne chaunge a litil & a litil his dietynge til þat
If he has a cold and dry complexion, þou come to his dietynge þat he was wont to vse tofore / & if þat
þe pacient were of a cold complexioun & a drie & þat he hadde bi
he should take meat from the beginning. nature eiþer bi custum a feble stomak, þanne it were nessessarie to
ȝeue him at þe bigynnynge fleisch a litil sauerid with swete spicerie :
as canel, gynger & opere semblable to hem, & to ȝeue him in þe
bigynnynge Julep[1]—þat is a sirup maad oonly of water & of sugre
—& aftir iij. daies ben passid, wiyn, & boþe in þe oon complexioun
& in þe opere complexioun. If þat a boon were broke wiþ a
wounde or wiþoute a wounde aboute þe eende of þe cure, þat is to
seye, whanne þou art siker from apostyme & swellinge, it is good to
[2 lf. 39, bk.] ȝeue norischaunt metis þat it [2] myȝte make a good & a strong re-
Nota peirement of þe boon þat was to-broke : as furmente soden in,[3]
If a bone has been broken, prescribe food which will repair the bones and ligaments. potage of flour weel soden & wiþ þe extremytees of beestis feet & 16
swyne groynes & oxen wombe weel soden & bi siche opere þingis bi
whom a good ligament & a strong may weel be engendrid / Wher-
fore it is nessessarie to a surgian to knowe his dictynge, vertues of
coplexciouns, agis, regiouns, consuetudes & þe tymes of þe ȝeer þat

[1] *Julep*, med. Lat. julapium, Fr. julep, Pers. goulāb. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*
[3] *in*, erroneously inserted.

---

Add. MS. 12,056. enposteme, whenne þat he makyþ quyter plentyouuslyche ; &
whenne þat þe lyme ys wel dysposyde & noȝt toswolle, ne y-drawen
abrode. & ys wiþouten akynge, & þanne chaunge a lytel & a lytel
hys dyetynge, tyl þat þou come to hys dyetynge, þat he was wont
to vse tofore. And ȝif þat þe pacient were of a colde complexioun
& a drye & þat he hadde by nature opere by costeme a feble stomak,
[4 fol. 59 *a*] [4] þanne yt were necessarye to ȝeuen hym at þe bygynnynge flesch̄ a
lytel y-saueryde with swote spysorye : as kaneH gyngeffre & opere
semblable to hem & to ȝeuen hym in þe bygynninge Julep—þat is a
syripe y-mad only of watyre & of sucre—& aftere þre dayes ben
passyde, wyn, and boþe in þe on complexioun & in þe opere com-
plexioun. ȝif þat a bon were y-broke, wiþ a wonde ore wiþouten
a wounde, aboute þe ende of þe cure, þat is to sigge, whenne þou art
sykere from a posteme & swellynge, yt is gode to ȝif norysschande
mete, þat it myȝte make a gode & a stronge repayrment of þe bone
þat was tobroke : as with ffurmente y-sode, & potage of floure wel
y-sode, & with þe extremetes of bestys, as fette & swynes groynes &
oxe wombys wel y-soden, & with swiche opere þynges by whom a
gode ligamente & a stronge may wel be engendrede. Where fore
yt is necessarie to a surgyne to knowe in hys dyetynge, vertues of
complexiouns, Ages, regeouns consuetudes & þe tymes of þe ȝere, þat

he mowe chaunge his dietynge aftir þat dyuerse condicioun. Ne he schal not aftir o maner of counseil procede in his dietynge.

## ¶ Capm. xjm.

THe .xj. chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste tretis.

off olde verelent woundes

is of olde woundis þat ben maad of kuttynge or of openynge of a postyme, or ellis of a wounde þat is not heelid in his tyme, or ellis of sum maner fleinge, or of brennynge, or of to greet heete, or of to greet drouthe, or of to greet cold constreynynge, or of to greet aboundaunce of mater corrumpinge / For euery olde wounde hauynge rotnes or wire[1] þat is þinne venymous quyttir or ony oþir þing þan good quytture is not clepid a wounde, but it is clepid vlcus / Rowlond & Rogerine & þe moste [2]partie of men þat ben now, clepen it a festre[3] or a cankre, but it is neiþir festre ne cankre, but festre & cankre han difference fro þis / þis vlcus as a propre þing haþ difference from a þing þat is comoun / for ech festre & ech cankre þat is wounded, is clepid vlcus, but it ne schewiþ not þat ech vlcus is clepid cankre or festre

Various causes of ulcers.

Roulond & Rogeryn [2 lf. 40]

Ulcer is a more general term than fistula or cancer.

[1] *wire*, Lat. virus.
[3] *festre, fester* in Mätzner *Dict.;* O.Fr. flestre, festre; Lat. fistula. Comp. N. E. fester vb.

---

he mowe chaungen his dyetynge, aftere þat dyverse condycioun askyth̄. Ne he ne schal noȝt aftere on manere of counseylle proceden in hys dyetynge.

Add. MS. 12,056.

## ¶ The xi. Chapitle of þe þridde techynge of þe firste tretys is of olde woundes.

¶ Olde woundes ben mad of kuttynge oþer of openynge of a posteme, oþere ellys of a wounde þat is noȝt helyde in his tyme, oþer ellys of sum manere fleynge oþer of brennynge, oþer of to grete hete, oþer of to grete drovþe, oþer to gret colde constreynynge, oþere of to grete Abundaunce of moist mater corumpynge. For euery olde wounde, hauynge rotenesse oþere **virus** þat is þenne venemy quyter, oþer eny oþer þynge þenne gode quyter nys noȝt y-clepyde wounde, but is y-clepyde **vlcus** þat is an olde wounde. And of þis Vlcus, Rouland & Rogerine, & þe most partye of men þat ben now, clepyde it festre, oþer cancre. But it is neiþere festre ne cancre, but festre & cankre habbe dyfference from þis. [4] Vlcus, as a propre þynge hath dyfference, from a þynge, þat is comyn; for euerye festre & euerye cankere, þat is y-woundyde, ys y-clepyde Vlcus, but yt ne syweth noȝt þat euerye Vlcus, ys clepyde cankre oþere festre, as y schal

[4 fol. 59 *b*]

Auicen distinguishes six kinds of ulcers.

as I schal telle openliche *in* ech chapitle bi hi*m*-silf' / Auicen seiþ, þat' *per* ben .vj. mane*r* of þis vlc*us* : su*m*me þat' ben venemous, su*m*me hore, su*m*me depe, su*m*me cau*er*nose ei*þer* hid, su*m*me corosif', su*m*me rotin, su*m*me a*m*bulatif' þat is spredynge abrood, & su*m*me harde to consowde / Of þese mane*r*s tofore seid, su*m*me[1] han acordynge *with* festris *in* tokenes & *in* foormes as venemous & holowȝ & su*m*me han acordynge *with* cankris as spredynge abrood & fretynge hi*m*-silf & neþeles þei han difference, as it' is conteyned *in* þe chapitle of' cankris I-wou*n*did & of' festre. & alle þese tofore seid han difference fro wou*n*de / for *in* a wou*n*de *per* is whiȝt' quytture & euene *in* alle hise pa*r*ties & hole and nouȝt' dep*ar*tid & wiþoute stenche. Þis maner of' quytture is engendrid of goodnes & kyndely heete, & is perliȝtly defied / But venym rotynes [2]& a cruste, & al o*þer*e superfluyte of' olde wou*n*dis be*n* engendrid of' a strong' vnkyndly heete.

[2 lf. 40, bk.]

vlc*us* virulen*tum*

A uenym vlc*us* is *in* whom abou*n*diþ venym sutil & liquid. If' þat' it' be reed or ȝelu, or oon pa*r*tie redisch and scharp bitynge þe lyme, it' signifieþ lordschipe of' a strong' heete.

vlc*us* sordid*um*

An hori elde wou*n*de þat' haþ su*m*me greete crustis, or ellis a wroting', sum gret' proud fleisch to hiȝe.[3]

[1] MS. *summen*.

[3] *proud fleisch to hiȝe*. Lat.: carnem superfluam grossam. Proud flesh, Fungosity. Dunglison.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

tell*en* opynlyche in eu*er*ye chapyteH be hy*m*-self'. Auesene seyth þat þere ben sixe mane*r*e of þese Vleus, for su*m* ben Venemy, su*m* hory, some depe, some cauernouse o*þer*e y-hud, su*m* corosyff', su*m* rotyne, some Ambulatyff'—þat is spredynge abrode, & some hard to *con*souden. Of þese manerys tofore seyde, some hath acordynge *with* festres in toknes & in fourmes: as Venemy & holwy, & su*m* han acordynge *with* cancre: as spredynge abrode & fretynge hy*m* self'. And naþeles þey habbe difference as yt is conteynede in þe chapytelles of cancre y-wou*n*dyde & of festre. & alle þese tofore seyde habbith difference fro*m* a wou*n*de, for in a wou*n*de þere ys whyte quy*t*er & euene in al his pa*r*tyes & hol & noȝt departyde, —& wi*th*outen stynke. Þis mane*r*e of quyter is engendrede, of godnesse of kendlye hete & is perfitlye deffyede. But vemyn, rottenesse, & croste, & alle o*þer*e superfluyte of olde wou*n*des ben engendred of a strau*n*ge vnkendlye hete. A venemy Vleus is, in whom habu*n*deþ venym sotyl & liquydy. Ȝif þat yt be red o*þer*e ȝolwe, o*þer*e a pa*r*tye redyssche, & scharpe bytynge þe lyme, hit synifieþ lordschipe of strau*n*ge hete. An hory olde wou*n*de ys y-clepyd, þat haþ su*m* grete crostes, o*þer*e ellys su*m* grete awrotynge

A deep vlc*us* is þat', þat' haþ a greet' depnes & an holowȝ & pe*r*auenture crokinge. *vlcus profundum*

A wroting' vlc*us* is þat' of' his malice fretiþ bi cause þat' þe blood is sent to hi*m* so scharpe / Galion seiþ: þat' scharp blood not' oonli corrodiþ [noȝt]*—fleisch *in* wou*n*dis, but also hool fleisch / *vlcus corosiuum Galion.*

A rotid vlc*us* is stynkynge, hauynge a strong' heete *in* his grou*n*d, & out' of' hi*m* passiþ a stynky*n*ge smel, ei*þer* smoke, as doiþ out' of' fleisch þat' is rotid / þilke[1] word 'stynk' I vndirstonde it' bi my mane*r* witt': sich breeþ þat' comeþ out' of' a bodies ende, wha*n*ne a bodi breþiþ wiþ þe mouþ *in* frosty wedir, þat' men taken a sau*m*ple, bifor to sle her lac dre / þa*n*ne wha*n*ne þou myȝt' se þe breeþ of' þi*n* owne ende comynge out' at' þi mouþ *in* þe eir. *vlcus putridum*

A walkynge / vlc*us* is þat' walkiþ hidirward & þidirward, & neþeles he pro*f*ou*n*diþ nouȝt' depe [2]*in*to þe grou*n*d. *vlcus ambulativum* [2 lf. 41]

An vlc*us* þat' is hard to helin is he þat' for his yuel pro*p*irte þat' is sent' to hi*m* fro þe bodi lettiþ hi*m* to heele. *ulcus difficilis.*

& for to heelen ech maner of' þese vlc*us*, þe*r* ben manye dyuers rulis / þe firste rule is þat' þei mou*n* not' be heelid, but' þe super-fluytees þat' ben i*n* hem ben I-dried / þe secu*n*de rule / but' if' þat' bodi ou*þer* þe membre be oute of' his naturel complexiou*n*, or þan þou þenke to heele þilke vlc*us* þou muste brynge aȝen to his diete *Cura vlceris* .1. .2.

[1] This curious explanation of the word *stynk* is an insertion of the scribe. Read: *ste her laddre.* One letter half erased in *lacdre.* *Ste*, see Stratm. *Dict.*, O.E. stîgan.

---

pro*u*d flesch to hyȝe. A depe Vlcus is þat þat haþ a gret depnesse & an holwe, & pe*r*aunte*r* crokynge. A wrotynge vlcus is þat of hys malyce wroteþ, bycause þat þe blod þat is sent to hy*m*, is to scharpe. **Galien**: scharpe blod noȝt onlyche cordyth noȝt *flesch in wou*n*des, but also hol flesch. A rotyde vlcus is stynkynge, habbynge a strau*n*ge hete in his grou*n*de, & out of hy*m* passith out a stynkynge smel o*þer*e smoke, as *þere* doþ [3]out of flesch þat is y-rotyde. A walkynge Vlcus is þat walkeþ hyde*r*warde & þedirwarde & naþeles he profu*n*deþ noȝt depe into þe grou*n*de. An Vlcus þat is hard to helyn, is he þat for his yuele pro*p*rete, þat is sende to hy*m* fro al þe body, latteþ hy*m* to bele. *&* forto helyn eue*r*y mane*r*e of þese hulkes, *þere* ben manye dyverse rulys. þe firste rule ys þat þey mowe noȝt ben helyde, but þe super*f*luytes þat ben in he*m* ben dryed. þe secunde rule ys þat ȝif þat þe body o*þer*e me*m*bre be out of hys natureH co*m*plexioun, ere þa*n* þou þynke to hele þilke Vlcus, þou moste bryngen aȝeyne to hys due Add. MS. 12,056. [3 fol. 60 *a*]

.3. complexioun distemprid þilke bodi ouþir membre. þe þridde rule is : þat' if' þe lyuere eiþir þe splene ben I-greued, as it' happiþ ofte
.4. tymes *in* olde wou*n*dis, þou muste rectifien hem / þe .iiij rule is : þat' þe qualitees & þe quantitees of' humouris schulden be temperid wiþ blood-letynge & purgaciouns & *with* good gouernaile / & if' þat' þe eir be yuel, þe sike man schal be chaungid into good eyr / & whanne þat' þe leche haþ tofore seen alle þese þingis, þanne he may go to his cure /

If the ulcer is virulent, wash the wound with a waschinge,

Nota[1] [3 if. 41, bk.]

& if' þe vlcus be virulent, þat' is to seie venemi, loke if' þat' þe venym þat' goiþ out' be redisch or 3elowisch, & if' þat' þe lyme haue ony maner heete ; þanne waische it' wiþ water of' rosis & barlich. alim[2] & balaustia & lentiles *with* hony [3]symple eiþer compouuned ben soden yn, & lete þis watir peersen to þe depþe of' þe wounde ; & if þe virus be wiþoute heete & þe membre haue noon heete, waische it' wiþ watir or *with* wiyn þat' mirre wormode,[4] horhone,[5] sauge,[6] pimpernelle[7] hony symple or compouuned ben soden yn / Clense þe

and apply an vnguentum

wounde perfi3tliche & engendre fleisch & afterward consowde it' wiþ þis propre oynement' þat' þi[8] olde foule venym woundis, eiþer

[1] MS. *Nona.* [2] *alim*, Latin : aluminis.
[4] *wormode*, absinthium. O.E. wormôd, M.E. wormwood.
[5] *horhone*, Marrubium vulgare. See Britten, *Dict.* [6] *sauge*, salvia.
[7] *pimpernella*, Pimpinella. [8] *þi*, error for *in*.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

*com*plexioun distem*pride*[9] þilke body o*þer* mem*b*re. þe þridde rule ys, þat 3if þat þe lyfere o*þere* splene ben y-greuyde, as yt happyth ofte tymes in olde wou*n*des, þou most retyhen hem. The fourth rule ys : þat þe q*u*alites & quantytes of humours scholde be tem*pride* w*ith* blodletynge, & p*u*rgatiou*n*s & w*ith* gode gov*er*naylle ; and 3if þat þe eyre be yuel, þe syke man schal be chaungyde into gode eire. And whanne þat þe leche haþ tofore seye alle þese þynges, þenne he may go to hys cure. & 3if þat þe Vlcus be Virulente, þat is to sigge Venemy, loke 3if þat þe Venym þat goþ out be redysseh o*þere* 3olwe, & 3if þat the lyme haue enye man*er*e hete ; & þenne wassche it wiþ wat*er* þat rosys & barlyche Alum & balaustia & lentilis w*ith* honye symple o*þere* *com*poned ben sodyn In. And lete þis watere percen to þe depthe of þe wou*n*de. And 3if þe Virus be w*ith*outen hete & þe mem*b*re haue no*n* hete, wassche it w*ith* wat*er* o*þere* wyþ wyn, þat Mirre, wermot, horhowne, sauge, pympirnel, honye sy*m*ple o*þer* *com*poned ben sodyn In. Clanse þe wou*n*de p*er*fitlye & engendre flesch & afterwarde *con*soud it w*ith* þis p*r*opre oygnement, þat in olde foule venemy wou*n*dys o*þer* Vlcus engend-

[9] At the margin.

vlc*us*, engendriþ fleisch, clensiþ & heeliþ as auicen & rasis witnessen / recipe litargium[1] as myche as þou wolt & stampe it in a morter[2] & putte wiþ hi*m* good oile of rosis & vynegre now on & now þe o*per*e, alwey stiryng, til it be *per*fi3tly an oynement & come into þe foorme of an oynement. & þis oynement is clepid litargir*um* nutrit*um*, þat is to sai litarge nurschid, þat is *pro*fitable *in* manye causis / afterward take of þilke litarge norischid .vij. *par*ties & of alim, & of balaustie or ellis in þe stide of balaustie wormes of þe erþe brent, bras brent, leed, gallis, sandragou*n* chathinie[3] argenti .an*a*. as myche as is xij *par*ties of al þe oynement; medle alle togidere and [4]make an oynement / þis oynement schal be leid wiþi*n*ne þe wou*n*de & al aboue þe wou*n*de; for it drieþ þe wou*n*de & engendriþ good fleisch & consowdiþ / Take hede to þis rule, þat *in* heelynge of alle olde woundis after þat þei ben clensyd, aboue þe oynement it is good to leie a ly*n*nen clooþ, to distende abrood on of þe mu*n*dificatiuis of ony which þat schal be told *in* þe antidotarie, & leie aboue aboute þilke vlc*us* specialy from þe ouer p*ar*tie fro whens humouris fleen, a defensif of bole armonyak & terra sigillata; þat

Auicen & Rasis

Ietargirum nutritum

[4 lf. 42]

vnguentum nutricum.

Nota.

Put a "mundificatif" on a linen cloth upon the wound,

and add a T[5] deffensif dressing.

[1] "*Lithangyros*, Litharge or Silver-glet, the frothy Dross, or Scum that arises in the purifying of Silver with Lead."—Phillips.

[2] MS. *& putte it in a morter*, scribal insertion.

[3] "*Cathima* est minera de qua elicitur aurum vel argentum."—Sinonoma Barth. p. 14. *Cathimia:* argenti spuma, Cartelli *Dict.* [5] a sign like *Nota*.

---

reth flesch, clansyth & helyth as **Auecene** & **Ras***es* wytnessith, **litargium nutritu***m*. ℞ litarge as myche as þou wylt & stampe it & put it in a mortere & [6]putte wiþ hy*m* gode oyle of roses & vynegre, now þe on now þe o*per*e, alweye steryinge, tyl it be *per*fitlyche augmentyd & come to þe fourme of an oygnement. & þis oygnement—litargir*um* nutrit*um*—þat is to sigge litarge y-norysshed, þat is *pro*fitable in many casis. Afterwarde take of þilke litarge viij *par*tyes, & of alym, & of balaustie o*per*e ellys, in þe stede of balaustye, wormys of þe erþe y-brend, brend bras, brent led, gallys, sanke dragou*n*, cathimie, Argenti an*a* as mychel as ys .xij *par*tyes of alle þe oygnement, and medle al togedre, & make an Oygnement. þis oygnement schal be leyde wi*th*yn*n*e þe wou*n*des & aboue þe wou*n*de, for yt dryeth þe wou*n*de, & engendrith gode flesch & *con*soud. Take hede to þis rule, þat in helynge of alle olde wou*n*des, aftere þat þey ben clansyde, aboue þe oygnement yt is gode of one a ly*n*nen cloþ, forto dystende abrode on of þe mu*n*dyficatyfes of hony whiche þat schulle be tolde in þe antitodarye. And leye aboue aboute þilke vlcus, & specialiche from þe ourere p*ar*tye, fro whom humores flotyn, a[7] defensif of bol Armonyake & terra

Add. MS. 12,056.

[6 fol. 60 *b*]

[7] MS. *&*.

℟ is maad on þis maner / take bole armoniak .℥ j. terra sigillata. ℥ ß oile of rosis & vynegre þat suffisiþ, I-nowȝ do in þe oon now in þe
*Nota.* oþer til þe oynement be ful maad & liquide I-nouȝ / so þat of þe oile of rosis be double as myche as of vynegre / þis defensiþ a membre fro corrupcioun & also vlcus þat he sprede nouȝt abrood /

In a (2) sordid ulcer remove the scurf. An hory wounde shal be heelid, in remeuynge awey þe crust eiþere filþe þat is in him wiþ poudre of affodill, þat schal be said in þe eende of þis book, ouþer wiþ sum oþer mundificatiuis; aftir consowde it wiþ consolidaciouns /

[1 lf. 42, bk.]

In a (3) deep ulcer cleanse the wound, A deep wounde is heelid [1]wiþ castynge into þe depþe of þe wounde with an instrument maad to þe lijknesse of a clisterie, ony of þe waischingis þat ben seid in þe venemy woumde aboue, aftir þat þe disposicioun of þe membre askiþ of heete or of cold. & aftir þat, he is clensid in castynge in watre ouþir wiyn þat mastik or frank encense is soden ynne & in leggyng wiþouten oon of þe mundificatiuis of hony þat schal be seid aftir. & also it is good to

and make the pus discharge itself freely. ordeyne þe lyme so þat þe mouþ of þe woumde hange dounward, & streyne þi ligature at þe ground of þi woumde, & bynde it losely at þe mouþ of þe woumde; also it were good, if þat it myȝte be, þat þer were maad a newe woumde in þe place þat is moost hangynge, þat þe rotynes & þe quytture myȝte þe bettere goon out; for so þilke vlcus myȝte þe sunnere be heelid /

---

Add. MS. 12,056. sigillata þat is mad on þys manere: ℞ bol armoneake ℥ j terre sigillate ʒ ß., oyle of rosis & vynegre, þat suffyseþ, now do in þe on, now þe oþer, tyl þe oygnement be ful mad & lyquyde ynowȝ; so þat of þe oyle of roses be duble as myche as of þe vynegre. Þis diffensiff defendiþ a membre fro corupcioun, & also Vlcus þat he sprede noȝt abrode. An hory woude ys y-helyde, in remeffynge awey þe croste oþere þe fylthe þat is in hym with poudre of affodylles schal be sayde in þe ende, oþere with sum oþere mundificatyfes; afterwarde consoude yt with consolydatyfes. A depe wounde ys

[2 fol. 61 *a*] y-helyde in castynge in to þe [2]depþe of þe woumde with an instrument y-mad to þe lyknesse of a clisteyre, any of þe wasschynges þat beþ seyde in þe Venemy woumde aboue, after þat þe disposisioun of þe membre askeþ of hete oþer of cold. And aftere þat he is y-clansyde, in castynge in water oþere in wyn þat mastyke oþere frankensence ys y-soden yn, & in leggynge without, on of þe mundificatyfes of hony, þat schal be sayde aftere. & also it is gode to ordeyne þe lyme, so þat þe mouth of þe woumde honge dunwarde, & streyne þi ligature at þe groumde of þy woumde & bynde it looslye at þe mouþ of þe woumde. And also yt were gode, ȝif þat it myȝte be, þat þere were made a newe woumde in þe place þat is most hongynge þat þe

A wroting[1] vlc*us* is heelid i*n* leggy*n*ge specialiche aboute him colde þi*n*gis whiche þat ben[2] obtunden or casten bach þe scharpnes of þe same vlc*us*; & also w*ith* amendynge, as w*ith* metis & drynkis, þe scharpnes of þe same blood, & i*n* p*ur*gynge þe reed colere; & wiþ anoyntynge wiþ colde oynementis & consolidatiuis. & þerto [3]is miche worþ vng*uentum* albu*m* rasis þat schal be told i*n* þe antidotarie / (4) In a corroding ulcer, use an obtundeus, an appropriate diet, purging, and the vng*uentum* albu*m* rasis [3 lf. 43]

A stynkynge wou*n*de is heelid i*n* remeuy*n*ge awey þe stinche & þe rotenes; & þerto is myche worþ a waischi*n*ge of ydromel: þat is hony & watir soden togidere wiþ mirre, & a mu*n*dificatif maad wiþ ius of wormod & barly mele & hony & mirre, þat is maad on þis maner / take ius of wormod. ℥ iij. of hony. ℥ iij. barli mele ℥ ij. of mirre ana. ℥ j. & compou*n*ne hem togidere & fille þe wou*n*de wiþi*n*neforþ w*ith* lynnet of lynnen clooþ. & if þat wormes ben engendrid in þe wou*n*de, sle hem wiþ þe ius of calamynte ouþer wiþ þe ius of þe leeues of pechis, or ellis p*er*sicarie,[3] eiþer wiþ decoccio*un* of elebre. & wha*n*ne þat a p*er*fi3t mu*n*dificatif is maad, engendre fleisch & consowde as it is seid tofore / (5) In a stinking ulcer use a lotion of **ydromel**, and a mundificatif. R Nota bene

A walkynge vlc*us* is heelid wiþ fleobotomie & formacie[4] þat is (6) In a walking ulcer use phlebotomy and purging,

[1] *wrotyng*, error for *fretyng*.
[2] *ben*, erroneously inserted. [3] *persicarie* glossed *colorag*. See Notes.
[4] O.Fr. farmacie = purgation. See Littré, *Dict.*

---

rotnesse & þe quytere my3te þe betyre gone out, for so þilke Vlcus myȝte su*n*nere be helyde. A ffretynge vlcus ys y-helyde, in leggynge specialiche aboute hy*m* colde þynges, whiche þat obtu*n*den oþer castyn bach þe scharpnesse of þe same Vlcus, & also in amendynge w*ith* metys & w*ith* drynkes the scharpnesse of þe same blod, & in purgynge þe rede colore & w*ith* anoyntynge wiþ colde oygnementes & *con*solidatifes, & þereto is myche worþ vnguentum albu*m* Rasis, þat schal be told in þe antitodarye. A stynkynge wou*n*de ys y-helyde in remevynge awey þe stenche & þe rottenesse, & þerto ys myche worth a wasschynge of **ydromel** þat is hony & wat*er* y-sode togidre wiþ mirre, & a mu*n*dyficatiff y-mad w*ith* Ius of wermot & barly mele & hony & mirre, þat is made on þis manere: take jus of wermot .℥. iiij, of hony ℥ iij, of barly mele .℥. ij, off mirre ℥ .j., *com*pone hem togedire, & fulle þe wou*n*de, wiþy*n*ne forth wiþ lynete of ly*n*nen clo þ. & ȝif þat wormys ben engendride in þe wou*n*de, sle hem wiþ jus of calamynte, oþere w*ith* þe juse of þe leuys of pechys, oþere ellys p*er*sicarie, oþer w*ith* decoccion [5]of ellebre. And wha*n*ne þat a p*er*fyte mu*n*dyficacio*un* is mad engendre flesch & *con*soude, as yt is seyde tofore. A walkynge Vlcus ys y-helyde w*ith* flebotomye & **ffarmasye** þat is laxatyfes purgynge þe colere & Add. MS. 12,056. [5 fol. 61 b]

laxatiuis purgynge þe colere & brent' humouris, & in leggynge aboute a defensif' of' bole & terra sigillata þat' is seid tofore in þis chapitle; if necessary cauterization. & with oon of' þe cold mundificatiuis, & sumtyme þou muste cauterise þe vlcus aboue with an instrument' of' gold. For þilke maner of' brennynge rectifieþ weel þe membre /

[1 lf. 43, bk.] þe cause whi þat' summe vlcus [1] is hard to consowde is, for an (7) In a malignant ulcer remove any special cause of the ulcer. yuel disposicioun þat' is hid in þe bodi, & þerfore it' nediþ to rectifien þe membre & þe bodi as I haue seid tofore. & if' þe cause be vpon,[2] oon oþer manye, do awei þilke cause or ellis þe manye causis, or þat' The healing is delayed if the patient suffers from dropsy, the liver, the spleen, the blood, or the glands, or an inappropriate diet or medicine, þou go to þis principal cure / þese ben þe causis þat' letten consowdynge of' olde woundis: an yuel disposicioun of' al þe bodi as Nota. ydropisie; or ellis an yuel disposicioun of' þe lyuere as if' þat' he be to feble, as to hoot' or to cold, to moist' or to drie, wiþ mater or wiþoute mater, as wiþ to greet' hardenes; or ellis þe splene is to feble to purge þe malancolient' blood; or ellis to myche blood or ellis to litil blood; or ellis þe veynes ben to fulle of' blood þat' goon doun to þe vlcus; or elles þat' glandeles þat' ben kirnelis þat' ben in þe ground [3] þat' senden doun mater to the vlcus þat' is in þe þies & in þe leggis; or ellis þe lippis of' þe vlcus ben to grete; or ellis myche fleisch; or ellis mys-ordynaunce of' dietynge or ellis an

[2] *vpon*, error for *open*. [3] *ground*. See *grynd*, page 41, note 3.

---

Add. MS. 12,056. brende humoures, & in leggynge aboute a defensif' of bol & terra sigillata þat is seide tofore in þe same Chapytle, & with on of þe colde mundyficatyfes & sum tyme men most cauterise þe Vlcus aboue with an instrument of gold. for þilke manere of brennynge rectefieþ wel þe membre. þe cause why þat sum Vlcus is hard to consoude is, for an yuel disposicion ys y-hydde in þe bodye, & þerefore it nedyth to retyfien þe membre & þe body as y haue seide tofore. And ȝif þe cause be opene, on oþere manye, do aweye þilke causes oþer ellys þo manye causes, ere þanne þou go to þe pryncipal cure. þese ben þe causes þat lettyn consoudynge of olde woundes, an yuele disposisioun of alle þe body: as dropsye, oþer ellys an iuele disposisioun of þe lyuere: as ȝif þat he be to feble, as to hot oþere to colde, to moiste oþere to drye, with mater ore withouten matere, as wiþ to grete hardnesse; oþere ellys þe spleen is to feble to purge þe malancolyent blod; oþere ellys to myche blod, oþere ellys to acute blod; oþere ellys þe veynes beþ to ful of blod, þat goþ doun to þe Vlcus; oþer ellys curnellys þat glandeles, þat beþ kurnellys þat beþ in þe grynde, þat sendiþ doun matere to þe Vlcus þat is in þe thyȝes & þe legges, oþer ellys þe lippes of þe Vlcus beþ to grete & hard, oþere ellys to myche flesch, oþer ellys mysordeyninge of

*inconuenient*ᵗ medicyn to þat' membre or ellis þe lyme þat' is hirt' haþ an yuel discrasie; or ellis þilke vlcus is *in* an yuel place as *in* þe eende of' þe [1]elbowȝe; or ellis þe vlcus is al rou*n*d; or ellis þe [1 lf. 44]
boon þat' is vndir þe vlcus is corupt / Alle þase tofore seid letten vlcus to be heelid / wherfore it' nediþ þe, to take kepe to alle þese þingis tofore seid, to amende al þe bodi & namely þo lymes þat' han *principalte in mannes* body, & kepen alle þe lymes þat' be*n in* her naturel disposicioun *with* þingis þat' be*n* acordinge to her naturel disposicioun, þo / & if' þei be*n* discrasid, remeue þilke discrasie wiþ þat', þat' is contrarie to þe discrasie / also tempre þe qualite & þe quantite of' þe blood & streyne þe veyne if' þat' þou brynge þidir blood, or ellis if' þat' it' be possible latt' þe blood awey; vndo þe glandeles þat' ben kirnels þat' sendin þider mater, & remeue deed fleesch, smale þe lippis of' woundis þat' ben greete & kutte hem awey if' þat' þou myȝt' do noon oþirwise; amende his dietynge; & brynge aȝen þe rondnes of þilke vlcus into a long forme aftir þe lenkþe of' þe membre *with* a knyf' hoot' brennynge / but' if' a veyne or a senewe lette. & þou schalt' remoue þe boon þat' is corupt' on þis maner: *in* kuttynge awey al þe fleisch & þe boon þat' is corupt' *with* an hoot' [2]iren, or wiþ a medicyn þat' schal be seid in þe laste eende of' þis book, or ellis it' is bettere to don it' awey wiþ hoot'

or if the condition of the wound is bad.
Remedial measures—
remove the dyscrasia,
regulate the patient's
give an oblong shape to a round ulcer,
remove any rotten bone by means of a hot iron—
[2 lf. 44, bk.]

---

dyetynge, oþer ellys an vncouenable medycine to þilke membre, oþer ellis þe lyme þat ys y-hurt haþ an yuele discrasie, oþere ellys þilke Vlcus is an yuele place—as in þe ende of þe elbowe, oþere ellys þe Vlcus ys al rounde, oþere ellys þe bon þat is vndire [3]þe vlcus is corupte. Alle þese tofore seide letteþ Vlcus to by helyde, wherefore yt nediþ þe, to take kepe to alle þese thynges tofore seyde, & to amendyn alle þe body, & namlye þe lymes þat habbiþ principalte in mannes body, & kepe alle þe lymes þat beþ in here natureH disposisioun wiþ þynges þat beþ acordynge to here natural disposisioun, & ȝif þey ben discrasyede, remywe þilke discrasye with þat, þat is contrarye to þilke discrasye. Also tempre þe qualyte & þe quantyte of þe blod, & streyne þe veynes ȝif þat þey brynge þedire blod. Oþer ellys ȝif it is possible, lete þe blod aweye. Vndo glandeles, þat beþ kurneH þat sendeþ þedire mater, & remywe ded flesch, smale lippes of þe woundes þat beþ grete, & kytte hem awey, ȝif þou maiste do non oþere weys; amende his dyetynge, & brynge aȝeyne þe roundnesse of þilke Vlcus in to a longe fourme, aftere þe lengþe of þe membre, wiþ a knyf' hot brennynge, but ȝif þat a synwe oþere a Veyne latte. And þou schalt remywe þe bon, þat is corupe on þis manere: unwrey al þe bon, in kuttynge awey al þe flesch,*—þe bon þat is corupte with an yren, oþer wiþ a medicyne þat schal be seyde in þe laste ende of þis boke. Oþer ellys it is

Add. MS. 12,056.
[3 fol. 62 *a*]

*Nota.* iren. & whanne þat' þe boon þat' is corrupt'[1] is vnkeuerid, schaue it'
scraping and scratching generally give rise to fistulæ. not' as manye men doon, but' touche harde þat' boon *with* hoot
iren ; & aftirward heelde on þilke boon hoot' oile of' rosis, & leie on
oon of þe mundificatiuis þat' ben in þe antidotarie whiche þat' wolen
remoue þe rotid boon wiþoute violence / For vndirstonde weel þouȝ
þat' þou clense þe rotid boon wiþ schauynge or wiþ filynge *with*
violence, neuere þe lattere kynde wole afterward don awey a schelle
of' þilke same boon, nouȝt' aȝenstondynge þi schauynge & þi rasynge /
wherfore *in* remeuynge þilke boon þou multipliest' þi traueile &
makist' newe[2] mundificacion to þe fulle[3] & þerof' may come ofte
tymes an yuel festre. An inconuenient' medicyn is amendid *in*
considerynge þe complexioun of' al þe body & þe complexioun of' þe
lyme & þe gre of' þe medicyn ; for if' þat' þe membre be drie as þe
eeris & al bony & gristly lymes, & þei han greet' putride & rotschipe,
If the medicine was not [4 lf. 45] þanne þou nedist' a ful drie medicyn / & if' þat' þe bodi or þe lymes
[4]ben mene bitwene fatnes & lenenes þat' is neiþer to fatt' ne to
leene, þanne þou nedist' a medicyn þat' is *in* kynde mesurabiliche
driynge / & if' þat' þe bodi or þe membre be natureliche moist', & if'
þat' he haue a litil putrede or rotschipe, þanne þou nedist' a medicyn

[1] MS. *corrrupt.* [2] *newe*, error for *no.*
[3] *to þe fulle.* Lat.: ad plenum. See *Polychr.*, iii. 443, he forgaf him the trespas *at the fulle.*

---

Add. MS. 12,056. bettere to don it awey *with* hot yren & whanne þat þe bon þat is
corupte is vnkeueryde, schaue yt noȝt as many men don, but touche
harde þilke bon *with* hot yren & afterewarde helde on þilke bon
hot oyle of rosys, & leye on one of þe mundyficatyfes þat beþ in þe
antitodarye, whiche þat wylle remywe þe rotyde bon *with*oute vio-
lence. Ffor vndirstond wel, þawȝ þat þou clanse þe rotyde bon *with*
schavynge oþere wiþ vylinge *with* vyolence, neuere þe latere kynde
wyl afterwarde don aweye a schelle of þilke same bon, noȝt aȝen-
stondynge þy schauynge & þy raspynge ; wherefore in remefynge
þilke bon, þou multiplyest þy traueH, & þou makyste no mundifi-
catioun to þe folle ; & þerof may come ofte tymes, an yuele festre.
And inconuenient medycine ys amendyde, in consyderynge þe
[5 fol. 62 b] complexioun [4]of alle þe bodye, & þe complexioun of þe lyme, & þe
gree of þe medycine ; for ȝif þat þe membre be drye as þe erys, nose-
þrylles & alle bony & grestly lemes, & þey han grete putrede &
roteschippe, þenne þou nedyste a ful drye medycyne ; & ȝif þat þe
body oþere þe membre be naturellyche moist, ȝif þat he haue a lyte
putrede oþere roteschippe, þanne thou nedyste a medycine þat ys
lyte dryinge. And ȝif þat the body oþere þe lymes ben mene
betwene fatnesse and lenesse—þat nys neiþere to fatte ne to lene,
þenne þou nedyst a medycine þat is in kynde, mesurablyche dryinge.

þat is litil driynge / & if þat .ij. membris ben in complexioun l-liche euene, & þe toon haue myche quytture, & þe toþer litil quytture, he þat haþ þe more quitture nediþ þe driere medicyn / & *he þat haþ but litil quytture, him nediþ his medicyn I-maad nouȝt fulliche so drie / þerfore it nediþ bi mesure þat þou kepe naturel þing wiþ þing þat is acordinge to þe same naturel þing / & also remeue with mesurable contrariouste þing þat is aȝens kynde / But þe quantite of medicyns þat schulden be leid to þe soor as galion witnessiþ mai not wiþ lettris be writen / neþeles it sufficiþ þat a man diuise þe medicyn after[1] þe complexioun mai bere / For kynde þat is wondirful, fulfilliþ þing þat is absent, & þat. þat is to myche, castiþ awey, but if þat it be to myche aȝen kynde; & þanne kynde muste nede faile in his kyndely worchinge / A medicyn mundificatif [2]& exciccatif þat is nessessarie in ech old holowe wounde,——[3] [2 lf. 45, bk.]

& þat may be knowe bi þis maner / if þat þe medicyn make þinne quytture & blodi & make þe wounde holower, þanne he schulde be, þanne is medicyn to scharpe / & if þe quytture be picke & towȝ, þanne is þe medicyn to liþe / & also anoþer signe þat þe

appropriate, change it according to the patient's complexion.

*Galion.*

A thin pus, a discoloured skin, a burning sensation show that the medicine was too dry.

[1] N. E. Dict. s. v., "after C. 2. c" gives later references for the use of *after* conj. = according as, without relative particle.

[3] Both MSS. omit the end of the passage. Lat. "Medicina vero mundificatiua & exiccatiua — — aut est fortior, quam conuenit, aut debilior competenti." Then, as a heading to the next passage: "Significatio si medicina est magis sicca quam oportet." The *þat* in *& þat may be knowe*, refers to this omitted heading.

---

And ȝif þat two membrys ben in complexioun i-lyche euene, & þe on haue myche quyter & þe oþere lyte quyter, he þat haþ þe more quyter nedyth þe dreyere medycine,*——afterwarde it nediþ by mesure þat þou kepe naturel þynge, with þynge þat is acordynge to þe same nature, and also to remeffe with mesurable contraryouste þynge þat is aȝeyns kynde. But þe quantite of medicynes þat scholde[4] be leyde to þe sore, as Galien witnesseþ, ne may noȝt with lettres ben wryten. Neuer þe latere it suffisith, þat a man defye þe medycine, aftere þe complexioun may bere; ffor kynde þat is wondirfuH fulfylleþ þynge þat is absent & þat þat is to myche castyth aweye, but ȝif þat it be to myche aȝeyne kynde; & þanne kynde most nedys faylen in his kendlye wirchynge. A medycine mundyficatyff & exsiccatif þat is necessarie in eche olde holwe, vlcere,*—may be knowe by þis manere: ȝif þat þe medycine make þenne quyter & blody & make þe wounde holwere þan he scholde be, þenne ys þe medycine to acute; & ȝif þe quyter be þikke & towȝ, þenne ys þe medycine to lythye; and also an oþere[5] signe þat

Add. MS. 12,046.

[4] MS. *þat scholde*, twice.

[5] *medycine*, cancelled before *signe*.

medicyn is to scharp, þat þe place aboute þe wounde is to grene, blak, reed, eiþer ȝelow; & þanne þe sike man schal fele to greet heete & brennynge, also þe venym of þe wounde multiplieþ / and whanne þe vnkunnynge leche seeþ þese accidentis tofore seid, he ordeyneþ a drie medicyn; & so ech day þe wounde apeiriþ.[1]

A livid pus, or paleness and coldness of the limb, show that the medicine was not sufficiently dry.

& þe signe þat þe medicyn is of feble driynge is, þat þe quitture & þe rotynes þat goiþ out þerof is greet in substaunce, ponderous & vneuene, wan ouþir pale & þe membre is cold & is whiȝt ouþir wan, ouþir cleer in colour ouþer soft; & þe sike man feliþ cold in his membre / & whanne þat þou knowist þese þingis in þe firste cause make not þi medicyn so drie, & in þe secunde cause make þi medicyn more drie, & also chaunge þi worchinge as condicioun of kynde askith [2]boþe of bodi & membre as weel symple as compound medicyns / He þat knowiþ not þes canones. wel yuele schal he heele woundis / wherfore manye lechis bryngen liȝtliche woundis with her yuel worchinge into þe worste olde woundis þe whiche moun not aftir ben I-heelid bi a good leche / Þese ben liȝt medicyns whiche þat drien olde woundis þat neden a litil driynge: mastik, frank encense, barli mele. & þese medicyns ben sumwhat more driere: yrios,[3] aristologie rotunda, orabum[4] þat is wiilde tare, lupines,

[2 lf. 46]

An ignorant physician may make a dangerous wound out of a slight one.

A mild siccatif.

A stronger siccatif.

[1] *apeiriþ* intr. See Prompt. Parv. *Appeyryn*, or make wors. Pejoro, deterioro. [3] *yrios*. Lat. Iris. See Prior, *Dict.*, p. 123.

[4] "*Orobus*, gall. uesche, anglice thare uel mousespese."—Alphita, p. 131.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5 fol. 63 *a*]

þy medycine is to scharpe, þat þe place about þe wounde ys to grene, blake, red oþere to ȝelwe & þe syke man felyþ to grete hete [5]& brennynge, & also þe Venym of þe wounde multiplyeth̄, and whanne þe vnkunnynge leche seþ þese Accidentes tofore seyde, he ordeyneþ a dryere medycine; & so eche day þe wounde apeirith̄. And þe signe þat þe medycine is of feble dreyinge is þat þe quyter & þe rotnesse, þat goþ out þere of, ys gret in substaunce, ponderose & vneuene, wan oþer pale; þe membre is colde whyte oþer wan, oþer clere in coloure, oþer softe, & þe syke man felyth̄ colde in his membre, & whenne þat þou knowist þese þynges in þe firste cas, make noȝt þy medycine so drye. In þe secunde cas make þy medycine more drye, & so chaunge þy wirkynge, as condyciouns of kynde askyth̄, boþe of body & of membre, as wel symple as componede medycines. He þat knowiþ noȝt þese kanones wel*—schal helen olde woundes; wherefore manye lechys brynge lyȝte woundes wiþ here iuele wirchynge, into þe worste olde woundes, þe whiche mowe noȝt aftere be helyde by a gode leche. Þese ben lyȝte medycines, whiche þat drye olde wondys þat neden a lytel dryȝinge; mastyke, ffrankensence, barlymele. Þese medicynes beþ sumwhat dreyere: yreos. Aristologia. Orobum þat is wilde Tare, lupines, þe rotenesse

þe rotynes eiþer þe drie þoudre of' trees; & þese medicyns beh strongere: balaustie, psidie,[1] rose, notts of' cipris *et cetera* / & þese ben liȝt mundificatiuis: sugre, hony, water of' barlich, gotis whay, watir of' þe see, watir of' brimstoon þat' clensiþ & heteþ, water of' alym þat' clensiþ & coldiþ. & þou schalt haue greet' plente of' enplastris, mundificatiuis, oyntmentis compouuned *in* þe antidotarie of' þis book / A mild mundificatif.

## ¶ The .xij. chapitle of þe iij. techinge of þe firste tretis is of festre / ¶ Capm.xijm.

Festre is a deep old wounde, & þe mouþ of' him is streyt', & þe ground is brood, & he haþ [2]wiþinne him a calose[3] hardnesse al aboute as it' were a goos penne or ellis a kane / & a festre haþ difference from a deep vlcus & a cauernose / for a deep vlcus & cauernose of' whom it' is toold *in* þe chapitle tofore seid, þouȝ þat' þei acorden togidere in depnes & in streitnesse of' þe mouþ, þe vlcus haþ not' wiþinne him a calose hardnes / Wherfore a festre mai not be clensid wiþ waischinge *with* which a cauernose vlcus mai be clensid / but' it' is nessessarie aftir þat' þou hast' waischen it' to A fistula is distinguishable from a deep ulcer by its hardness, which must be removed by cauterization.

[2] lf. 46, bk.

[1] "*Psidia* cortex est mali granati."—*Synonoma Barthol.*, p. 35.
[3] O. Fr. calus, (Godefroy). See later references in *N. E. Dict.*

---

oþer þe dryȝe poudre of trees. Þese medycines ben strengere: balaustie, prosidye, rose, notys off' Cipresse et. cet. And þese[4] ben lyȝte mundificatyfes in cure,[5] hony, watire of barlye, gotyswheyȝ, water of þe see, water of brymston þat clansith & hetyþ, water of Alym þat clansyth & coldyth. Þou schalt haue grete plente of enplastres, mundificatyfes, and oygnementys *com*ponede in þe antitodarye of þis ilke booke. Add. MS. 12,056.

## ¶ Cap. xii of þe þridde techynge of þe firste tretis is of a[6] festre.

ffestre[7] is a depe olde wounde and[8] þe mouth is streyt of hym & þe grounde is brod, & he haþ wiþ ynne hym a callose hardnesse alle aboute, as yt were a gose penne oþer ellys a kane, & a ffestre haþ [9]diffence from a depe Vlcus & a cauernose; for a depe Vlcus & a Cauernose, of whom yt ys tolde in þe chapitle toforeseyde, þowȝ þat þey acorden togedire in depnesse & in streytnesse of þe mouþ, þe Vlcus haþ noȝt wiþyn hym a callose hardnesse, wherefore a festre may noȝt be clensyde *with* wasschynges, *with* þe whiche a[10] cavernose Vlcus may be clansyde, but it is necessarye, aftere þat [9 fol. 63 b]

[4] MS. *þese*, twice. [5] *in cure*, a scribal mistake from *sugre*.
[6] *of a*, above line. [7] MS. *ffirste*.
[8] *in*, cancelled; *and*, above line. [10] *a*, above line.

remeue þilke calose hardnesse wiþ a cauterie eiþer *with* a medicyn cauterizinge þat is brennynge, þe which cauterie ouþir brennynge schulde make þe deppe of þe vlcus holowere þan he was / Wherfore it is nessessarie to a surgian to knowe þe difference of þis science, þat he mowe knowe to heele boþe þe vlcus & þe festre wiþ medicyns different þat longen to hem boþe /

**Nota.** & if þat a festre be *in* þe fleisch or ellis bitwene senewe & senewe, so þat þe substaunce of þe senewe be not corrupt ne þe boon, it is no nede to take noon oþere medicyn but egrimoyne & staumpe it *with* salt as þou woldist make sause, & drawe out þe ius of þilke egrymoyne, & do it into þe [1]hole of þe festre wiþ a penne & leie þe substaunce of þe same eerbe þere-vpon til he haue slayn þilke festre & clensid it; & þou schalt knowe bi reednes & sadnesse of fleisch þat is wiþinne þe festre al aboute; & aftirward haue þis sirup of hony wiþ þe whiche þou schalt waische þe festre þat is now vlcus I-compouuned *in* þis maner / Take a pound water, vynegre half a pound, of hony dispumed ℥ .iiij., of leeues of olyue-tre bounden togidere wiþ a þred / ℥ j., of galingale[2] ʒ j, boile alle þese to þe perfiȝtnesse of a sirup, & lete it colden, & do awey þe

If the fistula is in fleshy parts, use cleansing medicines.

[1 lf. 47]

R

[2] *galingale*, ne. galangale, for *sagitelle*.

---

Add. MS. 12,056. þou hast y-wasschyde yt, to remeffyn þilke callose hardnesse *with* a cauterye, oþere wiþ a medycine cauterysynge þat ys brennynge, þe whiche cauterye oþer brennynge scholde make þe deppe of þe Vlcus holwere þanne he was. Wherefore it is necessarie to a surgiene to knowe þe difference of þis scyence, þat he mowe conne hele boþe þe Vlcus & þe festre *with* medycines different þat longyth̄ to hem boþe. And ȝif þat a festre be in þe flesch, oþer ellys bytwene synwe & synwe, so þat þe Substaunce of þe synwe be noȝt corupte ne þe bon, yt nys non nede to take non oþere medycine but egremoyne, & stampe hym wiþ salt, as þou woldest maken sause, & drawe out þe jus of þilke egremoyne, & do yt into þe hole of þe festre *with* a penne, & leye þe substaunce of þe same erbe þere-vpon, tyl he haue slaw[3] alle þilke festre & y-clansyde yt; & þat þou schalt knowen by þe rednesse & sadnesse of flesch þat is *with*ynne þe festre al aboute, & aftirwarde haue þis surype off honye, *with* þe whiche þou schalt wassche þe festre, þat ys now Vlcus *com*poned, in þis manere:[4] R water ℔i .j., of vynegre ℔i. ß, of hony despumed ℥ iiij, off leuys of olyue-tre, y-bounde togedre *with* a þrede, ʒ .j., of [5] fol. 64 a] [5]sagytelle ℥ .j., boylle al þis to þe perfytnesse of a sirupe, & let yt

[3] At the end of the line. One letter wanting.

[4] *Confection of syrup mellyne*, in margin.

leeues of' þe olyue, & kepe al þe remenaunt' of' þe sirup *with* þe leeues of' sagittel & waische þe vlcus þat' was festred tofore wiþ þis licour twies on þe day þat' þe licour may go to þe grou*n*d, & aftir-
4 ward drie it' weel & fille it' ful of' drie leeues of' sagittelle & leie a sagittel-leef' aboue; & þis medicyn þou schalt' contynuen til it' be hool / Euery festre þat' is *in* fleisch is heelid wiþ þis medicyn I-preued, but' if' þat' substau*n*ce of' þe senewe & of' þe boon be apeirid i*n* þe grou*n*d, & specialiche if' þat' þe festre be not old, & if' þat' þe calosite be nouȝt' to hard. I*n* þese two causis þe medicyn of' *egr*imoyne [1]ne suffisiþ nouȝt', but' it' is nessessarie to haue a cauterie of' fier eiþ*er* a medicyn caustik / & of' þese medicyns þou schalt' haue a ful techi*n*ge folowynge in þe book / & if' þat' þe boone were corrupt' i*n* þe deþþe of' þe festre, do it' awei aftir þe techi*n*ge tauȝt' in þe chapitle tofore / & herof' take hede, if' þat' a festre p*er*se bi þe weyes of' þe vryne so þat' þe vryne go out' bi þilke weie,
16 as we han seen ofte tymes, or ellis þat' it' go bi crokid placis & hid placis of' þe face[2] p*er*singe into deþþe, it' is[3] an vnp*er*fiȝt' cure, but' þou maist' pale[4] it', & do it' awey þe stinche w*ith* hony waischinge, enplastre, & hony mu*n*dificatiuis, & w*ith* defensiuis aboute þe place

If parts of a bone or sinew are rotten,

[1 If. 47, bk.]

use cauterization, or a caustic medicine,

and remove the morbid bone.

[2] Lat. per tortuosas aut occultas partes faciei. [3] *it is*, above line.
[4] *pale*, Lat. palliare. Dufr., *Gloss.*: 1. tegere; 2. simulare.

---

20 coldyn & do aweye þe leffys of þe olyfe, & kepe alle þe remnau*n*t of þe surype w*ith* þe leffys of sagytelle, & wassche þe Vlc*us* þ*at* was festr*e* tofore w*ith* þis licour*e* twyes a day, þ*at* þe lycoure may go to þe grou*n*de, & aft*er*warde dreye it wel & fyl yt ful of drye leffys of
24 sagytelle, & leye a sagitelle leff' aboue, and þis medycine þ*ou* schalt co*n*teynen tyl þ*at* it be hol. Ev*er*y festre þ*at* is in flesch̄ ys helyde w*ith* þis medycine y-pref*e*d, but ȝif þe s*u*bstau*n*ce of þe synwe & of þe bon be apeyred in þe grou*n*de, & specialyche ȝif þe festre be
28 nouȝt old & ȝif þ*at* þe callosite be noȝt to hard. In þese tweye cases þe medycyne of egremoyne ne suffiseþ noȝt, but it ys necessarye a kauterye of fyre o*þ*er a medycine caustyk*e*; & of þese medycins þ*ou* schalt han a ful techynge, folwynge in þe boke. And ȝif
32 þ*at* þe bon were corupte in þe deþþe of þe festr*e*, do yt aweye aft*er* þe techynge, þ*at* y haue tauȝte þe in þe chapiteƚ tofor*e*. And hereof take hede: ȝif þ*at* a festere p*er*se be þe weyȝes of þe vryne, so þ*at* þe Vryne go out by þilke weye, as we haue seyne ofte tymes,
36 o*þ*er ellys þ*at* he go by crokyde placys and hudel[4] places of þe face, p*er*synge into þe depnesse of þe hed whose grou*n*de þ*ou* maiste noȝt p*er*seyue, hit ys bettyr*e* noȝt for to cure w*ith* a p*er*fyte cur*e*, but þ*ou* maiste pale it & don awey þe stynke, w*ith* hony & wasschynges of
40 emplastre in mu*n*dificatyfes & w*ith* defensifes aboute þe place, þ*at*

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5] *hudel*, adj. See Mätzner, *Dict.*, hudels, sb. O.E. *hȳdels*, hiding-place.

cauterizacioun of þe senew þat is hirt.

þat his malice mowe[1] þen lasse greue. For a festre þat is *in* ioynturis as þe feet eiþer þe knee, eiþer þe hand, eiþir þe elbowe, is hard for to heele, & sumtyme impossible / & if þat he be *in* anoþer place, & he haue corrodid eiþer rotid sumwhat of þe senewe, þow þat it be greuous for to cure it, *per* is noon oþer wey, but a liȝt cauterizacioun of þe senewe þat is hurt / For cauterizacioun wiþ hoot iren eiþer wiþ gold, þat is bettere, it clensiþ & drieþ þe senewe þat is corrupt & rectifieþ þe complexioun of al þe membre & [2]a medecyn caustik worchiþ þe contrarie / Brennynge medicyns, boþe þe symple & þe compound þou schalt haue to þe fulle[3] *in*[4] antidotarie of þis book, & þou schalt fynde þe maner of cauterisynge to þe fulle *in* þe þridde tretis folowynge. & whanne þou hast maad a perfiȝt mundificacioun of þilke colose fleisch, regendre fleisch & consowde with medicyns regeneratius & consolidatiuis þe whiche þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie //

[2 lf. 48]

¶ Capm xiijm canser vlcirat

## The xiij chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste tretis is of a cankre /

Cankre I-woundid comeþ of openynge, eiþer of kuttinge, eiþer of brekynge of a cankre not I-woundid, whos techinge þou schalt

[1] MS. *moore.*

[3] See page 86, note 3.

[4] *þe þridde tretis folowynge | & whanne þou hast maad a perfiȝt mundificacioun* struck through in red, after *to þe fulle in.*

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

his malyce mowe þe lasse greff. A festre þat is in juncturys as þe fote oþer þe kne, oþer þe hand, oþere þe elbowe, is hard forto hele & sumtyme vnpossible. And ȝif þat he be in an oþere place & he haue coroded oþer rotyd sumwhat of þe synwe, þowȝ þat it be greffes forto cure it, þere nys none oþere weye bote a lyȝt cauterysacioun of þe synwe, þat is y-hurt: ffor cauterysacioun wiþ hote yren, oþer wiþ gold þat is betyre clansyth & dryeþ [5]þe synwe þat ys corupte, & rectefyeth þe complexioun of al þe membre, and a medycine caustyke worcheþ þe contrarye. Brennynge medycines, boþe symple & componed, þou schalt han to þe fulle in þe antitodarye of þis boke, & þou schalt fynde þe manere of cauterysinge to þe fulle in þe þridde tretys folwynge; & whanne þou hast made a perfyte mundyficacioun of þilke callose flesch, regenere flesch & consoude with medycines regeneratyfes & consolidatyfes, þe whyche þou schalte fynde in þe antitodarye.

[5 fol. 64 *b*]

## ¶ Cap. xiii off þe þridde techynge off þe ffirste tretys is Off a Canker.

¶ Cankyre y-woundyde comyth of opnynge, oþere of kuttynge, oþere of brekynge of a cancre noȝt y-woundyde, whose techynge þou

haue *in* þe chapitle of þe apostymes *in* þe þridde techi*n*ge / & lie arises from a badly healed or purulent wound.
comeþ of a wou*n*de yuel heelid, to whom comeþ a malancolient mater rotid; or for þe mater þat comeþ to þe wou*n*de is þe*re* cor-
4 ru*m*pid & chau*n*giþ þe vlcus into a cankre /

& þese ben þe tokenes of þe caukre / þe vlcus is foul & stynk- Its signs are: the peculiar condition of the wound,
ynge, þe lippis be*n* grete, wan, or blak, hard, & wiþi*n*ne kirnely, & ou*er* al aboute arerid and [1]holowe / & þis is þe difference bitwene [1 If. 48, bk.]
8 a cankre & a foul vlcus & an hori of whom I haue m*aa*d mencio*u*n aboue, þat if þat þou waische he*m* boþe wiþ liȝe, þe cankre schal Nota be palere & foulere þan he was bifore, & þe*re* schal falle out of him the effect of a lye lotion,
pecis gobetmele.[2] & þe vlcus is clensid wiþ þilke liȝe, & þe fleisch
12 is m*aa*d fairer þa*n* it was tofore, ne þe vlcus stynkiþ not bi þe same stinche as þe cankre doiþ; for þe cankre haþ a *pro*pre sauour, þe and the smell of the cancer.
which mai not be write wiþ lettre; but þilke sauour is best knowe of me*n* whiche þat best han seiȝe cankreis.[3]

16 A general rule in þe cure of a cankre is, þat a cankre mai not A cancer must either be left untouched or entirely removed.
be heelid, but if þat he be do awey wiþ alle hise rotis / þe secu*n*de rule is, þat he schal not be touchid wiþ hoot iren ne *with* hoot medicyn caustik, þat is to seie bre*n*nyn*g*e, but he be *in* place

[2] *gobetmele*, piecemeal. *Polychron.*, iv. 103: membratim. See further, Mätzner, *Dict.* [3] MS. *cankre is.*

---

20 schalt habbyn in þe Chapitle of enpostem*es* in þe þridde techynge Add. MS. & he comyth of a wou*n*de yuele y-helyde, to whom comyth a maly- 12,056.
colient rotyde matere, o*per* for þat þe matere comeþ to þe wou*n*de is
24 þe*re* coruppyd, & chau*n*gyth þe Ulcus into a Cankere. And þese beþ þe toknys of þe cankere: þe Ulc*us* ys foule & stynkynge, þe lippes beþ grete, wanne, o*per*e blake, harde, and wiþi*n*ne kernelly, & ou*er*e
28 alle aboute areryde & holwy, & þis is þe dyfference bytwene cancre & a foule Ulcus & an hory, of whom y haue made mensiou*n* aboue, þat ȝif þat þou wassche hem boþe[4] wiþ leyȝe, þe cancre schal be*n*
pale & foulere þe*n*ne he was tofore, & þe*re* schal fallen out of hy*m*
32 pecys, gobetmele. And þe Ulcus ys y-clansede *with* þilke leyȝe, & þe flesch ys made fayrere þe*n*ne yt was tofore, ne þe Ulcus stynkeþ noȝt by þe same stenche as þe cancre doþ; for þe cankre hath a
*pro*pre saffoure, þe which may noȝt be wryte*n* wiþ lettres, but þilke
36 safou*r*e ys best knowyn to of me*n*, whiche þat beste han seye cankrys. A [5]generall rule in þe cure of cankre ys, þat a cankyre [5 fol. 65 *a*]
may noȝt be*n* helyde bot ȝif þat he be done awey wiþ alle hys
rotys. The secu*n*de rule ys, þat he schal noȝt ben touchyde *with* hot yren ne wiþ hot medycyne caustyk—þat is to sigge, bre*n*nynge

[4] MS. o*per*e.

*Nota* where he may al be doon awey / for þe more þat' þou touchist' hi*m* wiþ a violent' þing' ei*þer* medicyn, þe more his malice is encreessid /

If possible, cut away and Take þ*a*nne good heede if he be in a fleischi place, where þat' he may be don al wey, & þanne kutte hi*m* al awey wiþ alle hise rotis / 4

[1 lf. 49] & þanne þriste out' al þe malancolient' [1]blood þat' is wiþinne þe

burn the cancer, and apply a cleansing poultice. veynes þat' be*n* aboute þe cankre. & aftirward bre*n*ne al aboute *in* þe place þ*er*e as þe cankre was *with* hoot' ire*n* / aftirward leie on þis confecciou*n* m*a*ad of' flo*ur* of' wheete & hony & ius of' smalache,[2] til 8 þat' he be p*er*fi3tliche clensid. Af*ter* regendre fleisch & cicatrice.

*Nota* To þis rule / take hede as ofte as þou wilt' wiþ sirurgie heelen a

the consel off ypocras: if the cancer cannot be removed, try no cure at all. cancre: first' euacue þe malancolient' mater, for þat' is ypocr*as* techi*n*ge; & if' þat' he be growen in sich a place þ*er*e as he may not' 12 be doon al awey, as *in* þe necke or in þe tetis, or in þe face, or *in* þe arshole, or in þe mareis; & also for schortere conclusiou*n*, & he be entrid in ony place þ*er*e as ony senewis, arteries, veynes, be*n*—as

ypocras. ypocras seiþ—it' is bettere nou3t' to cure þe cankre þan to cure. For 16 & he be curid, þat' is to seie kutt' or I-brent', þei p*er*ischen þe su*n*nere; & if' þei ben not' curid, þei lyuen þe lengere tyme—libro vj°. afforismo*rum*: Canc*ri* absconditi multu*m* tempus *per*fuciunt'

[2] *smallage*, Halle Table, p. 12. "Smalache, Marche, or Marshe Persley." See Prior, *Dict.*, p. 217.

---

Add. MS. 12,056. —but he be in place, þ*er*e he may al be don away; ffor þe more 20 þat þou touchiste hy*m* wit*h* a vyolent thynge o*þer* medycine, þe more hys malys is encressyde. Take þ*e*nne gode hede 3if he be in a fleschlye place, where þat he may be don al aweye, & þ*e*nne kutte hy*m* al aweye wiþ alle hys rotys, & þruste out þe malencolyent blod 24 þat ys wit*h*ynne þe Veynes, þat beþ aboute þe cancre, & aft*er*warde bre*n*ne alle aboute in þe place, þ*er*e as þe cankre was, wiþ hote yren. Aft*er*ward leye on þis *con*fectiou*n* y-mad of floure of whete hony, jus of smallache, tyl þat he be p*er*fitly y-clansyde. Af*ter* 28 regene*re* flesch & cycatrice. To þis rule take hede as ofte as þou wylt wiþ surgerye helyn a cancre: furst evacue þe malencolyent matere, ffor þat is ypocras techynge, & 3if he be growen in swyche a place, þ*er*e as he may no3t be done alle aweye, as in þe nekke ore 32 in þe tetys, o*þer*e in þe face, ore in þe ers hole, o*þer* in þe marys, and also for the schortere *con*clusiou*n*, & he be entrede in enye place, þ*er*e as enye Veynes, synwes, & arteryes bu*þ*, as ypocras seith, yt ys betyre no3t to cur*e* þe cancre, þ*en* to cure; ffor he be 36 curyde, þat is to sigge, y-kutte o*þer*e y-brent, þey perysschen so*n*nere; & 3if þey be no3t curyde þey lyuen longe tyme—**libro sexto afforismo*rum* Cancri absconditi multu*m* temp*us* p*er* ficiunt**

*Regula*, in margin.

curati vero cicius pereunt / But defende þe lyme þat is hool aboute with defensif of bole þat I haue ofte tymes seid & waische þe wounde of þe cankre wiþ gotis whey, & drie it softly, [1]& anoynte þe wounde wiþinne & wiþoute with þis oynement of rasis &[2] tutie[3] / take ceruse,[4] tutie I-waische & medle hem wiþ oile of rosis & wiþ ius of purcelane[5] or of sum opere cold erbe, putte ynne sum of þe toon, & now sum of þat oper, til þe oynement be weel I-maad / þis oynement is myche worþ for to defende þat þe malice of þe cancre schal not wexen, & also þat þe pacient vse a good gouernaile: as drinke good wiyn & cleer & lithe, & he muste leeue reed wiyn & troublid & þicke wiyn, & he may ete good fleisch, as motoun[6] of a weþer, kide fleisch sowkynge, capouns, hennes, chikenes, partrichis,[7] fesauntis, & smale briddis, & he muste leeue: beeues fleisch[8] & gotis fleisch, hertis fleisch & haris fleisch, goos, dokis, & alle greete briddis þat lyuen in watri placis, & al salt þing & acute þing: as garleek, oynonys & vynegre *et cetera* [þat]*

Use a lotion

℞ [1 lf. 49, bk.] and vnguentum tute

the diet for þe canker:.

the patient shall only take white wine and digestible food.

[2] *&*, erroneously for *of*.

[3] *tutie*, Matth. Sylvat. "Tuchia . . Lat. Cadimia & pomfolix." Arab. tūtiā. Fr. tutie. See Wr. Wü., p. 559, 13. "Tucia, i. tutie" (xiiith cent.). It is: Oxidum Zinci impurum.

[4] *ceruse*, white lead. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. Ceruse.

[5] *purcelane*, Lat. portulaca. Halle Table, p. 90. "Another herbe there is also called Portulaca marina, only of the likenes that the leaves therof haue with porcelaine." See "Purslane," Prior, *Popular Names*, p. 193.

[6] *moton*, carnes ovine, Wr. Wü., 741, 39, xvth cent.

[7] *partrichis*, *Cathol. Ang.*, p. 270, a Partryke, perdrix. See further Skeat, *Et. Dict.* [8] *bef*, added above line, in different hand.

---

**curati vero cicius pereunt.** ¶ But diffende þe lyme þat is hol aboute with defensiff of bol, þat y haue ofte tymes seyde, & wassche þe wounde of þe cancre with gotys wheyȝ, & drye yt softlyche & anoynt þe wounde withinne & without, with þis oygnement of rasys of tutye, ℞ ceruse, tuthye, y-wasschyn and medle hem wiþ oyle of roses & wiþ jus of poslane, [9]opere of sum opere colde erbe, now puttynge in sum of þe on & now sum of þe opere, tyl þe oygnement be ful mad. þis oygnement ys myche worth forto diffende; þat þe malys of þe cancre þat is y-woundyde schal noȝt waxen, and also þat þe pacient vse a gode gouernaylle: as drynkinge gode wyn & clere & lyȝt, & he mote leuen red wyn and troblyde & þykke wyn; & he may eten gode flesch̄, as motoun of a weþire, kyde fflesch̄ sokkynge, Capouns, hennys, Chykenys, partryches, ffesauntes, & smale briddes, & he moste leuyn beffys flesch̄, gotys fflesch̄, hertys flesch̄, harys fflesch̄, goses, dokys, & alle grete briddys. þat lyuen in watrye places, & alle salt þynge & acute þynge: as garlyke, Oynouns, vynegre, &c., þat* þe syke men mowe lyuen þe lengere vpon

Add. MS. 12,056.

[9 fol. 65 b]

þe sike man may lyue þe lengere vpon erþe / Neþeles if' vlcus be riȝt' foul & haue nouȝt' so greet' malice as a cankre, of' þe which vlcus I haue told tofore may be curid wiþ poudre of' affadillis, and aftirward
[1 lf. 50] weel be clensid ; & for þat' þis vlcus [1]þat' was so foul may be heclid / 4

**Rogeryn and Roland pretended to have healed old cancers.**

Rogeryn and Rowlond & manye o*þe*r settide in her bokis þe cure of' a cankre, þouȝ þat' he be *in* a senewey place, & þei seien þat' þei han heelid him / But' vndirstonde weel for certeyn, þat' an olde cankre mai not' be heelid bi noon o*þe*r wey, but' bi þe same wey þat' 8 I haue seid *in* þe bigyn*n*ynge of' þis chapitle / & if' þat' þou dredist' whe*þe*r þat' it' be a symple vlcus or a cankre & a foul, for þe signes

**In doubtful cases rub with a powder;**

& þe tokenes tofore seid beþ doutis, bigyn*n*e to mortifie it' wiþ sum
mane*r* of' poud*re* : as wiþ poudre of' affadillis, & bi my witt' poudre 12
of' erbe robert'[2] / & loke aftirward þe prosis of' þi worchinge seiþ

**in the case of cancer the patient will grow worse.**

þis boke[3] / For if' þat' he be a uerry cankre, þou schalt' se þe more þou woldist' clense him, þe more his malice schal wexen / & if' he be not' a cankre, he schal be clensid riȝt' as an vlcus / Whanne þat' 16 þou seest' þe wexynge of' a cankre & his malice agmenten, ceesse from þe verry cure & turne aȝen to þe forseid cure of' þe oynement' of' tutie, þe which þat' paliþ þe cankre. For & þou bisie þee to

[2] *erbe robert*, insertion of the scribe. Geranium Robertianum. See *Prior*, p. 113. Cronenburg. De Compositione Medicamentorum, a. 1555, fol. 106, A. Ruprechtskraut : Roberti herba (Geranii species).

[3] *seiþ þis book*, erroneously inserted.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

erthe. Naþeles ȝif vlcus be ryȝt foul & hatħ nouȝt so gret malys as 20 a cancre, off' þe whyche Vlcus y haue tolde tofore, may ben y-curyde wiþ poudre of affedylle, and afterwarde wel be clansyde, & for þat þis Vlc*us* þat was so foul may be helyde. Rogeryne & Rouland & manye o*þe*re settyde in here bokys þe cure of þe cancre, þowȝ 24 þat he be in a synwy place, & þey siggen þat þey haue helyde hym. But vndirstande wel for certeyne, þat an olde cancre may noȝt ben helyde by none o*þe*re wey, bote by þe same wey, whiche þat y haue seyde in þe bygyn*n*ynge of þys chapyteħ. & ȝif þat þou dredyst, 28 whe*þe*re þat yt be a cancre o*þe*re a symple Vlcus & a foul, for þe signes & þe toknys tofore seyde beþ doutes. begyn*n*e to mortefye yt wiþ sum mane*r* poudre as wiþ poudre of affodylles, & loke afterwarde þe pr*o*cesse of þy worchynge ; ffor ȝif þat he be a verrey 32 cancre þou schalt se, þe more þou woldyste clanse*n* hym þe more hys malys schal waxen, and ȝif he be noȝt a cancre, he schal be
[4 fol. 66 *a*] clansyde ryȝt as an Vlcus. Whanne þat þou seste þe waxyng [4]of þe cancre & hys malys augmenten, sese fro þe verreye cure & turne 36 ageyne to þe forseyde cure of þe oygnement of tuetye, whiche þat palyth̄ þe cancre. ffor & þou bysy þe to cure þe cancre, & þou pro-

cure þe cankre, & þou procede in þi cure, þou schortist þe pacientis lijf / & if þou palist, þou lenkþist his lijf /

## The .xiiij chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste tretis is for to remeue causis þat letten þe cure of olde woundis / [lf. 50, bk.] ¶ Capm xiiijm

I tolde þee aboue in þe general chapitle of olde woundis cause whiche þat letten olde woundis to be heelid / & also I tolde þe techinge plenerliche þat ben nessessarie to remeue ech sengle cause þat is nessessarie, how þat alle maner causis þat letten mai be don awey bi a good surgien & a wijs; so þat þou ioynest þis chapitle wiþ þe opere chapitle tofore seid, þou schalt han a pleyner techinge. If þat þe bodi be ful of olde humouris eiþer in þe idropisie, loke þat he may be heelid of þilke disposicioun, & þanne heele him if þat þou canst / &[1] if þat he be not ful of olde humouris whiche þat neden no curynge of olde disposicioun. Ne traueile not in deueyn[2] þe sike man neiþir wiþ medicyns corosiuis, ne wiþ kuttynge, ne with puttynge into þe woundis greete tentis; but do aboue þe vlcus liʒt

If a patient is hydroptic or cachectic, his condition must first be improved,

[1] The translator, perhaps intentionally, altered his original: si non (scis), pete physicum qui curationem illius dispositionis faciat.

[2] *in deueyn* = in veyn.

---

cede in thy cure, þou schortest þe pacientes lyff. And ʒif þou palest þou lengthiste hys lyff. Add. MS. 12,056.

## ¶ Cap. xiiij of þe þridde techynge of þe furste tretys, is forto remefe causes þat latten þe cure of olde woundys.

¶ I tolde þe aboue in þe general Chapytle of olde Woundes, causes whiche þat latteþ olde woundys to by helyde. And also y telde þe techynges plenerlyche þat beþ necessarye to remywe eche sengle cause, þat is necessarye to be done awey. And now y schal in þis specyal chapytle teche, how þat alle manere cause þat lettyth̄ may be done awey by a gode surgyne & a wyse, so þat ʒif þou joynest þis chapitele with þe opere chapyteH to fore seyde, þou schalt han a plenere techynge. ʒif þat þe body be ful of elde humores, opere in þe dropsye; loke ʒif þat he may be helyde of þilke disposicioun, & þenne hele hym ʒif þat þou canst, and ʒif þat he be noʒt ful of elde humorys; whiche þat nedyth̄ to curynge of olde disposicioun. Ne traueyle noʒt in deveyne þe syke man, nowþere with medycines corosifes, ne with kuttynges, ne with puttynges into þe wounde grete tentys; but do aboffe þe Vlcus lyʒte mundyficatyfes & swote

and in the mean time only mild mundificatifs applied.

mundificatiuis & swete smellynge, þat kepiþ þe membre liȝtliche clene þat it stynke not / & whanne þat he is keuerid from an yuel disposicioun, thanne turne aȝen to þe principal cure / & þis same

[1 lf. 51 a]

þing [1]I saye of yuel disposicioun of þe lyuere of what maner cause þat he be enfeblid; þe same I saye of þe splene / But if þese tweyne ben in her kyndely disposicioun, olde woundis moun not be heelid. If [2] þat greet multitude of blood lettiþ, þat may be knowen bi ful replecioun of þe veines of al þe bodi, bi rednesse & extencioun of þe face, bi swetnes of þe mouþ, bi flating [3] / Whanne þat a man is fastynge, bi heuynes of þe browis, & bi ȝong age, & his complexioun is hoot & moist, & þat he haþ vsid in his dietynge wiyn and fleisch; & make him þanne be lete blood of þe veyne þe which þat bryngiþ norischinge to þe lyme, & aftirward of þe veyne þat mai best voiden þe membre þat is hurt / & if þat þe blood trespace oonly in qualite, amende him as if þat he be to hoot, voide him a litil & diete him with colde metis & stiptik. & aftirward procede forþ in alle maner oþir causis as it is told in þe general chapitle, takynge hede þat þer ben summe maner medicyns whiche þat ben driynge & clensynge, & han a priuy [4] propirte to consowde

The same must be done if the liver or the spleen is bad.

If the patient has too much blood,

use phlebotomy.

[2] *if* above line.
[3] *flating*, Add. MS. *wlattynge*. See Wright Wü. O.E. *wlatung*.
[4] *priuy*. See *Cathol. Angl.*, pryvay, occultus.
[a] Heading to this page: *Causes þat lettes þe cure off old woundes.*

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

smellynge þat kepyth the membre lyȝtlyche clene, þat he stynke noȝt. And whanne þat he is curyde from an yuele disposicioun, turne aȝeyne to þe principal cure; & þis same þynge y sugge of yuele disposicioun of þe lyfere, of what manere cause þat þe enfeblyde; þe same y sigge of the spleen, ffor but ȝif þese tweyne ben in here kendlye dysposicioun, olde woundes mowe noȝt ben helyde. ȝif þat grete multitude off blode lette þe, þat may be knowe by ful replecioun of þe veynes of alle þe body, by rednesse & extension of þe face, be swetnesse of þe mouth, be wlattynge,

[5 fol. 66 b]

whenne þat a man ys fastynge, by [5]heuynesse of þe browys, & by ȝonge age, & þat hys complexioun ys hot & moyst, and þat he hath y-vsyde in hys dyotynge wyn & fflesch, and þenne make hym be lete blode on þe veyne, whiche þat bryngeth norysschynge to þe lyme, & afterwarde of the Veyne þat may beste voyden þe membre þat ys y-hurt. And ȝif þat þe blode trepasse onlye in qualyte, amende hym as ȝif þat he be to hot, voyde hym a lytel & dyote hym wiþ colde metys & styptyke. And afterwarde procede forth in alle oþere manere cases as it ys tolde in þe generall chapyteH, takynge hede þat þere ben sum manere medycines, whiche þat beþ dryȝinge & clansynge, & haue a prefe proprete to consoude olde woundys,

olde wou*n*dis whiche þat' ben difficult' to be consowdid; of' þe whiche medicyns su*mm*e be*n* symple & su*mm*e [1]be*n* compou*n*ned / [1 lf. 51, bk.]
Symple ben: limature of' iren, flour of' bras brent', vitriol leed brent', & alle scharpe corosiuis if' þat' þei ben brent'; for þat' þei han ver*t*u more to consowden, & also her corrisou*n* is lessid / þis is a medicyn compou*n*ned: take floris[2] eris, limature of' bras an*a*. ʒ j. litarge of' gold, litarge of' siluir, ʒ .viij. gu*mm*e of' cipresse, ʒ .iiij. sal gemme,[3] ʒ .ij. aristologia I-brent' smal to poudre of' frankencense, an*a*. ʒ .v. wex & oile of' mirtill þat' suffisiþ // //

Simple consolidatifs.

a compound consoledatiff

## The .xv. chapitle of þe þridde techi*n*ge of þe firste tretis is of a crampe þat comeþ to a wounde /

¶ Capm. xvm.

Nessessarie þing' is to a surgian to knowe þe causis of' a crampe, þe which þat' comeþ to a wou*n*de þat' schulde be heelid, & also þat' he knowe þe disposicio*u*n of' hi*m* þat' haþ þe crampe, & also what' þing' þat' þe crampe is, þat' he mowe resonabliche hele þe crampe / þe crampe is a sijknes cordo*us* ei*þer* neruous, i*n* þe which sijknes cordis & þe senewis weren drawen to her bigy*n*nynge; of' þe whiche drawynge þat' be*n* .ij. causis co*n*iunct': þe toon is replecciou*n* of' þe

Cramp is a contraction of the tendons or nerves arising from

[2] Lat. flor. æris.

[3] *sal gemme.* A Salt so named, from its Transparent and Crystalline Brightness.—Kersey.

---

whiche þat beþ deffykel to be *con*soudyde, of þe whyche medycines some beth̄ symple & some beþ *com*poned. Symple beþ: lymature of bras, lymature of Iren, ffloure of bras brent; vytreol rede y-brent, and alle scharpe corosifes, ȝif þat þey ben y-brent. ffor þat þey han þe more vertue to *con*souden, and al so here corosion ys y-lassyde. þis ys a medycine *com*ponyde: ℞. ffloris eris, lymature of bras ana .ʒ. j., litarge of gold, litarge of syluere ana. ʒ. viij., gu*mm*e of cypresse .ʒ. iiij, sal ge*mm*e .ʒ. ij, Aristologie I-brende, smal poudre of ffrank Ensence ana. ʒ. v., wax & oyle of myrtyne þat suffyseþ.

Add. MS. 12,056.

## ¶ Cap. XV. off the þridde techynge of þe ffirste tretys is off a Crawmpe, that comyth to a Wounde.

Necessarye thynge ys a surgyne, to knowe þe causys of þe cra*mp*e whiche þat comyth̄ to a wou*n*de þat scholde ben y-helyde, and also þat he knowe þe dysposicio*u*n of hy*m* þat haþ þe crampe. And also what þynge þe crampe ys, þat he mowe resonablyche hele þe crampe. The crampe ys a seknesse cordouse, o*þere* ellys nervose, in the whiche syknesse þe cordes & þe synwes were drawyne to here bygy*n*nynge; of þe whiche drawynge *þere* beþ tweye causes

repletion or inanition.

[2 lf. 52]

senewe, þe oþ*er*e of' þe corde, þe oþ*er* is *in*anisiou*n*.[1] He þa' is of' in-anisiou*n*, [2]ofte tymes he haþ a cause goynge tofore as to myche euacuaciou*n* of' blood eiþ*er* of' su*m* oþer þing', as to longe afflicciou*n* for long' akþe, or ellis for þe appetite of' þe sike ma*n* haþ be*n* longe tyme enfeblid; & þis comeþ litil & litil, & þe crampe þa' comeþ of' boþe þese causis may not' be heelid. & he þa' comeþ of' replaciou*n* haþ oon of' þe .iij. causis goynge tofore / þe firste cause is to greet' akþe / þe .ij. cause is cold / & þe .iij. cause is putrifaccioun eiþer rotynge / & þouȝ þa' oon sengle cause su*m*tyme suffice to make a crampe, ofte tymes alle þese causis happen to come togiders / And þis crampe may be heelid or þa' he be confermed, & aftir þa' he is confermed seelde*n* or neuere / A surgian muste þa*n*ne be bisy *in* al þa' he myȝte, þat a crampe ne wexe not' *in* þe wou*n*de þa' schulde be heelid, wiþ obuiaciou*n*[3] defendi*n*ge þe lyme, þa' noon of' þe .iij. causis tofore seid ne come nouȝt' into þe wou*n*de: þe oon is in defendynge þe lyme from putrifaccioun / þe toþ*er*e is for kepi*n*ge þe lyme fro rotynge / þe þridde is to gou*er*ne hi*m* from a greet' akynge / for it' is more sikir to defende þa' a crampe [4]ne come not', þa*n*ne aftir þa' he is come with medicyns þa' is douteful or dredeful to

Repletion occurs after .1. great pain, .2. cold, .3. putrefaction.

Cramp must be prevented in three ways: .1. .2. .3.

[4 lf. 52, bk.]

as it is difficult to heal.

[1] *inanisiou*n, Lat. inanitio. Vigo. Interpretation. "*Inanition*, emptyng."
[3] *obuiaciou*n, Lat. cum obuiatione defensiuorum.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

[6 fol. 67 *a*]

*con*juncte: þe on ys repletion of þe synwe, oþ*er*e of þe corde, þe oþ*er*e is Inanysion. He þat ys in[5] avision ofte tymes haþ a cause goynge to fore, [6]as to myche evacuaciou*n* of blod, oþ*er*e of su*m* othire thynge; as to longe afflictiou*n* for longe akþe, oþ*er*e ellys, for þe Apetite of the syke man hath be longe tyme enffeblyde; & þis comyth lytel & lyteH, and þe crampe þat comyth of boþe þese causys may noȝt be*n* helyde. And he þat comyth of repletion hath on of þre causys goynge tofore: þe firste cause ys to grete akþe, þe secunde cause ys colde, þe þridde ys putrefaccioun oþ*er* rotynge; and þowȝ þat one sengle cause su*m*tyme suffisetH to maken a crampe, ofte tymes alle þese causes happe to come togedres. And þis crampe may ben y-helyde ere þat he be comfermyde, & after þat he ys *con*fermyde selden oþ*er*e neffere. A surgyne moste þenne be busye; in alle þat he myȝte, þat a crampe no wexe noȝt in þe wou*n*de þat schulde be helyde, wiþ obuiacion dyffendynge þat none of þe þre causes tofore seyde ne come noȝte to þe wounde; þe one ys in deffendynge þe lyme fro*m* putrefaccioun, þe oþ*er*e is in kepynge þe lyme fro*m* rotenesse, þe þridde is to gou*er*ne hy*m* fro*m* gret akynge; ffor it is mor*e* sykere to dyffende, þat a crampe ne come noȝt, þenne aftere þat he ys come wi*th* medycine þat is doutes oþ*er*e dredful to

[5] Scribal mistake.

do awey / For if' a feuere come to an heed or to a senewe þat' is woundid, & if' þe crampe folowe, euermore it' is deedliche.

Take hede þanne to aswage þe akþe wiþ anoyntynge of' oile of' rosis, *in* doynge as I haue seid afore *in* þe chapitle of' senewis þat' ben woundid; for ofte tymes þe crampe comeþ fro woundis þat' ben *maad in* þe heed or ellis in þe senewe / & if' þat' akþe were so greet', þat' makiþ þe crampe for þe *pr*ickynge of' a senewe or ellis of' a corde / & if' þat' þou myȝtist' nouȝt' defende þe crampe neiþir wiþ blood letynge, neiþ*er* wiþ ventusynge, ne wiþ clisterie, ne wiþ suppositorie, ne wiþ defensif' *in* anoyntynge þe necke, ne þe grynde, ne þe arm hoolis, þanne it' is nessessarie þat' þou kutte al atwo þilke senewe or þilke corde þat' is *pr*ickid, þouȝ þat' þe felynge or þe meuynge of' þe lyme to whom þilke senewe or þilke corde seruеþ *in* p*ar*ti or *in* al be lost' / For it' is bettere þat' a man lese þe felynge & þe meuy*n*ge of' a lyme, þan for to deie. But' it' is bettere, if' þat' þou cowdist', to kepe a man þer-fro *with* o*þ*ere [1]medicyns þan þat' þe senewe or þe corde be kutt' al atwo. *&* if [2] þat' þou were not' at' þe bigy*nn*ynge, & þou fyndist' a man hauynge þe crampe for a wounde, do þou as I dide at' melain. Þer was a scoler of' myn þat' was a surgi*an* þat' was clepid Olyuer, which þat' curide a scheþere

Treatment of cramp. Allay the suffering with an ointment, if necessary, cut the injured nerve or tendon. [1 lf. 53] *Nota.*

[2] *if*, above line.

---

don aweye, Ffor ȝif þat a ffeuyre come to an hed o*þ*ere to a synwe þ*at* ys y-wou*n*dyde, & þe crampe folwe euyre more, yt ys dedlyche. Take hede þe*n*ne to aswage þe akþe wi*th* anoy*n*gty*n*ge of oyle of rosys, and in doynge as y haue seyde tofore in þe chapitle of synwes þat beþ y-wou*n*dyde; ffor ofte tymes þe crampe comyt̄h for woundys, þat beþ made in þe hed o*þ*ere ellis[3] in þe synwe: And ȝif þat akþe were so grete, þat makyt̄h a crampe for þe *pr*ikynge off' a synwe o*þ*er ellys of a corde, and ȝif þ*ou* myȝtest noȝt deffende þe crampe, newhere wiþ blode letynge, ne wi*þ* ventosynge, ne wiþ clysterye, ne wiþ suppositorye, ne wi*th* defensif' in anoyntynge þe nekke, ne þe grynde, ne þe arme holys, þe*n*ne yt is necessarie þat þou kytte alle atwo þilke synwe o*þ*ere corde þat is y-p*r*ikyde, þowȝ þat þe ffelynge o*þ*ere þe meffynge of þe lyme, to whom þilke synwe o*þ*ere corde servyde, in p*ar*ty o*þ*er in al be loste. Ffor yt is bettyre [4]þat a man lese þe felynge & þe meffynge of a lyme þe*n*ne þawȝ þat he deyȝe. But yt is bettyre ȝif þat þou coupest kepen a man with o*þ*ere manere medycines, þe*n*ne þat þe synwe o*þ*ere corde be y-kutte al atwo. And ȝif þat þou were noȝt at þe bygy*nn*inge, and þou fyndest a man hauynge a crampe for a wou*n*de, do þou as y dyde at Melan. Þ*er*e was a Scolere of myne þat was a Surgyne þat was y-clepyde Olyfe*r*e, whyche þat

Add. MS. 12.056. [4 fol. 67 *b*]

[3] *ellis*, above line.

Case of a shepherd who had hurt his head.

of' a wounde þat' he hadde in þe heed; & bi þilke wounde þe pannicle ouþir þe skyn þat' keueriþ þe brayn panne þat' is vnder þe fleisch was hurt', & neuer-þe-lattere þe brayn panne was not' hurt'. &

The wound was closed too soon, and cramp ensued.

þilke leche, or þanne he hadde perfiȝtlich purified þilke pannicle, sowdide þe wounde wiþoutforþ[1]; & whanne þilke wounde was sowdid, þe pannicle þat' was not' weel heelid hadde a dedein[2] & was cause of' gendrynge of' a crampe in þilke wounde. & at' þe

Lanfranc found the patient dying.

laste I was clepid to þe sike man, & I foond him hauynge þe crampe, & wiþ þe crampe he hadde manye smale enpostymes aboute his face—& þat' is an yuele tokene in þe woundis of' þe heed—& þanne I demede him for deed / Neþeles at' þe instaunce of' hise

[4 lf. 53, bk.]

freendis I wolde asaie þe worchinge of' kynde vpon resoun; I made

He reopened the wound,

his heed to be schaue,[3] & I kutte aȝen þe wounde þat' was [4]consowdid wiþ a rasour to þe depþe of' þe same wounde, & aftirward I

anointed

fulfillide þe wounde with hoot' oile of' rosis, & I anoyntide al þe heed with þe same oile of' rosis & a litil vynegre medlid togidere, & I anoyntide þe nolle & þe necke oonly wiþ oile of' rosis, & I dide on þe wounde þe ȝelke of' an ey wiþ oile of' rosis, and I boond al

[1] *wiþoutforþ*, extrinsecus, from without.

[2] *dedein*, Lat. panniculus *indignatus* causa fuit spasmi. The translator misunderstood *indignatus*, and gives us an "indignant pannicle." *indignatus*, Med. Lat. damaged, hurt. See Tommas. s. v. indegnare 3.—Compare *þe ludych lorde—hade dedayn of þat dede.*—Allit. Poems, B. 74.

[3] *I made his hed to be schaue*, abradi caput feci.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

curyde a schepere of a wounde þat he hadde in the hed; & by þilke wounde þe pannycle opere þe skyn þat keueryth̄ þe breyne panne, þat is vndire þe fflesch̄, was y-hurt, & nere þe latere þe breyn panne was noȝt y-hurt. & þilke leche, ere þanne he hadde perfytlyche y-puryfiede þylke pannycle, soudyde þe wounde withouten forth̄; & whanne þat þilke wounde was y-sowdyde, þe pannycle þat was noȝt wel helyde hadde a dedeyne, & was cause of engendrynge of a crampe in þilke wounde. And at þe laste y was clepyde to þilke syke man, & y fonde hym habbynge þe crampe, & with þe crampe he hadde manye smale enpostemes aboute hys face, & þat ys an yuele tokne in þe woundys of þe hed, and þenne y demyde hym for ded. Naþeles at þe instaunce of hys frendys y þat wolde assaye þe worchynge of kynde vpon resoun, I made hys hed ben y-schaue, and y kutte aȝeyne þe wounde, þat was consoudid, with a rasoure to þe depþe of þe same wounde, & afterewarde y fulfylde þilke wounde with hote oyle of rosys, & y anoyntede alle þe hed with þe same oyle of roses & a lyteh̄ vynegre y-medlyde togedre. & y anoyntede þe nolle & þe nekke onlye wiþ oyle of rosys, and y dyde on þe wounde þe ȝolke of an eye with oyle of rosys, and y bonde alle þe hed wiþ a

þe heed wiþ a boond leiynge *þer* vndir herdis[1] or tow3 smal I tosid, and I openede his mouþ & putte into his mouþ þe broþ maad of a chiken, wiþ comyn & also wiþ cleer wiyn medlid wiþ myche wat*er*; on þe morowe I turnede a3en & I foond þe sike of bettere disposicio*un*, & I openede bettere his mouþ, & he spak bettere; neþeles I foond þe wo*un*de drie, & þa*n*ne I dide ofte tymes þe same medicyn & þe same oynture. In þe þridde dai þe skyn of þe heed was maad moist, þe which was bifore as drie as þe skyn hadde be rostid at þe fier, & *in* so miche[2] þe skyn was maad þi*n*ne, þat þer was no þing bitwene þe skyn & þe brayn pa*n*ne. & at þe laste þe wo*un*de quyturide wiþ contynuau*n*ce of þe same cure tofore seid, & in þis[3] maner þe 3onge man was heelid boþe of þe crampe & also of þe wo*un*de / But þilke crampe was wiþoute feuere; for I may not þenke þat I haue seen a feuere *in* þe wo*un*des of þe heed, or ellis of þe senewis prickid a crampe, þat nou3t a3enstondynge remedie ei*þer* medicyns þe pacient þat hadde þe crampe diede / My beste counseil is to lete him blood *in* þe bigy*n*nynge þat haþ þe crampe, namely, & he be strong & replete, & if þat he haue not bled ynou3 at his wo*un*dis; & anoynte his nolle & his necke wiþ hoote oynementis as wiþ oile

and bandaged the head,

gave strengthening nourishment,

[3 lf. 54]

and so cured the patient.

If fever occurs death ensues.

Bleed the patient,

use ointments,

[1] *herdis.* See Wright Wü. 614. 2. "Stupa, herdes." [2] *þat*, inserted.

---

bonde leggynge *þere* undyre hurdys o*þere* tow3 smal tosyde, and y opnyde hys mouth & put into hys mouth þe broth of a chyken y-made with comyn, and also cle*re* wyn y-medlyde w*ith* myche watyr*e*. On þe morwe y turnyde a3eyne & y fonde þe syke of bettyr*e* dysposicio*un*, & he opnyde bettyr*e* hys mouth, & he spak bettyre; & na*þ*eles [4]y fonde þe wo*un*de drye, & þe*n*ne y dede efte sonys þe same medycine & þe same vncture. In þe þridde day þe skyn of þe hed was y-mad moyst, whyche þat was to forne as drye as a skyn hadde be rostyde to þe fyre, and in so myche þe skyn was y-made þu*n*ne, þat þ*er*e was no*þ*ynge betwene þe skyn & þe breyne pa*n*ne. & at þe laste þe wo*un*de quyteryde w*i*þ *con*tynewau*n*ce of þe same cure tofor*e* seyde, & in þis man*er*e þe 3onge man was helyde boþe of þe crampe & eke of þe wo*un*de. But þilke crampe was w*ith*outen ffeuyre; ffor y ne may no3t þynke þat y haue seyn[5] a ffevyre in þe wo*un*des of synwes, o*þere* ellys of þe hed precede a crampe, þat no3t a3eyne stondynge remedye / o*þer*e medycynes þe pacient þat hadde þe crampe ne deyede. My beste *con*seyle is to letyn hym blod in the bygy*n*ninge þat haþ þe crampe, namly, & he be stronge & replete, and 3if þat he haue nou3t bled ynow3 at hys wo*un*de; and anoynte hys nolle & hys nekke wiþ hote oynementys, as wit*h* oyle of

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 68 *a*]

[5] *a wounde* struck through after *seyn*.

*Nota.* of$^{t}$ nardine, euforbine, oile of$^{t}$ rue,[1] lilijs *et cetera* / & also to make
small cauteries, smal$^{e}$ cauteries pu*n*ctale, þat$^{t}$ is to seie as smal as þe eende of$^{t}$ a
pricke, bitwene ech whirlebo*n* of$^{t}$ þe necke, so neuere-þe-lattere þat$^{t}$
bandages. þe cauterie go not$^{t}$ ouer depe / Aftirward bynde lo*n*g$^{t}$ wolle to his 4
heed bihynde & to his necke & to hise schuldris, & do þeron hoot$^{t}$
oile, & leie hi*m* in a soft$^{t}$ bed & lete hi*m* be in reste & in pees /
But$^{t}$ þer be*n* su*m*me þat$^{t}$ sette*n* in her bookis medicyns þat$^{t}$ pro-
ypocras. uoke*n* þe feueris; for þat$^{t}$ ypocras techiþ in .iiij$^{to}$ afforismoris: a 8
[3 lf. 54, bk.] **spasmo**[2] **vel te**[3]**tano habito febre**[4] **sup***er*ueniente soluit$^{t}$ egritudi-
says that fever takes away the cramp or tetanus; ne*m* / þat$^{t}$ is to seie: if$^{t}$ þat$^{t}$ a man haue a crampe or ellis a tetane
þat$^{t}$ is a sijknes þat$^{t}$ halt$^{t}$ þe membre lich streit$^{t}$ on boþe sidis as a
crampe halt$^{t}$ þe oon side of$^{t}$ þe membre & þe feu*er*e come on þilke 12
crampe eiþir þilke tetane, he distrieþ þe crampe eiþir þe sijknes; &
also þei anoynte wiþ to hoot$^{t}$ an oynement$^{t}$ to pr*o*uoke þe feue*r*es, þe
he is wrong, if the cramp comes from a wound. which þing$^{t}$ I ne apr*e*ue not *in* þe crampe of$^{t}$ a wounde þou3 þat$^{t}$
þilke oynement$^{t}$ my3te be pr*o*fitable in a crampe wiþoute wou*n*de, & 16
where þat$^{t}$ humouris abou*n*de, namely, if$^{t}$ it$^{t}$ be fleume.

Signs (symptoms) of cramp. General signs. Su*m*me be*n* general tokenes & su*m*me be*n* special of$^{t}$ schewynge
of$^{t}$ þe crampe / General tokenes be*n* þese: to greet$^{t}$ akþe, crokidnes[5]

[1] *rue*, ruta. Turner, *Herbal*, ii. 122 b. Ruta is named in Greke Pegamon, in English Rue or herbe grace, in French rue de gardin, in Dutch Weinraut. [2] Cramp and Tetanus. See *Notes*.
[4] *febre superveniente*, error for *febris superveniens*.
[5] *crokidness*, Lat. obliquitas.

---

Add. MS. 12,056. nardyne, enforbine, Oyle rewe, lylyes &c., and also to make smale 20
cauteryes pu*n*ctales, þ*a*t is to sigge as smale as þe ende of a prykke,
bytwene eu*e*ry whirlebone of þe nekke, so neu*er*e þe latere þ*a*t þe
cauterye go nou3t ou*er*e depe. Aft*er*warde bynde longe wolle to
hys hed be hynde, & to his nekke, & to his schuldres, & do þ*er*e 24
on hote oyle, & leye hy*m* in a softe bed, & lete hy*m* ben in reste &
in pees. But þ*er*e be su*m*me þ*a*t setten in here bokys medycines,
þ*a*t pr*o*vocen þe ffeuerys; ffor þ*a*t ypocras techyth in quarto affori-
smorum: **a spasmo v*e*l detano habito febr*e* sup*er*veniente soluit** 28
**egritudinem** þ*a*t ys to sigge; 3if þ*a*t a man haff þe crampe, o*er*e
ellys a tetane, þat is a syknesse þ*a*t halt the me*m*bre y-lyche streyt
on boþe þe sydes, as a crampe halte þe on syde of þe me*m*bre, & þe
ffeu*er*e come on þilke crampe o*er*e þilke tetane, he distroyeth þe 32
crampe o*er*e þe seknesse, and also þey anoynte wit*h* to hote oyne-
ment to pr*o*voke þe ffeuerys, þe whyche þynge y ne aprelf$^{t}$ nou3t in
þe crampe of a wou*n*de, þow3 þ*a*t þilke oynement my3te be pr*o*fitable
[6 fol. 68 *b*] in a crampe wit*h*outen [6]wou*n*de, & where þ*a*t humores habou*n*de, 36
namlye, 3if yt be fllewme. So*m*me ben gene*r*al toknys, & some be
speciall of schewynge of a crampe. General toknys ben þese: to

of' iȝen, & crokidnes of' schewynge, & crokidnes of' eeris, of' þe noše þrillis, & of' þe lippis, & whanne þat' a man may not' speke, & þe cheke be constreyned & difficulte of' meuynge, and namely, of' þe necke, & ofte constreynynge togidere, & a sodeyn schakynge togidere. Special signes maken oon of' þre maner of' crampis: þe toon is clepid amprostonos[1], þe toþer empistenos[2], þe .iij. tetanus / In þis maner of' crampe þat' is clepid ampros[3]tonos, þe senewis tofore ben drawe togidere / þe fore partie of' þe heed is crokid, þe sike man may not' heuen it' vp, he beriþ his chyn as it' liȝ on his brest', & his mouþ is streit' & he may not' opene it', & þe fyngris of' his hand ben folden into his fist' / & in empistonies þe necke is crokid, his mouþ is open, hise chekis ben open, & þe fyngris of' his hand ben streyned backward / & þe tetane halt' þe boþe parties of' þe body, so þat' he may not' turne his necke to no partie but' al þe bodi is stif' & streyned, as a staf' were putt' yn at' his necke & out' at' his ers / Alle þese tokenes or ellis summe of' hem schewiþ þe disposicioun of' him þat' haþ þe crampe / And whanne þat' þese tokenes fallen in þe wounde of' þe heed, or ellis of' a senewe þei techen bettere þe leche to fle from þe sike man þan on him to abide & cure /

Special signs. .1. .2. .3. [3 lf. 55] amprostonos Empistonos. Tetanus.

[1] Latin, *Emprosthotonos.* [2] Latin, *Opisthotonos.*

---

gret akþe, crokydnesse of eyȝen, & crokydnesse of erys of nose þreƚ & of lyppes, & whenne þat a man may noȝt speke, & þe chekys ben constreynde, & dyficulte of swolwynge, & diffyculte of mevynge, namlye of þe nekke, & ofte constreynynge togedre, & sodeyne schakynge togedire. Special signes maken one of pre manere of crampes: þe on ys y-clepyde **Emprostonos**, þe opere **Empistonos**, þe þridde **tetanus**. In þese manere of crampe þat is clepyde Emprostonos þe synwes tofore be drawen togedire, þe fore party of þe hed ys crokyde, ne þe syke man ne may noȝt heffyn it vp, he berith̄ hys chyn as yt leye on hys brest'; hys mouþ is streyte, ne he ne may noȝt opyne yt, and þe ffyngres of hys hande ben foldyde into hys fust'. And in Empistonos þe nekke ys crokyde, his mouþ is opyne, his chekes beþ opyne, & þe fyngres of hys handys ben streynde bakwarde, and þe tetane halt boþe þe partye of þe body, so þat he may noȝt turne hys nekke to non partie, but alle þe body is styffe & streynde, as a staf' were put in at hys hed & out at his ers. Alle þese toknys opere ellys sum of hem schewith̄ þe disposicioun of hym þat haþ þe crampe. And whanne þat þese toknys fallyn in þe wounde of an hed opere ellys of[4] a synwe, þey teche bettire þe leche to fle from þe syke man, þenne on hym to abyde & cure. The firste

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4] *of*, above line.

¶ The firste tretis is eendid wiþ þe help of almyȝty god. Now *with* þe help of þe same, go to þe secu*n*de /

¶ Cap^m j^m

NOw bigynneþ þe secunde tretis of p*ar*ticuler woundis of membris of office from þe heed to þe foot / and first bigy*nn*e at anotamie of þe heed /

[1 lf. 55, bk.]

Al þi*n*g^t [1] brefly ordeyned aftir my symple wiꝺ diuisynge, which þat^t longiþ to þe firste tretis of^t þis book which þat^t holdiþ certeyn rulis & techinge of^t surgerie vndir general chapitlis as we han bihiȝt^t / now we wolen bigy*nn*e to treten of^t curis aftir þat^t þe lymes be*n* i*n* ma*nn*es bodi. & first^t I wole bigy*nn*e at^t þe heed & at^t his anotamie, & so p*ro*cede forþ to ech membre dyuysynge þe anotamie of^t ech me*m*bre, & i*n* ordeynynge þe curis of^t wou*n*dis þat^t ben ma*a*d in ech sengle membre. I seie þat^t þe heed is ma*a*d of^t þre p*ar*ties: of^t a fleischi p*ar*tie, of^t a bony p*ar*tie, & a brawni p*ar*tie. þe fleischi p*ar*tie is aboue þe brayn panne, þe which þat^t is ma*a*d of^t an hery skyn; & þilke skyn is fulfillid wiþ braynes in euery p*ar*tie /

The head consists of three parts.

[2] Heading to this page: *Anotemy off þe hed & woundes off the same.* / Compare Vicary's *Anatomie*, ch. iii. p. 24.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

tretys ys y-endyde wiþ helpe of almyȝtie god, now *with* þe helpe of[3] þe same y go to þe secunde.

¶ Now begy*nn*eþ þe secunde tretys off particuler wou*n*des of membris of office fro*m* þe hede to þe ffot, and ffirste y begynne at the Anotamye off the hed.

[4 fol. 69 *a*]

Al thynge breffliche y-ordeynde, aftere þe devysinge of my Symple wytt^e, whiche þat longitꝫ to þe firste tretys of this [4] boke whiche þat holdytꝫ certeyne rulys & techynges off^e surgerye vndire gene*r*al chapitelis, as we han byheyȝt. Now we wylle begy*nn*e to tretyn of certeyne cures, aftere þat þe lymes ben in ma*nn*ys body. & firste y wyl begy*nn*e at þe hed & at hys anotamye, & so þe p*ro*cesse forþ to eue*r*yche me*m*bre devysinge þe Anotamye of eue*r*y me*m*bre, & in ordeyny*n*ge þe cures of wou*n*dys þat beþ made in eche sengle me*m*bre, I sigge þat þe hed ys made of þre p*ar*tyes: of a flleschy party, a bony p*ar*tye, and a braynie p*ar*tye. þe flleschi p*ar*tye is aboue þe brayn pa*nn*e, whiche þat is made of an herye skyn; & þilke skyn ys fulfylde *with* brawnys in eue*r*y place. þe

[3] MS. *of* twice.

Þe heeris of' þe heed weren for greet' profite ordeyned þat' neiþer cold ne hoot', ne schulde not' sodeynli entre þe poris of the skyn, & neuer-þe-lattere þat' þe fumosite of þe heed myȝte go out' bi þe poris þere as þe heer growiþ; & þe heed myȝte be þe more semeloker, & þat' þe colouris of' þe heeris of' dyuers men myȝte schewen þe compleccioun̄s of' þe heedis // [1 lf. 56]

The hair protects the brain, and adorns the head.

Þe skyn þat' is [1]aboue þe brayn panne is lacertose, & ful of' þicke fleisch, þat' he myȝte wrie þe brayn panne, þat' he schulde not' fele sodeynliche to greet' heete ne to greet' cold. Þe which skyn is maad of' sutil þredis of' senewis þat' comen fro þe brayn, & of' veynes & of' arteries sotilliche I-maad; & so þe skyn of' þe heed is sotilliche ioyned wiþ þe skyn of' al þe bodi / & also þe skyn of' þe heed is more þickere þan þe brain sculle, þat' it' schulde ben more rare[2] & more porose, þat' is to seie, more ful of' hoolis / þe lacertis of' þe skyn proceden aftir þat' þe goynge procediþ of' þe heeris /

skyn. is muscular, is made of fibrous cords and veins, is thick and porous.

Þe brayn panne is maad of' manye boonys / þe firste summe,[3] þe whiche þat' holdiþ þe prouitis þat' longen to þe brayn panne, haþ .ij. helpingis; oon helpinge is: þouȝ þat' an hurtynge come to oon boon, neuere-þe-lattere he schulde not' falle to alle þe boonys / þe secunde help is, oon boon þat' is to hard in oon partie ne schulde not' be so

The skull consists of many bones for different reasons, as .i. touching the skull itself.

[2] *rare.* Lat. rarus. [3] Lat. Prima nanque summa . .

---

herys off' þe hed were for grete proffyte y-ordeynde, þat neiþere colde ne hete ne scholde noȝt sodeynliche entre þe pores of þe skyn, & neuere þe lattere þat þe fumosyte of þe hed myȝte go out be þe pores þere as þe here growyth̄, and þat þe hed myȝte be þe more semlykere, and þat þe coloure of þe herys myȝte schewe þe complexioun of þe hed. Þe skyn þat is abouen þe breyne panne ys lacertos & ful of þykke flesch̄, þat he myȝte wreyen þe breyn panne, þat he scholde noȝt fele to sodeynlyche neiþere to grete hete ne to cold. Þe whiche skyn ys made of sotyH̄ þredys of synwes þat comeþ from þe brayn & of veynis & of arteryes sotylliche y-mad; and so þe skyn of þe hed ys sotylliche y-Ioyned with þe skyn off' alle þe bodye, and also þe skyn of þe hed ys more þykkere þenne þe brayne scolle, þat it scholde be more rare & more porose þat is to sigge more ful of holys. Þe lacertes of þe skyn proceden after þat þe goynge procedyth̄ of þe herys, þe brayn panne ys mad of manye bonys. Þe fyrste summe, whiche þat wiþholdyth̄ þe profites þat longyth̄ to þe brayn panne, haþ tweye helpynges; on helpynge ys, þowȝ þat an hurtynge come to on bon, neuere þe latere he scholde noȝt fallen to alle þe bonys; þe secunde helpe is þat on bon þat is to harde in on partye, ne scholde noȝt be so [4]hard in an oþere [4 fol. 69 b]

Add. MS. 12,056.

.2. the organs under the skull.

hard in anoþir p*ar*tie. / þe secunde su*m*me, þe which þa*t* wiþhalt þe helpingis þa*t* ben vndir þe brayn panne, haþ wiþi*n*ne hi*m*. iiij. helpi*n*gis; þe whiche helpingis ben ful maad by þe [1]semis þa*t* ben of þe brayn panne; ne þe helpingis my3te not be maad, but if þa*t* þer were manye boonys / þe first help is, þa*t* þe veynes my3te*n* go dou*n* bi þe semis of þe bray*n* panne berynge[2] norischinge to þe same brayn[3] / þe secu*n*de help is, þa*t* þe senewis þa*t* comen out of þe brayn my3te haue wey i*n* goynge out / þe þridde help is, þa*t* þe fumes of þe brayn my3ten haue wey of smokyng out / þe fourþe is, þa*t* neiþ*er* dura mat*er*, ne pia mat*er*, þa*t* as þei ben hangid, ne my3te not greue þe brayn.

[1 lf. 56, bk.]

The sutures of the skull

a. form the ways for the veins,

.b. let the nerves go out

.c. and the fumosity,

.d. support the dura mater and pia mater.

The brain pan is formed of two tables,

So þa*t* þe brayn panne is ma*a*d of ij. smeþe li3t tablis, þa*t* oon is aboue, þe toþir is byneþe / & þei ben su*m*what spongio*us* i*n* þe myddis, & rare þa*t* þe smoke of þe heete my3te bettere passe out & þei ben smeþe þa*t* þei my3ten not greue þe brayn / Dyuers me*n* þa*t* maken dyuers anotamie dyuyden þe brayn pa*n*ne diue*r*slych / su*m*me*n* nou*m*bren mo boonys þan su*m*me oþir speken of / but soþenes is, þa*t* þ*er* be*n* .vj. & oon which þa*t* susteyneþ þe sixte. þe firste boon is clepid, þe boon of þe forheed or ellis coronale, & he bigy*n*neþ fro*m* þe browis & lastiþ to þe seem þa*t* dep*ar*tiþ þe heed quarter.

has seven bones.

1. Coronal.

[2] MS. inserts *&*. [3] *panne* after *brayn* cancelled.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

p*ar*tye. Secu*n*de su*m*me, whiche þat *with*halt helpynges, þat beþ vnd*er* þe brayn pa*n*ne, haþ *with* hy*m* iiij helpynges; þe whiche helpynges beþ ful mad be þe semys þat beþ of þe breyn pa*n*ne. Ne þo helpynges ne my3te no3t be mad, but 3if þat þ*er*e were manye bonys. þe firste helpe ys, þat þe veynes my3te go dou*n* by the semys of[4] þe brayn pa*n*ne, berynge norosschynge to þe same brayn.

Secunde helpe ys þat þe synwes, þat comytħ out of þe brayn, my3te habbe wey in goynge out. þe þridde helpe ys, þat þe fumes of þe brayn my3te habbe wey of smokynge out. þe ffourþe ys, þat neiþ*er*e dura mater ne pia mater, þ*er*e as þey ben y-hongyde, ne my3te no3t greue þe brayn. Sytthe þat þe breyne pa*n*ne ys made of two smeþe ly3te tablys, þat one ys aboue & þe o þ*er*e byneþe, & þey be su*m*what spongyouse in þe myddel & rare, þat þe smokys of þe hed my3te þe bettyr*e* passen out, & þey be smeþe þat þey my3te no3t greue þe brayn. Dyu*er*se me*n* þat makyth dyu*er*se Anotamye devydeþ þe breyn pa*n*ne dyuerslyche. So*m*me now*m*bryth mo bonys, þe*n*ne su*m*me o þ*er*e spekyn of; but soþenesse ys that þ*er*e ben sixe; & one whyche þat susteyneþ þo sixe. þe ffyrste bon ys clepyde þe bon of þe[5] fforhed o þ*er*e ellys coronale, & he bygy*n*neþ fro*m* þe browys, & lastyth vnto þe seme þat departyth þe hed

[4] *of* above line. [5] *þe* above line.

[1] & þilke is clepid coronale / þis boon haþ *in* sum maner of men a smal seem in foldynge of þe forheed, & *per*fore sum men seyn þat þer ben .ij. boonis. ij oþir boonys ben ioyned *with* þilke boon coronable *in* þe myddis of þe heed ouerþwert ouer; þat[2] þei ben bounde togidere bi oon ioynture, þe which þat strecchiþ from bifore to bihynde to þe lenkþe of þe heed, þe which is clepid sagittales, by as myche as he is schape lijk an arowe / & þese .ij. boonys ben clepid nerualia bi-cause þat þe figure of þe seem þat is *with* þe coronable is þe figure of a senewe eiþer of a corde / þese boonys ben in þe hiȝeste coppe of þe heed & byhynde in þe nolle þer is a boon þe which is clepid alauda.[3] & it is maad *in* þe symilitude of þis : Λ ; which þat is ioyned wiþ þe boones nerualib*us* tofore seid bi þe mene of oon þat I-made to þe lijknes of þe boon tofore seid. & þese þre semes whiche þat ioynen togidere þe .iiij. boonys tofore seid, ben maad as it were two sawis, þe whiche teeþ ben ioyned, ech of hem in oþir in þis maner ΛΛΛΛ / & þis ioynynge togidere of oon boon wiþ anoþir was maad bi-cause of iuvamentis þat I haue told to[5]forn; þer is no boon ioyned *with* anoþer as þese boonys ben. [5 lf. 57, bk.]

[1 lf. 57]

The sagittal suture unites the nerval bones (side bones), II, III.

IV. Occipital bone with the lambdoidal suture.

figure in augrim[4]

[2] *þat* insertion.

[3] Latin: "Quartum os est ex parte posteriori in puppi; et conjungitur cum prædictis nervalibus mediante una commissura ad modum literæ laudæ grecæ." The word *lauda* is a corruption of *lambda*.

[4] *augrim*. See *N. E. Dict.*, s.v. algorism.

---

twarte offere. And þylke bon is y-clepyde **coronale**: þis bon hatħ in some manere of men a smal seme in þe ffoldynge of þe fforhed, & þere fore sum men siggeþ þat þere beþ tweye bonys. Tweye oþere bonys beþ y-Ioyned wiþ þylke bon **coronale** in þe myden of þe hed twarte offere, & þey ben y-bounde togedyre by one Iucture, þe whiche þat strecchiþ from tofore to byhynde, by the lengthe of þe hed, þe whiche ys y-clepyde **sagyttalis** by as myche as he ys schapyde lyke an arwe. And þese tweye bonys beþ y-clepyde **Nerualia**, by cause of þe ffigure of the seme þat ys wiþ þe coronale, [6]ys þe ffigure of a synwe oþere of a corde. And þese bonys ben in þe heyest coppe of the hed, and behynde in þe nolle þere ys a bon whyche þat is y-clepyde **Alauda**, & ys y-made to þe Symilitude of þis cyffre of Augrym Λ, whiche þat ys Ioynede *with* þe bonys nerualib*us* tofore seyde, by þe mene of on ȝem y-mad to þe lyknesse of þe bon tofore seyde. & þese þre ȝemes whiche þat Ioyneþ togedyre þe foure bonys to fore seyde, ben y-made as yt were tweye[7] ȝawes, whos tetħ joyned eche of hem in oþere in thys manere / WNOW & þis ioyninge togedire of on bon *with* an oþer was y-made by-cause Iuvamentes þat y haue tolde beforn; þere nys nó bon y-ioynede witħ an oþere as þese bonys ben. Undire þe bon þat ys

Add. MS. 12,056.

[6 fol. 70 *a*]

[7] MS. *tweye* twice.

V. Tassillus (Basilar bone) supports all the other bones.

Vndir þe boon þat is clepid alauda, *þer* is a ful hard boon & holid *in* þe myddil, þe which boon susteyneþ alle þe boonys of þe heed. þe which boon is clepid passillus, & he is ioyned byneþe wiþ þe firste boon of þe nake. þe schap of þe coniu*n*ccioun of þe .v. boonis of þe heed is in þis maner ϵϝϻ. Boþe on þe riȝtside & on þe lift side of þe forseid boonys, whiche þat ben clepid nerualia *[whiche þat beþ in lengthe in þe heyest place of þe heḍ, þere ben twey bonys on eiþere syde.] & þo boonys þat vndir setten ben clepid ossa mendosa. & þese boonys *in* oon p*ar*tie ben ful hard þere as þe hole of þe eere passiþ þoruȝ, & þei ben clepid petrosa; & sum*m*en seien þat *þer* ben .iiij. boonys ij. on eiþir side / & wha*n*ne þat alle þe boonys of þe heed ben ioyned togidere, þou schalt fynde in soþfastnes þat þer ben but vj. boonys, wha*n*ne þat þou rekenest os[1] coronale for oon boon, & .ij. boonys þat ben clepid mendose, ij. & oon þat ben iij, & o boon þat is clepid alauda. & ij. boonys þat ben clepid nerualia þat ben .vj.; & þe .vij. boon is clepid passillare, þe which is not of þe boones of þe heed, but he susteyneþ alle þe o*þ*ere boonys of þe heed.[2] & iij. man*er* of semes [3]makiþ coniuncciou*n* of alle þe boonys *in* þis maner

VI, VII. Temporal bones (mendosa); one portion is called os petrosum.

The skull has seven bones,

three true sutures,

[3 lf. 58]

[1] MS. *as.*

[2] Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 2: "*& he is vnterberynge in þe hynder partie al þe bones of þe heued, & þerfore he is clepid þe berere vp, or paxillus.*"

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

y-clepyde Alauda, *þere* ys a ful harde bon & y-holyde in þe myddle, þe whyche bone susteyneth alle þe bonys of þe hed. þe whiche bon ys y-clepyde **Passilus**, & he ys ioynede byneþe wiþ þe fyrste bon of þe nekke. þe schappe of þe *con*iuccioun of þe fife bonys of þe hed ys in þis manere ϵϝϻϵ. Bothe on þe ryȝte syde & on þe lefte syde of þe forseyde bonys whiche þat beþ y-clepyde **nerualia**,* whiche þat beþ in lengthe in þe heyest place of þe hed, *þere* ben twey bonys on ei*þere* syde*; þe whiche þat beþ vndiresetterys to þo bonys *þat* beþ y-clepyde **nerualia**; & þo bonys *þat* vndire set:en, ben y-clept ossa mendosa. And þese bonys in one *par*tye ben ful harde, *þere* as þe hole of þe ere passyth þorwȝ, & þey ben y-clepede [4]petrosa & *sum* men siggen þat *þere* ben foure bonys, two on eythere syde. & wha*n*ne þat alle bonys of þe hed be Ioynede togedire *þou* schalt fynde in sotfastnesse, þat þere ben but sixe bonys wha*n*ne þat þou reknyste **os**[5] **coronale** ffor on bon, & tweye bonys þat beþ y-clepyde mendose tweyne þat beþ þre, and o bon þat ys y-clepyde Alanda, & tweye bonys þat is y-clepyde nerualia—þat beþ sixe, and þe vij bon ys y-clepyde passillare, þe whiche ys nought of þe bonys of þe hed, but he susteyneth alle þe o*þ*ere bonys of þe hed. And þre man*er* of semys makyth *con*iuccioun of alle þe bonys on þis

[4] MS. petotra. [5] MS. as.

& wiþ .ij. semes mendose in þis maner 22ᴖ. & whanne þat̄ þe crounne of̄ þe heed is perfiȝt̄, þe heed is maad in þis maner ᚢᚢ / þis is þe foorme of̄ an heed weel propossiound, round ⊂⊃ þat̄ he myȝte more wiþholde, & þat̄ he myȝte lasse be hurt̄, & þat̄ he be longe warpid[1], hauynge tofore & bihynde eminence: þat is to seie apeirynge, þat̄ þe senewis þat̄ comen out̄ of̄ þe brayn myȝten haue a porose place of̄ goynge out̄. & neþeles as ypocras & galion, whiche þat̄ expowneþ ypocras, telliþ[2], it̄ is possible to fynde oþir in maner of̄ makynḡ of̄ heedis. Oon maner is, if̄ eminence be not̄ in partie of̄ þe heed tofore, for if̄ þat̄ he be pleyn in partie tofore, bi þat̄ pleynes þe seem is lost̄, þat̄ is clepid coronalis / þe secunde is, if̄ þat̄ þe heed haue noon eminence bihynde, but̄ þat̄ þe hyndere partie be pleyn, & bi þat̄ pleynes þe seeme is lost̄ þat̄ is clepid alauda / þe þridde is, if þat̄ þer be noon eminence bifore ne bihinde in þe heed, but̄ al þe heed is round as a sercle, & þanne þer is but̄ oon seem in þe myddil of þe brayn panne: for it̄ is vnpossible þe heed to haue ony oþer [3]schap wiþoute lesynge of̄ sum partie of̄ þe brayn, & were contrarious aȝens þe lijf̄ / Bi þe myddil seem which þat̄ is in þe heed, þere discendiþ a ueyne comynge fro þe lyuere bi þe

two false sutures (mendosæ).

A well-proportioned head is oblong with openings for the nerves,

ypocras. & *Galion* enumerate peculiar forms:

.1. front part flat,

.2. back part flat,

.3. without any prominence.

.Nota.

[3] lf. 58, bk.]

A vein and artery come through the basilar bone,

[1] *longe warpid*, Lat. oblongus. Comp. Langwyrpe bôc, *Indices Monast.* 12, ed. Kluge. [2] *telliþ*, error for *tellen*.

---

manere ⊂⊃, & *with* tweye semys mendose in þis manere ⊂⊃. And whanne þat̄ þe corone of̄ þe hed ys perfyt, þe hed [4]ys mad in þis manere ⊂⊃. þis ys þe forme of an hed wel proporcionede, þat he be ronde because þat he myghte þe more *with*holde, & þat he myȝte þe lasse be y-hurt, and þat he be longewarped havynge tofore & behynde eminence þat is to sigge aperynge, þat þe synwes þat comyth̄ out of þe brayn, myghte haue a porose place of goynge out. And naþelese as ypocras & galyen, whiche þat̄ exponeþ ypocras, tellyn: it is possible to fynden þre oþere manere makynge of hedys. On manere is, ȝif eminence be noȝt in þe partye of þe hed tofore; for ȝif þat̄ he be pleyn in þe partye tofore, by þat̄ pleynnesse þe seme is y-lost þat̄ is y-clepyde **coronalis**. Secunde ys ȝif þe hed haff̄ non eminence behynde, but þat þe hyndore party be playn, and by þat̄ playnnesse þe seme ys y-lost þat̄ ys y-clepyde Alauda.[5] þe þridde ys ȝif þere be non eminence tofore ne behynde in þe hed, but alle þe hed ys rounde as a cercle. And þenne þere nys but on sem in þe myddel of þe breyn panne, ffer it is vnpossible þe hed to habben enye oþere schappe wiþouten lesyng of some party of þe brayn; & þat were contrariouse aȝeyne lyf. By þe myddele seme, whiche þat is in þe hed, þere dissendyth̄ a veyne comynge

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 70 *b*]

[5] MS. *Abauda*.

brayn panne of' a boon which þat' is holid þat' is clepid passillarus. & bi þe same weye þer risiþ an arterie comynge from þe herte, & þei ben ioyned togidere, & of' þe weuingge of' þe tweyne þer is maad an hard pannicle þat' is to seie a clooþ þat' is vndir þe brayn panne; & he is hangid with summe smale ligamentis to þe brayn panne in summe of' þe semes. þe whieh pannicle byndiþ þe boonys togidere, & it' is clepid dura mater. & it' is riȝtful þat' an arterie schulde arise vpward from byneþe, for þe blood þat' is in him is sutil, & his meuynge is pulsatif; & he hadde discendid from aboue dounward, he schulde haue discendid wiþ to greet' an hastynes, but' þilke ascendynge temperiþ þilke flux. & it' is couenable þat' þe veyne discende bicause þat' þe blood þat' is in þe veynes is more þickere, & þe blood þat' is in þe veynes goiþ doun sotilli. & boþe þese veynes þat' ben pulsatif' & not' pulsatif' ben ioyned wiþ dura mater / Also þe [1]veyne strecchiþ more lower, & of' hem is engendrid pia mater / Aftir þei discenden doun to þe brayn, & þei bryngen lijf' & dewe norischinge & cordialle[2] spiritis, þe which is in þe brayn & þere is defied, & þere resseyueþ naturel foorme of' vndirstondynge. Pia mater enuyrounneþ al þe brayn, & departiþ him into iij. celoles þat'

and make the **dura mater.**

The blood flows upwards in the artery,

downwards in the vein.

The veins from the **pia mater**

[1 lf. 59]

bring the vital spirit to the brain, and turn it into understanding.

iij. **cellis of þe brayn**

[2] MS. inserts *þe*.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

from þe lyffere, by þe breyn ponne, of a bon whiche þat is y-holyde. þat is y-clepyde pasillaris. And by þe same weye þere arysiþ an Arterye comynge fro þe herte, and þey ben Ioynde togedire, & of þe weffynge of þo tweyne þere is y-mad an hard pannycle þat is to sigge a cloþ þat is vndir þe brayn panne, and he is hongyde wiþ sum smale ligamentys to þe brayn panne in some of þe semys, þe whych pannycle byndeþ þe bonys togedire, & it is clepyde **dura mater.** And yt is ryȝtful þat an Arterye scholde arysen vpwarde from byneþyne, for þe blod þat ys in hym þat is sotyH, & hys meffynge þat ys pulsatyff[3]; and he hadde discendyde from aboue dunwarde, he scholde han discendyde wiþ to gret [4]an hastynesse, but þe ascendynge tempriþ þulke fflux. And yt is couenable þat þe veyne discende, bycause þat þe blod þat ys in þe veynes ys more þykkore, & þe blod þat is in þe veyne geþ doun softliche. & boþe þese veynes þat buþ[5] pulsatyf' & nouȝt pulsatyf' beþ y-Ioynede wiþ dura matre. And also þowȝ þe veyne streche more lowere, & of hem ys engendryde pia mater. Afterward þey descenden doun to þe brayn. & þey bryngen lyf' & dywe norysschynge & cordyal spirites, þe whiche is in þe brayn and þere is diffyede, & þere resseyueþ naturel forme of vnderstondynge. Pia mater enviroueþ al þe brayn, & departyth hym into þe þre celoles[6] þat beþ chaumbres :

[4 fol. 71 *a*]

[3] MS. *prilsatyff*. [5] *buþ*, above line. [6] MS. *cololes*.

ben chaumbris: þe firste, þe myddile, & þe laste. & þouȝ þat alle
þese ben dyuydid syngulerly bi hem-siluen, it semeþ þat þe celole[1]
þat is tofore in þe brayn is departid in two parties; & bi þat cause
4 summuen seien þat per ben .iiij. ventriclis of þe brayn. þe forþere partie
of þe brayn is greet & brood, bicause þat he schulde resceyue manye
spiritis þat ben sent to him; for þat place is propre instrument of
ymagynacioun þe which resceyueþ þingis þat comprehendiþ of
8 fantasie;[2] & þo þingis kunnen vndirstonde resceyueþ[3] bi propre
instrumentis þat longiþ. & þouȝ þat al þe brayn, in comparisoun of
þe herte & of alle oþere membris of þe body, be deemed cold &
moist, þis celule hauynge comparisoun to oþere celules is deemed
12 hoot & drie. & þe myddil part of þe brayn is lasse [4] þan ony oþere
of þe oþere two parties, & her foorme is punat[5] brood twoward þe
forþere side of þe heed, & scharpere twoward þe hyndere syde, þat
he myȝte be þe more able to resceyue ymagynatif þingis, & þo
16 þingis to ȝeue to þe ynnere partie, & þo þingis þat ben ȝeue to wiþ-
holde / þis ventricle is sett bitwene two addiamentis of þe brayn;
þe whiche addiamentis ben lijk to tweie buttokkis of a man þat ben
ioyned togidere, & þei ben [to]* þis ventricle as it were a sittynge

The foremost cell or Ventricle is the largest one, and contains Imagination.

*Nota*

[4 lf. 59, bk.]

The middle Ventricle has a pineal form,

lies between two additaments of the brain (optical lobes),

[1] MS. *celose.* [2] Lat.: res a phantasia comprehensas.
[3] Read, *þo þingis comyn undirstondynge resceyueþ.* Lat.: quas(res) communis sensus recipit. [5] *punat*, Lat.: pineatus.

---

20 þe firste, þe myddle, & þe laste. And þowȝ þat alle þese ben
diffyede senglerlyche by hem selffyn, yt semeþ þat þe celele þat is
tofore in þe brayn ys departyde in two parties, & by þat cause
sum men siggen, þat þere ben foure ventricles of þe brayn. þe
24 furþere part of þe brayn ys gret & brod, by cause þat he scholde
resseyue manye spirites þat ben y-sende to hym for þat place is
propre instrement of y-maginacion, þe whiche resceyueþ þynges þat
buþ comprehendide of fantasie; and þo þynges comen vndirstond-
28 ynge resceyueþ by propre Instrementys þat longyth to hym, and
þawȝ þat al þe brayn, in comparson of þe herte & of alle oþere
membres of þe body, be y-demyde colde & moist, þis celule hauynge
comparson to oþere celules ys y-demyde hot & dryȝe. þe myddel
32 part of þe brayn ys lasse þen eny of þe oþere two partyes, & here
forme ys pyneat, brod towarde þe furþere syde of þe hed and
scharpere towarde þe hyndor syde, þat he myȝte be þe more able to
resceyue y-maginatyf þynges & þo þynges to ȝefe to þe ynnere
36 partye & þo þynges þat beþ y-ȝefe to with holde. þis ventricle ys
y-sette bytwene tweyne additamentes of þe brayn, þe whiche additamentes ben y-liche þe two buttokkes of a man þat beþ y-Ioynede togedre, and þey beþ to * þis ventricle as yt were a syttynge place

Add. MS. 12,056.

place eiþir a couche vpon þe which he is drawen abrood, whanne
stretches and contracts during perception, þat he resseyueþ ymagynatif þingis; aftirward he is drawe togidere
as a worm, whanne þat he resseyueþ ymagynatijf þingis; & whanne
þat þe sentence of þilke ymagynacioun is brouȝt forþ, þanne þilke
is smaller than the other Ventricles. ventricle is drawe along, & also þe smallere eende of þe ventricle
entriþ into þe ventricle þat is bihynde *in* þe heed. & þis ventricle is
myche lasse þan þe o*þ*ere tweyne, bicause þat no senewis *proceden*[1]
not out of him, & þat manye þingis myȝte be comprehendid [in
litel]* place þat vertu of witt myȝte þe sunnere be gaderid togidere
[2 lf. 60] to take his [2]counseil; & þis ventricle to comparisoun of o*þ*ere ven-
The third Ventricle is the largest, triclis is deemed hoot & drie. & aftir þat þe hyndere ventricle, þe
which is grettere & hardere þan þis; þe which [in]* comparisoun to
from it starts the Spinal Marrow. þe o*þ*ere tweyne is demed cold & drie, þe which is brood twoward
þe fore partie of þe heed & scharp bakward, þe which resceyueþ
sentence þat ben schewid & kepiþ hem *priu*yliche as a cheste kepiþ
tresour. & out of him goiþ out nucha þoruȝ þe hole of þe boon,
þat is clepid passillaris, & þilke nucha is cloþid wiþ two pannicles
þat goon out of þe brayn.

The brain is cold and moist, & al þe brayn is deemed cold & moist, bicause þat he schulde

[1] MS. *procende*.

---

Add. MS. 12,056. o*þ*ere a couche, vpon þe whyche he ys drawyne abrode, whe*n*ne
[3 fol. 71 *b*] þ*a*t he resseyueþ [3]y-maginatyff þynges. And afte*r*warde he ys
y-drawe togedire as a worme, whe*n*ne þ*a*t he resceyueth̄ y-magina-
tyff þynges; and whe*n*ne þ*a*t þe sentence of þilke y-magynacio*u*n
ys y-brought forth̄, þe*n*ne þilke ventricle ys y-drawe alonge. And
also þe smallere ende of þis ventricle entrith̄ into þe ventricle þ*a*t
ys behynde in þe hed, and þis ventricle ys myche lasse þe*n*ne þe
o*þ*ere tweyne bycause þ*a*t non synwes *proceden*t not out of hy*m*,
and þ*a*t manye þynges myghte be endyde in litel* place, þat vertue
of wytt myghte þe so*n*nere be y-gedryde togedre to taken hys
cou*n*seyH. And thys ventrycle to *com*parson of o*þ*ere ventricles ys
y-demyde hot & drye. Afte*r* þ*a*t ys þe hyndere ventricle, whiche
ys grattere & hardere þe*n*ne thys; þe whiche in *com*parson of þe
o*þ*ere tweyne ys y-demyde colde & drye, þe whiche is brod towarde
þe fore partye of þe hed & scharpe bachwarde, þe whyche ressey-
uyth̄ sentense þ*a*t beþ schewyde & kepyth̄ he*m* *priu*yliche as a
chest kepyth̄ tresore. And out of hy*m* goth̄ out[4] nucha[5] þrowe þe
hole of þe bon þ*a*t ys y-clepyde passilarys. And þilke nucha ys
y-clothyde[6] wiþ tweye pa*n*nycles þ*a*t goth̄ out of þe brayn. And
alle þe brayn ys y-demyde colde & moyst. bycause þ*a*t he scholde

[4] *in* þe *a*, struck through after *goth out*.
[5] *nucha* on margin. [6] MS. *ys y-clothyde* twice.

atempren spiritual fumosite þat' comen of' þe herte, & þat' he schulde not' ben dried for to myche meuynge þat' he haþ in worchinge of' vertues; & þe brayn is whijt, bicause þat' he schulde þe bettere resseyue resoun & vnderstondynge / For if' peyntouris whanne þey schulen peynte a table, first' þei maken it' whiȝt, for þer wole no colour lasten but' þoruȝ him; & it' is neische þat' þe meuynge of' vertues myȝte þe bettere han place; & þe brayn is towȝ þat' þe senewis þat' goon out' of' hym [1]myȝte be þe more towȝ, & þe more þei ben enlongid from her bigynnynge & þe more hardere þei schulen be, & also þat' þei schulden be bowable ynowȝ & nouȝt' aȝenstondynge her hardnesse. & it' is nessessarie þat' þe brayn be cloþid wiþ .ij. panniclis: þat' is to seie .ij. cloþis, þat' in his meuynge, [as]* I haue seid tofore, þat' it' schulde not' be hurt' of' þe brayn panne. Al þe brayn is departid into .iij. colules[2] with addiamentis of' þe panniclis of' þie matris, þat' þe spiritis myȝten þe lengere dwelle in þe ventricle to resseyuen bi ordure of' digestioun, foorme & perfeccioun more þan þei hadden first' of þe herte; & þat' euery vertu myȝte fulfille his accidens[3] in his ventricle, or þan þe vois[4] þat' is comprehendid

white like a painter's table,

soft and tough.

[1] If. 60, bk.

The brain is protected by two Panniclcs (Membranes);

which divide it into three cells,

where thought is formed.

[2] *cellis*, written above line. [3] *accidens* for *accioun*.

[4] *vois*, Lat.: "antequam res comprehensa posset ad sequentem ventriculum pertransire."

---

atempren spirituel ffumosites þat comyth̃ of þe herte, and þat he scholde noȝte ben y-dreyȝede fforto myche meffynge þat he haþ in worchynge of vertues. And þe brayn is whit bycause þat scholde resceyue þe bettere resoun & vnderstondynge. Ffor þese peyntores, whenne þey schulle peynten a table, firste þey maken yt whyte, for þere nylle none coloure lasten but yt be leyde vpon whyt; & it is þenne opere rare, because þat vndirstondynge myȝte þe somnere passe þorwe hym; & yt is nessche þat þe meffynges off' vertues myghte þe betyre habbe place; & þe brayn ys towȝ, þat þe synwes þat goth̃ out of hym, myȝte be þe [5]more towȝere, and þe more þat þey ben enlongyde from here bygynninge, þe more hardere þey scholde be; and also that þey scholde be bowable y-nowȝ nought aȝeynestondynge here hardnesse. And yt is necessarye þat þe brayn scholde be cloþed with tweye clothys, þat in hys meffynge as *y haue seyde tofore he scholde nought ben y-hurt of þe brayn panne.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5] fol. 72 *a*]

Also þe brayn ys departyde into þre celules with þe additamentes of þe pannycles of pie[6] matris, þat þe spirites myȝt þe lengore dwellen in þe ventricles, to reseyfen by ordre, digestioun, forme & perfeccion, more þanne þey hadden fyrst of þe hert, and þat euery vertue myghte fulfylle hys accioun in hys ventrycle, ere

[6] MS. *pie*, twice.

myȝte passe to þe ventricle þat is sewingge.[1] Not aȝenstondynge
Part of the brain is most essential to life, þese propirtees þe brayn haþ sum substaunce of marie þe which fulfilliþ þe voidenes of þe forseid pannicliś. & þilke mary enuyrounneþ þe forseid pannicliś, of þe which mary þer may sum partie in
Nota hurtynge of þe heed be lost; & not aȝenstondynge þe goynge out[2] of sum partie of þilke mary, a man schal nouȝt die. For þis mary
[3 lf. 61] [3]is not of þe substaunce of þe ventriclis of þe brayn of þe which
especially the substance of the Ventricles. mynde is maad; for þei ben of so greet nobilite, þouȝ þat þer be neuere so litil infeccioun, or ellis þat þer falle neuere so litil a lesyng of hem[4] þei ben depriued of her heelþe, in so myche þat oon colule[5] may not be lost & a man be saued, as manye idiotis supposen contrarie / [6]Anotamie of yȝen, eeris, nose, chekelappis, mouþ, tunge & teeþ, we deferren to ordeyne in þe pridde tretis, in þe whiche if god wole we þenken to treten, & of opere siknessis, & of opere lymes out-cept woundis.

Different kinds of wounds on the head. & þo hurtyngis þat ben maad in þe heed eiþir þat ben maad wiþoute wounde or wiþ wounde. & wheþer þat þei ben wiþoute wounde or wiþ wounde, eiþir þei ben wiþ brekynge of þe brayn

[1] MS. *swingge*.
[2] MS. inserts *ȝ*.
[4] *of hem* written on margin.
[5] *cellul* written above.
[6] The MS. has a marginal note: *Anotemy off eyen, eres, nose, chekes, mouthe, tounge, teth.*

---

Add. MS. 12,056. þanne þe foys þat ys comprehendyde myghte passe to þe ventricle þat ys sywynge. Nowȝt aȝeynestondynge þese propretes, þe brayn haþ sum substaunce of marie whiche fulfilleþ þe voydenesses of þe forseyde pannycleres. And þilke marye envyrownyth þe foreseyde pannycles, of þe whyche marye þere may sum partye in þe hurtynge of þe hed ben y lost; and nozt ageynestondynge þe goynge out of sum partye of þilke marye, a man schal nozt deye. Ffor þis marye is nought of þe substaunce of þe ventricles of þe brayn, of whiche mynde ys y-mad; ffor þey ben of so grete noblete, ȝif þere be neuere so litel infectioun opere ellys þat þere falle neuere so lytel a lesynge of hem, þey ben depreffyde of alle here helthe, in so myche þat on celele may nozt ben y-lost, and a man ben saffyde, as manye ydyotes supposen. Anothomye of eynen, neose, erne, chekelappes, mouþ, tonge & teþ, we deferren to ordeynen in þe pridde tretys, in þe distyncioun whiche ȝif god wol, we þynkeþ forto treten of opere syknesse of þe lymes, outsepte woundes. And þo hurtynges þat beþ y-mad in þe hed, opere þey ben mad *with*outen wounde, opere *with* wounde. & wheþere þat it be wyth wounde opere wiþouten wounde, opere þey ben *with* brekynge of þe brayn panne, opere

panne or wiþoute brekynge of' þe brayn panne / Or wheþer þat' it' be maad wiþ breche of' þe brayn panne, or wiþoute breche of' þe brayn panne, summe ben wiþ hurtynge of' þe brayn, & summe ben wiþoute hurtynge of' þe brayn / & riȝt as þilke hurtis haue difference in tokenes, so þei han difference in perels & pronosticaciouns & maners with þe whiche þei musten ben holpen /

[1] & if' þat ony hurt' be in þe heed wiþoute ony wounde as wiþ fallynge or wiþ smytynge of' a stoon or of' a staf or wiþ sum oþir þing' þat' brusiþ, & if' þat' it' be wiþoute breche of' þe brayn panne & wiþ hirtynge of' þe brayn panne, it' nediþ not' but' schauynge of' þe heed & anoyntynge with hote oilis of' rosis & [abofen þe vncture]* to strawen on þe poudre of' mirtillis seed, & streyne þe place wiþ a boond til al þe place be fastned & þe swellynge be vanyschid awey / In þis maner þou fastne al þe place þat' no þing' schal be corumpid, or ellis þer schal dwelle a litil corupcioun, & if' þat' ony þing' of' corumpcioun abide, þe place schal be opened wiþ an instrument', & so schal þe quyttur be excludid, & he schal be curid riȝt' as oþere empostymes þat' ben woundid. [1 lf. 61, bk.] hurt of þe heed without any wound or fracture. *Nota* Have the head shaved and an ointment applied.

& if' þat' þe brayn panne were broke wiþoute wounde of' þe heed þe which may be knowe bi disposicioun of' þe cause & also of' þe sike man, in biholdynge, if' þat þat' smytiþ were strong', or ellis Fracture of the skull, without any open wound.

---

without brekynge of þe breyn panne. And wheþer [2] þat yt be mad wiþ þe breche of þe brayn panne oþere without breche of þe breyn panne, some ben with hurtynge of þe brayn, some without hurtynge of þe brayn. And ryȝte as þilke hurtynges habben dyfference in toknes, so þey hauen differens in pereles & pronosticaciouns & maners, with þe whiche þey most' ben y-holpen. And ȝif an hurt be in þe hed withouten wounde, as with fallynge, oþere with smytinge of a ston, oþere a staff', oþere with sum oþere thynge þat brusyth, and ȝif þat yt be withouten breche of þe brayn panne, & with outen hurtynge of þe brayn panne, it nedyth nouȝt but schaffynge of þe hed, & anoyntynge wiþ hote oyle of roses, and abofen þe vncture* to strawyn on þe poudre of þe seed of myrtylles, & streyne þe place with a band tyl al þe place be y-fastnyde & þe swellynge be y-vanschyd aweye. In þis manere þou schalt fastne al þe place, þat noþyng schal be corumped, oþere ellys þere schall dwelle a lytel corupcioun. And ȝif enye þynge of corumpcion abyde, þe place schal ben y-opnyde with an Instrument, & so alle þe quyter schal be excludyd, & he schal ben y-curyd ryȝt as oþere empostemys þat beþ y-woundyde. And ȝif þat þe brayn panne were y-broke withoute enye wounde of þe hed, þe whiche may ben y-knowe by dysposicioun of þe cause & eke of þe syke man, in byholdynge ȝif þat þat smyt Add. MS. 12,056. [2 fol. 72 *b*]

Symptoms of the fracture: [1 lf. 62] as giddiness, vomiting, headache. Test by harping on a thread, which the patient holds with his teeth.

þat þe sike haue falle from his place, or ellis þat he was smyte *with* strong smyting, & also if þat he fel & myȝte not hastili arise. [1]& if þat he hadde scotomie,[2] þat is to seie a maner sijknes, whanne þat þer semeþ as flien or opere smale gnattis fleen tofore his yȝen / or ellis he spewiþ his mete, or he feliþ to gret akþe in þe heed, & if þat he may not breke a knotte of a straw wiþ hise teeþ, & if þe heed be smyte wiþ a liȝt drie staf as of salow or ellis of pinee— & þanne leie þin eere to his heed, & if þat þe boon be hool þou schalt here an hool soun aftir þe comparisoun of þe soun of an hool belle, also if þou makist þe sike man to holde bitwene his teeþ a pred twyned & I-wexid, & þanne bigynne to harpe *with* þi nailis vpon þe pred faste bi þe sike mannes mouþ, & so harpe wiþ þi naylis vpon þe pred alwey streyned & makynge soun to þe eende of þe pred, & þilke pred schal ben on lenkþe fro þe mouþ of a cubite, & so þou schalt harpe ofte tymes, & if þat þe pacient mowe susteyne þe soun, he haþ not his brayn panne broke, for if his brayn panne were broke, þe sike man myȝte not susteyne þe soun of þe pred. Alle þese signys, or ellis manye of hem bitokenen þat [3 lf. 62, bk.] þe brayn panne is broken / & tweyne [3]of þe laste signys ben

[2] *scotomie.* Vigo Interpret. "*Scotomia.* They shoulde saye, Scotoma, and it is a disease, when darckenes ryseth, when al thinges seme to go rounde about."

---

Add. MS. 12 056.

were stronge, opere ellys þat þe syke haue y-fallen from hye place, opere ellys þat he was y-smyte *with* stronge smytynge; and also ȝif þat he fel & myght nought hastlye aryse, and ȝif þat he hadde scotomye: þat ys to sugge a manere seknesse, whenne þat þere semyth as flyeȝes, opere smale blake gnattys vleyȝen tofore hys eyȝen, opere ellys he spyweþ hys mete, opere he felyth to grete akþe in hys hed, and ȝif þat he may nought breken a knotte of a strawȝ *with* hys teth, and ȝif þe hed be smyten *with* a lyȝt dreyȝe staff, as [4 fol. 73 *a*] of salwe opere ellys pyne, and þenne leye þyn [4]ere to hys hed; & ȝif þat þe bon be hol, þou schalt heren an hol soun after þe comparsoun of þe soun of an hol belle & a bloke belle; also ȝif þat þou makyste þe syke man to holde bytwene hys teþ a prede y-twyned & y-waxed, & þenne begynne to harpen *with* þy naylles vpon þe prede faste be þe seke mannes mouth, & so harpe *with* þyne naylles vpon þe pred alle wey streyned, in makynge soun to þe ende of þe pred, & þilke pred schal ben of lengþe from þe mouth be þe space of a Kubyte; and þou schalt harpe so ofte tymes, & ȝif þat þe pacient mowe susteyne þe soun, he haþ noȝt hys brayn panne y-broke; ffor ȝif hys breyn panne were broke, þe seke man myghte nought susteyne þe soun of þe pred. Alle þese signes opere ellis manye of hem betokne þat þe breyn panne is broken. And to þe

more certeyn þan ony of þe o*per*e. & vndirstonde þat þe bra*y*n pa*n*ne mai ofte tymes be to-broken, & neþeles þe brayn feliþ noon harm *in* þe bigy*nn*ynge. But aftirward ofte tymes of hirtynge of þe brayn panne, þe brayn is hirt / Galion witnessy*n*ge, þe brekynge of boonys in þe heed is dyue*r*s in pe*r*els fro brekynge of o*per*e boonys in þe bodi, for þe accidens þe which þat falliþ ofte tymes to þe breche of þe brayn panne. Neiþir is no man ne neuere was þat myȝte euermore helpe to alle accidentis, wha*n*ne þat þe brayn was meued *in* þe bigy*nn*y*n*ge þat not aȝenstondynge his help,[1] be he neuere so good a leche, þat þe sike ne muste die /

*Galion*

Fracture of the skull is very dangerous,

the following accidents (symptoms) are frequently mortal.

Euel accide*n*tis þe whiche þat [comyth to þe accidentes of þe brayn & of hys]* pannicle ben[2] alwey dwelly*n*ge as constipac*i*oun of þe wombe, or ellis þe flix of þe wombe, or ellis crokidnes, or ellis lokynge asquynt of þe iȝen, or ellis wepinge of þe oon yȝe, or ellis an hard scotomie, or ellis febilnes of alle þe ve*r*tues & chau*n*gynge. Not oonly animal ve*r*tues, þat be*n* vertues of þe brayn, ben[3] I-chau*n*gid, also naturel ve*r*tues & liui[4] ve*r*tues—sensibles & [5]motifes ;

Evil symptoms: yvel accidentes

If the animal, natural, and vital functions,

[5 lf. 63]

[1] *help* in margin.

[2] One word "*spewinge*" omitted, and *as* erroneously inserted in both MSS. Lat.: "Mala autem accidentia . . sunt vomitus perseverans constipatio ventris," etc.

[3] MS. inserts *nouȝt*.

[4] *liui*, Lat. vitales.

---

laste signes beþ more serteyne þe*n*ne enye of þe o*per*e. And vnderstonde þat þe breyn pa*n*ne may ofte tymes ben to-broke, & naþeles þe brayn felyth nought in þe bygy*nn*inge none hurtynge. But afte*r*wardys ofte tyme of hurtynge of þe brayn pa*n*ne þe brayn ys y-hurt, Galien wytnessynge ; the brekynge of þe bonys of þe hed ys dyuers in perelys fro*m* brekyng of o*per* bonys of þe body, for þe accidentes whiche þat fallyth ofte tymes to þe breche of þe brayn pa*n*ne. Ne þe*re* nys no ma*n*, ne neue*re* ne was, þat myȝte euyre more helpe*n* to alle accidentes whe*n*ne þat þe brayn was meffyde in þe bygy*nn*inge, þat nouȝt ageynestondynge his helpe, be he neue*re* so gode a leche, þat þe syke ne moste deye. Euyle accidentes whiche þat *comyth to þe accidentes of þe brayn & of hys pannycle, be*n* alwey dwellynge : as *con*stipacioun of þe wombe, o*per*e ellys flux of þe wombe, o*per*e ellys crokydnesse, o*per*e ellys lokynge asquynte of þe eyȝen, o*per*e ellys wepynge of þ*a*t on eyȝe, o*per*e ellys an hard scotomye, o*per*e ellys ffebylnesse of alle þe vertues & chaungynge. And noȝt only anymal vertues, þat beþ ve*r*tewys of þe brayn, beþ noȝt y-chaungyde, but also natureH ve*r*tewys, & lyfy ve*r*tewys sensyble & motifes ; sensible, for þat þey seen noȝt

Add. MS. 12,056.

sencible, for þei ben[1] not' riȝtfulliche; for boþe her heerynge & oþere
the imagination, reason, comoun wittis ben troublid; also priuy vertues þat' ben troublid as
ymaginatif', for þei bileuen þei seen, [þat þey seen nouȝt];* also
resonable vertues, for þei speken in deuyn[2] & answeren whanne þei
memory, and motor power are affected. ben nouȝt I-askide / also[3] memorial þat' þei þenke nouȝt' on her owne
name / also meuable vertues is so myche greued þat' vnneþe þei moun
nouȝt' meue hem nameliche aboute þe necke. Þei syke greuousleche,
A strong fever preceded by a cold shivering, & a scharp feuere falliþ, þe which arrigor, þat' is to seie a cold schurg-
ynge[4] goiþ tofore / Arrigor is no þing' ellis, but' as it' were a prick-
ynge of' nedelis, or ellis of' netlis in þe fleisch, & if' þis rigor come wiþ
a feuere, or ellis without' feuere, it' is þe worste signe tokene of' deeþ,
& if' þe crampe folowe it' is deedly / Also þese ben yuel accidentis:
blackness of the tongue, blains, etc., are bad symptoms. blaknes of' þe tunge, bleynis aboute þe skyn or þe chekis, or in ony
partie of' þe heed þanne [in]* þe wounde, is an yuel signe.[5] & sum-
tyme blood comeþ out' at' þe eeris & noseþrillis. & if' þe more partie
of' þese tokenese or ellis alle comen, þe sike man muste nedis die,
[7 lf. 63, bk.] namely, & þe accidentis conteynen[6]; [7]& specialy if' þe sike man
haue be her-to-fore manye daies in good disposicioun, & after þilke

[1] *ben*, error for *seen*. Lat.: quia non recte vident.
[2] See page 102, note 2. [3] MS. *alle*. [4] *schurgynge*, schurien, to shower.
[5] Lat.: vel in alia parte capitis quam in vulnere: quod est malum signum.
[6] *conteynen* for *contynwen*.

---

Add. MS. 12,056. [8 fol. 73 *b*] al[8]so priuye vertues ben y-trublyde as ymagenatyff', ffor þey beleffe þat þey seen, *þat þey seen nouȝt; also resonable vertue, for þey speken in deveyn, & þey answeren whanne þey beþ nouȝt y-askyde; also memoryal, þat þey þynke nouȝt on here owne name; also meffable vertue ys so myche y-greuyde, þat vnneþe þey mowe nouȝt mefen hem namlyche aboute þe nekke. Þey syken greuouslye, and a scharpe ffeuere fallyth, þe whiche a rigoor goth tofore. A rigoor nys nothynge ellys but as yt were a prikynge of nedlys opere
**Sygnum Mortal.** of nettlys in þe flesch, and ȝif þis rigoor come with a ffeuyre opere ellys with outen ffeuyre, yt is worst signe, and ȝif the crampe folwen, yt ys dedlye. Also þese beþ yuele accidentes: blaknesse of þe tonge, bleynesse[9] aboute þe chyn opere þe chekenesse, opere in enye opere partye of þe hed þenne in* þe wounde, ys an yuele signe, and sum tyme blod comyth out at þe erys & noseþrylles. And ȝif þe more partye of þese toknys, opere ellys alle comen, þe syke man moste nedys deyȝen, namlye & þo Accidentes contynewen, and specialy ȝif þat þe syke man haue y-be tofore manye daies in gode disposicioun, & after þilke disposicioun þese yuele accidentes fallen;

[9] *bleynesse*, leady colour. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. bley; mistake for *bleynes*, blains.

good disposicioun þilke yuel accidentis fallen; but sumtyme in þe bigynnynge þese yuel accidentis fallen wickid, & aftirward bi good gouernaile & good help of þe leche þilke yuel accidentis ben departid & good comeþ, and þanne it is a [good]* signe, for it betokeneþ strenkþe of kynde, hauynge no drede of þe sijknes, & kunnynge of þe leche / O holi goost, al þing fulfillynge, alle þingis sanctifiynge, & alle þingis liȝtnynge, & alle þingis gouernynge, opene þe yȝen of hem þat loken & reden on þis book, þat þei moun vndirstonde þat þing þat is weel seid, & þat þei moun demene[1] þoruȝ þi clernes þat, þat is yuel seid, & specialy in þis caas[2] where þat oonly not I þat am vnwijs & vnkunnynge, but also greete maistris & more kunnynge han writen sotilliche, & han sett in þis caas dyuers vndirstondynge. Ne þei ne I ne foond no wey in þis werk þat myȝte us make sikir, specialiche in scryuyngis of þe brayn panne, in þe whiche cure[3] dyuers men haue[3] I-wrouȝt dyuersliche. [4 lf. 64]

It is a good sign when evil symptoms grow better.

May the Holy Ghost enlighten the readers.

*Nota*

Treatment of a symple wounde.

[4] I wole bigynne at a symple wounde of þe fleisch of þe heed, in þe which þat þer is noon hurtynge of þe brayn ne brayn panne. // Biholde wheþir þilke wounde be maad wiþ a swerd or ony þing sembla[b]le to it, & þanne sowe þilke wounde, & caste aboue þe

[1] *demene*, O.Fr. "demener," for *demen*.
[2] *in þis caas*. Lat.: in isto passu. See below *pas*.
[3] *cure, have*, above line.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

ryȝtfullyche, for boþe herynge & oþere comyn wyttes ben y-trublyde; but sumtyme in þe bygynninge euyle accidentes comyth, afterwarde, by good gouernayle & by gode helpe of the leche, þese euyle accidentes ben departyde & good comyth, & þenne yt is a good* signe, for it betoknyth strengþe off kynde, hauynge non drede of þe syknesse & konyngnesse of þe leche. O holy gost, al thynge fulfyllynge, al þinge sanctifyinge, lytnynge & gouernynge, opyne þe eyȝen of hem þat redyn in thys booke, þat þey mowen vndirstonde þat þynge þat is wel seyde, & þat þey mowe demen þorwe þy clernesse þat þat[5] ys euyle seyde, specyaliche in pas where þat only nouȝte y þat am vnwys & vnkunnynge, but also grettere maistryes & more kunnynge han y-writen dotousliche. & haþ y-sett in þis cas dyuerse vnderstondynges. Ne þey ne y ne fonde non wey in þis [6 fol. 74 *a*][7] werke þat myȝte maken vs sykere, specialiche in grefynges of þe breyne panne, in whose cure dyuerse men han wrought dyuerslye; y wyll begynne at a symple wounde of þe flesch & of þe hed, in þe whiche þat þere ys non hurtynge of þe brayn ne of þe brayn panne. Byholde whar þilke wounde be mad with a swerde oþere enye þynge semblable to hit, & þan sowen þylke wounde, & caste abofen þe

[5] MS. *at*.
[7] Heading of the page: *Cure of symple Wounde off þe hed.*

wounde þe poudre of lym tofore seid, & do al þing bi ordre, as it is conteyned aboue *in* þe chapitle of woundis of fleisch /

Treatment of a contused wound.

& if þat a wounde be maad *in* þe heed wiþ brusynge, as wiþ a mace,[1] or wiþ a staf, or ony þing þat brusiþ, þanne it is nessessarie to leie aboue þe brusynge a maturatif maad of .iiij. parties of watir, & oon partie of comoun oile & flour of wheete, þat suffisiþ to make it þikke,[2] til þat þe mater þat is brusid be maturid; þe which maturatif schal be do abrood vpon a lynnen cloop & leid to þe wounde, & þou schalt fulfille þe wounde wiþ oile of rosis & ȝelke of an ey, & lynt of an oold lynnen cloop medlid togidere, til þat þe wounde ȝeue quytture & þe akþe be aswagid. & aftirward leye *in* þe wounde drie lynt of old cloop, & fille þe wounde of þe same lynet, & leie aboue þe mundificatif of mel roset & barly mele, [3]til þat it be perfiȝtly clensid; & leie aboute þe wounde, from þe bigynnynge til þat þe wounde be parfiȝtly clensid, a defensif of bole armonyak, þe which I haue told ofte tyme; aftirward incarne it, þat is to seie brynge ouer fleisch, & aftirward consowde.

Apply a maturatif,

[3 lf. 64, bk.]

a mundificatif,

and a defensif.

Cure of a wound which touches the membrane.

& if þat þis wounde towche þe pannicle þat byndiþ boonys togidere, þouȝ þat þe boon be not to-broken, charge it not litil, but

[1] *mace*, Lat. macia.

[2] MS. *þilke*.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

poudre of lym tofore seyd, and do alle þynge be ordre as yt is conteynede aboue in þe chapiteH off wounde of þe flesch; and ȝif þat a wounde be mad in þe hed with a brusynge, as with a mace opere a staf, oþer with enye þynge þat brusyth, þanne it is necessarie to leggen abofe þe brusynge a maturatyf, y-mad of foure partyes of water, & on partye of comyn oyle & floure of whete, þat suffiseþ to maken yt þikke, tyl þat þe matere þat is brusyde be matured; þe whiche maturatyff schal be do abrode on a cloþ & y-leyde to þe wonde, & þou schalt fulfille þe wounde with oyle of roses & þe ȝolke of an neyȝe,[4] & lenet of an olde lynne clout y-medlyde to gedre, tyl þat þe wounde ȝif quyter & þe akþe be aswagede. & afterwarde leye in þe wounde dreye lynet of lynne cloth, & fille þe wounde fuH of þe same lynet, & leye aboue þe mundificatyff of mel rosat & barlye mele, tyl þat he be perfitlye clansyde, & leye aboute þe wounde fro þe begynnynge, tyl þat þe wonde be perfitlie clansyde, a defensyf of bol armonyak, þe whiche y haue tolde of ofte tymes; afterward incarne hit—þat is to sigge, brynge ouere flesch, & afterwarde consoude yt; and ȝif þat þis wounde touchith þe pannycle þat bynde þe bonys togedre, þowȝ þat þe bon be nouȝt to-broken,

Maturatif for brosure

[4] *neyȝe* at the beginning of a line.

take þerof' good hede, & do þer*y*nne *in* þe wou*n*de hoot' oile of' rosis dou*n* to þe pa*n*nicle þat' byndiþ boonys togidere, til þat' þer be noon akynge in þe wou*n*de. & kepe þilke wounde as þou woldist' kepe oþere wou*n*dis of' þe brayn pa*n*ne; & kepe þe bray*n* fro cold & fro heete, for cold is moost' greuo*us* to boonys & to pa*n*niclis þat' ben wou*n*did. þer be*n* su*mm*e mane*r* men þat' leien wiþout' forþ on alle mane*r* wou*n*dis of' þe heed, whe*þer* it' be wiþ wou*n*de of' þe brayn pa*n*ne or wiþoute þe wou*n*de of' þe brayn pa*n*ne, *in* what' mane*r* þat' þe heed be hurt', a ly*n*nen cloþ wet' *in* þe oynement' þat' is ma*a*d on þis mane*r* / Take white rosis libra*m* ß, oile of' rosis ℥ v, whiȝt' wex ℥ iij, þei melten alle togidere *in* an yren pa*n*ne, & þei maken [2]*þer*of' .j. bodi, & boile it' aftirward *in* good wyn bi þe space of' an hour; & þei leten it' aftirward nyȝ colden, & þei weten þer*in*ne a pece of' a ly*n*nen clout', & þei schapen þilke pece wiþ a schere aftir þat' þe wou*n*de is, & þa*n*ne þei baþe þilke pece *in* good wiyn, & þa*n*ne leie þilke pece [on þe wounde]*, & anoon aftir þei leien vpon þilke pece on eiþir side of' þe wou*n*de a plumaciol I-wet' in good hoot' wiyn; & þei leien on a drie pelowe of' herdis vpon þo two wete pelowis, þe which drie pelewe of' herdis schal co*m*prehende þe tweie wete, & bynde hem faste; & þei ȝeuen to su*mm*en to drynke

Apply oliu*m* ro. hoot.

Nota

Some physicians use a general treatment for wounds on the head.

Entreet.[1]

They apply Compresses with an ointment, [2 lf. 65]

[1] *Entreet.* See entreten ne. entreat, Mätzner, *Dict.*

---

charge yt noȝt litel but take þere of gode hede, & do in þe wou*n*de hot oyle of roses don to þe pa*n*nycle, tyl þat þere be no*n* akþe in þe wou*n*de. & kepe þilke wou*n*de, as þou woldiste kepe*n* oþer wondys of þe brayn pa*n*ne & of þe bray*n*, fro colde & fro*m* hete; ffor colde ys most greuest' to bonys & to pa*n*nycles þat beþ wou*n*dyde. [3]þere ben some mane*r*e of men þat leggen wi*th*outen forth̄ on alle mane*r*e wondys of þe hed, whe*þer*e it be wiþ wou*n*de of þe brayn pa*n*ne oþere wi*th*out wou*n*de of þe brayn pa*n*ne, in what mane*r*e þat þe hed be*n* y-hurt, a ly*n*nen cloth̄ y-wett in þe oignement y-made in þis mane*r*e: ℞ whit resine ℔. ß., oyle of roses ȝ v., whyt wex ȝ iij., þey melten aH̄ togedres in an erthyne panne, & þey maken þere of on body, & þey boyllen yt afterward in gode wyn by þe space of an Oure; & þey leten afte*r*warde nyȝh̄ colden, & þey weten þere y*n*ne a pece of ly*n*nen cloth̄, & þey schapen þilke pece wi*th* a schere aftere þe wou*n*de ys, & þey baþe*n* þylke pece in gode wyn, & þey leggen þilke pece on þe wou*n*de,* and anon afte*r*warde þey leggen on þilke pece on eiþere syde of þe wou*n*de a plumacyole, y-wẽt in´good hote wyn, & þey leggen on a drye pylwe of herdes vpon þo tweye wete pylwes, þe whiche dreye pylwe schaH̄ co*m*prehende þe tweye wete & bynden hem faste; and þey ȝeue*n* some me*n* to drynken gode

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3 fol. 74 *b*]

Cura Ancellina

and diet with wine and fowls.

rigt[t] good wyn, & to ete good fleisch of[f] hennes & of[f] capouns; &[1] þei comaunden to drynke a drope of[f] water; & þei gouernen on þis maner alle men þat[t] ben woundid *in* þe heed differentliche, & þei seyn þat[t] mo men ben heelid bi þis maner cure þan dien. But[t] bi as

I never dared to try this treatment.

myche as alle auctouris ben agens þis cure, namely *in* dietynge, I ne was neuere hardi to preue þis maner cure; for *in* mannys bodi a

[2 lf. 65, bk.]

medicyn schal not be preued which þat[t] is not[t] acordynge to resoun / For alle autouris acorden þat[t] þer is no þing[g] [2]þat[t] so soone greueþ þe

Nota bene.

Wine is especially dangerous.

brayn & þe senewis as wiyn doiþ, & vsynge of[f] fleisch is cause of[f] bryngynge yn an hoot[t] enpostyme. Neuere-þe-latter if[f] a man þat[t] vsiþ of[f] custum sich a maner dietynge haue a strong[g] heed, *in* his hele him drediþ no wiyn, & þe vertu of[f] him þat[t] is sijk be strong[g]— in sum manere of[f] folk wiþ þis maner gouernaile, vertu is more strenkþid, & þe sunner þei ben heelid. But I ne procede not[t] wiþ sich a maner dietynge bi cause of[f] drede lest[t] an hoot[t] enpostyme schulde come to þe sore, but I procede in dietynge & worche aboute þe wounde as I haue seid tofore.

Treatment if the skull is broken:

Opere men loke [in brekynges of þe brayn panne, wheþer þat]* þe brekynge of[f] þe brayn panne be with a greet[t] wounde, or smal

[1] Lat.: & præcipiunt quod unam guttam aquæ *non* bibat.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

wyn, & to eten gode fflesch̄ of capouns & of hennys; & þey comaunden to drynken a drope watere; and þey gouernen on þis manere alle men þat ben woundyde in þe hed differentlyche, & þey sigge þat mo[3] men ben y-helyde by þis manere cure þen dyzen. But by as myche as alle auttorys beþ azeyns þis cure, namlyche in dyetynge, y ne was neuere hardye to preuen þis manere of cure; ffor in mannys bodye a medycine schal nouzt ben preuyde, whiche þat is nozt acordynge to resoun; ffor alle auctores acorden, þat þere ys noþynge þat so sone greuyth̄ þe brayn & þe synwes as wyn doþ, and vsynge of flesch̄ ys cause of bryngynge in an hot Emposteme. Neuere þe latere zif a man þat vsith̄ of custome swyche a manere dyetynge haffe a stronge hed, & in hys hele he dredyth̄ non wyn,

[4 fol. 75 *a*]

& þe vertue of hym þat ys seek [4]be stronge, in some manere of folk with þis manere of[f] gouernaylle vertue ys more y-streynþed, & sunnere þey ben y-helyde. But y ne procede nouzt wiþ swyche a manere dyetynge, by cause of drede leste an hote empostome scholde come to þe sore; but y procede in dyetynge & worche aboute þe wounde, as y haue seyde toforn. Opere men loken* in brekynges of þe brayn panne, wheþer þat þe brekynge of þe breyne panne be with a gret wounde opere a smal wounde, opere without wounde; and zif

[3] MS. *no*.

woun*d*e, or wi*th*oute woun*d*e. *&* if' þat' þ*er* be a greet' woun*d*e, þei loken whe*þer* þei moun se if' ony pece of' þe brayn panne be to-broke*n*, & þei don it' awey. & aftirward þei putten bitwene þe brayn pa*n*ne & dura*m* matrem a þinne clout' wet' i*n* þe white of' an ey, & su*m*what' þe white comp*r*essid out', & þei fulfillen al þe woun*d*e of' þe brayn panne wi*th* sich a mane*r* cloo*þ*. & þei leyn i*n* þe oue*r* woun*d*e which þat' is i*n* þe fleisch, lynet' wet' in þe white of' an ey, til þat' þe blood be staun*c*hid; [1]& þei leien aboue a plumaciol wet' i*n* an ey. & wha*n*ne þe blood is staun*c*hid, þei leien a dreie cloo*þ* vndir þe brayn panne in þe woun*d*e, & þei leien aboue þe woun*d*e a potage, þe which engendri*þ* quytture; & wha*n*ne þat' þe quytture is engendrid, þei leien i*n* þe woun*d*e carp,[2] ei*þ*ir lynet' of' a cloute; & þei anoy*n*te aboute þe woun*d*e wi*þ* vnguento fusco; & at' þe laste eende þei leien aboue apostolico*n*.[3]

Broken pieces are removed,

wet compresses applied to stanch the blood;

[1 lf. 66]

then dry compresses, a poultice,

and an ointment.

& þei asaie in þis maner if' þat' þe brekynge of' þe brayn panne be wi*þ* a rimel,[4] þat' is to seie a chene, ei*þ*ir a creueis; & if' þat' ilke creueis peerse to wi*þ*inne, makynge þe sike man to streyne his

Treatment of a fissure of the skull:

[2] *carp*, Lat. carpia, 'charpie.' *oile* struck through after *carp*.

[3] *Apostolorum Unguentum*, a cleansing Ointment, so call'd, because it is made of twelve Drugs, according to the number of the Apostles.—Kersey. 1706.

[4] *rimel*, Lat.: si fractura esset rimalis. O.Fr. rimule, Lat. rimula, a small chink.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

þat þ*er*e be*n* a gret woun*d*e þey loken whe*þer*e þey mowe seen ȝif enye pece of þe brayn pa*n*ne ben to-broken, & þey don yt awey. And afte*r*warde þey putten bytwene þe bray*n* pa*n*ne & duram matrem a þe*n*ne clout y-wett in þe whyte of an eyȝe, & su*m*what þe whyte *com*pressyde out, & þey fulfyllen alle þe woun*d*e of þe brayn pa*n*ne wi*th* swiche a mane*r*e cloth̄. & þey legge*n* in þe ofe*r*e woun*d*e whiche þat ys in þe flesch̄, lenyt y-wett in þe whyte of an eyȝe, tyl þat þe blode be staun*c*hyde; & þey legge*n* aboue a plumacyole y-wet in an eyȝe. And wha*n*ne þat þe blode ys y-staunchyde, þey leggen a dreye cloth̄ vndire þe brayn pa*n*ne in þe woun*d*e, and þey legge*n* aboue þe woun*d*e a potage, the whiche engendryth̄ quytere; & whe*n*ne þ*a*t þe quyte*r* ys engendryde, þey legge*n* in þe woun*d*e carp o*þ*ere lyneth of a clout; and þey anoy*n*t[5] aboute þe woun*d*e wi*th* oygnement fusco; and at þe laste ende þey legge*n* aboue Apostolicon. And þey assayen in þis manere: ȝif þat þe brekynge of þe brayn pa*n*ne be wi*th* a rimele, þat ys to seye a chyne, o*þ*ere a creueys; & ȝif þat þilke creveys pe*r*se tó wi*þ*y*n*ne, makynge þe syke man to streyne*n* hys mou*þ* & hys nese, & þey

[5] At the end of the line.

mouþ & his nose, & þei maken him þanne to blowen, & þei loken[1] if ony þing exale out bi þilke rimele,[2]— as blod or ony other mater, þei drede not to perse þilke rimelle. & þanne summe seien þat þilke rimele schulde be to-broke eiþir peersid from þe toon eende to þe toþir wiþ rinspindelis,[3] perischinge þe brayn scolle / A rinspindil is an instrument þat coteleris poudren[4] with her haftis, þe which figure schal be schapen in þis same chapitle folowynge. & þe worste þing þat a man may do is to peerse þe rimele on boþe sidis / But oþere[5] men don bettere which þat peerse þe rimele on þe oon eende which is moost hangynge; & þei maken as manye hoolis, oon biside anoþer, as it is nessessarie to make an hole in þe brayn panne, bi þe which hole if ony þing be fallen vpon, duram matrem myȝte be clensid; & þese, in as myche as touchinge trepanacioun[6] worchiþ best / & whanne þat þei han maad manye hoolis, þei kutten from oon hole to anoþer hole wiþ an instrument, þat þei moun drawe out þe boon þat is bitwene þe ordure of holis þat was maad & þe rimele, & þei casten him awey, & aftirward þei proceden

Some physicians open the fissure from end to end,

which is entirely wrong.

[3 lf. 66, bk.]

Better open only one end of the fissure, make several holes in the skull,

and remove a piece of the bone.

[1] *þanne* struck through after *loken*.

[2] *as blod or ony oþer mater . þei drede not to perse þilke rimelle*, this is as a note at the bottom of the page.

[3] *rinspindil*, see mod. Germ. Rennspindel, f., upright drill, pump drill. Trépan.—Rumpf, *Technolog. Dict.*

[4] *poudren* for *boren*, under the influence of 'pore.' Lat. porus.

[6] Lat.: quantum est ad trypanacionem.

---

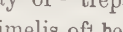
Add. MS. 12,056.

[7 fol. 75 *b*]

maken hym þenne to blowen, & þey loken ȝif enye þynge exale out by þilke rymele. *& ȝif þat enye þynge exale out by þylke rymele, as blod ore enye oþere matere, þey drede noȝt to perce þilke rymele; and þenne some sigge þat þilke rymele scholde be to-broke oþere y-perced. from þat one ende to þat oþere with Rynspyndles, persynge þe braynscolle. [7]A rynspyndeH ys an Instrument þat Cutlers poudren wiþ here hefftes, whose ffigure schal be schappyde[8] in þe same chapitle ffolwynge. And þe worste þynge þat a man may do, ys to perce þe rymele on boþe sydes. But oþere men don bettyre whiche þat percen þe rymele at þat one ende, whyche is moste hongynge; and þey maken as many holys on bysyde an oþere, as beþ necessarie to maken an hole in þe brayn panne, be þe whiche hole ȝif enye þynge beþ[9] fallen vpon þe duram matrem myȝte ben y-clansyde; & þese in as myche as towchynge trepanacioun worchiþ best. And whenne þat þey haue made manye holys, þey kutten from on hole to an oþere wiþ an spatymyne,[10] þat ys an Instrument, þat þey mowe drawyne out þe bon, þat ys betwene þe ordre of holys þat was y-made & þe rymele, & þey casten hym aweye, afterwarde

[8] MS. *scharpyde*. *rp* for *pp*, like *lk* for *kk*. See p. 120.

[9] þ above line. [10] Lat.: cum spatumine.

forþ in o*þe*re maner þingis as it' is seid tofore / For wha*nne* þou desirist way of'[1] trepaninge [þis man*e*re trepanynge]* sufficiþ to þee *in* þe rimelis of' þe brayn panne. þis schal be þe foorme of' a trepane [*with* þe whiche þe brayn scolle schal be trepaned wiþ]* . & þis is þe foorme of' a spatina*m*, wiþ þe which a man schal kutte fro*m* oon hole to ano*þe*r hole  . & þou schalt' smyte wiþ a mal[2] ei*þe*r an hamer on þe greet' eende; & wha*nne* þou hast' remeued of' þe boon þat' schal be remoued, euene þe brynkis *with* schauy*n*ge, þat' þou mowe not' leue no maner scharpnes *in* þe brynkis. þis is þe man*e*r of' þe schap , [3]& þis schaue schal kutte on þe side þat' foldiþ ynward, & it' schal be blunt' on þe oon side þat' is outward. & þei fulfillen þe wou*n*de þat' is wiþinne þe fleisch wiþoutforþ, as I haue seid, *with* þe clooþ exp*r*essid of' þe white of' an ey & lynet', til þat' þe wou*n*de be ful, & also til þat' þe kynde haue regendrid a repeirement', þe which sch*a*l fulfille þe place þe*re* as þe boon wa*s* don awey. Aftirward þei curen þe wou*n*de aftir comou*n* cure of' wou*n*dis / Alle o*þe*re maner of' trepanaciou*n* is comp*r*ehendid vndir o su*mm*e, þou3 þat' su*mm*en ordeyne p*ar*ticuler aftir her dyuyse, diu*e*rs maners.

A description of the instruments used: the trepan, the spatina (spattle).

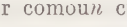
[3 lf. 67]

The further treatment is the usual one for wounds.

But' bi as myche as I haue not seen *in* þis caas no way þat'

[1] *þe* struck through after *of*. [2] *mal*, Lat. malleus.

---

þey p*r*oceden forth̄ in o*þe*re manere thynges, as yt is seyde tofore. And whe*nne* þat þou desiriste þe wey of trepany*n*ge, *þis man*e*re trepanynge suffiseþ to þe in þe rimeles of þe brayn p*a*nne. þis schal be*n* þe forme of a trepane, **with* þe whiche þe brayn scolle schal be trepaned wiþ  . And þis is þe forme off' a spatimene, *with* þe whiche a man schal kutte *with* fro*m* on hole to an o*þe*re hole . And þou schalt smyte*n* *with* a Mal o*þe*re an hamere vpon þe gret ende; and whe*nne* þ*o*u haste remefed of þe bon þat schal be remeffyde, euene þe brynkes wiþ schauynge, þat þe*re* mowe no3t lefe no*n* man*e*re scharpnesse in þe brynkes. þis ys þe man*e*re of þy schafe , and þis schafe schal kutte*n* on þe syde þ*a*t feldyth̄ inwarde, & schal be blunt on þe syde þ*a*t ys outwarde. And þe*nne* fulfyllen þe wou*n*de þ*a*t is in þe flesch̄, wiþoutforþ as y haue seyde tofore, *with* clo þ expressyde of þe whyte of an ey3e, & lynet to þat þe wou*n*de be ful, and also tyl þ*a*t þe kynde haue regeneryd a repeyrement, þe whiche schal fulfylle þe place where þ*a*t þe bon was don awey. [4]Afte*r*warde þey cure þe wou*n*de aftere comyn cure of wondys. Alle o*þe*re man*e*re of trèpanácio*u*n ys *comp*rehendyde vndire on Somme, þow3 þ*a*t sum me*n* ordeynen p*ar*tyklerliche aftere here devyse, dyu*e*rse maners. But be as myche as y haue no3t seyne in þis place no wey þ*a*t my3te remefe

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 76 a]

Trepanning is dangerous.

myȝte remeue me from doute, bi as myche as I haue saied bi longe tyme, boþe bi summe auctouris experimentis, & also bi myn experiment', & þat' wei is not' certeyn / þerfore here þei Galien, þat' seiþ: if' we mowe remeue quytture wiþoute doynge awei of' boonys þat' schulde be do awey, it' is good / And auicen & serapie[1] acorden to þe same sentence of' cure of' heed akþe þat' comeþ of' smytynge or ellis of' fallynge, where þat' he towchiþ[2] þe worchinge of' hurtis of' þe brayn [3]panne, not' bi trepanacioun, but' bi emplastris & medicyns & also I took good hede þat' manye mo men ben heelid bi maner of' medicyns & emplastris, þan ben heelid bi trapanes, þat' ben peersynge or þrillynge / For I ne vse not' instrumentis to remeue the boon but' in two causis / þe oon cause is if' þat' þe brayn panne be so myche I-slend[4] þat' þe part' þat' is broke, entre vndir þe partie þat' is hool / þe secunde caas is, if' ony pece be departid from þe brayn panne, þe which þat' prickiþ duram matrem / In þe firste caas dura mater is compressid. In þe secunde caas dura mater is prickid, which is cause of' akþe, & akynge is cause of' drawynge humouris, þere engendriþ an empostyme vpon þe same pannicle, þe which is cause of' a crampe, & of' opere accidentis tofore seid; &

Galien and Auicen used medicines instead of operating.

[3 lf. 67, bk.]

Nota.

I operate if the broken piece .1. gets under the healthy bone, .2. or hurts the dura mater, causing a tumour, then cramp,

[1] *Serapie*, probably Ser. the Elder, an Arab physician, cc. 900.

[2] *towchiþ* for *techiþ*.

[4] *islend*, Add. MS. *ysclend*. See *slent*, to tear, to rend (Dorset).—Halliwell.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

me fro doute, by as myche as y haue assayede longe tyme boþe by sum auctores experyment', & also by myn experyment, & þat wey is noȝt certeyn, þerefore here þey Galien, whiche þat seith̄: ȝif we mowe remywe quyter without doynge awey bonys þat scholde be do awey, hyt is good. And Auisene & Serapio acorden to þe same sentense of cure of hed-akþe, þat comyth̄ off' smytinge opere ellys of fallynge, where þat he techith̄ þe worchynge of hurtynges of þe brayn panne & of þe brayn, noȝt by trepanacioun, but by emplastres & by medycines. And also y toke gode hede þat manye mo men ben y-helyde by manere medycines & emplastres, þenne ben y-helyde by trepanes þat beþ persynge opere þryllynge. Ffor y ne vse noȝt Instrumentes to remywe þe bon, but in tweye cases—þat on cas ys ȝif þat þe breyn panne be so myche y-scleud, þat þe part þat ys y-broke entre vndire þe partye þat ys hol, þe secunde cas ys ȝif þat enye pece be departyde from þe brayn panne, whyche þat pryketh̄ duram matrem. In þe firste cas dura mater ys compressede. In þe secunde cas dura mater ys y-prikyde, þe whiche ys cause of' akþe, & akynge ys cause of drawynge of humoures, the whiche engendrith̄ a posteme vpon þe same pannycle, the whiche is cause of a[5] crampe, & of opere accidentes tofore seyde, & at þe laste þey bryngen deþ

[5] *a*, above line.

at' þe laste þei bryngen ḋeeþ to þe pacient' / In þese .ij. causis finally death.
I leeue hem[1] constreyned to remeue a boon wiþ handely[2] instru-
mentis. In alle o*pere* maners of' brechis eiþer in creueis, in what' In all other cases I use
4 maner þat' þei happen, þouȝ þat' I be not' siker of' þe pacientis lijf', medicine,
neþeles I *procede* in þis man*er* w*ith* more trist', bisekynge alwey
help of' god, þe which þat' [3]haþ heelid mo men bi myn hondis, þat' [3 lf. 68]
am his instrument', þan haue ben deed, nouȝt' aȝenstondynge alle and by God's help I have generally been successful.
8 my cautels & helpinge. For soþe þat' I haue biholde soþliche resonis
& þe *proces* of' o*pere* auctouris, I holde þis wey lasse dredeful þan
ony o*pere* / for I folowe þe sentence of' Galien, which þat' seiþ: *Galien*
if' þat' a man haue but' o wei to his hele,[4] it' is good þat' he holde
12 þilke wey, þouȝ þat' it' be yuel.

& whanne þat' I come to a man þat' is wou*n*did in þe heed, & I Treatment of fractures of the skull, without trepanning:
knowe þat' þe brayn panne be broke, bi tokenes tofore seid, first' I
considere þe vertu of him þat' is pacient', & also his age & alle
16 o*pere* pa*r*ticuler þing', & nameli vertu, & gladliche I leue þe cure,
if' þat' I se ony deedly tokenes, but' if' it' so be þat' I be p*re*ied wiþ
þe grettere instau*n*ce of' þe freendis of' þe sike man. & not' aȝen-
stondynge her p*re*ier I telle hise freendis þat' bi wey of' resou*n* þe

[1] *hem* for *am*; *leeue* is erroneously added in margin.
[2] *handely* ne. handy. [4] MS. *ixele.*

---

20 to þe pacient. In þese tweye causes y am constreynde to remefe a Add. MS. 12,056.
bon w*ith* handly Instrumentes. In alle o*pere* man*ere* of breches
o*pere* of crefeys, in what man*ere* þat þey happen, þowȝ þat y be
noȝt sykere of þe paciente, naþeles y *procede* in þis man*ere* w*ith*
24 more trest, by sechynge alweye help of god, þe whyche þat haþ
y-helyde mo m[5]en be myn handys, þat am hys Instrument, þenne
han be ded, nouȝt aȝeynestondynge al my cauteles & [6]helpynge. [6 fol 76 b]
Ffor sytthe þat y haf' beholde sotelyche þe resou*n*s & þe *proces*es
28 of o*pere* auctorys, y holde þis wey lesse dredful þenne enye o*pere*.
Ffor y folwe þe sentence of galien, which þat seiþ: ȝif þat a man
hath but o wey to hys hele, hyt ys gode þat he holde þilke weye,
þowȝ þat þilke wey be euell. And whenne þat y come to a Man
32 þat is wou*n*dyde in the hed, & knowe þat hys breyn panne ys
to-broke, by þe tokenys tofore seyde, ffirste y *con*sidere þe vertu of
hym þat ys pacient, & also hys age & alle o*per*[7] partyclere thynge,
& namly vertue. And gladliche y leue þe cure, ȝif þat y se enye
36 dedlye signes; but ȝif þat so be þat y be preyde wiþ the grettere
Instau*n*ce of þe frendes of þe seke man. And noȝt aȝeynestondynge
here preyere, y telle hys frendys þat by resou*n* þe pacient scholde

[5] MS. *m*, *en* cut away. [7] *oper*, above line.

pacient' schulde die, & þanne I worche aboute hi*m* as i*n* a man i*n*
If there are no mortal symptoms and if the wound is large, whom yuele accidentis appere. & if' þa*t*' þe signys ben not'
deedliche, & þe breche of' þe brayn panne be wi*th* a greet' wou*n*de
of' þe heed, & þa*t*' a greet pa*r*tie of' þe brayn pa*n*ne be do awey al 4
[1 lf. 68, bk.] togidere, so þa*t*' I mowe 1haue a good wey to leie medicyns vpon
I shave the head and apply Oliu*m* Rosa*rum*, dura*m* matre*m* / First I do schaue his heed, afterward I leie on an
eeld lynnen clout' & a þenne,[2] wett' i*n* .ij. pa*r*ties of' oile of' rosis
swete smellynge, & oon pa*r*tie of' mel roset' colat', bitwene þe dura*m* 8
matre*m* & þe brayn panne sliȝly & softli, þa*t*' dura mate*r* be not'
compressid wiþ þe cloþ þa*t*' is wet' tofore seid; & I fulfille þe
wou*n*de of' þe fleisch wiþ lint' of' oold lyn*n*en cloþ wett' i*n* þe ȝelke
of' an ey, & oile of' rosis, boþe liche myche; & anoynte aboute þe 12
a defensif ointment, wou*n*de wiþ a defensif' of' bole armoniak ofte tymes I-seid, & leie
aboue þe wou*n*de a plumaciol, þe which þat schal keuere al þe
compresses, wou*n*de; & þanne aboue al-togidere I leie a greet' plumaciol, wett'
and bandages. i*n* good hoot' wiyn. & aftirward I bynde þe wou*n*de wiþ a boond, 16
byndynge ofte tymes aboute þe heed wiþ þe lynet' & þe cloþ, þe
which þa*t*' is i*n* þe wou*n*de & aboute þe wou*n*de myȝte not' slide to
no pa*r*tie, & bynde þe wou*n*de i*n* þa*t*' mane*r* þa*t*' dura mate*r* bi no

[2] MS. *þanne*, error for *a þenne*. Lat.: pannum lineum vetustum et subtile. See below.

---

Add. MS. deyȝe, & þenne y wirche aboute hym, as y worche in a Man in 20
12,056. whom yuel accidentes apere. And ȝif þa*t* þe signes be nought
dedlyche, & þe breche of þe breyn pa*n*ne be wi*th* a gret wou*n*de of
þe hed, & þat a grete pa*r*tye of þe breyn pa*n*ne be don aweye alle
togedre, so þa*t* y mowe han a gode wey to legge medycynes vpon 24
duram matrem. ffirste y do schaffe hys hed, afterwarde y legge an
olde lyn*n*en clout & a þenne, y-wett in two pa*r*tyes of oyle of rosys
swote smellynge, & on pa*r*tye of mel rosat colat bytwene þe duram
matrem and þe brayn pa*n*ne, slyȝlye & softlye, þat dura mater be 28
noȝt *com*pressyde wi*th* þe cloth þat ys y-wett tofore seyde, & y
fulfille þe wou*n*de of þe fflesch wi*th* lynt of olde lyn*n*en cloþ wet in
þe ȝolke of an eyȝe & oyle of roses, of boþe y-lyche myche; & y
anoynte aboute þe wou*n*de wi*th* deffensyfe of bol armonyak ofte 32
tymes seyde, & y legge aboue*n* þe wou*n*de a plumacyole whiche þa*t*
[3 fol. 77 *a*] schal keuere alle þe wou*n*de, and þenne [3]abouen alle togedre y
legge a grete plumacyole in-wet in gode hot wyn. And afterewarde
y bynde þe wou*n*de wi*th* a bande, in byndynge ofte tymes aboute þe 36
hed, þa*t* þe lynet & þe cloþ whyche þa*t* is in þe wou*n*de & aboute
þe wou*n*de myȝte noȝt slyde to non partye, and y bynde þe wou*n*de
in þa*t* mane*r*e þa*t* dura mater be no weye be *com*pressyde. þe

wey be compressid. þe heeris of þe heed schulen be remeued awey on þis maner: clippe hem first' with scheris, afterward take .ij. parties of' water cold, & oon partie of' oile [1]of' rosis in somer, & make hoot' þe same water & oile in wyntir, & waische þe heed softliche, takynge hede þat' no water ne oile entre into þe wounde, & þanne schaue it' wiþ a rasour / & whanne þat' I haue serued þe pacient' on þis maner, I lete him reste til on þe morowe, & aftirward I serue þe wounde on þe same maner til þat' þe wounde be hool / Neþeles I considere if' þat' þe pacient' be ful of' blood, & his vertu be strong, & if' he be ȝong', & litil blood bled at' his wounde, & whanne alle þese þingis acorden, I make him to be leten blood on þe coral[2] veyne of' þe arme / & but' if' he mowe go to priuy, I helpe him oonys aday, or wiþ suppositories or wiþ clisterie; & I procede in dietynge, as I haue seid in þe chapitle of' dietynge / & whanne þat' þe wounde makiþ sufficiently quytture, I leie in þe wounde of' þe brayn panne, & vpon þe brayn panne, as I haue don tofore; & aboue þe wounde I leie a mundificatif' of' mel roset', colat', & barly mele, til þat' þe wounde be clensid, & þat' þe dura mater be sowdid with þe brayn panne / & þanne I caste in þe wounde of' þe heed a poudre maad on þis maner / Take frank encense & ciperi, þat is þe

How to shave the head. [1 lf. 69] I bleed and purge. If the patient is strong, If pus is discharged I use a mundificatif and puluis capitalis.

[2] *coral veyne*, vena cephalica.

---

herys of þe hed schul be remywede awey on þis manere: clippe hem firste with scherys, afterwarde take two partyes of colde water & on partye of oyle of roses in somere, & make hot þe same watyr & þe oyle in wyntere & wassche þe hed softliche, takynge hede þat non watere ne oyle entre into þe wounde, & þenne schaffe yt with a rasoure. & whenne þat y haue seruyde þe pacient on þis manere, y lete hym resten tyl on þe morwe; and afterwarde y serfe þe wounde on þe same manere tyl þat þe wounde be hol. Naþeles y consydere ȝif þat þe pacient be replet of blod, & hys vertue be stronge; & ȝif þat he be ȝonge, & lytel blod haue nouȝt go out of hys wounde, & whanne alle þese þynges acorde, y make hym to by leten blod on þe coral veyne of þe arme; & but ȝif he mowe schiten, y helpe hym onys a day, oþere wiþ suppositorye oþere wiþ clisterye; and y procede in dyetynge as y haue seyde in þe chapyteH of dyetynge. And whenne makyth sufesentlyche quyter, y legge in þe wounde of þe brayn panne & vpon þe brayn panne as y haue don toforn, & above þe wounde y legge a mundyficatyff' of mel r sat colat & barlye mele, tyl þat þe wounde ben y-clansyde, & þat þe dura mater be y-soudyde wiþ þe breyn panne; & þenne y caste in þe wounde of þe hed, poudre y-mad on þis manere: R ffrank Ensence, ciperi, þe

Add. MS. 12,056.

[¹ lf. 69, bk.]² note of¹ a cipres, ¹seed of¹ mirtilles, mirre, ana. orobi, ℥ j; make poudre, & leie þis poudre in þe wounde, & aboue þe poudre leie þredis of¹ lynnen clooþ, or ellis lynet¹; & aboue al-togidere leie an entreet¹ maad of¹ .ij. parties of¹ whiȝt¹ rosyn,³ & oon partie of¹ wex moltun togidere vpon strong¹ vynegre, & colid þoruȝ a þinne streynour vpon cold water / & whanne þin hondis ben anoyntid wiþ oile of¹ rosis, malaxe⁴ it¹ longe tyme togidere. In somer take euene porcioun of¹ whiȝt¹ rosyn & of¹ wex; in wyntir / take .iiij. partis of¹ rosyn,* & þe .v part¹ of¹ wex, & drawe abrood þat¹ treet¹⁵ on a clooþ, & leie it¹ on þe wounde til þat¹ he be perfiȝtliche cicatrisid. & if¹ þat¹ þer were ony partie of¹ þe boon þat¹ prickide duram matrem, þanne I aforce me to remeue þilke partie þat¹ prickiþ wiþ pynsouns,⁶ if¹ þat¹ I may; & if¹ þilke partie þat¹ prickiþ be ioyned so faste to þe hool boon þat¹ he wolde not¹ be remeued awey, þanne I remeue him awey wiþ rugement⁷ from þe partie þat¹ halt¹,⁸ in makynge oon hole or two, or mo, aftir þe quantite of¹ þe

Lay over all an **Entreet** (Plaster) made from wax and oil of roses.

I remove a bone which pricks the membrane, with pincers.

² At the foot of lf. 69 is this note: R *radicis erios, aristologe, thuris, mer, aloes, sanguis draconis, orobus ana, ffac pulvis.*

³ *whight rosyn*, hardened Terpentine.

⁴ *malaxe*, Lat. malaxo, mollify.

⁵ *treet* = *entreet*. See p. 123, note 1.

⁶ *wiþ pynsouns*, cum piccario. See Pynsone, Tenella. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 400.

⁷ *wiþ rugement*. Lat.: cum rugine ruginando, Fr. rugine, ruginer.

⁸ Both MSS. omit to translate the Lat. *si non possum.*

---

Add. MS. 12,056. [⁹ fol. 77 *b*] note of cypresse, sede of mirtylles, mirre ana. ℥. i., oreby. ℥. j., mak poudre & leye þis poudre in þe wounde, & aboue þe poudre leye þe þredys of lynne cloþ opere ellys lynet; and aboffe al togedire y-legge an entrete ⁹y-made of two partyes of whyte resyn & on party of wex y-molten togedre, & vpon stronge Vynegre, & y-colyd þorwe a þenne streynoure vpon¹⁰ colde water; & whenne þat þyne hondys ben anoyntede with oyle of roses, & malaxe yt longe tyme togedyre. In somere take euene porcioun of whyt resyn & of wex; in wyntere take foure partyes of —* & þe ffifte partye of wex, & y-drawe abrode þilke tret on a cloþ & legge yt on þe wounde, tyl þat he be perffitliche cycatrysede. And ȝif þat þere were anye —* of a bon. whiche þat prekyde duram matrem, þenne y aforce me to remeffe þilke partye þat prykeþ with pynsones ȝif y may. And ȝif þilke partye þat prikeþ ys y-ioynede so faste to þe hol bon þat he nyl nouȝt be remeffyd awey, þenne y remeffe hym aweye wiþ rugenynge. from þe partye þat halt, in makynge an hole, opere two, opere mo, after þe quantyte of þe bon þat scholde be don awey,* þat halt with þe hole bon; & afterwarde y kutte with a spatymene from on hole

¹⁰ MS. *o pound.*

boon þat schulde be don awey [þat halt *with* þe hole bon & afterwarde y kutte *with* a spatymene fro*m* on hole to anoþere tyl al þe bon be remeffyde aweye.]* / & whanne þat þe boon is remeued
4 awei, I *procede in* þe cure as it is [1]seid in þis chapitle / But [1 lf. 70] whanne I remeue a boon wiþ instrumentis of þe brayn panne, þanne I stoppe þe sijk mannes eeris, þat he mowe not heere þe soun of þe yren þat trepaniþ. & I remeue þe same maner þe *partie* þat is broke, þe which þat goiþ vndir þe *partie* þat is hool, & com-
8 pressiþ þe dura mat*er*. & if þat a gobet eiþir a pece of a boon holde sum*w*hat *in* þe wou*n*de, & myȝte not liȝtliche be remeued away, & he *prickiþ* not dura mater ne com*p*ressiþ not dura mater,
12 þanne at þe bigy*n*nynge I do on þe boon hoot oile of rosis, & I fulfille þe wou*n*de wiþ oile of rosis & þe ȝelke of an ey medlid togidere, til þat þe boon be neischid & may liȝtliche be remoued awey; þanne I remeue þe boon softliche, & I *procede* in þe
16 worchi*n*ge bitwene þe boon & dura*m* matre*m*, as it is seid tofore /

& if þat þe breche of þe brayn panne were as a creueis or ellis I slend, & neiþ*er* part of þe boon were lowere þan oþ*er*, þanne I considere if þat ilke slendynge[2] *perce* al þe brayn panne; & þat
20 þou schalt knowe bi þe tokenes tofore seid, or ellis þou schalt knowe bi þis signe, þat neue*re* failiþ / Make [3]a plastre of poudre of [3 lf. 70, bk.]

Nota

I stop the patient's ears during the operation.

I soften the bone before removing it.

[2] *slendinge*, see p. 128, note 4.

---

to anoþ*er*e tyl al þe bon be remeffyde aweye.* And whenne þe bon ys remefyde awey, y *procede* in þe cure, as yt is seyde in þis same
24 chapyt*e*H. But whanne þat y remeffe a bon *with* Instrumentes of þe brayn panne, þenne y stoppe þe syke mannys eres, þat he mowe noȝt here þe soun of þe eyren þat trepanyth. And y remeffe þe same maner*e*, þe partye þat is broke, whiche þat goþ vndire þe
28 partye þat ys hol, & *com*pressyth þe dura mater; and ȝif þat a gobbet oþ*er*e a pece of a bon helde sum*w*hat in þe wou*n*de, & myȝte noȝt lyȝtlye be remeffyde awey, and he *pri*kyde nouȝt ne *com*pressyde nouȝt duram matrem, þenne at þe bygy*n*minge y do on
32 þe bon hot oyle of rosys, and y fulfylle þe wou*n*de *with* oyle of roses & þe ȝolke of an eyȝe y-medled togedire, tyl þat þe bon be y-nesschyde, and mowe lyȝtlyche be remywede aweye; þenne y remeffe þe bon, & y *procede* in worchynge bytwene þe bon &
36 dura*m* matre*m*, as it is seyde tofore. & ȝif þat þe breche of þe breyn panne *were as a cerfes, oþ*er*e* ellys y-sclend, & neiþ*er*e party [* fol. 78 *a*] of þe bon were lowere þenne oþ*er*e, þen y consydere ȝif, þilke slendynge *parten* alle þe breyn panne, & þat þou schalt y-knowe by
40 þe toknys tofore seyde, oþ*er*e ellys þou schalt y knowe by þis signe þat neue*re* faileþ: make a plastre of þe poudre of mastyk & þe

Add. MS. 12,056.

mastik & þe white of an ey, medlid togidere as þikke[1] as hony, &
How to discern by means of a Plaster, whether the fissure pierces the skull or not.
distende[2] it vpon a cloop, & leie it on þe place þat is hurt fro
morowe til euen, or ellis from þe euene til þe morowe / & whanne
þat þe plastre is remoued awey, if þat þe creueis peerse þoruȝ þe 4
brayn panne, þou schalt se þe plastre more drie aȝens þe creueis þan
in ony oþer place, for þe greet heete þat comeþ fro þe brayn [& ȝif þe
breyn panne]* be nouȝt I-slend þoruȝ, þe plastre schal be nomore
drie aboue þe creueis þan on anoþer place / & if þe creueis perse 8
not þe brayn scolle, þe cure is as it is seid in þe bigynnynge of þis
When the skull is pierced,
chapitle, þere as I tolde of cure of wounde of þe heed, where þat þe
brayn panne eiþer þe brain is not hurt. For if þat ilke remile peerse
some physicians use trepanning.
þe brayn panne, þer is a greet doute in þe caas, for summen seien þat 12
it is impossible sich a wounde to heele; but if þe remele be tre-
paned, & a quantite of þe boon be doon awey, þat þe superfluyte þat
is cast vpon duram matrem may be doon awey, or ellis þe dura mater
schulde putrifien & be corrupt, & bi þat skil[3] þe pacient schulde 16
[4 lf. 71] die, þe which þat myȝte [4]be heelid bi þe remeuynge of þe boon /
*Nota.* Neþeles I þat haue seen in trepaninge greet perel, namely whanne

[1] MS. *þilke.* [2] *distende*, Lat. distendo.

[3] *bi þat skil*, Lat. quare. Skil = causa, synon. with 'resoun' occurs frequently in *Polychron.* See Gloss. The same construction in: '& by þe same skile' ea ratione, *ibid.*, iii. 465.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

whyte of an eyȝe, y-medlyde togedyre as þykke as hony, & distende
it on a cloþ, & leye it on þe place þat ys hurt from morwe tyl euene, 20
opere ellys from euene tyl þe morwe. And whenne þat þe plastre
ys remefyd awey, ȝif þat þe crefeys persith̄ þorwe þe breyn panne,
þou schalt se þe plastre more drye anonde[5] þe crefeys þen in enye
oþer place, for þe gret hete þat comyth̄ from þe brayn;* & ȝif þe 24
breyn panne* be noȝt y-sclend þorwe, þe plastre schal be namore
rye abouen þe creffeys þenne on an opere place. And ȝif þe crefeysd
perse nouȝt þe brayn scolle, þe cure is as yt is seyde in þe by-
gynnynge of þis chapyteH, þere as y tolde of þe cure of wounde of 28
hed, where þat þe breyn panne opere þe brayn ys noȝt y-hurt. Ffor
ȝif þat þilke ryemele persyth̄ þe breyn panne, þere ys a gret doute
in þe cas, ffor some seyne þat yt ys vnpossible swyche a wounde to
ben y-helyde, but ȝif þe rymele be y-trepanyd & þat a quantyte 32
of þe bon be y-don awey, þat þe superfluyte þat ys y-caste vpon
duram matrem mowe be done awey, ellys þe dura mater scholde
putrefien & be corupt, & by þat skylle þe pacient scholde deye,
whiche þat myȝte be helyde by remywynge of þe bon. Naþeles y 36
þat haue y-seye in trepanynge grete peryle, namlyche whanne þat

[5] Over an erasure.

þat þe creucis is bisidis þe semys, where þat þe trepaninge is
deedlich / & I haue seen manye þat wiþoute trepanyng almyȝty
god haþ delyuerid bi myn hondis, wiþoute touchinge of ony brayn
scolle wiþ ony trepan or wiþ iren; but I helde in to þe creucis hoot oile of rosis colat, & mel roset colat, medlid togidere aftir þe doctrine tofore seid, fulfillynge al þe wounde with sich maner cloþis; & aftirward leie aboue þe ȝelke of an ey & oile of rosis medlid togidere, & aboute a defensif of bole armoniak tofore seid, til þat þe quytture be engendrid. & aftirward I contynue mel roset & oile of rosis in þe wounde, & aboue a mundificatif of mel roset & barly mele til þat þe ligament be fully engendrid on þe brayn panne, & þat þou schalt knowe whanne þat þou seest þe boonys ben[1] ioyned togidere, as it were two bordis weren ioyned togidere with cole[2] or with glu; & þanne I fulfille þe wounde wiþ drie predis of clene lynnen cloþ, & aboue [3]a mundificatif, til þat þe boon be keuerid. þanne I strowe on aboue þe capitale poudre tofore seid, & I leie on þe schauynge or ellis þe rasure[4] of lynnen cloþ, & aboue al þis I leie on a treet of whiȝt rosyn; & I do alle þese þingis þat I haue seid tofore til þat þe wounde be consowdid /

de vertute Olium Rosarum.
I use oil of roses,
a defensif
and a mundificatif medicine,
[3 lf. 71, bk.]
and a plaster of terpentine.

[1] *ben*, above line.
[2] *cole*, Lat.: sicut si essent duo ligna cum glutino in simul *incolata*.
[4] *rasure*, Lat. rasura.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

þe crefeys ys bysyde þe semys, where þat trepanynge ys dedlyche, and y haue seye manye þat wiþouten trepanynge almyȝtie god haþ delyuerede be myn handys, without touchynge enye brayn scolle with trepane oþere with eyren; but y helde into þe crefeys hote oyle of roses, and y legge aboue cloþes y-wett in mel rosat colat, & oyle rosat colat y-medlyde togedyre aftere þe doctryne tofore seyd, fulfyllinge aH þe [5]wounde wiþ swyche manere clothys, & afterwarde y legge aboue þe ȝolke of an eyȝe & oyle of roses y-medlyde togedres, and aboue þe wounde a defensiff of bol armonyac tofore seyd, tyl þat þe quyter be engendryd. & afterwarde y contynwe mel roses & oyle rosarum in þe wounde, & aboffe a mundificatyf of mel rosarum & barly mele, tyl þat þe ligament be fulliche engendrede on þe breyn panne, & þat þou schalt y-knowe whenne þat þou seste þe bonys Ioynyde togedre, as yt were tweye bordys Ioynede to gedre wiþ colle oþere wiþ glewȝ; & þenne y fulfylle þe wounde with drye predys of lynnen cloþ, and abouen a mundificatyf tyl þat þe bon be keffride aboue. & þenne y strawe on aboue þe capytale poudre tofore seyde, & y legge on þe schaffynge oþere ellys þe rasure of lynnen cloþ, and abouen al þis y legge on a Tret of resyne; & y do alle þynges þat y haue seyde tofore tyl þe wounde be con-

[5] fol. 78 *b*]

& if' ȝe make an obiecciou*n* how þat' it' myȝte, wiþoute arerynge of' þe boon, þe blood & þe quytture be dried, þe which þat' fil dou*n* bi þilke slendynge vpon dura*m* matre*m* / I answere: riȝt' as þe mat*er* of' þe frenesie & þe mater of þe litarge[1] þat' is more doutes, bi emplastris wiþoutforþ I-leie is dissolued, & þ*er* is no slendynge of' þe brayn panne, ne no wou*n*de in þe skyn, myche more liȝtloker & more bettere þe blood, þat' is liȝt' & able to be resolued, þe which þat' wente dou*n* bi þe forseid slendiug', may bi þe forseid slendynge þe bett*er*e be exaled. Ne þilke blood is not' viscat'[2] in þe substau*n*ce of' dure matris, as þe mat*er* is *in* empostymes, wherfore he is more obeisschau*n*t'* — — to þe attracciou*n* of' medicyns /

Nota.

This remedy dissolves the blood and pus,

which exhales through the fissure.

& if' þe brayn panne be hurt' wiþoute wou*n*de [3]of' þe skyn, þe which þou shalt' knowe bi þe tokenes tofore seid / þ*a*nne su*m*men kutte aboue þe hurtynge in þe maner of a crose, & þei areren þe .iiij. quarters, & þei kutten & fleen þe pannicle þat' keueriþ þe boonis. & aftirward þei vsen trapanes & her o*per*e comou*n* curis, as it' is schewid tofore / But' I kutte not' þe skyn in þe maner of' a crose, but' in þe maner of' a scheeld or ellis of' a þi*n*g' þat' is triangle in þis mane*r* ◁, & I make but' oon quarter, & I vnwrie þe boon þat' þe oile of' þe rosis may peerse yn, & þat' þe ve*r*tu of' þe medicyn,

[3 lf. 72]

Treatment of a wound of the skull when the skin is not broken.

Some physicians use trepanning.

I apply oil of roses.

[1] *litarge*, Lat. lethargus. Lethargy, stupor.

[2] *viscat*, Lat. inviscatus, inclosed. See below, *inviscat*.

---

souded. And ȝif me maken an obiectiou*n* how þ*a*t yt myȝte wi*th*outen*n* arerynge of þe bon, þe blod & þe quyt*er* be dreyede whiche þ*a*t fel dou*n* by þilke sclendynge vpon þe duram matre*m*, I answere: ryȝte as þe matere of þe frenesie & þe matere of þe litargie þ*a*t is more doutes, by emplastres wi*th*outen forth leyd is desolfed, and þ*er*e nys none sclyudynge of þe breyn p*a*nne ne no wou*n*de in þe skyn, myche more lyȝtlokere & more bettere þe blod þ*a*t is lyȝt & able to be*n* reselfyde, whiche þ*a*t wende done be þe forseyde sclendynge, may be þe forseyde sclendynge bete*r* ben exaled. Ne þilke blod ys noȝt inviscat in þe substau*n*ce of dure matris as þe matere ys in apostemys, wherfore he ys more obeyssau*n*t to* þe expulciou*n* of kynde, & also ys more obeyssau*n*t to the attractiou*n* of medycine. And ȝif þe brayn p*a*nne be hurte wi*th*out wou*n*de of þe skyn, þe whiche þ*o*u schalt y-knowe*n* by þe toknys tofore seyde, þ*a*nne sum me*n* kutten aboue þe hurtyng in þe manere of a cros, & þey areryn þe foure quarters, & þey kytten & flen þe p*a*nnycle þ*a*t keferith þe bonys, & afterwardes þey vsen trepanys & here o*per*e comyn cures, as [4]yt ys schewyde tofore. But y kytte noȝt þe skyn in manere of a cros, but in þe manere of a Schelde o*per*e ellys of a thynge þ*a*t ys tryangle in þis manere ◁, & y make but on quartere & y vnwreye þe bon, þ*a*t þe oyle of roses may persen yn,

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 79 *a*]

þat is maad of hony of rosis & oile of rosis, may drawe fro bynebe þe brayn-panne / & I do in þis caas al þing as it is declarid next aboue. & if ȝe make obiecciouⁿ aȝens me bi costantyne[1] or ellis bi **Constantyn objects,**
oþere, þat seien þat bi al oure myȝt we eschewen þat neiþer oile ne noon oyntuose þing fallib not wiþinne þe brayn-panne / I answere wiþ auicen, þat seiþ: þat he worchiþ riȝtfulliche þat vsiþ **but Auicen,**
teped[2] oilis, & þe same tellen galion & serapion; & also I seie þat **Galion, Serapion,**
oile of rosis, þe which þat schal [3]be maad of grapis of olyue trees **and I use**
þat ben not ripe, is not oyntuose, but it is drie, & is clepid oile **[3 lf. 72, bk.]**
enfancinum;[4] & namely whanne þat rosis ben medlid wiþ þilke **Oleum enfancinum**
oile, þilke oile haþ gete to him a swete smellynge & a drie þing of **as a strengthening**
comfortynge[5] animal spiritis; & also þat oile haþ a vertu expressif, **remedy.**
as galion telliþ in þe book of symple medicyns, bi þe whiche þe **Galion.**
brayn is comfortid & akþis ben swagid / & if þer be maad ony greet blood, it is maad sutil with þat oile; & whanne alle þese þingis ben congaderid & leid aboue duram matrem, it is clensid /

¶ Sumtyme þe brayn is meued of sum greet hurt eiþer of sum **Concussion of the brain not complicated**
fallynge or of sum smytynge wiþoute ony wounde or wiþoute ony

[1] Constantinus Africanus, c.c. 1070. [2] *teped*, Lat. tepidus.
[4] *enfancinum*, for *omfacinum ὀμφάκινον ἔλαιον*, oil made from unripe olives (*Diosc.* I. 29). Vigo *Interpr.*: "Omphax in Greke is an vnripe grape. Vigo calleth oyle of omphacyne, that oyle that is made of vnrype Olyves." Compare *Tomm. Dict.* s. v. onfacino. [5] See below.

---

and þat þe vertue of þe medycine, þat ys y-mad of honye of **Add. MS. 12,056.**
roses & oyle of roses, may drawe fro bynebe þe brayn-panne; and y do in þis cas al þynge, as yt declarith nexte aboffe. And ȝif men make obiectioun aȝeyns me by constantine oþere ellys by hym, þat seyth þat by alle oure myght we enchewyn þat nebere oyle ne non vnconuys[6] þynge falle noȝt withynne þe brayn-panne, I answere with Avecene, þat seyth: þat he wirchep ryȝtfulliche þat vsith certeyne oyles, & þe same telliþ galien & serapion, and also y seye þat oyle of roses, whiche þat be mad of grapes of Olyue tres þat beþ noȝt ripe, is noȝt vnctuose, but is dreyȝe; & it is clepyde oyle Omfacinum, & namlye whanne þat roses ben y-medlyde with þat oyle, þilke oyle hath y-gete to hym a swete smellynge & a dreyȝinge, cumfortynge animal spirites; and also þilke oyle hath a vertue expressif, as galien tellyth in the bok of symple medycines, by þe whyche þe brayn ys conffortyde & akþes ben aswagede, & ȝif þere be mad enye gret blod, yt is y-made Sotyh; & whenne alle þese þynges ben y-gadryde togedyre & leyde abouen, dura mater ys clansed. Sumtyme þe brayn ys meffyde of sum gret hurt oþere of sum fallynge, oþere of sum smytynge withouten eny wounde ore enye

[6] Corrupt, probably for *vnctouys*.

by a wound or fracture.

breche of ony boon, þanne do þou as I dide to a chanoun of þe ordre of seynt austyn. Whanne þat he wolde haue lept vpon an hiȝ hors & haue seten in þe satel, þe hors areride vpon hise two hyndere feet, & þilke chanoun fel doun bacward vpon þe erþe vpon his heed; & al his bodi was brusid & namely aboute þe heed, þat anoon he loste þe meuynge and þe felynge of al his body / þanne a lewid leche [1]þat was frend to þilke chanoun was clepid, & he cowde not helpen him, for he hadde neuere seen þe same caas, ne he cowde not no lettrure[2] / & at þe laste I was clepid, & I foond him neiþer heerynge, ne spekynge, ne no þing meuynge, & I deemede him for deed / & neþeless[3] I seide, & he were my broþer, I nolde not for an .C. mark, but I asaiede in him goodnes of þe helpinge of medicyns / for ofte tyme kynde wiþ good werkis helpiþ priuyliche þat semeþ vnpossible to a leche. & þei þanne preieden me with greet instaunce / & I made þe heeris of his heed to be schauen & þanne I anoyntide al þe heed wiþ. iij. parties of oile of rosis, & oon partie of vynegre hoot medlid togidere, & I castide aboue poudre of mirtillis, & leide aboue a sotil lynnen cloþ þinne, wett in þe same

*Nota*

A certain Canon fell from his horse, and was left senseless.

[1 lf. 73]

I thought him dying,

*Nota*

but entreated by his friends

I anointed his head

and laid on compresses,

[2] Lat.: nec sciebat aliquid de scripturis. O.Fr. lettreure. See *Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat. Gloss.

[3] Lat.: meo tamen addens judicio quod pro centum marchis argenti non dimitterem, quin adhuc probarem in eo, si meus esset frater, juvamenta medicinæ inducens.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

breche of eny bon, þan do þou as dyde y to a Chanoun of þe ordre of seint Anstyn. Whanne þat he wolde haue lopyn vpon an hye hors and haue seten in þe sadyħ, þe hors areryde vpon hys two [3]hyndere fete, & þilke chanoun fel doun bakwarde vpon þe erthe on hys hed; & alle hys bodye was y-brusyde, and namlye aboute þe hed þat anon he lost þe ffelynge & þe meffynge of alle his bodye. þanne a lewyde leche þat was frende to þilke Chanoun was y-clepyde, & he couþe helpe hym noȝt, for he had neuere seyne þe same cas, ne he ne couþe noȝt on lettre. And at þe laste y was clepte, & y fonde hym noȝt herynge ne spekynge ne nothynge meuynge, I demyde hym for ded, and naþeles sayyde, ȝif þat he were my broþere y nolde nouȝt for an hundrede mark, but y sayede in hym þe godnesse & þe helpynge of medycines; ffor ofte tymes kynde with gode werkys helpiħ preueliche þat semyħ vnpossible to a leche. And þenne þey preyede me with gret Instaunce, and y made the herys of hys hed to be schaffen and þenne y anoynt aħ þe hed with þre partye of oyle of roses, & on partye of vynegre hot y-medlyde togedyre, & y caste abouen þe poudre of mirtylles, and y leyde abouen a sotyħ þenne cloth y-wet in þe same oyle & vynegre,

[3 fol. 79 *b*]

oile & vynegre, & aboue þat' tow3 smal tosid, & I boond al þe heed a bandage,
wiþ a boond, & aboue I leide a lambis skyn. & so I chaungide it' and a lamb's skin.
þries ech day *in* anoyntynge þe nolle & þe necke into þe myddil[1]
of' þe rigge-boon bihynde wiþ hoot' oile of' camomille / In þe
ij. day he openede a litil hise yzen, & he bigan to loke aboute On the 2nd day he opened
[2]him as it' hadde be a deef' man þat' were *in* a wondring' / & þanne his eyes.
sum*m*e wolden haue asaied if' þat' he myzte haue ete / & I wolde [2 lf. 73, bk.]
not suffre hi*m* to ete / & I seide þou3 þat' he wolde ete þat' he
schulde not' / In þe iij. day I spak to hi*m* / he answeride me babe- On the 3rd he babbled.
lynge as a child þat' bigynneþ to speke, but' he myzte forþ wiþ no
word[3] / In þe iiij. dai he spak boistousliche[4] / & þanne I 3af hi*m* to On the 4th he spoke
drynke hoot' ypocras[5] þat' is maad of' sugre & of' watir / In þe v. boisterously.
day he took þikke tizanne[6] / In þe vj. dai I 3af' hi*m* broþ of' a From the 6th day I gave
chiken; and þanne he bigan to strenkþe litil & litil, & litil & litil him strengthening food,
to meuen / & neuer-þe-lattere he myzte not' walke not' manye daies
aftir. & whanne þat' he myzte take sufficiently mete, I comaundide

[1] *of þe myddil*, inserted.

[3] See below, note 8.

[4] *boistisliche*. Lat.: balbutiendo, stammering, seems to connect the sense of O.Fr. boistous, lame, with boisterous.

[5] *ypocras*, errour for *ydrosacre*. See below. "*Hydrosaccharum*, a Syrup made of Water and Sugar." Phillips. *Hippocras*, a kind of "Artificial Wine, made of Claret or White Wine, and several sorts of Spice." *Ibid.*

[6] Lat. ptisana*m* spissam. Matth. Sylv.: "Tisanna i. aqua ordei uel fariola."

---

& aboue þat tow3 smale y-tosyde, & y bonde alle þe hed wit*h* a band, Add. MS
& abouen y leyde a lambys skyn, & so y chaungede yt twyes euerye 12,056.
day; in anoyntynge þe nolle & þe nekke into þe myddeH of þe
rygge-bon byhynde wiþ hote oyle of Camamylle. In þe secunde
day he opnyde a lyte his eyzen, & he bygan to loken aboute hym
as it hadde be a deff' man, o*þ*ere ellys a man þat were in a
wondrynge; and þenne some wolden haue assayede 3if þat he wolde
eten, & y wolde nou3t [7]Suffren hym to eten, & y seyde þow3 þat he [7 fol. 80 *a*]
wolde eten he scholde no3t'. In þe þridde day y spak' to hym, &
he answerde me bablynge as a childe þat begynneþ to speke, but he
myzte formen non worde.[8] In þe fourþe day he spak' bostynglyche,
and þenne y gaf hym to drynke hot ydrosacre, þat ys y-mad of Sugre
& of watyre. In þe ffyfte day he toke þikke[9] tysan. In þe sixe day
y gaf hym þe broth off' a chykne, & þenne he gan to strengþe litel
& lytel & lytel, & lytel to meffen, & neuere þe latere he myzte no3t
walkyn by manye dayes. And whanne þat he myzte take Suffi-
sauntlye mete, y comaundyde hym to take Pylulas Cochias, for to

[8] Lat.: verbum non potuit formare.

[9] MS. þilke.

purgative pills, him to take pilulas chochias[1] for to resolue bi euaciacioun þe matere þat I-gaderide togidere in þe heed bi þilke fallinge / & I comaundide

and brain of fowl and kid. him to ete ofte þe braynes of briddis heedis, & of hennys & of smale briddis & kedis / & in þis maner he was hool; neþeles he was neuere so sotil of witt as he was tofore /

Evil symptoms [3 lf. 74] are: cramp, immobility except of the muscles of the chest. In þis ben yuel signes as þe face to be to[2] crokid, & þe yȝen to loke asquynt eiþer crokidliche, apoplexie, crampe, to schite wiþoute felynge, & vnmouablete of alle þe membris outcept þe lacertis of þe brest þat moun be saaf[4] / He þat rediþ þis book may chese aftir his owne wil oon of iij. weies þe whiche þat ben now vsid / þe toon is þe wey þe whiche þat is seid in þe bigynnynge of þis chapitle, þe which wey manye vsen, & a leche of Ianewe[5] þat is clepid anselme vsiþ þis wey, & þerbi he gate myche money / neþeles I wiste weel þat manye men dieden in hise handis bi þis wey / þe secunde maner is in almaner hurtynge of þe heed to vsen terabracioun[6] eiþer remeuynge of þe boon wiþ handliche instrumentis / þe iij. is my wey þe

Three ways of treatment: .1. the way used by Anselme. .2. trepanning. .3. my own way,

[1] *Cochia.* An ancient name for several officinal purgative pills. Dunglison, *Medic. Lex.* κόκκος, a pill. Alex. Trall. Compare Fr. cochée.

[2] *be to*, added in margin.

[4] Lat.: præterquam lacertorum pectoris qui sallire videntur. The translator evidently read *salvere* instead of *sallire*.

[5] Anselmus de Ianua. A. de Porte, quoted by Guy de Chauliac as Anserinus de Ianua, XIII. cent. Ianua is Genoa, see Eloys Dictionn. historique.

[6] "*Terebration*, a boring or piercing; a Term more especially used in Surgery." Phillips. "*Terebra*, an Awger or Wimble, a Piercer; also an Instrument to engrave on Stones; also a Surgeon's Trepan or Trepandiron." *Ibid.*

---

Add. MS. 12,056. resolfe by evacuacioun þe matere þat was y-gadrede togedire in þe hed by þilke fallynge. And y comaundyde hym to eten ofte þe braynes of briddys hedys, as of hennys & of smale bryddes, & also of kyddes; and in þis manere he was hol; naþeles he was neuyre so sotyl of wyt as he was tofore. In þis cas buþ yuele signes: as þe face to be crokyde, & þat on eyȝe to loken asquynt oþer crokydlyche, apoplexie, crampe, to schyte wiþout felynge, & vnmevablete of alle þe membris outsepte þe lacertes of þe brest þat mowe be saff. He þat redith þis bok may chesen after hys owne wyl, one of þre weyes whiche þat beþ now y-vsyde, þat on ys þe wey whiche þat ys seydé in þe bygynninge of þis chapiteH, þe whiche weye many vsen, and a leche o Ianewe þat is y-clepyde Anselme vsith þis weye, & þereby he gat myche moneye, naþeles y wyste wel þat manye men dyȝeden in his handys by þis wey. þe

[7 fol. 80 *b*] [7]secunde weye is in alle manere hurtynges of hed to vsen terebracioun, oþere ellys remeffynge of þe bon with handlyche Instrumentes; þe þridde ys my weye whiche þat y haue tolde opynlye in

which þat I haue told openliche *in* almaner caas / & I bileue, if þat he take hede to alle þese weyes & þat he wole wisely discussen alle þe opynyons of auctouris, þat he schal seen fewere die bi my .iij. wey þan bi ony of þe o*þe*re .ij. weyes // Almyȝti god lede þe redere of þis werk *in* þe best wey, þoruȝ whos myȝtis, wordis takis sentencis & also vndirstond*in*ge. where fewer people die.

Þouȝ þat we han bihoten to tretyn of anotamie of membris þat ben compound, in þe bigyn*n*ynge of eueri chapitle of þis secu*n*de tretis, nebeles we leeuen[2] it for þe bettere for to treten of anotamie of þe visage, to þe þridde tretise, where we schulden treten of sijknes þat comen to þese me*m*bris, þe whiche syknessis ben non[3] woundis // // // [1 lf. 74, bk.] The anatomy of the face is given in the 3rd treatise.

## The secunde chapitle of wou*n*dis of þe face & anotamie of þe same. ¶ Cap. ij.

Wou*n*dis þat ben maad *in* þe face, or þei be maad wiþ a swerd or wiþ sum dinge[4] ellis þat wou*n*diþ, or þei ben maad wiþ *pr*icknyge of a knyf, arowe, eiþ*er* spere. It is necessarie þat a surgian haue more diligence in þe wou*n*dis of þe face, for it is a place þat is myche seen, & it is wel to do make[5] a sotil[6] cicatrice / A wounde Wounds of the face must be treated carefully.

[2] Lat. relinquimus tamen propter melius.
[3] MS. *now.* [4] *dinge*, in margin.
[5] Compare: *þis instrument may ȝe do make wiþoute grete cost.* Quinte Essence, p. 62. [6] *a sotil*, in margin.

alle mane*re* of cas; and y beleue ȝif þ*a*t he wyl take hede to alle þese weyes, & þ*a*t he wyll wyslye dyscussen þe opynio*n*s of Auctores, þ*a*t he schal se fewere dyȝe be my þridde weye þe*n*ne by enye o*þe*re. Almyȝtie god lede þe re*d*ere of þis werk in þe beste wey, þorwe whose myȝte, wordes takyth̄ sentence & echyn vnd*er*stondynge. Þowȝ þ*a*t we han behoten to treten of Anotamye of me*m*bres þat ben co*m*poned, in þe bygy*n*ninge of eu*er*y chapyteH of this secu*n*de tretys, naþeles we leuen yt for þe bettire for to treten of þe Anotamye of þe vysage, to þe þridde tretys, where we schulle tretyn of seknesse þ*a*t comyth̄ to þis me*m*bres, whyche seknesse beþ no*n* wou*n*des. Add. MS. 12,056.

## ¶ Cap. off woundes of þe face & Anotamye of þe same.

Wou*n*des þ*a*t ben made in þe face, o*þe*re þey beþ mad with a swerde, ore wiþ su*m* thynge ellys þ*a*t wou*n*deþ, o*þe*re þey be*n* mad wiþ *pr*ikynge of a knyf', arwe, o*þe*re spere. Yt is necessarye, þ*a*t a surgyne haue mor*e* diligence in þe wou*n*des of þe face, for it is a place þ*a*t is myche y-seyne, & yt ys wel y-do to make a sotyH cicatryce. A wou*n*de þ*a*t ys mad wit*h* a swerde o*þe*re wit*h* su*m* þynge

þat is maad wiþ a swerd or wiþ sumþing semblable þat is alwei in lenkþe, a man muste sotilliche sowen & gaderen þe parties of þe
There is a lie about replacing a nose cut off. wounde togidere / & for þat manye men liȝen of þe wounde of þe nose, þei seien þat oon bar his nose kutt of in his hond, þe which nose was afterward sett aȝen in his owne kynde ; þe which is an open
[1 lf. 75][2] lesynge / For þe spirit of lijf of felynge & [1]meuynge passiþ, whanne
Wounds of the nose: a longitudinal cut, a membre is departid from þe bodi / I wole bigynne at a wounde of þe nose þat is kutt in lenkþe, þe which cure is liȝt to hele / Brynge þe parties togidere of þe wounde & sowe hem, & worche aboute þe wounde
a transverse cut, the nose still hanging. as I haue seid tofore in þe chapitle of woundis / & if þat þe nose were kutt ouerþwert doun to þe ouer lippe, & neþeles þat þe ouer lippe & þe nose were kutt al awey, but þat it held faste at boþe þe eendis
Adjust the nose, retain it in position by splints of wax, of þe eendis of þe wounde, þanne sette aȝen þe nose in his propre place, þe noseþrillis ech aȝen oþir as þei weren toforn, & make two smale tentis of wex & putte on eiþir noseþrille aboue þe wounde, if þat þou
sew it, maist, & þanne make a poynt bi þe space of a litil fyngre from þe oon eende of þe wounde, & anoþer poynt at þe oþere eende of þe wounde, & anoþir poynt in þe myddil of þe nose aȝen þe forheed ; and aftirward a poynt on eiþer side of þe nose, aftirward make [a poynt]* bitwene eueri poynt, so þat þou haue in noumbre of alle þe poyntis

[2] Heading to this page: *Off wondes off the ffase & Anotumy off þe same ffrom the face to the ffote.*

---

Add. MS. 12,056. semblable þat is alweye in lengthe, a man moste sotylliche sowyn & gedre þe parties of þe wounde. And for þat many men lyȝen [3] of
[3 fol. 81 *a*] þe wounde of þe nese, þey seyȝen þat ou bare hys nose y-kytte of in hys hande, þe whiche nose was afterwarde y-sette aȝeyne in hys owne kynde ; þe whiche ys an opyn lesynge, for þe spiryt of lyf of felynge & of meffynge passith̄ aweye, whanne a membre is departyde from þe body. I wylle begynne at þe wounde at þe nese þat is y-kutte in lengthe, wose cure ys lyȝt to hele ; brynge þe parties togedre of þe wounde & sowe hem, & wirche aboute the wounde as y haue seyde tofore in þe chapitle of wondes. And ȝif þat þe nese were y-kutte twarte offere doun to þe ouere lippe, & naþeles þat þe ouyre lippe & þe nose were noȝt kutte al awey, but þat it helde faste at boþe þe endys of þe wounde, þanne sette aȝeyne þe nose in his propre place, þe noseþrellys yche aȝeyns oþere as þey were tofore, & make two smale tentys of wex, & putte in boþe þe noseþrellys aboue þe wounde, ȝif þat þou maist, & þenne make a poynt by þe space of a litel fyngere from þat on ende of þe wounde, & an oþere poynt at þe oþere ende of þe wounde, and an oþere poynt in þe myddel of þe nose anentys þe forhede ; & afterwarde a poynt on eiþere syde of þe nose, afterwarde make a poynt* betwene evyry poynt, so þat þou haue in noumbre of alle þe poyntes,

whanne þei ben ful maad, .ix. Caste þe poudre þat' is tofore seid vpon þe wounde, þat' is maad of' [1]lime, frank encense, & sandragoun / & take þe white of' an ey & oile of' rosis, & bete hem togidere, & wete þerinne a lynnen cloop & leie aboue þe wounde / Aftirward bynde* þerto þre plumaciols, oon vndirneþe, anoþer on þe oon side, anoþir on þe toþir side / & þanne bynde þe nose wiþ two bandis / þe toon schal holde vp þe nose þat' he may not discende dounward / þe toþir schal be leid aboue þat' he mowe kepe þe plumaciols, poudre, & þe sowynge / & þilke boond þat' is vnder þe nose þat' halt' þe nose vpward, schal be knytt'[2] aboue vpon þe heed, & aftirward he schal be turned ouertwert' ouer þe forheed, þat' he mowe holde þe boond, þat' þe nose decline to neiþir[3] side. & þe boond þat' is leid aboue þe nose, schal be bounden bihynde in þe nolle / & aftirward he schal turne aȝen aboue þe nose, holdynge þe plumaciols þat' þei moun not' wagge to neiþir side aboute þe sowynge; & aboute þe forheed, þou schalt' leie þe defensif' of' bole, & aftirward þou schalt' worche on þe wounde of' þe nose, as I haue seid in a wounde of' fleisch in þe fourþe[4] tretis / þe woundis þat' ben maad in oþere parties of þe face [5]as wiþ a swerd or ony þing' semblable, brynge hem togidere & sowe hem & cure hem, as it' is conteyned in general chapitlis of' woundis, takynge

throw a powder on the wound, [1 lf. 75, bk.]

apply three pledgets, and two bandages,

one holds the nose in position,

the other the pledgets.

[5 lf. 76]

Wounds on other places must be carefully stitched,

[2] MS. *kutt.* [3] MS. *þe neþir.* [4] *fourþe* for *firste.*

---

whenne þey ben ful mad, .IX. Caste þe poudre þat is tofore seyde vpon þe wounde, þat is y-mad of lym, ffrank ensence, sandragoun, & take whyte of an ey & oyle of roses and bete hem togedire, & leye þereynne a lynne clop & leye abouen þe wounde, aftirwarde [bynde]* þereto þre plumaciolus, one [6]vndireneþe, & on on þat o syde, an oþere on þe oþere syde; & þanne bynde þe nose wiþ tweye bandys, þat on schall holden vp þe nose þat he may nouȝt discendyn dunward, þat oþere schal be leyde aboffe þat he mowe kepyn þe plumacyolus, poudere, & þe sowynge. And þilke bande þat ys vnder þe nose þat halt þe nose vpwarde, schal be knett abouen on þe hed, and aftirwarde he schal be turnyde twarte offere þe forehed, þat he mowe holde þe bande, & þe nose declyne to neiþere syde. And þe bande þat ys leyde aboffe þe nose, schal be bounden behynden in þe nolle; and afterwarde he schal turnen aȝeyne aboffe þe nose, holdynge þe plumacyoles þat þey mowe nozt wagge on neythere syde aboute þe sewynge; & aboute þe forhed þou schalt legge þe deffensif' of bol, and aftirwarde þou schalt worche on þe wounde of þe nose as y haue seyde in a wounde of flesch in þe firste tretys, þe woundes þat beþ y-mad in oþere partye of þe face as with a swerd ore oþire þynge semblable, brynge hem togedire, sowe hem, & cure hem, as yt ys conteyned in generall chapitle of woundys, takynge

Add. MS. 12,056.

[6 fol. 81 *b*]

hede herto þat' þe sowynge þat' is maad *in* þe face schal be more
Nota bene sotil & fairer þan *in* ony o*þ*ere partie of' þe body / & þou maist'
make a sowynge *in* þe face, if' þat' þe wounde be not' to myche, on
þis maner / Take mastik, sandragoun & poudre hem & tempre hem
togidere wiþ þe white of' an ey to þe þickenesse of' hony, & wete
or brought together by an adhesive plaster. þer*in*ne two pecis of' ly*n*nen cloþ as longe as þe wounde / & leie þe
toon on þe oon side of' þe wounde, & þe o*þ*er on þe toþir side & lete
hem drien / & aftirward make þe wounde sum*m*what' to blede, &
þanne brynge þe parties of' þe wounde togidere; & sowe þilke .ij.
pecis togidere, & caste aboue poudre of' lyme, frankencense, san-
dragoun tofore seid, & wete a cloþ in þe white of' an ey & oile of'
rosis, & leie aboue al togidere, & kepe þe partiee wiþ ligature &
*pro*sede forþ *in* alle þingis as I haue tofore seid /

A wound made with a dart or an arrow. & if' þat' þe wounde be maad wiþ a dart' or wiþ an arewe & þe
arowe be drawe out' & þe wounde be myche sene, þanne þe cure is
[1 lf. 76, bk.] 1 þe same þat' was seid *in* þe same chapitle or elles in þe firste tretis,
If the arrow head is hidden, whe*þ*er þat' þer be a senewe prickid eiþir noon. But' if' þe arowe
heed were entriged in ony priuy place of' þe face, so þat' it' myȝte
not' be seen, þanne euery man bisie him to knowe bi his witt' how
try to find it, þat' þe sike man stood, wh*a*nne þat' he was smyte, & whens þat' þe
arowe cam, & to what' partie þe wounde strecchiþ, þat' he mowe loke

---

Add. MS. 12,056. hede hereto, þat þe sowynge þat ys y mad in þe face, schal be more sotyl & fairere, þanne in enye o*þ*ere party of þe body. And þou maiste maken a sowyng in þe face, ȝif þ*at* þe wou*n*de be nouȝt to myche, on þis manere. R mastyk' & sangdragoun & poudre hem & tempre hem togedire w*i*þ þe whyte of an eyȝe to þe þyknesse of hony, & wete þereynne tweye pecys of ly*n*nen cloþ as longe as þe
[2 fol. 82 *a*] wou*n*de, & leye one on þat o syde of þe 2 wou*n*de, & þe o*þ*ere on þat o*þ*ere & lete hem dreyȝen, and afterwarde make þe wou*n*de sum what to blede, & þenne brynge þe partyes of þe wou*n*de togedires; & sowe þilke two pecys togedres, & caste aboue þe poudre of lym, ffranc ensence, sandragoun tofore seyd, & wete a cloþ in þe whyte of an eyȝe & oyle of roses, & leye aboue al togedyre, and kepe þe partyes w*i*th ligature, & *pro*cede forþ in alle þynges as y haue tofore seyd. And ȝif þat þe wounde be y-mad with a dart o*þ*ere w*i*th an arwe, & þe arwe ben y-drawe out and þe wou*n*de be myche y-sene, þenne þe cure ys þe same þat was seyde in þe same chapyteH o*þ*ere ellys in þe firste tretys, whe*þ*ere þat þere be a synwe pr*i*kyde o*þ*ere none. But ȝif þat þe arwe-hed were entrygede in enye pr*i*vy place of þe face, so þat yt myȝte nouȝt ben seyȝen, þenne euerye man bysie hym be his wyt, to knowe how þe seke man stod, wh*a*nne he was y-smete, & whennys þat þe arwe come, & to what p*a*rty þe wou*n*de strecchitH, þat he mowe loke ȝif þat he mowe fynden enye manere

if þat he mowe fynde ony maner wey how he may drawe out þilke arowe-heed; & þanne drawe him out þe best maner wey þat he may / & if he may not, heelde he in þe wounde oile of rosis & þe 3elke of an ey togidere medlid; & wiþ þis medicyn worche in þe wounde, til þat kynde schewe sum maner wey / Manye men han born an arowe-heed in þe parties of her face bi longe tyme; & after longe tyme kynde haþ cast out þe arowe heed, or ellis he haþ schewid sum wey bi þe which wey þilke arowe-heed myȝte be taken out. & þou must take hede bi al þi miȝt þat, whanne þat þou sowist þe woundis of þe face, þat þe mouþ be not crokid, but make so sliȝly þi sowynge þat þilke accident may [1]not fallen; & þat þou maist do weel, if þat þou cowdist ordeyne weel þi sowynge / & if þat þou canst, kepe weel þi sowynge wiþ plumaciols and wiþ byndyngis // // //

and draw it out; if you fail, apply Oleum Rosarum till nature works.

Beware of disfiguring the mouth in making the suture.

[1 lf. 77]

## The þridde chapitle of þe secunde tretis is of woundis of þe necke & anotamie of the same.

¶ Capm 3m

Bi þe necke is conteyned al þe place þat is bitwene þe heed & þe schuldris, þe which anotamie I wole telle as I haue bihiȝt / Summen maken difference bitwene þe necke & þe wesaunt[2] & þe

Anatomy of the neck.

[2] *wesaunt* gula; *wesande*, ysophagus. Wright W., page 676, XV. cent. See *Vicary*, page 47, note 4.

---

wey, how he may drawen out þilke arwe-hed; and þenne drawe hym out þe beste manere þat he may. And ȝif he may nouȝt, helde into þe wounde oyle of roses, & medle he oyle of roses & þe ȝolke of an eyȝe togedre, & helde into þe wounde, & wiþ þis medycine worche in þe wounde, tyl þat kynde schewe sum manere wey. Manye men han born an arwe-hed in þat partyes of here face by longe tyme; and aftere kynde haþ cast out þilke arwe-hed, opere ellys haþ schewyde sum weye by whom þilke arwe-hed myȝte be taken out. And þou moste taken hede be al þy myght þat whanne þat þou sowyste þe woundes of þe face þat þe mouþ be noȝt crokyde, but make so slylye þy sowynge þat þylke accident may noȝt [3]ffallen; & þat þou maiste do wel, ȝif þat þou coupest ordeyn wel þy sowynge & ȝif þou coupest kepen wel þy sowynge wiþ plumacyolus & wiþ byndynges.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3 fol. 82 b]

## ¶ Cap. iij. tretis ij is off woundes of þe nekke & Anotomye of þe same.

¶ By the nekke is contynwede alle þe place þat is bytwene þe hed & þe schuldres, whose Anotamye y wyll tellen as y haue behyghte. ¶ Some men makyth dyfference bytwene þe nekke & þe

In the neck are vij spondilis, or Vertebræ, the 1st is articulated with the occipital bone.

þrote-bolle, & alle þese ben comprehendid vndir þe name of þe necke. In þe necke þer ben .vij. spondelis þat is to seie whirlboonys / whirlboonys of þe rigge. þe firste of þe boonys is bounde wiþ a boon of þe heed þat is clepid passillare[1] *with* manye smale feble ligamentis; & þei were feble bi-cause þat þilke ioynt next to þe heed myȝte meue many weies. & þe cause whi þat þer were smale ligamentis multiplied in þat ioynt, þat manye smale myȝten susteyne a greet burþun as weel as a fewe greete; & if þat þer were a fewe greete, þei weren not so able to be meued / þe firste spondile [2]is bounde to þe secunde / þe secunde to þe þridde, þe þridde to þe fourþe / þe fourþe to þe fifþe, þe fifþe to þe sixte / þe sixte to þe seuenþe / þe seuenþe is bounde loseliche to þe firste spondile of þe rigge, þat þe necke myȝte more liȝtliche meuen, which þat is clepid þe .viij. spondile / whanne þat þou rekenest [from þe hed dunwarde]* Seuene peire of senewis proceden out [by þese .vii. spondelis. þe firste peire of synwe procedeþ out]* bitwene þe firste spondilis and[3] þe boon of þe heed þat is clepid passillare / þe secunde peire of senewis is bore bitwene þe firste spondile & þe secunde, & so euery peire passen out bitwene ech spondile / þese senewis ben

[2 lf. 77, bk.] .1. .2.3. .4.5.6. 7

From the cervical vertebræ spring 7 pairs of sinews,

[1] See *Vicary*. page 44, note 2.

[3] MS. *of*. Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 2: "*& he is vnterberynge in þe hynder partie al þe bones of þe heued, & þerfore he is clepid þe berere vp or paxillus.*"

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

wesant & þe þrote-bolle, and alle þese be comprehendyde vndire þe name of þe nekke. In þe nekke þere ben vij spondiles—þat is to say, whirle bonys of þe rigge. þe furste of þe bonys ys y-bounde wiþ a bon of þe hed þat ys y-clepyde passilare wiþ manye smale feble ligamentys; & þey weren feble bycause þat þilke Iuncte nexte þe hed myȝte meffe manye weyes. And þe cause why þat þere were manye smale lygamentes multeplyede in þat Iuncte, þat manye smale myȝte susteyne a grete burthyne as wel as a fewe grete; & ȝif þat þere were a fewe grete, þey were nouȝt so able to be meffyde. The firste spondyle ys y-bounden to þe secunde, þe secunde to þe þridde, þe þridde to þe fourþe, þe iiij. to þe v., þe v. to þe vi., þe sixte to þe sevenþe, þe vij. ys y-bounden loselyche to þe fyrste spondile[4] of þe rugge, þat þe nekke myȝte more lyȝtlyche meffen, whiche ys clepyde þe viij. spondile, whenne þat þou reknyste from þe hed dunwarde.* vij. peire off synwes growiþ out by þese .vij. spondelis. þe firste peire of synwe procedeþ out* bytwene [5 fol. 83 *a*] þe fyrste spondile [5]& þe bon of þe hed þat ys y-clepyde passilare; þe secunde peire of synwes ys y-bore bytwene þe firste spondile & þe secunde, & so euery peire passiþ out bytwene euery spondile.

[4] MS. *Whenne þat þou reknyst from þe hed*, struck through, after *spondile*.

dyuydid *in* many weies bi þe heed, þe necke and þe face, & þe brest, schuldris & þe armes; þe braunchis of þe senewis of þe heed in sum place ben conteynued & ioyned *with* þese senewis / & þese senewis ben clepid meuynge, riȝt as þe senewis þat comen of þe fore *par*tie of þe brayn ben clepid felynge, & þese han also felynge. Of þese senewis þat comen of þe spondilis of þe necke *þere* ben maad brau*n*nys, þe whiche ben instrumentis of meuynge of þo *par*ties. *In* [1]þe necke bihynde, *þere* ben ordeyned open[2] veynes comynge fro þe lyuere þe whiche þat ascenden into þe heed / & vndir þe veynes *þer* ben arteries *pri*uyliche[3] comynge fro þe herte & goynge to þe heed for notable *pro*fitis. & wha*n*ne þat þei han[4] doon al her office in þe heed þei discenden dou*n* bi þe place þat is bihynde þe eeris & þei bringe *par*tie mate*r*ie sp*er*matife: þat is to seie mater of sp*er*me, dou*n* to þe ballokis / & *þer*fore it is seid if þat þo veynes weren kutt, a man schulde neuere engendre[5] / On þe riȝtside & also on þe liftside of þe necke ben ordeined. ij. nollis[6] whiche[7] ben of ligamentis matire, þe whiche *pro*ceden out of þe

communicating with the sinews of the head.

[1 lf. 78]

The neck contains veins and arteries, ascending from the heart,

and bringing spermatic matter to the ballocks,

it contains also ligaments,

[2] *open*, Lat. manifestæ, superficial. [3] Lat. arterie occulte. [4] MS. *ben*.

[5] Avicenna quotes Hippocrates as authority for this curious belief: "Et Hip. *qui*dem dixit in suis *inten*tionib*us* *quod* plurimum materiei spermatis est ex cerebro & *quod* descendit ex duab*us* venis que sunt post ambas aures. Et *pro*pter hoc abscindit phlebotomia ambar*um* generationem & facit incurrere sterilitatem." *Canon Lib.* III, *Fen* XX, Tract. 1, Cap. 3, ed. Ven. 1523, fol. 5.

[6] *nolles*, Latin cervices, seem to be the transverse processes.

[7] *whiche*, struck through after *nollis*.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

þese Synwys buþ devyeded manye weyes by þe hed, & þe nekke, & þe face, & þe breste, schuldres, & þe armes; þe brau*n*ches of þe synwes of the hed in some place beþ contynwede & Ioynde *with* þese synwes. And þese synwes buþ y-clepyde meffynge ryȝte as þe synwes þat comyth of þe fore partye of þe brayn beþ y-clepyde felynge & þese habbiþ also felynge. Of þese Synwes þat comyth of þe spondlis of þe nekke *þere* beþ mad brawnys, þe whiche beþ instrumentes of mevynge of þe *par*tyes. In þe nekke behynde, *þere* ben y-ordeynde opyn veynes comynge fro*m* þe lyffere whiche þat ascendyn to þe hed, and vndire þo Veynes *þer*è ben Arteryes y-hud *pri*uelyche, comynge ffro*m* þe herte & goynge to þe hed for notable *pro*fetes. And wha*n*ne þat þey han do al here office in þe hed, þey descenden dou*n* by þe place þat beþ behynde þe erys & þey bryngen **materie sp*er*matice**, þat is to say mater of sp*er*me, don to þe ballokes, & *þer*efore it ys y-seyde: ȝif þat þo Veynes weren y-kutt, a man scholde neue*re* engendre. On þe ryȝt syde & eke on þe lefte syde of þe nekke *þere* ben y-ordeynde tweye nolles, þe whyche beþ of lygamente mater. þe whiche *pro*cedeþ out of þe bonys

boonys of' þe heed & of' þe spondilis, & þei strecchen doun to þe
to support the sinews. ecris[1] *in* lenkþe biside þe spin boon, & þei ben a couche & a rest-
ynge place to þe senewis þat' comen out' of' þe nucha. In þe fore
*par*tie of þe necke *þer*e is gula, þe which þat' strecchiþ from þe chyn
*Gula*, doun to þe forke of' þe brest';[2] & bitwene þe necke & gula wiþinne-
[5 lf. 78, bk.] forþ *þer*e is ordeyned mary,[3] þat' is to seie þe wesant; þe which þat'
gullet running from the mouth to the stomach. discendiþ of'[4] a smal skyn enueroumnynge [5]al þe mouþ wiþinneforþ
& so goynge doun to þe stomak, & he is hool & conteyned wiþ þe
stomak, & is of' substaunce of þe same stomak, & he discendiþ doun
bi þe hyndere *par*tie of' þe necke cleuynge to þe spondilis til þat' he
come to þe fifþe spondile of' þe rigge; & *þer*e he is departid from
þe spondilis, & he declineþ into þe y*n*nere *par*tie til þat' he peerse
The gullet has 2 coats. þoruȝ þe mydrif',[6] & is compoun*n*ed of' .ij. panniclis, & *in* þe y*n*nere
cloop *þer*e ben braun*n*ys *in* lenkþe bi þe whiche drauȝtis is maad of'
mete & of' drynk, & þe vttere cloop *þer*e ben brawnys *in* brede bi
þe whiche is castynge out' of' super*fl*uytees; & he haþ noon tran-
sue*r*sarie, þat' is to seie goynge ouerþwert', for wiþholdynge is not'
The windpipe is made of gristle, nedeful to him. & in þe fore *par*tie of þe brest' *þer*e is sett' þe
canne[7] of' þe lungis, þe which is compoun*n*ed of' gristil ryngis boun*de*

[1] *eeris* for *ers*. [2] *the forke of the brest*, the clavicle.
[3] *mary*, Lat. meri siue oesophagus. Arab. marī'.
[4] MS. *of*, twice.
[6] *mydrif*, diaphragma. Wright W., *Gloss.*, page 578, l. 23, XV. cent.
[7] MS. *same*. Lat. canna pulmonis. See *Vicary*, page 47, note 7.

---

Add. MS. 12,056. of þe hed & of þe spondiles, & þey strecchen doun to þe ers in
lengþe besydes þe spyne bon, & þey ben a couche & a restynge
place to þe synwes þat comyth out of þe nucha. In þe fore *par*tye
of þe nekke *þer*e ys gula whiche þat strecchiþ from *þ*e chyn doun to
þe furcle of þe brest; and bytwene þe nekke & þe gulam wiþy*n*ne-
[8 fol. 83 *b*] forþ *þer*e ys [8]y-ordeyned mery—þat ys to seye þe wesand; þe whiche
þat discendiþ of a smal schyn environynge alle þe mouth w*i*thy*n*ne-
forþ, & so goynge doun to þe Stomak', & he ys hol & conteynde wiþ
þe Stomak', & ys of Substaunce of þe same stomak', & he dissendiþ
doun by þe hyndere partye of þe nek' clevynge to þe spondelis; tyl
þat he come to þe .v. spondile of' þe rugge, & *þer*e he ys departyde
from þe spondelis and declyneþ into þe Innere partye tyl þat he
perce þorwe þe mydryff', & he ys *com*poned of twey pa*n*nycles, and
in þe Innore cloþ *þer*e ben brawnys in lengthe, by þe whiche drauȝte
ys made of mete & drynke, and in þe vtter cloþ *þer*e bene brawnys
in brede by whom ys made castynge out of super*fl*uyte; and he haþ
*non* transversarye, þat ys to seye goynge twartoffere, ffor wythhold-
ynge ys nouȝt nedfful to hym. And in þe fore *par*tye of þe brest'
*þer*e is y-set þe canne of longes, þe whiche ys *com*poned off grustlye

togidere wiþ pannicleris ligamentis, hauynge in þe ynnere partie a
ful smeþe pannicle ioynynge togidere þilke gristili ryngis. & þilke
ryngis whanne þei ben ioyned wiþ merie, þei ben defautif' aȝens þe
4 merie / & þe foorme of' þe canne of' þe lungis is* as it' were þe
foorme of' a caue, [1]þat' is to seie a rehed,[2] of' þe which rehed þe [1 lf. 79]
fourþe partie were kutt' awey in lenkþe, & aftirward þilke caane is
wrie with a sotil clooþ þat' whanne þat' a greet' mussel of' mete passe
8 doun bi þe merye, he schulde not' haue lettinge, but' þilke pannicle and gives way to great morsels.
of' merye ȝeueþ stede[3] to þe greet' mete passynge doun to þe stomak.
Þe þrote-bolle[4] is maad of' iij gristlis, & is sett' aboue þese two
weies. & boþe on þe riȝtside & on þe lift' side of' þe caane of' þe The 2 Venæ organicæ (Jugular Veins) and 2 great Arteries go along the windpipe.
12 lungis þer ben ij. greete veynes þat' ben clepid organice or ellis
guydes[5]; & vndir þe veynes þer ben greete arteries, & of' þe kutt-
ynge of' þilke veynes & arteries þer comeþ ofte tyme greete perels,
& sumtyme deeþ; for þe grete affenite þat' þei han wiþ þe herte, An incision into them is dangerous, for they are near the heart and the liver.
16 and þe greet' noyousnes[6] þat' þei han to þe lyuere, bi hem sonner[7]
blood is euacued, wherfore spiritus exaliþ, þe whiche þat' ben

[2] Read *reed*.

[3] *ȝeueþ stede*, Lat. cedere. See *Catholicon Angl.*, page 155, *to giffe stede*, cedere, locum dare. [4] *þrote-bolle*. See *Vicary*, page 48, note 1.

[5] *guydes*, Lat. guidegi, *Ibid.* p. 48, note 3. Compare Arab. widādsch, vena jugularis. Matth. Sylv.: "Guedegi sunt vene guides. Alguidegi in collo flobotomantur."

[6] *noyousnesse*. See *noyous*, *Cathol. Angl.*, page 256. The Latin has: *propinquitatem*, and the translator seems to have been influenced by the preceding *affenite*. [7] *sonner*, in margin.

---

rynges y-bounde togedire wiþ panycleris ligamentes, habbynge in Add. MS. 12,056.
þe Innore partye a ful smeþe pannicle Ioynynge togedire þilke
20 grustly rynges. And þilke rynges, whenne þat þey ben ioynede with
mery, þey ben defautyf anonde þe mery. And þe forme of þe canne
of þe longes [is]* as yt were þe forme of a cane—þat is to say a reed,
of þe whiche reed þe fourþ part were kutt away in lengthe, & aftere-
24 ward þe canne ys y-wreye wiþ a sotyl cloth, þat whanne þat a grete
mosseH of mete passe doun be þe mery, he scholde han non lettynge,
but þilke pannicle of mery ȝeuyth stede to þe grete mete passynge
doun to þe stomak'. Þe þrotbolle þat is mad of þre grustlys, ys y-sette
28 aboue þese [9]two weyȝes. And boþe on þe ryȝte syde & eke on þe [9 fol. 84 *a*]
lefte syde of þe cane of þese longes, þere beþ tweye grete veynes þat
beþ y-clepyde **organice** oþere ellys **guydes**. & vndire þe veynes
þere ben grete arteryes, and of þe kyttinge of þilke Veynes &
32 Arteryes þere comyth ofte tymes gret peryle & sumtyme sodeyne
deþ; for þe grete afynite[10] þat þey han in þe herte & þe grete noye-
nesse þat þey han to þe lyffer, sennore by hem blod ys evacued,
wherefore spirites exaleþ whyche þat buþ frendys, boþe to þe body &

[10] *a*, above line.

freendis boþe to þe body and also to[1] þe soule[2] / þe ligament[t] of[f] þe
The muscles, nerves, and vessels of the neck
þrote is clepid emanence eiþir þe heiȝþe of[f] þe epiglote, & in þe sidis
of[f] þe þrote *þere* is sett gula. &[3] þe goynge of[f] brawnys, senewis
[4 lf. 79, bk.] and cordis, veynes & arteries & her brau*n*chis bi [4]*par*ties of[f] þe heed
pass in its longitudinal direction.
*proceden* aftir þe ordour of[f] eeris,[5] & þei ben ordeyned in þe necke
& in gula aftir her lenkþe. & herbi þou maist[t] se þat[t] it[t] is necessarie
a surgian to make hise kuttyngis & hise bre*n*nyngis bi lenkþe of[f] þe
necke & of[f] þe þrote, & þat[t] þe woundis þat[t] ben *maad* ouerþwert[t]
ben more *per*lous, þan þo þat[t] ben in lenkþe /

Wounds on the neck are either longitudinal or transverse.
Now we wolen tretyn of[f] wou*n*dis þat[t] ben maad in þis place,
wiþ a swerd or wiþ sum þi*n*g semblable to hi*m*, or wiþ an arowe or
sum þi*n*g semblable to hi*m*. & if[f] it[t] be wiþ a swerd, eiþir it[t] is ouer-
þwert[t] eiþir in lenkþe / & if[f] it[t] be ouerþwert[t] & *þere* be kutt[t] greete
In the latter case staunch the blood,
veynes eiþ*er* arteries, it[t] is to dreden. Neþeles þou schalt[t] helpe to
staunche þe blood & consowde þe veyne, aftir þe techinge tofore
asigned *in* þe chapitle of[f] flux of[f] blood. & if[f] þer be a senewe kutt[t],
sew the vein, and the nerve,
þa*n*ne brynge boþe *par*ties of[f] þe senewe togidere & sowe þe pelliclis
of[f] þe senewe wiþ þe sowynge of[f] þe wou*n*dis, as I haue tauȝt[t] tofore
and apply a preparation
in þe place of[f] sowynge of[f] senewis, & leie aboue lu*m*bricus of[f] þe

[1] *to*, above line.
[2] Lat.: qui est inter corpus et animam amicabile ligamentum.
[3] *in*, inserted. [5] *eeris* for *heeris*.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.
eke to þe soule. þe ligamente of þe þrote ys y-clepyd þe[6] eminence
o*þere* þe hekþe of þe **epiglote**, & in þe sydes of þe þrote *þere* is y-set
gula. & þe goynge of brawnys, cordys, synwes, veynes, arteryes &
here brau*n*chys by parties of þe hed *proceden* aftyr*e* þe ordre of
heres. & þey ben ordeynde in þe nekke & in þe gula aftir*e* here
lengþe. And hereby þou maiste ysene, how þat yt is necessarye a
surgyn to make*n* hys kuttynges, & hys bre*n*nynges by lengþe of þe
nekke & of þe þrote, and þat þe wou*n*dys þat ben y-mad twarte
offere beþ mor*e* perylose, þe*n* þo þat bene in lengthe.

**Wonde of þe nekke.** ¶ Now we wyl tretyn of wou*n*des þat
beþ mad in þis place wiþ a swerd o*þere* *with* su*m* þynge semblable
to hy*m*, o*þere* wiþ an arwe, o*þere* *with* sum þynge semblable to hy*m*.
And ȝif it be wyth a swerde, o*þere* yt ys twarte offere ore in lengthe ;
and ȝif it be twart offere, and *þere* ben y-kutt grete Veynes o*þere*
arteryes, hit ys gretly to dreden. Naþeles þou schalt helpe to
staunche þe blod & to *con*soude þe veyne, aftere þe techynge tofore
asygned in þe chapytle off[f] flux of[f] blod. And ȝif *þere* be a synwe
kutte, brynge þe *par*ties of þe synwe togedyre, & sowȝ þe pellykles
of þe synwe *with* þe sowynge of þe wou*n*de, as y haue tauȝt tofore
[7 fol. 34 *b*] in þe [7]place of sowynge of synwes, and leye aboffe lu*m*bricus of þe

[6] *þe*, above line.

erþe, þat' beth erþe-wormes staumpid & boilid wiþ oile of' rosis, & kepe þe sowynge [1]*with* byndynge, & so procede forþ in al þing' of' þe cure, as it' is told in þe chapitle tofore schewid / & if' þat' þe wounde were in lenkþe, it' is not' necessarie but' for to sowe þe wounde & caste aboue þe poudre of' lyme, frankencense, & sandragoun, & kepe þe poudre & þe sowynge wiþ byndynge, til þe wounde be ful consowdid / & if' þe wounde were maad *in* þe parties wiþ an arowe or wiþ a knyf', or *with* a spere or sum þing' semblable to hem, & if' þer be an arowe, drawe him out' ; & if' an arowe be drawe out', loke if' þer folowe emorosogie,[2] þat is to seie, a greet' flux of' blood, & þanne staunche it' aftir þe doctryne þat is told tofore / & if' þer be no flux of blood, loke if' þer be akþe / & if' þer be acþe, putte *in* þe wounde a litil tent' þat' may holde þe wounde open al a day, þat' þou maist' seen þat' þe woundid man schal haue noon acþe / & if' he haue noon acþe, lete þe wounde be consowdid ; for sumtyme it' happiþ, þat' an arowe or sum þing' semblable passiþ þoruȝ þe necke & þe þrote, & he touche not' þe senewe, arterie, ne veyne, & þanne it' nediþ not' but' þat' þe wounde be [3]consowdid. & if' þer were akþe eiþer bigynnynge of' swellynge, þanne it' were necessarie to fulfille þe wounde wiþ hoote oile of' rosis & to putte in a tente not' to

of earthworms.

[1 lf. 80]

If the wound is longitudinal it needs sewing and **puluis**

An arrow must be drawn out, and if **Emorogie** (hemorrhage) ensues, staunch the blood, if there are pains, tent the wound.

[3 lf. 80, bk.]

If there are pains and swelling, tent the wound and apply oil of roses.

[2] Lat. emorosagia. Matth. Sylv.: "Emorogia. Emorosagia .i. sanguis fluxus vel discursus."

---

erthe þat beþ erthe wormes y-stampyde & boylled wyth oylle of roses, & kepe þe sowynge *with* byndynge, and so procede forþ in alle þynge in þe cure, as yt is tolde in the chapitle tofore schewyde. And ȝif þat þe wonde were in lengþe, yt ys noȝt necessarie but forto sowe þe wounde & to casten aboue, þe poudre of lym, ffrankensence & sank' dragoun, & to kepe þe sewynge & þe poudre *with* byndynge, tyl þat þe wounde be ful *con*souded. And ȝif þat þe wounde were y-mad in þo parties *with* an arwe oþere a knyff', oþere a spere, oþere sum þynge semblable to hem, and ȝif þere be an arwe, drawe hym out, and ȝif þe arwe be drawen out, loke ȝif' þere folwe emorosogie, þat ys to seye, a gret flux of blod, & þenne staunche hym aftere þe doctryne y-told tofore. & ȝif þere be non flux of blod, loke ȝif þere be akþe ; & ȝif þere be akþe, put into þe wounde a lytel tente þat may holde þe wounde opyn al day, þat þou may se þat þe wounded man schal han non akþe. And ȝif he haue non akþe, lete þe wounde be *con*soudyde ; ffor sum tyme it happiþ, þat an arwe, oþer sum thynge semblable passith þorwe þe nekke & þe þrote, & ȝit he touchiþ noȝt veyne, arterye, ne synwe, & þenne it nediþ noȝt but þat þe wonde be *con*souded. And ȝif þere were akþe oþere cllys a bygynnynge of swellynge, þan yt were necessarie to fulfylle þe wounde wiþ hot oyle of roses & to put in a tente noȝt to grete,

Add. MS. 12,056.

greet', wet *in* þe ȝelke of' an ey & oile of' rosis hoot', & so holde þe wou*n*de open, til þat' he ȝeue quytture, & aftir clense hi*m* & aftir
Nota consowde hi*m* / Vndirstonde þe *peri*lis þat' comen for [wondys]* þat
The wound is mortal if the Spinal Cord is cut, ben maad *in* þis place / þe firste *pe*rel is: if þat' þe necke be kutt' ouerþwert' wiþ a sword, so þat' þe necke-boon & þe marie of' þe necke-boon be al atwo, it' is deedliche. & if' þat' nucha, þat' is mary of' þe necke boon, is not' kutt' al atwo but' is hurt', it' is *pe*rile of' lesynge, felynge & meuynge,[1] & at' þe laste be deed, but' if' þat'
and generally mortal medicyns þat' I schal telle mou*n* helpe / & if þat ony veyne or ony greet senewe be kutt' ouerþwert', I suppose þat' he be heelid, þe necke schal neue*re* haue[2] his free meuynge; & if' þat' ony of' þe
if a great blood-vessel is cut, veynes organik, þe whiche þat' ben clepid guydes, or ellis ony of' þe arteries þat' ben vndir he*m* be kutt', it' is drede of' sodeyn deeþ, for
[3 lf. 81] sodeyn exalacioun of' þe spiritis & also for affinite of' þe herte; &
or the wind-pipe. also if' þat' þe cane of' þe lungis be kutt' ouer[3]þwert' al atwo, for þe more p*ar*tie it' is deedliche / Also it' is seid, þat' if' þe veynes þat'
Nota. ben bihy*n*de þe eeris bee kutt' al atwo, he ne schal neuere engendre.
Hoarseness follows the cutting of the "reversif nerve" (auricularis posterior). And also sumtyme it' is kutt' eiþir prickid þe senewe þat' is clepid reuersif', þat' is vndir boþe sidis of' þe eere, of' þe whiche kuttynge or prickynge euermore is m*a*ad hosnesse[4] / And if' þat' þe places

[1] Lat.: est periculum amissionis sensus et motus. [2] *haue*, in margin.
[4] *hosnesse*. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 248. "*hoorsnesse*, Rancor."

---

Add. MS. 12,056. y-wett in þe ȝolke of an eyȝe & oyle of roses hot, & so holde þe wou*n*de open to þat he ȝyfe quyt*er*, & aft*er*warde clanse hy*m* & afterwarde *con*soude hy*m*. Nota: vndirstande þe p*er*yles þat comeþ
[5 fol. 85 *a*] fro*m* wondys* þat ben mad in þis place. þe firste [5]Perel ys: ȝif þat þe nekke be kutte twarte offere wiþ a swerd, so þat þe nekke-bon & þe marye of þe nekke-bon be y-kut al atwo, yt is dedlyche; and ȝif þat nucha, þat ys þe marye of þe nekke-bon, is noȝt y-kut al atwo but ys y-hurt, yt is p*er*yle of leosynge, ffelynge & meffynge, & at þe laste to be ded, but ȝif þe medycines þat y schal tellen aft*er*warde mowe helpen. And ȝif þat enye Veynes op*er*e enye gret synwe be y-kut twart offere, y suppose þat he be helyde, þe nekke schal neue*re* haue hys fre meffynge; and ȝif enye of the veynes organyk' whiche þat beþ clepyde guydes, op*er*e ellys enye of þe arteries þ*at* beþ vndire hem beþ y-kut, yt ys drede of sodeyne deþ, ffor sodeyne exalacioun of þe spirites & also for Afynyte of þe herte; & also ȝif þat þe canne off' þe longes be y-kut twarte offere al atwo, for þe more p*ar*tye it is dedlyche; & so it ys seyde ȝif þat þe veynes þat beþ behynde þe eres be y-kut al atwo, he schal nevir*e* engendre. Also sum tyme ys y-kut op*er*e y-prekyde þe sy*n*we þat is clepyde reuersiff', þat ys vndire boþe þe sydes of þe ere, of whose kuttynge op*er*e p*re*kynge euere more ys mad horsnesse. And ȝif

ben peersid *with* an arowe, & þouȝ þat trache arterie be peersid or ellis ysophage, so þat nucha be nouȝt *prickid* bi þe mydle, þanne ȝitt he may be heelid wiþ gode medicyns & acordynge.

4 Þou schalt helpe nucha þat is hurt in þis maner: þou schalt helde into þe wou*n*de, *in* þe bigy*nn*y*n*ge, oile of rosis, & aftirward do yn oile of rosis & ȝelke of an ey medlid togidere, and þou schalt be bisy in al maner to aswage akþe; & whanne *þat* quytture is 8 maad, þanne leie a mu*n*dificatif wiþ medicyns comfortatiuis & incarnatiuis m*aad* in þis maner / Take oile of rosis colate ȝ .iiij., wex, rosyn of ech two dragmis, terbentine .iij. ȝ, frankencense, mastik of ech .i. ȝ, mirre, sarcocol,[1] mu*m*mie[2] of ech ȝ .ß., barly mele ȝ ß., 12 streyne it on a cloþ & [3]leie it on þe nucha þat is hurt. & þei þat hereof[4] *pr*onosticacio*un* schulde go tofore, þe which schulde schewe to yuel, neþeles bi þis medicyn þer comeþ a rectificacio*un* to þe nucha, & melioracio*un* of meuynge of lymes, þat ben byneþe þe 16 place of þe nucha þat is hurt, more helpinge, þat semeþ possible to þe leche. For þer is no þing vnpossible to stalworþe[5] nature; namely, whanne þat it is holpen wiþ a good leche & wiþ þingis, þat ben

Treatment if the spinal marrow is hurt.

Apply *Olium Rosarum.*

℞ **Modus confortandi & mundificandi vulnera Nuche.**

[3 lf. 81, bk.]

Tho' the prognosis is unfavourable, yet medicine,

**Nota** nature and the physician may help.

[1] *Sarcocolla*, Gr. **Σαρκοκόλλα**, "is the Gumme or liquore of a tre growyng in Persia." Halle, *Table*, p. 109.

[2] *mummie*, mumia. See Halle, *Table*, p. 72, and Notes.

[4] MS. *of here.*

[5] *stalworthe.* See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, s. v. Stalwart.

---

Add. MS. 12,056.

þ*a*t place ben y-p*er*ced *with* an arwe, & þow*ȝ* þ*a*t trachea arteria be 20 y-p*er*cyde o*þ*e*re* ellys ysophage, so þat Nucha be no*ȝ*t þrillede be þe mydle, þey mowe ben y-helyde *with* gode medycines & acordynge. *Þou* schalt helpe Nucha þ*a*t ys y-hurt in þis man*ere*: þou schalt helden into þe wou*n*de in þe bygy*nn*inge oyle of roses & afte*r*warde 24 leye aboffe oyle of roses & þe ȝelke of an ey*ȝ*e, and þou schalt be busy in alle man*ere* to aswage akþe; & whe*n*ne þ*a*t quyte*r* ys y-mad, þe*n*ne leye a mu*n*dificatyff wiþ medicynes *con*fortatyff and [6]Incarnatyfes y-mad in thys man*ere*: R. oyle of ros*is* colat .ȝ. iiij, *with*[7] 28 resyne ana. ȝ. ij, terbentyne ȝ. iij, frank ensence, mastyk ana. ȝ. i, mirre, sarcocolle,[8] mumie ana .ȝ. ß, barly mele .ȝ. ß; streyne it on a clo*þ* & leye yt on þe nucha þ*a*t is hurt. And þaw*ȝ* þ*a*t hereof eue*re* more p*ro*nosticacion scholde go tofore whiche scholde sownen to 32 yuele, na*þ*eles by þis medicine þ*er*e comyt*h* rectificacio*un* to þe nuca, & amelioracio*un* off mevynge of lymes þat be*þ* bene*þ* þe place of þe nuca þ*a*t ys y-hurt, more helpynge, þe*n*ne semyt*h* possible to þe leche. For þ*er*e ys no*þ*ynge vnpossible to Stalworth nature; namlyche 36 whanne þ*a*t yt is holpen wiþ a gode leche & wiþ þynges, þ*a*t be*þ*

[6] fol. 85 *b*]

[7] *wiþ* for *wex.*

[8] MS. *sarcticolle.*

helpinge & acordynge to a good intencioun / Here vndirstonde þat
Wounds of the brain, the Spinal Cord, al maner wounde þat peersiþ to þe substaunce of þe brayn or ellis
to þe nucha, so þat bi þer hurtynge of þe nucha þe meuynge & þe
felynge of summe lymes ben lost, nameliche from þe whirle-boonys
and the principal nerves of þe rigge, of þe reynes vpward, & al maner wounde þat is maad
in þe extremitees of[1] þe lacertis[2] as .iij. fyngir mele[3] brede vndir þe
schuldris, eiþer .iii. fyngir mele brede aboue þe elbowe eiþer bineþe,
eiþir .iij. fyngir mele aboue þe knē or bineþe / & ech wounde þat is
[4 lf. 82] * in a senewe place with strengest akþe & hardnes, [4]schal be deemed
are mortal. deedlich, for þe nobilte of þilke brayn, & for þe affinite of þe nucha
wiþ þe brayn, of þe which nucha passiþ as a reuere[5] from a welle,
& for þe affinite of þilke senewe wiþ þe brayn bi mene of nucha, of
þe whiche þei passen out as a flood / Wherfore þou schalt euermore
Avoid such hopeless cases. in sich maner woundis pronosteken deth, & euermore fle as miche
as þou myȝt from vnresonable curis, but if þou be with þe more
instaunce y-preied / Neþeles sumtyme nature wiþ good helpinge
worchiþ þat semeþ to þe leche vnpossible, neuer-þe-lattere loue noon
sich [cures]* but if þou be greetliche preied & þanne entermete of
þe cure of þe sike man //

[1] MS. *as.* Lat. in extremitatibus lacertorum.
[2] *lacertis*, the sinewy part of the arm. See *Vicary*, p. 57, note 1.
[3] *iij fyngir mele brede.* Lat. tribus digitis.
[5] MS. *rēuere.*

---

Add. MS. 12,056. helpynge & acordynge to a gode entencioun. Here vndirstande þat
alle manere wounde þat persitħ to þe substaunce of þe brayn oþere
ellys to þe nuca, so þat by þe hurtynge of þe nuca þe meffynge &
of woundes þat ben dedlicħ þe ffelynge of some lymes ben y-lost, namlyche from þe whirle-
bonys of þe rugge, of þe reynes vpwarde, & alle manere wounde þat
ys mad in þe extremites of þe lacertes as þre fyngremele brede in
þe schuldres, oþere þre fyngre mele brede aboue þe elbowe oþere by-
neþen, oþere þre fyngre mele aboue þe kne oþere byneþene, & euery
wounde þat ys in a synwye place with strengest akþe & hardnesse,
schal be demyde dedlyche: ffor þe noblete of þilke brayn, & for þe
Affynite of nuca wyth þe brayn, of þe whiche nuca passitħ as þe
Ryuere from a welle, & for þe Afynite of þilke Synwes wiþ þe brayn,
by mene of þe Nuca, of whom þey passen out as of a flod, where-
[6 fol. 86 *a*] fore [6]þou schalt euyre more in swiche manere woundes pronostiken
deþ, and euere more fle as myche as þou mayst from vnresonable
cures, but ȝif þou be wiþ þe more Instaunce y-preyȝede. Naþeles
sumtyme nature with gode helpynges worchitħ þat semeþ to the
leche vnpossible. Neuere þe latere loue non swiche cures* but ȝif
þou be gretliche y-preyede, and þenne entyremete of þe cure of þe
syke man.

THe .iiij. chapitle of þe .ij. tretis is of wou*n*diš of þe spaude,[1] schuldre, arm, handis, fyngris, brawnys, veynes, & her anotamie / ¶ Capm iiijm

þe spawde is oon of' þe iiij. boonys, þe which þat' makþ þe foorme of' þe schuldre / & þe spawde-boon is þi*n*ne & brood two-ward þe schuldris & i*n* hise endis gristly. On þe vpper side of' hi*m* he haþ an egge su*m*what' greet' & twoward þe arm [2]i*n* þe place of' þe schuldre he is greet' & rou*n*d ; & þilke eende is holowe as a box, & þis boon is lich to a pele [3] wiþ þe whiche men setten breed into þe ouene, & on þe hyndere pa*r*tie of' the schuldre he haþ an emine*n*ce. & in þe box of' þis boon — —[4] þe which is clepd adiu-torium ; þe which is oon boon su*m*what' crokid, greet' & holowe / þis boon is greet' for necessite of' strenkþe, & of' schap holowe, þat' he were liȝt', þat' he schulde not' þoruȝ his heuynes lette þe worch-inge of' lacertis, & þe rou*n*d extremite of' þis boon entriþ into þe holownes of' þe spawde. & þei ben bou*n*den togidere wiþ a bowable ligament'. þe canel-boon[5] of' þe brest is in þis maner maad, hauynge

1 The Shoulder-blade.

[2 lf. 82, bk.]

2 The Adjutor (Humerus) is strong and hollow.

The Cannel bone (Clavicle)

[1] *spaude*, spatula = scapula, shoulder-blade. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 352. "*spawde* Armus." O.Fr. espalde.

[3] *pele*, Lat. palla. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 273, note 4.

[4] Some words are wanting in both MSS. (*entriþ þe extremite of a boon*). Lat. : In hac pyside sive concavitate huius ossis, intrat extremitas ossis adiutorii.

[5] See *N. E. Dict.* This is the earliest reference for *canelbone* = clavicula.

---

¶ Capit. iiij. *tretis* .ij. is of wou*n*des of þe spaude, schuldre, arme, handis, ffingres, brawnes, veynes, and here Anotamye. Add. MS. 12,056.

þe spawde ys one of þe iiij bonys whiche þat makiþ þe forme of þe schuldre, & þe spawde-bon is þe*n*ne & brode towarde þe schuldres & in hys endys grustly. On þe vppere syde of hy*m* he haþ an egge su*m*what gret & towarde þe arme in þe place of þe schuldre he ys grete & rou*n*de. And þilke ende ys holwe as a box, and þis bon ys lyche to a þele, þe whiche me*n* settyth brede into þe ovyne, and on þe hyndere partye of þe schuldre he haþ an emynense. & in þe box of þis bon — —* whiche ys y-clepyde adiutoriu*m* þe whiche ys a bon su*m*what crokyde, gret & holowȝ. þis bon ys gret for necessite of strengthe, & of schappe holwe, þat he were lyȝte, þat he scholde nouȝt prowe*n* his hevynesse lette þe wirchynge of lacertes, and þe rou*n*de extremite of þis bon entreþ into þe holwenesse of the spaude. & þey beþ y-bou*n*de togedre wit*h* a bowable ligament. þe canel-bon of þe brest ys in this mane*r*e

an additament sumwhat round in þe neþer partie, þe which entriþ a maner box, þe which is in þe ouer partie of þe ouer boon of þe .vij. boonys of þe brest. Euery extremite of þilke vij. boonys ben ioyned with þe spawde, þat þe schuldre myȝte be þe more strengere, 4

Joins with the Os Rostrale (Coracoid), [2 lf. 83]

& forto make þis place more strengere, þer ben sett .ij. smale boonys, þe whiche ben clepid rostralia[1] to þe lijknes of þe bele [2]of a crowe, & for to fastne þe schuldre, þis boon rostral is putt in maner of a wegge / But þe boon of þe adiutori haþ in þe neþer partie twoward 8

and has 2 eminences.

þe elbowe .ij. eminentis, & þe oon of þe eminence is more hiȝere þan þat oþer; & boþe þese eminence ben as þei it were holf a boket[3] wiþ þe which men drawen watir / & þilke .ij. additamentis ben ioyned

The Forearm has two bones (Ulna and Radius),

wiþ þe boonys of þe arm / þe arm from þe elbowe dounward haþ .ij. 12 bonys; & þe ouer boon, þe which þat arecchiþ fro þe þombe to þe boon þat is clepid adiutorium, is þe smallere boon; & þe neþir boon þat strecchiþ from þe litil fyngir to þe elbowe is þe grettere boon. &

and an "Additament" (Olecranon).

he haþ in þe ouer ende twoward þe elbowe an additament lijk twoward 16 a bille or a pike; & þilke pike makiþ þe elbowe scharp whanne þe arm is folden, & it lettiþ þat þe arm may not be bowid [bakwarde]*.

[1] *rostralia*. Coracoids. "*Rostriformis Processus*, a Process of the Shoulder-blade, and of the lower Jawbone."—Phillips.

[3] Compare *Vicary*, p. 49, l. 18, where the word *polly* is substituted for bucket.

---

Add. MS. 12.056. [4 fol. 86 *b*]

y-made, habbynge an additamente sumwhat [4]rounde in þe neþere partye, þe whiche entryth a manere box, þe whiche ys in þe offere 20 partye of þe ovyre bon of þe vij. bonys of þe brest. And euerye extremyte of þilke vij. bonys beþ y-loyned wiþ þe spawde, þat þe schuldre myghte be þe more strenger; and forto make þis place þe more strengere, þere beþ sette two smale bonys whiche beþ y-clepyde 24 **rostralis** to þe lyknesse of þe byle of a crowe, & forto fastne þe schuldres, þis bon rostrale ys y-put in þe manere of a wegge. But þe bon of þe adiutorie haþ in þe neþere partye towarde þe elbowe tweye emynences, and þe on of þe emynence ys more herre þenne 28 þe othire; and boþe þese emynence beþ as yt were halfe a bokett wiþ þe whiche men drawiþ water; and þilke tweye Additamentis beþ y-loyned with þe bonys of þe arme. Þe Arme from þe Elbowe dunwarde, haþ two bonys, and þe offere bon whiche þat strecchiþ 32 from þe þowmbe þat ys clepyde adiutorium is smallere bon, and þe neþere bon þat strecchith from þe lytel fyngere to þe elbowe is þe grettere bon. & he haþ in þe offere ende towarde the elbowe an additament like to a byle oþere a pyk, and þilke pyk makyth þe 36 elbowe scharpe, whenne þat þe arme ys y-folden, and it letteþ þat þe arme may noȝt ben y-bowyde bakwarde.* Þese tweye bonys beþ

þese .ij. boonys be*n* so ioyned togidere, þat it semeþ as þouȝ it were but oo. boon. & þe neþir ende of þese boonys be*n* ioyned *with* þe boonys of þe hand, þe whiche be*n* clepid rasceta,[1] þat be*n* .viij. boonys, .iiij. of [2]he*m* ben ordeyned & ioyned *with* su*m*me additamentis to þe .ij. boonys of þe arm / & þe o*pe*re .iiij. ben conteyned[3] *with* þe boonys of þe hand þat ben clepid pecten[4] / þe firste boon of pecten is ioyned *with* þe first boon of rasceta,[5] & þe o*pe*re .iij. *in* þe same maner outaken þe þombe. ——[6] þat haþ .iij. boonys as þe o*pe*re fyngris han, conteyneþ[3] his firste boon wiþ þe extremite of þe ouer fosile,[7] & þe þombe euenliche aȝenstondiþ þe strenkþe of þe o*pe*re fyngris in clicchinge.[8] & alle þese boonys þat mencioun is maad of, þat be*n* *in* ioynturis, as þe schuldris, elbowis, raschet, & þe knottis of alle þe fyngris, be*n* ioyned togidere bi mene of ligamentis, as it is seid tofore / & þese boonys be*n* cloþid wiþ symple fleisch & brawnys after þat þe dyuersite of foorme of lymes askiþ /

To the arm-bones are joined the 8 hand-bones, the **Rasceta**.

[2 lf. 83, bk.]

The wrist articulates with the 4 metacarpal bones.

The thumb has 3 phalanges.

& alle þe greete senewis *pro*ceden out of nucha, þe whiche senewis be*n* conpoun*n*ed wiþ ligamentis & wiþ symple fleisch, makyn*g*e brawnys meuynge þo pa*r*ties; of þe whiche brawnys su*m*me be*n* open to a ma*n*nys siȝt, & su*m*me ben hid; for þei ben dep*ar*tid *in* two [9]þe leeste pa*r*ties[10] / þere be*n* .iiij. brawnys ope*n* in þe fleischy pa*r*tie of þe arm, bitwene þe schuldre & þe elbowe: oon on þe y*n*nere half, anoþir on þe vttere half, anoþir on þe lowere half, anoþir on þe hiȝere half. Whan*n*e þe y*n*nere brawn is drawe togidere þanne is þe arme foldid ynward, & þe contrarie brawn on

The Sinews, Ligaments, and simple flesh form the Muscles.

[9 lf. 84]

The Upper Arm has 4 Muscles.

When the inner Muscle contracts,

[1] *Rasceta*, Arab = carpus. Castelli, *Lexicon medic.*, p. 139. See Littré: "rachette," and Devic Suppl. to *Littré. Dict.*

[3] *conteyned, conteyneþ* for *contynued, contynueþ*.

[4] *pecten*, Latin, pecten manus. See Halle, *Treatise of the Anatomye*, p. 62 (A.D. 1562). "And after these bones Rasseta, are constitute the bones of the palmes of the hands, called Ostea metacarpis. i. Postbrachialia, Palma, vel manus pectus." The corrupt form *Patinis* occurs in *Vicary*, p. 50, l. 9.

[5] MS. *pasceta*.

[6] Two words (*þe þombe*) are wanting. Latin: Nam pollex tria habens ossa. . . . He counts the metacarpal bone of the thumb as a phalanx.

[7] *fosile*, Latin: focile. See *Vicary*, p. 49, note 3.

[8] *in clicchinge*, Latin: (pollex) ut sit solus ex opposito comprehendens cum aliis firmius, et firmius retinens apprehensum.

[10] Lat. in tres partes minimas diuiduntur.

---

so y-Ioynede togedire, þat it semyth as on bon. And þe neþere ende of þese bonys beþ y-Ioyned wiþ þe bonys of þe hande, whiche beþ y-clepyde rasceta þat **beth viij bonys.**

*Here the Add. MS. ends.*

the outer extends.

þe vttere half‘ is *maad* long‘; & whanne þat‘ þe vttere brawn of‘ þe[1] arm is maad schort‘, þanne is þe arm drawe outward & þe *yn*nere is maad long‘; & in þe same maner by[2] o*þer*e .ij. brawnys, þe arm is houe vp & lete falle dou*n* / & whanne þat‘ alle þe brawnys traueilen liche myche, þe arm stant‘ euene riȝtliche & declyneþ to no p*ar*tie / & þese brawnys,[3] .iiij fyngir mele from þe ioyntue of‘ þe schuldre, ben nakid cordis, & þei ben þe same fro*m* þe ioynture of‘ þe elbowe & in þe myddil of‘ þe adiutorie, þat‘ is þe place þat‘ is from þe schuldre to þe elbowe; þe cordis be*n* multiplied dyuersliche wiþ fleisch to þe composicioun of‘ þe same brawnys, .iij. fyngir mele aboue þe elbowe. & .iij. fyngir mele by‘neþe þe elbowe ben nakid cordis; & þ*er*e þei maken anoþir[5] brawn; & in þis man*er* ben maad nakid cordis & generacioun of‘ brawnys, til euery lyme haue his meuynge, after þat‘ it‘ nediþ him.

The muscles end in Cords near the joints of the arm.

[‘ lf. 84, bk.]

M

From the Vena Cava one branch runs to each armpit,

where it divides into 2.

1. at the elbow called Basilica,

In the right hand Salvatella, In the left hand Splenatica;

In boþe þe armes be*n* .iiij. open veynes þat‘ comen from þe lyuere, & be*n* scharpeled[6] þoruȝ þe arm. For þ*er*e is a braunchid veyne þe which wexiþ on þe vttere p*ar*tie of‘ þe lyuere, & is dyuydid i*n* two p*ar*ties: oon arisynge, anoþir discendynge; þe veyne arisynge comeþ to þe mydrif‘; & sum p*ar*tie of‘ hir is sparpoiled[7] þoruȝ þe mydrif‘ & þe lymes of‘ þe brest‘ / þat‘ o*þer*e p*ar*tie of‘ þe veyne passiþ to þe arm-hoolis, & þ*er*e he is forkid. & þat‘ veyne passiþ bynet̄e the arm to þe elbowe, & þ*er*e sche may be seen; & he is clepid basilica[8] or ellis epatica, & aftirward he strecchiþ bi þe neþir p*ar*tie of‘ þe arm to þe hond, bitwene þe litil fyngir & þe leche[9] fiyngir, & sche is clepid saluatella[10] or ellis epatica in þe riȝthond, & i*n* þe lifthand splenatica. þe toþir p*ar*tie of‘ þis veyne þat‘ is dyuydid fro þis assellari strecchiþ to þe vttere p*ar*tie of‘ þe schuldre: & þ*er*e is

[1] *brawn*, struck through after *of* þe. [2] MS. *ben*.

[3] *be*n, inserted.

[5] *corde*, cancelled, after *anoþir*.

[6] *ben schorpeled*, Latin: disperguntur—O.Fr. escharpiller, mettre en pièces. See Godefroy.

[7] *is sparpoilid*, Latin: dispergitur—O.Fr. esparpeiller. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 351, note 6.

[8] *Basilica*. See *Vicary*, p. 52, note 5. There is one reference for φλὲψ βασιλικὴ given in *Stephanus Thes.*, from Synesius, De febribus, which is a translation of an Arab. treatise by Constant. Africanus.

[9] *leche fyngir*. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 291, note 4. O.E. *lǣcefinger*, Leechd., vol. i. p. 394. See Notes.

[10] *Salvatella*. See *Vicary*, p. 53, note 1. Dufresne gives one reference for Salvatella with a different meaning: "Pellicula involvens cerebrum." It occurs frequently in the Latin translations of Arab. authors, and translates Arab. sceilem or osailemon.

[1 lf. 85]

[1]dyuydid. & þe oon p*ar*tie goiþ to þe heed & þe oþir p*ar*tie to þe arm. & þilke is eftsoones dyuydid, & þe oon p*ar*tie is spred bi þe arm manye weie*s* wiþoute forþ, þat is clepid funis[2]; & þe oþ*er*e p*ar*tie strecchiþ euene to þe elbowe, & þ*er*e sche is schewid bi þe ou*er* p*ar*tie of þe arm; & so sche strecchiþ to þe hand, & þ*er*e sche apperiþ bitwene þe fyngir and þe þombe, & is clepid cephalica. ij. braunchis þat ben diuided þat comen fro þe schuldre, þe toon is cephalica, þe oþ*er*e from assillari,[3] þat is basilica, maken oon veyne þat is clepid mediana eiþ*er* p*ur*purea. & þ*er*e ben .iiij. veynys, as it is seid bifore, *scilicet*, finis[4] brachij þat strecchiþ bi þe vttere p*ar*tie of þe arm, & sephelica þe which þat strecchiþ bi þe ouer p*ar*tie, & basilica þat strecchiþ bi þe lower p*ar*tie **& communis seu mediana seu purpurea seu fusca q*uod* idem e*st*** is comu*n* veyne eiþir myddil veyne, þe which þat is compou*n*ned of basilica & cephalica tofore seid, & sche apperiþ openliche in þe foldynge of þe myddil of þe arm. // ¶ þe veynes þat comen from þe lyuere han manie dep*ar*ting*is* [5]& dyuers placis, & for to telle alle þe dep*ar*tyngis, it is not p*r*ofitable for a sirurgian / Saue it suffisiþ for a sirurgian, for to knowe i*n* what place þe grete veynes sitten & þe arterijs, so þat he mowe saue him-silf from p*er*el & helpe he*m*, whanne þei ben kutt / þis þou schalt wite, þat from þe lyu*er*e þ*er* comeþ a veyne to eu*er*y lyme bicause of nurischi*n*ge. & for to make þe lymes ful of lijf, Arterijs come*n* þ*er*to also. & þ*er*fore i*n* eu*er*y place þ*er*e þat ben grete veynes, i*n* þe same place ben arterijs.

[1 lf. 85] 2. the other runs *a.* into the head; *b.* one branch, *funis*, outside the arm; another branch, *Cephalica*, along the arm, between the thumb and the 1st finger. The Basilica with the *Cephalica* form the *Mediana*.

Besides these 4 chief Veins,

there are many smaller ones,

[5 lf. 85, bk.]

which a Surgeon needn't know.

With every vein there is an Artery.

¶ Bi þes þi*n*gis þat ben aforseid, þou maist wite wel þat þ*er*e comeþ greet p*er*el of wou*n*dis, þat ben aboute þe schuldris & vndir þe arme-pittis,[6] & i*n* þe boon of adiutorie, & in þe arm, & i*n* þe hondis / for whi: if wou*n*dis be m*aa*d i*n* adiutorijs & i*n* þe arme ouerþwert, it is greet p*er*el lest þe brau*n* be kutt awey, wh*er*by þe arme schulde haue his meuynge; & it is p*er*el of kuttynge of veynes and arterijs, lest þe blood myȝte not be staunchid. ¶ And if it be m*aa*d a wou*n*de wi*th* a þing þat prickide, & falle vpon a

Off perelles off wondes an quuttes,

if an important muscle is cut

or a blood-vessel,

if a Cord or Tendon is wounded,

[2] *funis*, Castelli, *Lexic. Medicum*, p. 351. "Arabes venam Medianam vocasse Funem brachii, testatur Ioh. Zecchius, lect. ii. in sect. 1. *Sph. Hipp.* p. m. 109." On this place *funis* evidently means not the vena mediana, but one of the recurrent veins.

[3] *Vena ascellaris.* Matth. Sylv.: "Vena communis nigra purpurea media — — dicitur communis quoniam componitur ex assellari et humerali."

[4] *finis* for *funis*.

[6] *þe arme-pittis.* See *Wr. W.*, 627. 3. xv. cent.

[1 lf. 86] where cramp may arise,

corde þat' is *in* þe [1]ende of' þe braun, & is clepid thenantos,[2] þanne it' is greet' drede of' þe spasme & aftirward of' deeþ, for þe akynge entriþ *in* þe corde þat is prickid, & so þe akynge ariseþ vp to þe brayn, & þanne comeþ spasme. ¶ Also it' falliþ many tyme þat' a man is hurt' þe brede of' iij. fyngris wiþinne aboue þe elbowe, þer is þe eende of' þe braun & þere ben cordis; & þanne þer wole come greet' akynge, & þanne þe spasme aft'r, & þese woundis ben mortal.

especially if it is the tendon of the elbow.

Treatment: A wound along the arm is not dangerous,

¶ If' þat wounde be maad endlongis *in* þe arme & *in* adiutorio, þanne it' is not' so greet' drede þerof', þerfore it' is necessarie for a sirurgian to knowe þe perel of' woundis þat' falliþ *in* þis place, & wheþer þe wounde be ouerþwert' or endelongis. & if' þe wounde be endelongis, þanne he schal ioyne þe wounde togidere & sewe hem, & sprynge þeron þe poudre of' lyme & opere þingis, as it' is aforeseid, for to kepe þe sewyngis & þe ligaturis togidere & alle þingis as it' is aforeseid *in* þe wounde of' fleisch.

and must be sewn.

If nerves or blood-vessels are cut, [3 lf. 86, bk.] staunch the blood, join the nerves or cords and apply a defensive medicine.

¶ If' þer be ony nerues, or arterijs, ouþer veynes kutt' [3]ouerþwert': þanne þou schalt' worche *with* þingis þat' streyneþ blood, & þou schalt' sewe þe hedis of' þe nerues togidere or of' þe cordis. & þe pacient' schal be kept' from akynge wiþ good kepinge & *with* reste, & he schal ligge *in* an euene bed. & þou schalt' leie aboute þe wounde a defensif' of' bole & of' oile of' rosis þat' is aforseid / And þouȝ þis defensijf be forȝete in opere woundis, *in* þis wounde it' may not' in no maner. ¶ þou schalt' kepe þe sewyngis & þe ligaturis *with* poudre & lynet', as it is aforseid / Also þis þou must' knowe if' þou sewist' sich a maner wounde of' nerues & cordis, & if' þe akynge go not' awey, þou muste rippe þe sewynge aȝen, & þouȝ þis be contrarie to þe soudynge of' þe nerues, ȝitt' it' is bettere to do[4] *þus*, þouȝ he lese þe meuynge of' sum lyme, þat' þe nerue seruede þerfore, þan falle *in* þe spasme; for þanne it' were drede of' deeþ / Þerfore it' is necessarie for to opene þe wounde & fille it' ful of' oile of' rosis & of' ȝelke of' an ey. & vpon [5]þe wounde leie of' þe same medicyn til þe wounde quyture, & þanne make þe wounde clene *with* mundificatiues, & þanne regendre fleisch as it' is aforseid // If' it' be so þat' þere come ony hoot' apostymes vpon woundis *in* þis place: þanne þou schalt' worche as it' is aforseid in a propre chapitre // If' it' so be, þat' þou leie vpon þe wounde oile of' rosis, & ȝelke of' an ey for to do awei þe

If the pains do not cease, open the suture,

and fill the wound with oil of roses [5 lf. 87] until pus is discharged.

[2] *thenantos*, sinew. Matth. Sylv.: "Tenantos gre. est chorda que in capitibus musculorum aggregatur." It is a corrupt form of Gr. *τένοντες* (Suidas Gloss.).

[4] *do* above line.

akynge, & if' þere falle a flux of' blood, & þanne if' þou leidist' þerto ony constreyning þingis, þe akynge wolde be þe more, & if' þou leidist' þerto þe ȝelke of' an ey & oile, þat' wole make þe flux of' blood þe more—In þis caas what' is for to done? þou schalt' brenne þe hedis of' þe veynes & of' þe cordis with an hoot' yrn, but' þou schalt' not' touche þe lippis of' þe wounde wiþ iren in no maner; & þanne þou schalt' leie in the wounde þe ȝelke of' an ey & oile of' rosis, til al þe rynde of' þe brennyng' falle awei. & þanne þou schalt' leie þerto mundificatiues, & þanne þou schalt' regendre fleisch, and þanne þou schalt soude þe wounde /

If oil causes hemorrhage, and styptics pain, then use the Cauterium actuale (red-hot iron).

## [1]Of woundis of thoracis & of þe brest & of þe membris þat ben conteyned in it, & anothamia.

[1 lf. 87, bk.]

¶ V. C°.

THorax is maad of' .vij. boonys & euery boon at' þe eende is cartilaginosum / þese .vij. boonys ben ioyned togidere in þis maner þat' euery leeneþ vpon oþir, & wiþ þese .vij. boonys ben maad fast' .vij. ribbis þat' ben grete ribbis, & þo .vij. ribbis ben maad fast' in þe rigge boon bihynde, & þese ribbis ben crokid / Wiþinne[2] þese .vij. ribbis ben v. ribbis þat' ben lasse, & ben clepid litil ribbis, & ben maad fast' bihynde with .v. boonys of' þe rigge, & in þe forside of' a man þei haue no fastnynge to no boon, saue þei ben maad fast' with lacertis.[3] & bitwixe þe .viij. boon & þe .ix. boon, diafragma is maad fast', for to bigynne tellyngis of' boonys abouefor̄þ. & þis diafragma departiþ þe spirituals from þe guttis. & in þe holownes þat' is aboue liggiþ þe herte & þe lungis /

The Brest has 7 bones with gristly ends, 7 true, 5 false Ribs, and the Diafragma, which divides the Spiritual Members from the guts.

[4 lf. 88]

þe herte [4]is maad of' hard fleisch & strong' & of' lacertes þat' þei miȝte be hard, þat' it' ne schulde take a greuaunce liȝtli.[5] & þerfore summen seiden þat it' is al braun; but' it' is not' so, for þe braun of' a man meueþ whanne he wole, & restiþ, & þe herte is alwei meuynge & not' reste. & þe herte is schape aftir a pyne, & hangiþ in þe myddil of' þe hiȝere holownes, & hangiþ sum-what' to þe liftside-ward; & þe hiȝere þerof' is brood, & þat' place is medlid wiþ cartilaginosis ligaturis, & is maad fast' in þe lungis[6]; & þe lungis touchiþ not' þe herte, saue in þe aboue, þere it' is maad fast' togidere,

The heart is made from muscular fibres, is like a pine, is surrounded by Pannicles (Pericardium),

[2] *wiþinne.* The Latin has *infra*, which the translator took for *intra*.

[3] *lacertis.* See *Vicary*, page 57, note 1.

[5] Avicenna, Lib. III., Fen XI., Tract. I., Cap. 1, ed. Venet, 1527, f. 204: "Cor quidem creatum est ex carne forti ut sit longinquum a nocumento."

[6] *lungis*, a mistranslation of *panniculi*. The pericardium is also called panniculus cordis.

and has ij. ventriclis.

& þe lunge defendiþ þe herte from greuaunce. & þe herte haþ two ventriclis .i. two holowe placis wiþinne, & þat' oon ventricle sittiþ in þe riȝtside of' þe herte, & þat' oþer in þe liftside[1]; & þese ventriclis holdiþ & resseyueþ eir & norischiþ þe herte / In þe riȝt' ventricle comeþ a greet' veyne þat' is clepid ramosa[2] þat' comeþ from gibbo[3] epatis, & comfortiþ diafragma, & peersiþ þoruȝ diafragma. & þis veyne is ful of' greet' [4]norischinge blood & hoot', & it' norischiþ lymes of' greet' substaunce. & þis veyne goiþ bi þe riȝtside of' þe herte, & filliþ þe herte ful of' norisching' blood. & þanne þe blood in þe herte sutilliþ[5] & filliþ ful þe two ventriclis of' þe herte, & of' þis clene blood þe spirit is engendrid; which spirit' is more cleer & more schynyng' & more sutil, þan ony bodi þat' is maad of' þe iiij. elementis. & þerfore it' is turnid[6] into heuenly bodies, & it' is bitwixe a mannys bodi & his soule a louely byndynge. ¶ And of' þe lift' ventricle þere wexiþ out' ij. [arteries][7] and þat' oon þerof' haþ a maner coote, & þerfore of' summen it' is clepid arteria venalis.[8] & þis arterie beriþ sutil blood to þe lungis & norischiþ þe lungis / And þat' oþere arterie haþ .ij. cootis. & of' þe ilke[9] comeþ alle þe arteries in a mannys bodi, & ben departid in euery lyme of' a mannys bodi. & þese arterijs makiþ alle a mannis lymes to haue lijf' & spiritis; & alle þes arterijs & alle þese spiritis þat' ben aforeseid; and þese arterijs goiþ to þe brayn [10]& þei goiþ to þe lyuere & ȝeueþ him vertu ful myche & makiþ defiynge / And þese arterijs goiþ to a mannys ballokis & ȝeueþ him vertu for to engendre; & in þis place þe vertu of' alle þe spiritis of' a mannys bodi ben ioyned togidere.[11]

Into the right one comes a Vein from the liver,

[4 lf. 88, bk.]

and fills the Heart with nourishing blood, which is refined into a clear spirit between body and soul.

From the left Ventricle springs arteria venalis

and the Aorta from which all other Arteries proceed.

[10 lf. 89]

[1] The translator has omitted the following passage: "In medio illorum duorum ventriculorum est quedam fouea: & vocatur a quibusdam ventriculus tertius, super ventriculo dextro et sinistro. Item duo additamenta cartilaginosa fortia et flexibilia quandam habentia concauitatem, et constringuntur & dilatantur, & recipientes & retinentes nutrimentum et aerem ad nutriendum et temperandum cor."

[2] The translation is not correct. Lat.: "ad dextrum nanque ventriculum venit una vena *ex ramosa vena*." This vein is the vena cava inferior, which gets the blood from the liver by the venæ cavæ hepaticæ. "The seconde veyne is called Vena choele, or Vena concaua, and of some Vena Ramosa." Halle, *Anatomie*, page 78.—1565.

[3] *gibbus.* See *Vicary*, page 69, note 1. [5] *sutilliþ.* Latin: subtiliatur

[6] MS. *turid.* Latin: vergit in naturam supracelestium corporum.

[7] *arteries*, wanting. [8] *Arteria venalis.* See *Vicary*, page 58, note 1.

[9] MS. inserts, *ij cootis*

[11] The translation is corrupt. Lat.: Iste namque spiritus cordialis, qui per viam quæ dicta est a corde sumit originem, sicut omnes virtutes, quarum est instrumentum, cum ad ventriculos peruenit cerebri, aliam ibi recipit digestionem, quæ meretur formam suscipere spiritus animalis, & ita ut ad epar dirigitur, in ipso formam recipit nutritiui, et in testiculis generatiui, donec

¶ þe lungis ben maad of· .iij. substauncis: of· fleisch þat· is recchinge,[1] & braunche of· arterijs, & of· veynis,[2] & of· cartilaginis þat· ben holow, & þese goþ out· of· canna pulmonis as it· is aforeseid. ¶ þe profit· þat· þe lungis doiþ a man is þis: þe lungis drawiþ eir into þe herte, for to do awei þe fume & þe vntemprid heete of· þe herte, & makiþ þe herte in tempre hete / And in tyme whanne þe herte is constreyned, þanne it· is necessarie for to drawe coold eir to þe herte; & if· þe lungis myȝte not· drawe eir to þe herte, þe spirit· of· lijf· schulde be stoppid, & so a man schulde be deed / & þerfore it· is necessarie þat· a man haue clene eir, for þe eir passiþ þoruȝ þe lungis þat· ben tendre & goiþ to þe herte; & þerfore vnclene eir doiþ harm to þe lungis & also to þe herte. & þerfore þe lungis ben [3]departid into .ij. placis, & if· þer falle ony harm to þe oon partie of· þe lungis, þanne þat· oþere partie beriþ al his charge //

**þe lungs are made of 3 tissues, flesh, vessels, and ligaments.**

**They bring cool air to the heart.**

**The air ought to be clean.**

[3 lf. 89, bk. j]

¶ Woundis þat· ben maad in þe brest·. If· þe wounde go into þe holownes, þanne it· is miche to drede þerof·, for þanne it· myȝte falle þat· sum substaunce of· þe herte myȝte be harmed, & þanne þe wounde were mortal // ¶ Ouþer if· þe wounde ȝede into þe lungis, þere were greet· perel: for þe wounde mai not· be helid but if· it· be soudid anoon // ¶ And if· þe wounde go þoruȝ diafragma, it· is mortal / And if· it· be so þat· þe herte be hurt·, þere liþ no[4] cure þeron, saue he schal die anoon; for þe herte takiþ no lijf· of· no lyme of· al þe bodi, saue þe herte ȝeueþ lyues to euery lyme of· þe bodi; & þe herte ordeyneþ alle lymes to vertues, & þe herte is þe welle of· lijf·; & þerfor þe herte mai suffre noon harm, saue ioie ouþer sorowe / þerfore if· þe herte be kutt· wiþ a swerd ouþer ony greet· arterie þat· is nyȝ þe herte, þe wounde is mortal; for þe arterijs goiþ to þe herte [5]& þanne al þe blood of· þe herte & þe spirit· passiþ out· bi þe arterijs, as þou myȝt· se bi ensaumple of· a candel. For if· a candel þat· brenneþ, ouþer a weke, be putt· al in oile ouþer in grese, þe fier þerof· wole out·; in þis same maner is þe spirit· of lijf· queynt·, whanne þe herte is hurt·, for þe greet· flux of· blood, þat· falliþ to þe herte & stoppiþ þe spirit· of· lijf· / Ouþer if· þer be greet· flux of· blood comynge fro þe herte, þanne þe spirit· passiþ out· þerwiþ; as þou miȝt· se bi ensaumple of· a candel: whanne þe talow of· a candel is doon, or wex, or oile, þanne þe liȝt· wole passe, & in þe same maner it·

**Wondis mad in the brest**

**Wounds of the lungs are dangerous,**

**wounds of the midriff, or the heart are mortal.**

**When the heart, the well of life, is hurt,**

[5 lf. 89 *]

**either the blood rushing to the heart quenches the flame of life,**

**or the blood and the spirit of life flow out from the wound.**

omnis spiritus, omnisque particularis virtutis perfectio cum virtutum operationibus coniungatur.

[1] *recchinge.* Latin: rara.

[2] *braunche of arteriis & of veynes.* Latin: ramis arteriæ venalis.

[4] MS. *do.* Lat.: Cor autem vulneratum curam non recipit.

When the lungs are hurt the wound must be stitched before it suppurates.

fariþ bi a mannis lijf', as it' is aforseid. ¶ Þe lungis wolen take no souding' whanne þei ben hurt', but' if þe leche be þe more kunnyng' & soude þe wounde or it' quytture. For if' it' quttur*e*, þe lungis moun not' be maad clene but' wiþ cowȝyng', & þe more þat' þe pacient cowȝeþ, þe more þe wounde wexiþ // ¶ Also þe lungis ben euermore meuynge; & [if] woundis[1] schulen be soudid *in* lymes, þe lyme [2]mote reste; & *per*fore for þe contynuel meuynge of' þe lungis, þe woundis *per*of' ben seid incurable // ¶ Also þouȝ a man wolde soude þe woundis of' þe lungis wiþ ony medicyne þat' is consolidatif', it' ne mai not' come *per*to but' bi a long' wey as bi þe stomak, ouþer bi þe lyu*er*e, ouþir bi veynes, & so þe v*er*tu of' þe medicyne ne may not' come to þe lungs, but' bi þe forseid weies; & *per*fore men þat' ben hurt' in þe lungis falliþ *in* þe tisik[3] / ¶ If' a man be hurt' in diafragma, *per* is no remedie þerof'; for diafragma is alwei meuynge, for þat' is an instrument' of' wijnd to the herte, riȝt' as a belowe is an instrument' for a fier / For riȝt' as a below, whanne he is opened, he takiþ in wijnd, & whanne he is closid, he puttiþ out' wijnd & blowiþ þe fier /

[2 lf. 89*, bk.]

Medicines reach the lungs by a long way, and therefore the patients get phthisis.

The midriff is to the heart what bellows are to a fire.

Symptoms if þe herte be wonded,

¶ If' þe herte be woundid, *in* þis man*er* þou schalt' knowe: þe pacient' schal swowne, & þe blood þat' comeþ out' is blak, & he schal sizе sore, & þanne he is but' deed //

[4 lf. 90]

and if þe lungs be wonded.

¶ If' þe lungis ben hurt', þou schalt' [4]knowe *in* þis maner bi cowȝynge, & þe blood þat' goiþ out' of' þe wounde wole be spumous & cleer / If' þe wounde hereof' be streit' wiþoutforþ, make it' larg*er*e, & þanne in þe wounde of' þe lungis caste poudre of' mastix, olibani,[5] dragan*ti*, gumme arabici, fenigreci ana; & he schal ete no mete saue þat', þat' he mai soupe, & penidis[6] medlid þeron, & loke þat' he haue scielence & good reste, & þat' he traueile not'; & þou schalt' not' close þe wounde wiþoute, til þe wounde of' þe lungis be sowdid, & þanne soude þe wounde wiþoutforþ //

Throw a powder into the wound,

and close the wound when the lungs are healed.

De vulnere dia diafragma.

¶ If' þat' a woundе be *in* diafragma, þes ben þe signys þerof': streit' secchinge of' breeþ, & greet' agreuaunce for to drawe his breeþ, & greet' akynge *in* his side, & greuous cowȝyngs; alle þese ben signys of' deeþ, & principali if' þese signys be greet' & greuous /

Symptoms of a wounded midriff.

[1] *þat* inserted. Lat.: et vulnerata membra indigent ut quiescant.

[3] "*Tisica*, Italis et Hispanis Phthisis."—Dufresne. "*Tissick*, an Ulceration of the Lungs, accompany'd with an Hectick Feaver, and causing a Consumption of the whole Body."—Phillips, 1706. *tysyk*, Hampole, 701. "*þat man þat hath þe tisik & þe etik*," Quintess, p. 17, 7.

[5] *Olibanum*. Thus masculinum. Arab. al-louban (Devic. Dict.). N.E. oliban.

[6] *Penidium*, barley sugar.

If þese signys ben but litil & not strong greuous, þanne ȝeue him metis & drynkis þat mowe swage[1] þe cowȝe, & þanne take a tent þat be not to greet, & wete it *in* þe ȝelke of [2]an ey & oile of rosis, & þanne cure þis wounde as þou doist oþere woundis / Allay the coughing and apply a tent. [2 lf. 90, bk.]

If it so be þat a wounde be in a caua[3] & noon of þe forseid lymes ben not hurt, þanne wete a tent *in* oile of rosis hoot & putte in þe wounde; & whanne þou remeuest þi medicyne ouþer leist þerto ony medicyne, be war þat þer passe out noon eir þoruȝ þe wounde, ne entre *in* noon eir into þe wounde, & þerfore or þou chaunge þi tent, loke þat þou haue þingis þat ben necessarie þerfore redi, þat þe wounde mowe be stoppid anoon, þat þere go no breeþ into þe wounde, ne out of þe wounde / For if þer go ony breþ out, it wole afeble þe patient, & if þer go ony breeþ þere, it wole do harme to þe spaulis. Leie vpon þe wounde oile of rosis & þe ȝelke of an ey, & herwiþ wete þi tent til þe wounde quytture. & þanne euery dai make him to turne vpon his side, & make him cowȝe & spitte out þe quytture, & avoide þe quytture bi þe wounde also. & if þere be myche quytture, & may not be avoidid bi þe wounde, þanne þou schalt make sich a maner waischinge & putte it yn wiþ [4 lf. 91] [4]an instrument maad lijk a clisterie / ℞ .mel ro. ℥ iiij., mirre, fenigreci, farine lupinorum ana ȝ ß, boile hem to þe consumpcioun of þe .iij. part in lī j. of swete wijn, & lī j. of water, & þanne cole hem & putte in þe colature as it is aforseid. Vpon þe wounde wiþoutforþ, from þe tyme þat it quytturiþ, leie þis mundificatif planed vpon a clooþ.[5] ℞ mel ro. lī j., farina ordei substillissimi. ℥ iiij., mirre, fenigreci ana. ȝ j., be þei encorperat[6] & boilid at esi fier / & whanne þei ben weel boilid, & weel medlid togidere so þat it be þicke, do hem doun of þe fier, & do þerto ȝ .iij. of terbentyne waischen & medle hem weel togidere. Þis emplastre þou schalt vse, & þe waischingis þat is aforseid, & þou schalt holde open þe wounde with a tent wet in oile, til þe quytture þat is withynne be perfitli dried / Þis þou schalt knowe bi þe vertu of þe patient & bi þe sauour of his breeþ, & whanne his cowȝynge goiþ awei, & whanne

Make the patient cough out the pus.

℞

a loscion for wondis within the brest

℞

A cleansing (mundificatif) plaster.

One knows by the odour of the patient's breath

[1] *swage.* See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 372.

[3] MS. *canna.* Lat.: Cum autem vulnus est in cassum penetrans. *Cassus,* Pecten. Semibarbaris ex Arabico. Castellus, Lex. Med. *Casse,* Arab. Kas, cup, calice.—Devic. I would rather trace it from Lat. cassus adj. void, hollow, and cassum, i = cassa, orum sb. the hollows. The latter form cassa gave origin to Ital. cassa f. See cassa del cranio, etc.

[5] &. Lat.: super pannum distensum. O.Fr. planer, Lat. planare.

[6] *encorperat.* Lat. incorporatus, O.Fr. encorperer.

if the wound is clean.

his vnkyndely heete goiþ awei / If þou doist alle þese þingis to him
[1 lf. 91, bk.] þat ben aforseid, & þe quytture [1]be not wiþdrawe þerwith, & his
When suppuration continues, a weak patient dies.

cowȝynge & his akynge be not aswagid, & his vertu be feble, & his
spirit be nouȝt, þanne do þou nomore þerto, saue he schal al turne
him to goddis merci // ¶ Saue if it so be þat he haue þe cowȝe &
If the patient is strong, make a new incision.

greet quytture *in* þe wounde, & he be strong, & principali if þer
wexe ony swellyng *in* his side biliinde bitwixe þe .iiij. & þe .v. rib,
þan þere þou schalt make a newe kuttyng & lete out þe quytture,
& bi þis place drawe out þe quytture, & holde þe wounde open,
& lete þe olde wounde close togidere. & if it be nede, caste yn
þe forseid waischinge bi þis wounde & leie a mundificatif wiþoute
Do the same, if blood and pus gather on the midriff.

til þe quytture be al aweie, & þis cure þou schalt folowe / It falliþ
ofte tyme þat a man is hurt an hiȝ aboue *in* þis place, & þanne
þe blood & þe quytture falliþ vpon diafragma & gaderiþ togidere,
þanne þou schalt kerue him bitwixe þe .iiij. & þe .v. rib as it is
aforseid, for þe blood & þe quytture mai haue no cours to þe wounde
aboue; & if he is kutt so bynepe, þanne þe blood & þe quytture
[2 lf. 92] mai be drawe awey; [2]& if þou doist not *þus* þe pacient schal die,
& if þou doist þus þe pacient schal be delyuerid wel // Whanne
woundis ben *in* thorase ouþer *in* þe brest, & þe woundis ne goon
not þoruȝ, þanne þou schalt cure him as it is aforseid *in* opere
woundis //

## Of woundis of þornis[3] ouþer spondilium, & of þo þat ben conteyned in him & anothamie /[4]

¶ vjo co / The spinal column is composed of 30 Spondles or Vertebræ.

BOnys of þe necke, as we haue aforsed, ben .vij, & rigge boonys of þe brest ben .xij, & of þe reynes ben .v. riggeboones, & vndir þe reynes ben .iij. riggeboones, & vpon þe place þat is clepid[5] —þe boon of þe tail is maad of .iij. rigge boones, & þere ben .xxx. ¶ Eueri boon of þe rigge is an hole þoruȝ, & þoruȝ þe ilke hoolis nucha[6] goiþ endelong þe rigge; & euery boon of þe rigge haþ .iiij. addiciouns to him, & summe han mo; þis is not necessarie to telle to a sirurgian, saue it is necessarie to a sirurgian for to knowe þis :

[3] MS. *þorais*. Lat.: De vulneribus spinæ seu spondylium & eorum anatomia. The scribe changed *þornis*, the translation of 'spinæ,' into *þorais*, for *thoracis*, as in the heading to Cap. V. The words: *& of þo þat ben conteyned in him* are taken from the same Chapter-heading.

[4] See *Vicary's Anatomy*, page 74.

[5] One word is here wanting. Lat.: super locum qui dicitur aboratur alahume. *aboratur* is perhaps a corruption for *ab arabis*, *alahume* is the Os sacrum.

[6] *nucha*, Arab. nukha', spinal marrow.

þat euery rig-boon haþ a greet hole, & nucha goiþ þer þoruȝ. & þer ben opere smale hoolis in þe boones bi þe sidis aboutforþ, & þere þoruȝ goon nerues for to holde þe lymes faste [1]togidere. & so þese .xxx. boones ben bounden togidere wiþ stronge ligaturis, & þei ben so strongeli bounden togidere þat þei semeþ al oon boon. þese boones bineþe þe necke is clepid þe rigge ouþer spina, & þis is þe foundement of al þe bodi // Through the Vertebræ passes the Spinal cord. [1 lf. 92, bk.] The Spondles form the Back-bone.

¶ Woundis þat ben maad *in* þis place. If nucha be kutt þoruȝ ouerþwert, þe wounde is mortal for þe nobilte of nucha þat comeþ fro þe brayn riȝt as a ryuer comeþ of wellis.[2] ¶ And þouȝ nucha be not kutt al þoruȝ saue hurt, it is greet perel þerof, for þe lymes bineþe schulen lese her meuynge, for þe nerues þat ben aboute þe boones of nucha ben kutt. & also þe rigge-boones ben kutt & herof cometh greet perel / And if þe braun þat sittiþ endelongis þe rigge in boþe sidis of þe rigge-boon & duriþ[3] from þe heed adoun anoon to þe tail eende, & if ony of alle þese be kutt ouþer prickid, it is greet perel for þe spasme, for þe causis þat ben aforseid / The Prognosis is unfavourable, if the Spinal Cord is cut, or the Spondles, or the Muscles along the Spine are severally injured.

þe curis herof ben lijk to þe curis þat ben aforseid of opere woundis, saue it is necessarie for a cirurgian to knowe pronosticatiuis of þis [4]place, & also if a man be hurt *in* þat place, he mote haue for þe causis aforseid // The Treatment is the same as in other wounds. [4 lf. 93]

## Of woundis of þe stomac / & intestinum & wombe, & anothamia /

¶ vijo. co.

I Haue seid heretofore *in* what maner mery[5] goiþ doun þoruȝ þe necke wiþinneforþ, and goiþ þoruȝ diafragma, & is maad fast with diafragma, & diafragma goiþ aboute þe mouþ of þe stomak. & þe stomak is schape *in* þis maner,[6] & in oon side he is gibbous, & *in* þe toþer side he is more playn. & þe stomac is maad of .ij. cloþis. & þat oon clooþ sitt wiþoute & þat oþer wiþinne, & þe clooþ þat sittiþ wiþinne is villosus & neruous, & þe clooþ þat is wiþoutforþ is fleischi / ¶ In þe ynner clooþ ben longe villis wherof comeþ drawynge, & þere ben villis ouerþwert, wherof The stomach is made of 2 Membranes with longitudinal and transverse fibres.

[2] Rases, Liber ad Almansorem, Tract. I, Cap. 1, ed. Ven. 1506, fol. 2. "Cerebrum quasi fons sensuum est et motus voluntarii, Nucha vero sicut fluuius magnus ab eo manans."

[3] *duriþ.* Lat. distenditur. As to the local sense, compare O.Fr. durer.

[5] *mery*, oesophagus. Arab. *marijun*, windpipe.

[6] In the margin is a diagram of the shape of the stomach.

comeþ wiþholdyngꝫ / In þe clooþ þatꝫ is wiþoutforþ, *þere* ben longe villis, & þatꝫ makiþ expulcioun. Þe *y*nner clooþ is neruous, þatꝫ itꝫ mowe fele whanne itꝫ is ful; wiþoutforþ itꝫ is fleischi for to make him hootꝫ & moistꝫ, þatꝫ he miȝte helpe for to make digestioun. Þatꝫ skyn þatꝫ is wiþinne þe stomak is norischid *with* moisture ofꝫ
[1 lf. 93, bk.] mete [1] þatꝫ is resseyued *into* þe stomac / The skyn þatꝫ is wiþoute þe stomac is norischid ofꝫ blood, þatꝫ comeþ fro þe lyuere *in* smale veynes & goiþ al aboute þe stomac. ¶ Also *þere* comeþ arterijs from þe herte to þe stomak & makiþ him to haue lijfꝫ, & of þese .ij. þingis, þatꝫ is to seie vena & arteria, gibbus[2] is maad þatꝫ gouerneþ þe stomac & þe guttis wiþ his fatnes, & makiþ hem hootꝫ. ¶ In þe botme ofꝫ þe stomak *þere* is a mouþ, and þatꝫ mouþ is more streitꝫ þan þatꝫ aboue. & þe firste guttꝫ is maad fastꝫ to þe lower mouþ, & þis guttꝫ is clepid duodenum.[3] Þis is þe skille whi he is clepid so, for he is ofꝫ þe lengþe ofꝫ xij. ynchis; & þanne *þere* ben .vj. guttis bineþe him; & þanne þis firste guttꝫ is maad ofꝫ .ij. cootis, as alle þe o*þere* guttis ben, butꝫ þe .ij. guttꝫ is smal & folde togidere. Þe .iij. guttꝫ is clepid ieiunum,[4] *id est*, fastynge, for he is euermore voide,[5] & þatꝫ is for he is nyȝ þe galle & resseyueþ myche colre[6] for to avoide him, & *þere* goiþ to him manye veynes, wherbi he is voidid / Aftir him *þere* comeþ a guttꝫ þatꝫ is clepid orobum[7] [8]ouþer a sak, & itꝫ haþ butꝫ oon mouþ, & he resseyueþ alle þe fecis; & *þere* is fulfillid þe firste digestioun ofꝫ þe guttis / Aftir þis guttꝫ þer is a guttꝫ þatꝫ is clepid colon, & lijþ ouerþwertꝫ þe wombe & resseyueþ feces / And aftir þis guttꝫ comeþ langaon,[9] & is þe eende ofꝫ alle; & he haþ .iiij. brawnys, & þerofꝫ he haþ vertu for to wiþholde þe fecis yn, & for to putte hem outꝫ whanne a man wole / Euery meuynge ofꝫ þe guttis is kindely & eueri guttꝫ ofꝫ þese þatꝫ ben aforseid haþ diuers kynde // ¶ Þer ben manye maner causis whi þatꝫ guttis ben folde *with* nerues: þe firste enchesoun is þis, þatꝫ a man schulde notꝫ as soone as he hadde ete, anoon riȝtꝫ go to sege as

Arteries bring life to the Stomach.

The Entrails or Guts: duodenum.

Ieiunum.

Orobum, [8 lf. 94]

where the first digestion is made

Colon.

langaon.

retains and finally evacuates the faeces.

The entrails are nervous .I. that the food may be retained

[2] *gibbus*, mistake for *ȝirbus*. See *Vicary*, page 64. note 2; and page 86, note.

[3] *duodenum*. See *Ibid.* page 65, note 1.

[4] *jejunum*. See *Vicary*, page 65, note 2.

[5] Avicenna, Lib. III., Fen. XVI., Tract. I., Cap. 1, ed. Ven. 1527, f. 248. "et nominatur hoc intestinum ieiunum, quum ipsum inuenitur secundum plurimum inanitum et vacuum."

[6] *colre*. Lat. cholera. Choler, "Bilis."—Huloet.

[7] *orobum*. Lat. orbum. The *Ileum* is here meant.

[9] *langaon*. See *Vicary*, page 66, note 5. Lat. longanon, longao = the straight gut.

doiþ a beestꝫ. Þe .ij. cause is þatꝫ þe mete miȝte abide *in* þe stomak for to make digestion, & þatꝫ þatꝫ is notꝫ fulfillid *in* þe stomak is fulfillid *in* þe guttis. Þe .iij. cause is þis, þatꝫ itꝫ firstꝫ abide *in* oon guttꝫ / & þanne itꝫ is sentꝫ to anoþer & so forþ. & þanne for to holde alle þese þingis / þe stomak & þe guttis is ordeyned a skyn, þatꝫ is clepid þe siphac[1]; & is a syngle skyn & is notꝫ [2]villous, & is engendrid bineþe as is diafragma is aboue, as itꝫ is aforeseid, & is maad fastꝫ atꝫ þe rigge bihinde, for to holde vp þe stomak & þe guttis / In þis partie bineþe þis þer ben engendrid ofꝫ siphac ij. þingis þatꝫ ben clepid dindimi[3] & goiþ adoun al aboute þe ballokis, & is clepid þatꝫ ynner skyn ofꝫ þe ballokis; & þoruȝ þis dindimi goiþ arterijs & veynes to þe ballokis, & makiþ hem haue lijfꝫ & norischinge & kynde ofꝫ sperme // ¶ Alle þese þingis þanne ben comprehendid *in* a skyn þatꝫ is fleischi & ofꝫ lacertis maad, & is clepid mirac, & is clepid þe vttere wombe *in* whiche ben lacertis, for to helpe putte outꝫ þe fecis & wijnd & vrine /

.2. and digested in the stomach

.3. and the guts.

[2 lf. 94, bk.]

Siphac (Great Omentum):

it is continuous in its lower part with the dindimi (Tunica vaginalis).

ciffac is þe inar sken,

mirac the vtter. (Peritoneum)

Þerfore woundis þatꝫ ben maad *in* þe stomac ben perilous, & *in* þe guttis, for manie causis / Þe firste cause is þis, for her worchinge is necessarie to þe bodi, for þei ben þe firste instrumentꝫ ofꝫ digestioun, & her worchinge is so necessarie to þe bodi, þatꝫ itꝫ mai in no maner be susteyned, ne abide wiþoute hem / Þerfore ifꝫ þere be ony woundis *in* þis place her worꝫchinge is lostꝫ, butꝫ ifꝫ þe wounde be soudid anoon; & þatꝫ is ful hard & sumtyme impossible for þei ben neruous, & þere is no fleisch on hem, & also for þei ben alwey meuynge, & principali whanne woundis ben maad in þe hindere partie ofꝫ þe stomac ouþir in þe smale guttis / For ifꝫ þe woundis falle *in* þe neþir partie ofꝫ þe stomac þatꝫ is fleischi, ouþer *in* þe greete guttis bineþe, ifꝫ þe leche be kunnynge, þe pacientꝫ mai lyue /

Wounds of the stomach and the bowels are dangerous, as their functional activity is necessary.

[4 lf. 95]

The patient may recover if the fleshy part of the stomach or guts is wounded. *Nota.*

¶ Ifꝫ itꝫ bifalle þatꝫ a man be hurtꝫ *in* ony ofꝫ þese placis þatꝫ ben aforseid *in* þe stomak ouþer in þe guttis, þe leche muste knowe wheþer þe substaunce ofꝫ þe guttis or ofꝫ þe stomak be prickid þoruȝ or no; þatꝫ þou miȝtꝫ knowe bi þe goyngꝫ outꝫ ofꝫ þe fecis atꝫ þe wounde, & þanne þe wounde is iugid mortal. ¶ Ifꝫ a man be woundid *in* his stomak & þe wounde ofꝫ þe wombe wiþoutforþ ne be notꝫ brood, þanne kutte itꝫ more & þanne sewe the wounde ofꝫ þe stomak wiþ a nedele þatꝫ is iiij. squar & wiþ a sutil þreed, & þis þou schaltꝫ speciali, whanne þe wounde is *in* [5]a fleischi place ofꝫ þe stomak,

A wound which perforates the entrails is mortal.

Sew the wound in the stomach,

[5 lf. 95, bk.]

[1] *siphac.* See *Vicary*, page 62, note 4.
[3] *dindimi*, used elsewhere to signify the Testicles.

for if' þe wou*n*de be aboue *in* a place of' þe stomak þa*t*' is neruous, ne traueile þou not' þe*re* aboute þa*n*ne, for it' is an idil / Wha*n*ne þou hast' sewid þe wou*n*de bineþe as it' is aforseid, þa*n*ne springe

and keep the external wound patent while the stomach heals.

þe*ro*n poudre consolidatif' & soude þe wou*n*de of' þe stomak, & holde open þe wou*n*de of' þe skyn wiþoute, til þe wou*n*de of' þe stomak be hool // ¶ If' it' bifalle þa*t*' a man be hurt' *in* þe greete guttis bineþe, so þa*t*' þe wou*n*de be not' to greet', þa*n*ne þou schalt' sewe þe gutt', & þe eendis of' þe þredis schulen hange out', & þe vtter wou*n*de schal be holde open, til þe wou*n*de of' þe gutt' be soudid ¶ If' it' so be þa*t*' þe wou*n*de of' his wombe wiþoutforþ be so brood þa*t*' þe guttis falle out', putte he*m* yn anoon while þei be*n* hote / If' it' be so þa*t*' þe guttis be colde, or þa*t*' þou come þe*r*to, & þe wou*n*de of' þe wombe be to swolle, & þe guttis be chau*n*gid wiþ þe eir, wherfore þe guttis wole*n* not' *in* a3e*n*, þa*n*ne þou must' sutilli make þe wou*n*de of' þe wombe a litil more, þa*t*' þe guttis [1]mowe li3tly falle yn a3e*n* wiþoute greuau*n*ce. Wha*n*ne þe guttis be*n* y*n*ne, sewe mirac & siphac *in* þis mane*r* togidere, so þa*t*' þei mou*n* boþe be soudid togidere; for if' mirac were soudid & not' siphac, þa*n*ne aftir þe tyme þa*t*' þe wounde were soudid, þe*re* wolde leue a crepature.[2] þe*r*fore þou must' sewe *in* þis mau*n*er / Take þa*t*' oon side of' mirac & siphac togidere so þa*t*' þei be euene, & loke þa*t*' þi nedel be .iij. squar, & þa*n*ne make oon poynt' þoru3 he*m* ij. togidere, *in* þe same maner *in* þe to*þe*r, & þus þou schalt' make þe*ro*n as manie pointis as þou þenkist' necessarie / And wha*n*ne þou hast' sewid mirac & siphac togidere *in* a good mane*r*, þa*n*ne knytte þe þredis togidere þa*t*' þei vnknytte not', as þou seest' þa*t*' is to doi*n*g'; & lete þe eendis of' þe þredis ha*n*ge out', & þa*n*ne springe vpon þe sewynge þe poudre consolidatif' þa*t*' is aforseid, and holde open þe wou*n*de wiþoutforþ til mirac & siphac be pe*r*fitli soudid, for *in* þis mane*r* mirac & siphac mou*n* be soudid bi þis cause: Siphac is neruous & haþ [3]no fleisch, & mirac is fleisch, & bi þe ve*r*tu of' him siphac is soudid; & þa*n*ne do þe cure herof' aftir as it' is tofore // ¶ Su*m*men seien þa*t*' þe smale guttis mou*n* be sowdid *in* þis maner: make a pipe of' eldre, & putt' wiþi*n*ne þe gutt', & þa*n*ne soude þe gutt' þer vpon. & I seie þa*t*' it' is not' soo þ, for þis þi*n*g', þe smale guttis wolen not' soude, & to þe greete guttis þis queyntise is nou3t'; þe*r*fore triste to þe maner þa*t*' is aforseid, & take kepe of' þe pe*r*els þa*t*' be*n* forseid.

and keep the external woundpatent.

Some physicians put a reed-pipe into the wounded intestine before sewing it.

When the bowels fall out from the wound, replace them,

Nota.

sew the Siphac and Mirac together,

[1 lf. 96]

[3 lf. 96, bk.]

[2] *crepature*, hernia.

## Of woundis of þe lyuere & splen & reynes & þe bladdre, and anothamia[1] /

¶ vlij. O•

The firste schapinge of' þe lyuere is maad of' þe .ij. spermes as beⁿ þe oþere principal lymes, saue þe greetnes of' þe lyuere is principali maad of' blood & is iⁿ þe hardnes of' fleisch. & þe substauⁿce þerof' is fleischi, & it' is iⁿ þe maner as it' were blood ruⁿne, & chilus comuneþ fro þe stomac to þe lyuere for to ȝeue hiᵐ norischynge, & þe lyuere is gibbous wiþoute, & wiþiⁿne holow þat' it' miȝte be þe more closynge to þe stomac. & þe heete of' þe [2]lyuere makiþ þe stomac to seþe as fier makiþ a furneis to seþe.[3] ¶ The lyuere haþ addicioun, & ben diuers; for iⁿ suᵐme ben .iiij. & iⁿ suᵐme beⁿ .v. & iⁿ suᵐme beⁿ .iij. Of' sperme þe mater of' þe lyuere wiþiⁿne is gaderid. & þerof' comeþ a greet' veyne & is engendrid in sima[4] epatis, & is clepid þe ȝate of' þe lyuere. & of' þis veyne suᵐmeⁿ seien þat' þere ben engendrid .viij. veynes, & sumeⁿ seien þat' þere ben mo; & þus veynes beⁿ ȝatis riȝt' as rootis of' a tree.[5] & þese veynes beⁿ clepid miseraice / & suᵐme of' þese veynes ben maad fast' wiþ þe botme of' þe stomac, & wiþ a gutt' þat is clepid duodeno, & suᵐme wiþ þe smale guttis, & suᵐme wiþ þe gutt' þat is clepid ieiunum, & suᵐme wiþ orobo ouþir wiþ þe sak //

The Liver is made of blood.

[2 lf. 97]

The Liver is to the Stomach, what fire is to a furnace.

lyuer. From the spermatic part of the Liver comes the Vena Porta.

The Mesenteric veins are branches of the Vena Porta.

¶ Þe lyuere is maad fast' to þe riȝtside of' þe stomac, & iⁿ þe liftside of' þe stomac sitt' þe splene, & is schape along', & is maad fast' with o partie of' þe stomac. & oon partie þerof' is maad fast' twoward þe rigge in þe liftside, & haþ .ij. poris, & þoruȝ þat' oon pore he drawiþ malancolious blood of' [6]þe lyuere, & clensiþ þe lyuere of' malancolious superfluite, & þerof' þe splene is norischid. & þere is anoþer pore þat' goiþ to þe mouþ of' þe stomac, & makiþ þe mouþ of' þe stomac to haue appetite[7] //

The Spleen draws the Melancholic Blood from the Liver, [6 lf. 97, bk.] and incites Appetite in the Stomach.

[1] See *Vicary's Anatomy*, page 68.

[3] "for his heate is to the stomacke as the heate of the fyre is to the Potte or Cauldron that hangeth ouer it."—*Vicary*, p. 69.

[4] *sima*, concavitas hepatis. Matth. Sylv., see Dufr. σιμός, ή, όν, hollow, concave: τὰ σιμὰ τοῦ ἥπατος, the bottom of the liver. Poll. 2. 213, Galen. It is used opposite to κυρτὸς, convex, curved, in Galen ad Glauc. 2.—See *Stephanus Thesaurus*.

Sloane 2463, fol. 40: "*Syma of þe lyuer is as it were þe palme oþer þe holwenesse of þe hond. The vtilite, whi þat it is of suche forme oþer schappe is because þat it schulde ben aplied oþer leyen to þe stomak as þe hond lieth to an appull, whan þe appull is in þe hond.*"

[5] Lat.: venæ quæ sunt ipsi portæ sicut radices arbori.

[7] *De propr. rer. Trevisa*, Lib. V., Cap. 41, Add. 27,944, fol. 57 *b*: "*& Constantyn seiþ þat þe melte is i-set in þe lift side, & þe schap þerof is*

**The Reynes**

Þe reynes ben set', þat' oon *in* þe riȝtside & sittiþ hiȝere, & þat' oon *in* þe liftside & sit' lowere, & ben *maad* of' hard fleisch, & ben sett' *in* two sidis of' þe rigge boon. Boþe þe reynes hauen .ij. veynes ouþir .ij. neckis, & þat' oon is aboue, & þat' oþere is bineþe. Þoruȝ þe necke aboue of' þe reynes is drawe watri blood & comeþ from vena ramosa[1]; & þis watri blood is vryne, & from þe reynes it' goiþ to þe necke of' þe bladdre þoruȝ a veyne þat' is clepid kylym,[2] & in þis maner þe vryne comeþ into þe bladdre /

**draw watery blood from the vena ramosa, and transmit urine to the bladdre via the ureters.**

Þe bladdre is maad of' .ij. þinne skynnes, & boþe skynnes ben neruous, & þe necke of' þe bladdre is fleischi. In men þe necke is long', for it' passiþ þoruȝout' þe ȝerde, & in wymmen þe necke of' þe bladdre is schort', & is maad fast' to the cunte.[3] / Þe necke of' þe bladdre hath oon braun, & is in þe mouþ of' þe bladdre [4]& þat' makiþ a man holde his vryne whanne he wole, & putte out' his vryne whanne he wole, wiþ help of' þe wombe þat' pressiþ, & of' lacertis // ¶ Of' þe galle we makiþ noon anothamie, for al oure science makiþ noon mencioun of' a wounde in þe galle /

**The Bladder has a neck, longer in men than in women.**

[4 lf. 98]

**galle.**

¶ Woundis þat' ben maad *in* þe lymes aforeseid ben euermore perilous / For alle þese lymes, ouþir þei ben principal lymes as is þe lyuere, ouþir þei serueþ principal lymes, wiþoute whiche lymes þe bodi ne mai not' be susteyned / If' þe lyuere be hurt' *in* þe depe substaunce, þanne þe lyuere schal lese al hir worchinge, & al þe blood þerof' wole be disturblid þat' is matere of' þe spirit', & in þis maner þe spirit' of' lijf' is disturblid & þe foundement of' alle hise vertues; saue if' þe wounde of' þe lyuere be but' litil it' may be soudid, so þat' þe wounde be freisch & not' oold hurt', forwhi a principal lyme mai not' suffre longe sijknes // ¶ Þouȝ a man were hurt' *in* þe splene, ȝitt' he miȝte be wel curid, & þouȝ þere were a gobet' þerof' kutt' awey, so þat' it' ne were not' to myche and ouer[5]þwert', for þerof' ofte tyme falliþ þe dropesie; ouþir if' þe poris were kutt', it' wolde afeble þe stomac. ¶ Woundis þat' ben *in* þe reynes ben not' curid,

**Only small and recent wounds of the Liver can be healed.**

**Even severe wounds of the splene can be cured.**

[5 lf. 98, bk.]

*euelong, and is somwhat holouȝ toward þe stomak & bunchinge toward þe ribbis. In þese tweye places he is i-bounde with certeyn smale cloþinge, & me seiþ þat þe melte haþ tweye veynes, by þe on* þerof *he draweþ blak colera of þe blod to þe lyuour, & by þe oþir he sendiþ what sufficeþ to þe stomak to comforte þe appetite* þerof."

[1] *vena ramosa*, Vena Cava.

[2] Lat.: per venam chylim quæ a quibusdam pori uritides dicitur = Meatus Urinarii - Ureter. *Kylym*, from χυλός, juice. See also *Vicary*, p. 72, note 3.

[3] 'Hec vulva, *cunte*." Wright, *Voc.*, p. 677. 32, xvth cent. O.Fr. cunne, Lat. cunnus, *cunte* is a diminutive form like *cunetta* of *cuna*.

for þei ben norischid wiþ watri blood, for þat is *contra*rious to soudinge / & for þe reynes be*n* alwey i*n* meuynge, & also vryne þat alwei is bitynge goiþ þoruȝ þe reynes. ¶ þe bladdre ne mai not be soudid if it be kutt, for it is a lyme þat is neruous & haþ no fleisch, & is alwei meuynge, & for he is alwei resceuynge vryne & also þe vryne fretiþ & þat lettiþ þe soud*ing* / For ypo*cras* seiþ / If þe bladdre be kutt, or þe brayn, or þe herte, þe wounde is mortal. ¶ If a leche be sent aftir, for to come to a man þat is wou*n*did i*n* ony of þese forseid / if þe leche be a man of good loos & a kunnyng man, he schal, whanne he comeþ to þe pacient, & seeþ þe p*er*el þerof, he schal telle þe p*er*el of þe wou*n*de to þe pacientis frendis, & he schal seie to þe man þat is hurt þat he schal ascape & fare weel ; and first he schal make hi*m* haue hise riȝtis[1] [2]of holy chirche, & lete hi*m* make his testament, or þat his ve*r*tu faile / þanne he schal bigynne wiþ his good worchi*n*ge, riȝt as he took no drede þerof / for ofte tyme kinde worchiþ, þat þat semeþ vnpossible to þe leche, & p*r*incipali if he worche wel. Neþeles þouȝ þe leche se goode signys bi þe pacient, he schal alwei haue his owne p*r*onosticacioun as it is aforseid, til þe man be al hool, if he schal ascape / for ofte tyme whanne þe pacient drawiþ toward þe deeþ, his passiou*n* wole aswage ; & also þe contrarie þerof is seen, þouȝ þe pacient haue greet peyne & þe signes of deeþ, ȝitt he mai ascape / & þerfore for þese p*er*els þat ben aforseid, he mot be war of vndirtakynge & of biheest // ¶ If a leche be in straun*g*e cu*n*tre, he ne schal bi no maner wei take sich a cure. & also he schal forsake alle maner of curis þat be*n* harde to do, & also he schal forsake curis þat ben longe for to make ony p*er*fecciou*n* þerof, & he mote be war þat faire biheste, ne vey*n* glorie, ne coueitise ne bigile hi*m* not /

Wounds of the kidney and bladder are incurable, as ypocras says. The physician shall warn the patient's friends, but cheer the patient, [2 lf. 99] and advise him to arrange his spiritual and temporal affairs. *nota.* The physician must never despair, and always remember his first prognosis. He must be cautious in a foreign country.

## [3]Of woundis of þe ȝerde & of ballokis, & of þe regioun of þe bladdre and anothamia.[4]

[3 lf. 99, bk.]

¶ ix. Co

GOd almyȝti þat alle þi*n*gis knewe tofore þe makyng of þe world ouþir of man, he knewe þat a man schulde be maad of moist substau*n*ce, as of sp*er*me, in which natural hete schal worche.[5] & for to resseyue þe mater of sp*er*me, it is necessarie þat

Man's generative organs.

[1] Lat. : primo tamen ipsum faciat confiteri.

[4] Comp. *Vicary's Anatomy*, p. 81.

[5] Compare *Auicenna*, Lib. III., Fen. XX., 1. 1., ed. Venet. 1527, fol. 279 : "Sublimis deus creauit duos testiculos," etc.

a man haue ballokis / He made ballokis as it' was necessarie, & ȝaf' hem schap & complexioun for to engendre / & he ȝaf' a man greet' delite for to lie bi a wo*m*man, so þat' a man schulde not' haue abhominacioun þerof', saue a man schal do it' *with* greet' will & wiþ greet' loue, so þat' generacioun miȝte be multiplied wiþ greet' delite[1] /

It is natural to desire copulation.

The Yard has

¶ Also god almiȝti schop *in* a man a ȝerde. & *in* þe bigynnynge þerof' ben cartilaginis & ben maad fast' to þe laste boon of' þe rigboon, & is maad of' nerues, veynes & arterys, & is sumwhat' holow,

a Glans and Prepuce.

þat' he miȝte be fulfillid wiþ spirit'. & *in* þe heed þerof is fleisch þat' is felynge, & a skyn þat' goiþ ouer & is clepid prepucium. &

[2 lf. 100]

þe meuynge of' þat' skyn [2]& of' þe fleisch tofore helpiþ for to putte

Erection is caused by man's passion.

out' þe sperme / þe risynge of' a mannes ȝerde comeþ of' a mannes herte, & witt' of' þe brayn, wilnynge, & greet' desier; & watri

The yard has two passages, *a.* for urine, *b.* for sperm;

humour comeþ of' þe lyuer. & haþ .ij. open holis; & þoruȝ þat' oon hole goiþ out' vryne & comeþ fro þe bladdre, & þoruȝ þat' opir hole comeþ sperme and comeþ fro þe ballokis. & þese .ij. holis ben

Auicen mentions a 3rd one.

good for to knowe / And auicen seiþ: þat' þere is þe .iij. hole, & þoruȝ þat' hole passiþ a maner of' superfluite þat' a man feliþ not', as whanne he halsiþ a wo*m*man wiþ hise hondis; saue þis þridde hole is not' knowen of' a cirurgian[3] //

The structure of the Testicles.

þe .ij. ballokis ben maad of' hard fleisch *in* þe maner as ben wo*m*mans brestis, & þat' oon ballok of' a man is grettere þan þe toþer & stronger, & to þe ballokis comeþ veynes & arterijs, & makiþ

They make sperm of the purest blood.

hem haue lijf' & norischinge. & superfluite of' good blood & clene comeþ þerto of' alle þe lymes, & gaderiþ togidere *in* a mannes ballokis, & þere it' bicomeþ whiȝt' & turneþ into sperme, riȝt as blood bicomeþ

[4 lf. 100, bk.]

[4] mylk *in* a wo*m*mans brestis / And þer ben maad fast' wiþ þe

The Seed passes along the excretory ducts (Vas deferens).

ballokis .ij. vessels, & ben brode vpon þe ballokis, & narowe toward þe ȝerde, & ben clepid þe vessels of' sperme, & ben clepid of' auicenne

[1] *De propr. rer.*, Lib. V., Cap. 48, Add. 27,944, fol. 60 *b*: "*For as Constantyne seiþ, to covenable getynges & gendringe of bestis god haþ ordeyned & i-made couenable membres, in þe whiche he haþ i-sette þe cause & mater of generacioun, þe whiche may not come forþ in dede wiþoute affeccioun of loue.* ¶ *In þe membres genytal god haþ send such an appetite inseperable, þat eueriche beest schulde be comfortid to multeplie beestis of his owne kynde, and þat is i-doo by schewinge of god, lest ȝif þe doynge of generacioun were abhominable, generacioun of best were i-lost.*" This passage is taken from *Constantinus Afric. De morb. cog. et. cur.*, Lib. VI., Cap. 1, ed. Basil, 1536, p. 122.

[3] *Avicenna l. c.*, "Et in virga sunt meatus tres, meatus vrinæ et meatus spermatis et meatus alguadi." *Matth. Sylv.*: "Alguedi est humor ille qui egreditur, cum aliquis tangit mulierem."

barbachi,[1] & of þese vessels comeþ sperme into þe ȝerde, & þoruȝ þe ȝerde is born into þe matris of wymmen / In þese .ij. vessels sperme is fulfillid, saue þe hete þerof comeþ of þe ballokis; & to þe ballokis as it is aforseid cometh veynes & arterijs, & goiþ þoruȝ dindimous, þat ben maad fast to þe siphac as it is aforseid //

Auicen calls them Barbachi.

¶ þe maris in a womman is maad neruous & is schape as it were a ȝerde þat were turned aȝenheer.[2] & þe necke of þe maris is fleischi, & brawny, & felynge, & gendring, & in þe necke of þe maris ben veynes þat ben to-broke whanne a womman lesiþ hir maydenhode. & þe botme of þe maris is schape as it were þe case of a mannes ballokis / And þe maris haþ .ij. brode ballokis in þe necke, & wiþ þe ilke .ij. ballokis ben maad fast .ij. vessels of sperme, & ben more schort þan a mannes vessels of sperme / And of þese [3]vessels, a wommans sperme goiþ to þe botme of þe maris / And in þe tyme of conseyuynge þe wommans sperme [is] medlid wiþ a mannes / And þe maris of a womman haþ wiþinne .ij. grete concauitees / And þe maris haþ manie veynes, & þoruȝ þe ilke veynes, whanne a womman haþ conseyued, comeþ blood to[4] þe lyuer for to norische þe child. And whanne a womman is not wiþ childe, þoruȝ þe same veynes cometh blood of þe veynes menstrue & is putt out, & in þis maner a womman is purgid of superfluite of blood; & it is maad fast bitwixe þe grete gutt & þe bladdre, & is hiȝere þan þe bladdre, & is maad fast to þe rigge wiþ ligaturis, & in tyme of child berynge þe ligaturis recchiþ, & aftir þat tyme[5] *—— /

Female generative organs.

The Matrix has two ballocks (Ovaries), and two spermatic ducts (Fallopian Tubes). [3 lf. 101]

The Embryo is nourished by blood from the liver.

Menstruation removes superfluous blood.

If þere be woundis in ony of alle þese placis, þei ben stronge perilous for her sutil complexioun, & for her nobilte of worchinge.

Wounds of generative organs are dangerous.

¶ If it so be þat a man be hurt in his ȝerde or ouerþwert in a litil quantite, þou schalt sewe þe wounde, & sprynge þeron poudre, & leie þerto defensiuis, & lete him blood, & diete him with þinne [6]mete, & cure him wiþ good diligence // ¶ If it so be þat a mannes ȝerde be kutt al off ouerþwert, þanne it is greet drede þerof / for þe veynes þat comeþ þerto & þe arterijs & manie nerues, for sumtyme þe pacient mai be deed, or þe blood mowe be staunchid / Saue

Treatment of a wounded yard.

[6 lf. 101, bk.]

If the yard is cut away, death from hæmorrhage may ensue.

[1] *barbachi*, Arab. *bárbah*, 'conduit of water, canal of the urine.'

[2] Galen (ed. Kuehn, vol. IV., p. 635) has originated this curious comparison, which has been copied by the Arab. authors. *Avic.*, Lib. III., Fen. XXI., Tract. I., Cap. I, Ven. 1527, fol. 285 *b*: "Matrix est quasi conversum instrumentum virorum."

[4] *to*, mistake for *from*. Lat.: per quas sanguis ei venit ab hepate.

[5] Some words are wanting. Lat.: partusque completo tempore constringatur.

in þis cas þou schalt take hede for to do awei þe akynge wiþ oile of rosis, anoynte him aboute þe ers & þe regioun of þe ʒerde, & brenne þe ʒerde wiþ an hoot iru for to constreyne þe flux of blood; for a cauterie streyneþ blood tofore alle þingis. ¶ Woundis þat ben in þe ballokis, þei roten hem anoon, & þouʒ a man be not in perel of deeþ þoruʒ þe hurtyng of hem, ʒitt his generacioun is lore / A wounde in þis place schal be curid in þe same maner as woundis in oþere place of þe bodi, & þe cure schal not be chaungid þerof // ¶ If it so be þat a woman be hurt in her marijs wiþ a swerd, ouþir wiþ a knyf, ouþer wiþ a dart, þe wounde is mortal // ¶ If it bifalle þat colon[1] be hurt wiþ sum scharp þing ouþir wiþ hardnes of humouris, he may wel be curid þe while þe wounde is freisch, with putting [2]of vnguentum album rasis of ceruse distemprid wiþ ius of arnoglossa.[3] & if it so be þat þe wounde of þis place be olde, þanne it is for to make a mundificatif þerto, wiþ castynge yn of gotis whay ouþir watir of barly //

Wounds of the Testicles cause Impotence.

Wounds of the Matrix are mortal.

Treatment of wounded Colon.

[2 lf. 102]

## Of woundis in þe haunche and of þe coxe of þe knee, and of boonis of þe feet and of anothomia.

¶ xº. cº/ The Haunch-bones

BOnys of haunchis ben maad fast wiþ þe lattere boon of þe rigboon / & riʒt as þe rigboon susteyneþ alle þe boones aboue, so alle þe boones bineþe ben maad fast to him / þese boones ben cartilaginous & sutil toward þe fore partie, & bineþe þei ben more greet; & euery of hem haþ a box þat is clepid pixis haunche & vertebrum sit þeron.[4] & þat is þe eende of þe hipe boon. & wiþ this boon is maad fast þat boon þat goiþ ouerþwert vndir þe ars aboue þe ʒerde, & is clepid os pectinis. & as summen seien þere ben iiij. partis, saue in cirurgie it is seid al oon. & þe place of þe coniuncioun of þese boones is clepid þe scie.[5] & sumtyme þese boones goon out of þe ioynt, as þou schalt haue a perfit teching [6]herof in þe .iiij. tretis in þe chapiter of dislocacioun / þis hipe boon, as it is

have each a box (acetabulum) which contains the head of the thigh-bone.

[6 lf. 102, bk.]

The thigh-bone

[1] Lat. Se si *collo* vulnus fieri accideret. Phillips. "Collum Uteri, the Neck of the Womb."

[3] *arnoglossum.* Wr. Wü., p. 559. 27 (XIII. cent.) "*Arnoglosa*, i. plauntein," O.E. *wegbrade*, waybread.

[4] Sloane 2463, fol. 42 *b*: "*þei ben cleped ylia other ossa yliorum, and in þe vtter partie of þe mydward of hem ben concauytes other holewnesse, þe whiche ben clepid boystes, in þe whiche þe endes of þe bones of the þiʒes ben receyved inne.*"

[5] *scie*, Med. Lat. scia, from *ἰσχίον*, it means the hip-joint. Wr. Wü., 610. 11 (XV. cent.), "*Scia* an^ce the whyrlebon."

aforseid, is maad fast' aboue wiþ ligaturis & pannyclis & nerues, & it' is a greet' boon & miche holow wiþinne, & is ful of' marow ; & it' is greet', for it' schulde be strong' ; & it' is holow, for it' schulde be liʒt'. & þis boon is maad fast' *in* þe knee, & þere þe boon of' þe hipe & þe boon of' þe leg' ben ioyned togidere *in* a box as it' is aforseid. & þese boones ben bounden togidere wiþ ligaturis & senewis, & vpon þe ioynt' of' þese boones & for to kepe þis ioynture from harm, is ioyned þeron a round boon & is clepid rotula, & of' summen it' is clepid þe yʒe of' þe knee, & alle þese boones ben bounden togidere wiþ strong' ligaturis // ¶ Vndir þe round boon of' þe knee ben ordeyned .ij. boones *in* þe leg', & þat' oon þerof' is grettere & sittiþ tofore *in* þe leg', & þe toþer is smaller & sittiþ bihynde *in* þe leg'. & *in* þe neþer partie þei ben maad fast' wiþ þe boon of' calcanei þat' sus-teyneþ alle þe boones, & *with* alkarad,[1] & þat' is a boon þat' fulfilliþ þe ioynture & is [2]ioyned wiþ þe boon þat' is clepid nauicula / ¶ Racheta[3] of' þe foot' is maad of' iiij. boonis, & ben bounden togidere wiþ ligaturis. & wiþ þese boonys ben maad fast' þe bonys of' þe toos þat' ben .xiiij., for euery boon haþ .ij. boones, saue þe boon of' þe grete too, & þat' haþ but' .ij. boones / to alle þese boones comeþ nerues fro þe riggeboones—& wiþ þese nerues, & *with* þese ligaturis, & wiþ symple fleisch þese boones ben maad fast' togidere —& ʒeueþ to þese lymes meuynge & felynge. & þer ben greete brawnes *in* a mannes leggis & *in* hise hipis, & ben ful of' grete veynes & arterijs & senewis, & ben departid into alle þe leggis & to þe feet' / & summe of' þese veynes comeþ fro a veyne of' þe lyuer, þat' is clepid vena ramosa as it' is aforseid *in* armys. & þerfore þese placis ben swiþe perilous, whanne þei ben woundid, for þe perels þat' ben aforseid. & þese veynes ben departid in þe foot', & .ij. þerof' ben *in* þe holow of' þe foot' wiþoutforþ, & þat' oon veyne þerof' is clepid sciatica, & þat opere is clepid renalis, [4]& þis is þus miche to seie : þat' oon veyne serueþ for þe scie, & þat' oþer for þe reynes / þanne þer ben ij. oþer veynes *in* þe holow of' þe foot' wiþinne, & þat' oon is clepid sophena, & þat' oþer is clepid vena ventris, *id est* a veyne of' þe wombe. ¶ þe veyne þat' is clepid renalis scheweth it'-silf' bitwixe þe lift' too & þat' oþer too next, & þe blood-letyng' of' þis veyne is good for þus manye þingis : for cancrena þat' ben in

is hollow and

is joined with the leg-bone in the knee.

Rotula.

The two bones of the leg

articulate with the Calcaneus and Astragalus.

[2 lf. 103]

Nauicula.

The Racheta has four bones articulating with the fourteen Phalanges.

The nerves confer movement and sensation to the leg.

The veins of the lower limbs start from the Vena Ramosa (Vena Cava), which divides into the

Sciatica and the Renalis.

[4 lf. 103, bk.]

Saphena, Vena ventris.

[1] *alkarad*, Lat. alchaab, from Arab. *al kab*, a die.

[3] *Racheta*, Lat. Rasceta, from Arab. *rusgh*, which means the carpus or the tarsus. The Rasceta pedis is not exactly our tarsus, as it comprises only the three Cuneiform bones and the Cuboid bone.

þe hipis & for a mormal[1], & for varices & for vlcera þat' ben *in* þe hipis ouþer *in* þe leggis.

Wounds of the lower extremity are dangerous.

Bi alle þese skillis þou myȝt wel se, þat' woundis þat' be maad *in* þese placis ouerþwert' ben swiþe perilous for þe kutting' of' nerues & of' cordis & braun, & of' veynes & of' arterijs, for alle þese þingis goiþ endelong' þe leggis & þe hipis, & perfore woundis þat' ben maad ouerþwert' *in* þis place ben swiþe perilous as it' is aforseid //

Treatment of such wounds.

¶ Woundis þat ben maad in þes placis þat' ben curable, schulen be curid *in* þe same maner as it' is aforseid *in* curis of' armys & of' hondis / Saue of' o þing' þou schalt' take kepe, þat' woundis þat' ben maad iij. fyngris brede wiþinne þe knee, for þe [2]nobilte of' þe place & for þe causis þat' ben forseid, þe wounde is iugid mortal / þerfor woundis þat' ben in þese placis þat' ben forseid & ben curable þou must do good diligence perto, & be wel war of' woundis þat' ben mortal as it' is aforseid //

[2 lf. 104]

¶ The techinge of' þe .ij. tretis is fulfillid þoruȝ þe help of' god, & now schal bigynne þe techinge of' þe .iij. tretis & schal conteyne .xvij. chapitris /[3]

the þerd book conteynes viij. c.[4]

## Here bigynneþ þe þridde book.

¶ i°. c° /

## Of þe engendryng of heeris //[5]

HEeris ben engendrid of' greet' fume & of' viscous mater, & þe more hoot' þat' a man is, þe more heer he schal haue[6] / & per falliþ manie amendementis of' heeris.[7] ¶ First' we wolen speke for to make heer fair, & aftirward of' opere sijknessis þat' falliþ *in* placis of' heeris.

[1] *for a mormal*, ad malum mortuum, a severe form of leprosy. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 343.

[3] Inserted by the translator; the number of the chapters is incorrect. Lat. Add. 26,106, f. 44 *b*: "Incipit tractatus tertius, et erit de curis morborum, qui non sunt vulnera, qui possunt accidere diuersis membris a capite usque ad pedes, que veniunt ad curam cyrurgici, qui continet tres doctrinas et est capitulum primum doctrine prime, tractatus tertii de ornatu capillorum."

[4] The marginal note ought to be: *þe firste doctrine of the þerd book conteynes VIII. C.*

[5] A list of passages on the same subject from works of Lat. and Arab. authors is given by Adams, *Paulus Aegineta*, vol. I., p. 339 (for "Rhases ad Mansor, VI. 1.", *ibid.*, read "Rhases ad Mansor, V. 1.").

[6] De propr. rer. Add. 27,944, fol. 66 b.: "*And here is i-bred and comeþ out of fumosite hoot & drie.*" Compare *Vicary*, p. 24.

[7] Lat.: quibus multa accidunt corrigenda.

¶ If þou wolt make longe heeris, ouþer if þou wolt make heeris wexe long, dissolue a litil mustard *in* wat*er* of decoccioun of bletarum[1] & waische þerwith ofte, & þanne anoynte with comoun oile. A wash to make the hair grow long.

¶ If þou wolt make heeris ȝelow, þou schalt do *in* þis man*er*. R. mirre ℥ iiij., lupinor*um* amaror*um* ℥ vj., [2]flos salicis, fecis vini combusti an*a* ℥ .iiij., grinde hem wel togidere & distempere hem wiþ lie maad of askis of vinis, & herwith anoynte þe heeris aftir þe tyme þat þei ben wel waissche wiþ þe forseid lye // An ointment to dye the hair yellow. ℞ [2 lf. 104, bk.]

¶ If þou wolt make hem blac[3] ℞ stercus irundinum, & enulam siccam, & orobum,[4] semen raphani & sulphurus, & florem capillaris[5] succus, grinde alle þese wiþ a galle of a bole ouþer of an oxe & tempere hem wiþ vinegre, & herwith anoynte hise heeris, & first þou schalt fumie[6] hem wiþ sulphur, & þus þou schalt do ofte. & þou schalt anoynte him with oile of sambuci, þat is maad of whit flouris of ellern, & leid *in* oile rȝt as me makiþ oile of rosis. ℞ An ointment to dye the hair white.

¶ If þou wolt kepe þe eendis of þe heeris fro fretynge, kutte hem alle euene & ȝeue þe pacient good mete, & anoynte ofte his heed with oile & watir medlid togidere, & anoynte herwith ofte / & anoynte it with muscillage seminis lini & psillij[7] // A treatment to keep the ends of the hair from splitting.

¶ If þou wolt make heeris crisp ℞ farinam fenigreci, & mirre, & semen raphani gallarum, gummi arabici, calcis abluti, & wynde alle þese þingis & frote þe heeris, and þei [8]wolen bicome crisp. ℞ An ointment to make the hair crisp. [8 lf. 105]

¶ If þou wolt kepe heeris þat þei schulen not falle awei. ℞ ladani[9] .℥ j, & resolue it in ℥ iiij of oile of mirtilles & herwiþ anoynte þe rootis of þe heeris / ¶ If þou wolt saue heeris fro hoornes so þat þei bicome not whit, þanne it is necessarie for to kepe him fro al maner þingis þat engendriþ fleume, & fro greet studijnge,[10] & fro fisch þat is rotid, & fro roten wijn, & he mote ofte An ointment to keep the hair from falling off. ℞ Feed well in order to prevent the hair from getting gray.

[1] *bleta*, Alphita, p. 22, "*Beta major*, uel *bleta* uel *bletis*, atriplex agrestis uel domestica." [3] *blac*, O.E. blâc, albus.

[4] Lat.: orobum, qui appellatur in gallico uicia.

[5] Lat. florum cappa.; *capillaris* is a mistake for *capparis*, the caper plant. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. Caper 1.

[6] *fumie*, Lat. suffumigare. Compare *Macer. Engl. Translat.*, xvth cent., Sl. 2527, f. 251: "*make therof a suffumygacyon.*"

[7] *psillie*, Wr. Wü., p. 559. 6 (XIII. cent.), "*psillium*, i. lusesed." Cooper, "psyllion, the herb called fleawort."

[9] *Ladanum*, Laudanum, Labdanum. "A gumme that runneth from the hearbe Lada, and is much used in Pomanders."—Cooper.

[10] *fro greet studijnge*, Lat. a fastidio. The correct explanation is given in De propr. rer. lib. VII. Cap. 44. Add. 27,944. fol. 91b: "*And fastidium is vnskilful abhominacioun & wlatsomnes of mete & drinke and most greueþ þe vertu of fedinge and of norischinge, for as Isidir seiþ, fastidium is i-seide as it were makinge noye & disese, for a man þat haþ abhominacioun haþ noye and disese in þing þat anothir haþ solas in & lykinge.*"

purge fleume with turbit', and vse strong' wijn & a litil, & vse sutil
℞ sauce, & vse of' þese þingis: R. mirabo*lanorum*,[1] kebulo*rum* indo*rum*, emblic*orum*, & bellic*orum*[2] ana.,[3] & grinde hem alle with oile of almondis longe, & þanne tempere hem vp with wijn & hony, & eueri 4
morowe he schal take þerof' þe quantite of' a note / And þow schalt' die hise heeris if' þei ben white, wiþ tincture þat' ben forseid //

A hair-dye. ¶ If' a man desiriþ for to haue blac heeris as doiþ greuis[4] &
℞ spaynardis, þanne make þis tincture. R foliorum mirti, folio*rum* 8
papaueris rubij, capilli, ciperi, spice, semin*is* bletarum, apii, ana ℥ j., seþe hem in iiij lī of' watir, til þei come to o pound, & þanne cole[5]
[6 lf. 105, bk.] hem & do þerto lī. j. of' oile of' violet'[6] & boile hem in a double vessel til al þe watir be waistid awey; þanne caste into þe oile ℥ ſs 12
of' acacie, & make aischis of' pyne applis, whanne þe kirnels ben taken out þerof', & medle hem alle togidere, & kepe þis oynement'. & herwiþ anoynte heeris þat' þou wolt' make blake.

## Of allopucia þat is namys of fisik þat signifieþ diuers passiouns / 16

¶ ij°c NAmys of' phisice þat' signifieþ diuers passiouns vndir oon name ofte tyme bigiliþ a leche, & bringiþ him into greet' errour / For comounli al maner lesing' of' heer is clepid allopucia[7]; saue for 20
The falling off of the hair called Alopecia is a sort of Leprosy. to seie þe soþe, allopucia is a maner spice[8] of' lepre þat' comeþ of' rotid fleume / Saue in þis chapitre I wole speke of' allopucia þat' falliþ oonli in þe heed. Allopix in grew, is seid a fox in latin, for a fox in sum tyme of' þe ȝeer his heer piliþ awei, & þerfore fallyng' 24
The disease is called awei of' heer is clepid allopucia / ¶ Tinea[9] is as miche to seie as a

[1] *Mirobolans*, a kind of Plums.—Phillips.

[2] *Chebuli*, *Emblici*, and *Bellirici* are different kinds of Mirabolans. See Tommaseo Diz. [3] Lat. ana partes equales.

[4] Greeks. [5] *cole*, Lat. colo, strain through a sieve.

[7] De propr. rer. Add. 27,944, fol. 66 b.: "*And if suche fumosite faileþ nouȝt, but is infect or i-lette by som opir humore, þan failinge and lak of heer is nouȝt propirliche ballidenes, but a special yuel þat phisicians clepen allopiciam. ¶ By þat yuel þe nurtur of heer is corrupt & faileþ, & þe heer falleþ & þe ferþe partye of þe heed is bare, and þe furþer skyn of þe heed is þe foulere. ¶ Soche men faren as foxes, for þe heer of hem falliþ happiliche for inmoderat and passinge hete. ¶ Allopes in grew, vulpes in latyn, a fox in englische.*"

[8] *spice*, Lat. species. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 355, "a Spyce; species." As to the pleonastic use of *spice*, compare: *a maner kynde of sponges* (leaf 109).

[9] De propr. rer., *ibid.*, fol. 80: "*Also þe heed is ofte diseȝid wiþ an famuler passioun, þat children haue ofte, and by constantin þat yuel hatte squama, skalle, & we clepiþ þat yuel tynea, moþþe, for it fretiþ & gnaweþ þe ouer partie of þe skyn of þe heed as a moþþe fretiþ cloop & cleueþ þerto wiþoute departinge & holdinge þe skyn wel faste.*"

reremous, for þe heeris of' a reremo*us* be*n* alwey aboute þe heed, & þ*er*fore cirurgians makiþ differe*n*ce bitwixe allopuciam & tineam, for þei [1]clepid tineam þ*er*e þat' þ*er*e is corrupcio*un* *in* þe skyn wiþ harde crustis & quytture / Saue allopucia is wh*a*nne þe heeris falliþ awei wiþoute ony wise of' þe skyn.[2] Tinea when attended by corruption of the skin. [1 lf. 106]

¶ Allopucia þat' is wiþoute comeþ of' þe skyn,[3] & sumtyme it' comeþ *in* þe eende of' a siknes for defaute of' norischinge of' þe bodi þat' schulde helpe to norische þe heeris, ouþir it' comeþ, for þe poris openeþ to myche / In þis cas it' is necessarie for to augmente norischinge of' þe bodi wiþ good metis þat' engendriþ good blood, & frote wel þe heeris of' his heed wiþ þi*n* hond & anoynte it' wiþ oile of' mirtillor*um* / If' þis suffise not', frote wel þe heeris of' his heed w*i*th þi*n* hond til þe skyn of' his heed bicome reed; & þ*a*n frote it' wiþ ryndis of' an oynou*n* til it' bicome drie, & þ*a*nne þ*er*e wole arise þ*er*e vpon, as it' were, bladdris, & þ*a*nne anoynte þe place wiþ grece of' a maulard. & wh*a*nne þe heeris wexen a3en, lete schaue hem ofte, for miche schauynge is good þ*er*fore / Alopecia arises from want of nourishment. Treatment of this disease.

If' it' so be þat' allopucia comeþ of' vijs[4] of' humouris, þat' þou miȝt' knowe bi þe teching' [5]þat' is aforseid *in* allopucia þat' comeþ of' long' sijknes; for if' it' come of' vijs of' humouris, þ*a*nne vlcera wole be i*n* þe skyn. Þ*a*n þou must' loke of' what' humour it' come, þat' þou miȝt knowe bi disposicio*un* of' al þe bodi & bi þe colour of' þe place, as if' þe pacient' be fleischi & wel colourid, & if' þe fleume of' his mouþ be swete, & þe pustulis þat' be*n* *in* his heed be reed, & if' his vryne be þicke & reed, & if' he be 3ong', & if' he etiþ metis þat' engendriþ miche blood, & if' vlcera be *in* þe skyn, & if' al þe skyn be reed & ful of' quytture, alle þes ben signys of' aboundau*n*ce of' blood. If' it' so be þat' his bodi be leene, & þe colo*u*r of' þe place be rufus ou*þ*er 3elow, & vlcer be drie, it' is signe þat' colre is þe cause / If' his bodi be sumwhat' whijt', & if' he haþ smale veynis, & if' he haue miche moisture *in* his mouþ, & if' his vryne be whijt' & þicke, & if' he þirstiþ not', & if' þe place be whijt' & neische and miche moisture þ*er*on wiþoute*n* ony bre*n*nynge, it' is a signe of' fleume / If' þe colour of' his bodi be derk ou*þ*er blac, & if' he be leene, & if' his vryne be pale & þi*n*ne, [6]& if he haþ greet' appetit', & if' his blood be blac, & if' he vsiþ miche for to ete beef' & caul, & The skin is ulcerated, [5 lf. 106, bk.] if the disease is caused by bad humours. Signs for telling whether it is caused by superabundance of blood, by choler, by phlegm, [6 lf. 107]

[2] *withoute ony wise of þe skyn*, Lat. absque cutis vitio apparente; *of viis of humouris*, Lat. propter humorum malitiem.

[3] Mistranslated from the Lat. alopecia quæ sine cutis est vulnere.

[4] See note 2.

oþere þingis þat engendriþ malancolie, & if þe place of þe siknes be
or by melancholy. ledy & hard, þat is a signe of malancoli, saue þis passioun comeþ
ful seelde of malancoli, but if it be of greet corrupcioun, & þanne
it is worse þan ony oþer aforseid / 4

First remove the cause of the disease. Whanne þou knowist of what humour it comeþ, first þou
must auoide[1] þat humour, for þis is a general rule of .G., for as .G.
Galion. a generalle rulle off galyen. seiþ / First, þou must do awei þe cause, & I woole teche þee to
auoide þe matere with fewe medicyns þat ben approued & ben 8
laxatiuis, profitable, & ben necessarie for a cirurgian for to knowe
alle þe maner of purgaciouns, for ellis he schal neuere wel worche
If the patient is full of humours, bleed and purge. in sich maner causis / If it so be þat a man be ful of humouris, þou
must first bigynne for to lete him blood, if he be strong & in age, 12
þat is, & not to ȝong ne to oold. & þan lete him blood, ouþer garse
him, & þan afterward purge him, saue it is bettere to purge him
[[2] lf. 107, bk.] first, & þanne wiþinne a few daies lete him [2]blood / If it so be þat
blood be oonli þe cause, þanne it suffisiþ ynow for to lete him 16
blood / ¶ If it so be þat þou dissoluest þe water wiþ a laxatif, &
if þou letist not him blood tofore ne aftirward, þanne þou art not
sure; for ofte tyme þe medicyne laxatif wole engendre a feuer, &
principali if it be hoot / 20

To purge coler ℞ ¶ Colre schal be purgid in þis maner / ℞ violarum ℥ j., prunorum ℥ j & ß, sebesten .xv. in noumbre, iuiubas .xx., seþe hem in
iij lī of water, til þei come to lī j, & cole hem, & resolue þeron
cassia fistula[3] ℥ j., thamarindorum, manne ana ℥ ß., & boile hem a 24
litil togidere, & þan cole hem, & aneuen do þeron poudre of mira-
bolani citrini ℥. j., & of rubarbe, & amorowe cole hem, saue chaufe
it a litil first, & distempere it with ℥ ß of sugre rosarum, & lete
℞ him drynke it[4] / ouþer wiþ þese pelottis[5] / ℞ aloes cicotrini[6] .ℨ j., 28
mirabolani citrini, rosarum rubearum ana .ℨ ß., scamonie quintam

[1] *avoide*, Lat. evacuare. See *N. E. Dict.*, avoid, 1.

[3] *cassia fistula*, see *Alphita*, p. 35, and *Adams l. c.*, vol. III., p. 429. It is *Cassia fistula* L., the pudding-pipe tree.

[4] The following prescription is omitted in the text, but written in a different hand at the bottom of lf. 107 bk.: *pro colera* ℞ *cantaridarum, mane, medulle cassia fistule ana* ℥ ß, *myrbol, eytri*[*ni*] ℨ *ij, boylle in lī* ß *watir, to the halfe put therto* ℥ *j suger* & ß ℨ, *& drenk yt.*

[5] *pelottis*, Lat. pillis, Fr. pelote, a little ball. Phillips. "Pellota (in the *Forest Law*) the ball or round fleshy part of a Dog's Foot." Charta de Foresta, 1225: in *Annales de Burton. Annales Monast. Luard*, vol. I., p. 233: "Talis autem sit expeditatio [canum] per assisam comitatuum, quod tres ortilli abscidantur siue *pelota* de pede anteriori."

[6] *aloes cicotrini*, Lat. sucotrini, for socotrini, so called from the island Socotra.

*partem* .3. j., þat' is to seie þe .v. part' of' 3., & make þerof' pelottis *with* sirupo violac*eo*. & þis is good to ʒeue to a strong' man / Also þese ben good pelottis for to purge clene colre / ℞ mirab*olani* ℞
citr*ini* .3 j., scamonie cocte .ϑ ß, mastic*is* [1]*gra*na iij., grinde hem & [1 lf. 108]
*tempere* hem vp wiþ ius of' iouis barba,[2] & make þerof' pelottis & þis ius, but' coll*ige* on ʒest'.[3] ¶ þis þou must' wite þat' whanne þou wolt' purge colre, first' þou muste make a *prepara*tijf' tofore *with* oxisacra[4] & wiþ metis þat' ben colde & moist' & wiþ reste.

¶ If' þou wolt' purge fleume þou schalt' to þis medicyne þat' Maister William of' Salerne vside / ℞ turbit' albi gummosi .3 j & ϑ j, diaʒinʒiberos .3 ij., & medle hem togid*ere* & make herof' a gobet', & medle þerwiþ a litil of' sirupe of' ros*is*. ¶ It' is good forto medle ʒinʒiberos wiþ turbit' for þat' wole comforte þe stomac & defie fleumatik humouris, & also it is good for to ete eu*ery* dai fastyng' wiþouten ony medlynge of' ony laxatif' / ℞ ʒinʒiber*is* albi .3 j., liquericie rase .3 iij., gariof*ili* cardamoni, nuc*is* muscat*i*, gr*a*nor*um* p*a*radisi .3 ij., ʒuc*are* albissime .lī .ij., & make herof' a letuarie not' to hard soden; ouþir wiþ þese pelottis: pulu*eris* pigre,[5] turbit' electi an*a* .3 x, pulpe coloquintide .3 iij & ϑ j, grynde all þese & sarce hem,[6] & temp*ere* hem vp wiþ oile of' almondis & make þerof' pelottis, & herof' þou myʒt' [7]ʒeue at' oonys 3 ij. ¶ þe poudre of' pigre þat goiþ [7 lf. 108, bk.] to þese pelottis is good þouʒ it' were bi it-silf'.[8] & it' is swiþe comoun, & *Rasis* & A. acorden þeron, & hali abbot' & serap*ion*[9] / ℞ ros*arum* rubea*rum*, mastic*is*, xilob*alsami*, spice, cassie lignie, aʒari an*a*,[10] aloes þat' it' be good, double to alle. ¶ If' fleume be medlid wiþ ℞

To purge Flem l. h.

A prescription of William of Salerne

A powder used by Rasis & Auicen

[2] *iouis barba*. med. L. for Sempervivum tectorum. Add. 15,236, fol. 4: "*Iouis barba. semperuiua idem. G. Iubarbe A. siluegrene.*"

[3] *zest*, Lat. et sit dosis una. "Zest, a chip of orange . . . it is also sometimes taken for a short afternoon sleep or Nap: as to go to one's zest."—Phillips. Zest (chip of orange), Fr. zeste, Lat. schistus—zest (nap), Esp. siesta, Lat. sextus.

[4] *oxisacra*—Oxysaccharum, a Composition of Sugar and Vinegar.—Phillips.

[5] *pigre*, πικρός, η, όν, sharp, bitter. Matth. Sylv.: "Pigra Gal. in dinamidiis .i. amara, quæ amaritudine sua morbos & humores expellunt."

[6] *sarce hem*, Lat. cribellentur. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 318. "a Sarce, colum." Phillips. "Scarce or Sarce. a fine Hair Sieve." Lat. serica, Ital. sargia, Fr. sarge.

[8] *be it-silf*. The *N. E. Dict.* s. v. by 4, gives examples for the early occurrence of 'by oneself' = alone. The first reference for 'by itself' is quoted by Shaks.

[9] *hali abbot & serapion* are not named in the Latin text. Hali abbot, also called Hali þe abbot, is Ali the son of Abbas, a Persian physician (994), the author of 'al muluki' = the Royal. See *Sprengel II.*, p. 412.

[10] Lat. ana partes equales.

colre, þanne do [þerto][1] þe forseid pelottis of' turbit', of' scamonie .ʒ ij. & ß, sticados arabici[2] .ʒ .v, & þanne þou schalt' do þerto turbit' .ʒ .v—& it' was aforseid .ʒ x *in* þe resceit' tofore—& þese

cochium Rasis. pelottis ben clepid cochium rasis, & þis is þe beste þing' þat' mai be 4 for to purge dyuers humouris þat' ben in þe heed / I ne knewe no medicyn laxatif' þat' is so good, þat' is so profitable for to purge ij· humouris þat' ben medlid togidere as þis medicyn is / For þere ben opere medicyns as sure as þis, saue þei ben not' so myʒty. Also 8 þere ben opere medicyns more miʒty, saue þei ben not' so sure.

To purge melancole ℞ ¶ þou schalt' purge malancoli wiþ þis liʒt' medicyn þat' is ofte ʒeue / ℞. epithimi .ʒ j., & boile it' *in* lī j. of' gotis whey, saue þou schalt' boile it' but' a while, & lete hem stonde so al nyʒt', & a morowe 12

[3 lf. 109] chaufe [3]it a litil & cole it', & ʒeue it' to drynke; ouþer make it' wiþ

℞ a decoccioun of' Epithimi Rasis ℞ mirabolanorum indorum .ʒ x, pollipodij ʒ .v, sene ʒ vij, turbit' ʒ iij, sticados .ʒ x, sepe alle þes in iij lī of' watir, til it' come to j. lī., & þanne do þerto epithimi 16 ʒ .x, & lete it' boile a litil, & þan sette it' adoun fro þe fier; & whanne it' is cold cole it' & do þerto sugre ro. ℥ j., & ʒeue it' to

A stronger medicine: ℞ drynk in diluculo / If' þou wolt' make a medicyn þat' is more strenger, ʒeue first' bi iij. houris þese pelottis. ℞ aloes ʒ j., salis 20 indi ʒ .ß., agarici .ϑ ij., ellibori nigri þe .iiij. part of' a ʒ., & make herof' pelottis wiþ hony, ouþer make herof' a sirup.

After having purged, proceed to the local cure; use rubbing and mild medicines, if necessary—stronger ones

Whanne þou hast' wel purgid þe mater, þanne þou must go to þe cure in þis maner / Loke if' frotyngis and liʒt' medicyns þat ben 24 seid in þe firste bygynyng' of' þis chapiter suffise in allopucia þat' ben not' vlcera, saue oonli fallyng' awei of' heeris. If' þe forseid medicyns wolen not' serue, þan þou muste make stronger / ℞ spume

℞ maris, þat' is a maner kynde of' sponges,[4] saue it' is more sutil & 28

[6 lf. 109, bk.] more whit', ʒ x. baurac[5] .i. [6]nitrum, in þe stide herof' we moun do þerto sal gemme, sulphuris, euforbij ana ʒ .ij., staphisagrie, cantaridarum ana .ʒ j, grynde alle þese togidere & make hem wiþ oile,

℞ & anoynte herwiþ his heed. ¶ If' þou wolt' worche more stronglich 32

For rich people use an ointment of Cantharides. aboute þe place þat' þe heeris ben pilid awei, & principaly if' he be a riche man: ℞ olium de ben[7] .ʒ j., cantaridarum & kutte awei þe

[1] Wanting.

[2] *stecados* or *stickadone*, Cassidonie or French Lavender. Minsheu.—Stoechas d'Arabie. Pharmacopœa Gallica.

[4] See page 179, note 1. [5] *baurac*, Arab. = nitrum.

[7] "*Ben* or *Behn*, the Fruit of a Tree, like the Tamarisk, about the bigness of a Filberd, which the Perfumers bruise to get the Oil out of it, not so sweet smelling of it-self, but proper to receive any sort of Scent."—Philipps.

hediȝ þerof & þe wyngis ana .3 j., stampe a litil cantarides & leie hem *in* oile of violet,[1] & sette þe viol[2] vpon soft colis & lete hem boile, & putte *in* a smal sticke, and alwei meue hem & it wole bicome al into an oynement, & make it haue a sote smel wiþ musco, & herwiþ anoynte his heed; & þis wole make bladdris arise þeron, & it wole make heeris to growe. Saf þou must take hede, þat in medicyns þat ben cantarides ynne, þei wolen make a greet brennyng, and þat brennyng wole be yuel to take awei. & sumtyme it falliþ þat þoruȝ þat brennyng comeþ a feuer. First, þou schalt helpe þis caas[3] *in* þis maner: þou schalt anoynte þe place *with* vnguentum [4]album þat schal be seid *in* þe antidotarie / [4 lf. 110]

Inflammatory symptoms, such as fever, to be treated with unguentum album.

¶ Vlcera þat ben *in* allopucia ouþer tinearum[5] summe ben curable & summe ben incurable; if it be so þat þe substaunce of þe skyn be not to hard, þanne þou schalt traueile þereaboute. Also if þe skyn be hard & calose,[6] þanne it is seid incurable // ¶ If þere ben pustulis þat ben hote & ful of blood, & þe skyn be ful of humouris & neische, þanne it is good for to garce þat skyn, & þanne waische al his heed with þat blood hoot, & þanne hile[7] his heed wiþ caule leuis. & þanne aftirward anoynte al his heed wiþ oile of notis ouþer of camomil hoot, til al þe scabbis þerof be wel tobroke. & þanne bigynne for to drie with þese driynge medicyns / ℞, argillam rubeam þat it be neische & clene wiþouten grauel & wiþouten stoonys, & distempere it with strong vinegre, & make it as it were an oynement, & þerwiþ anoynte his heed // ¶ Item, argillam partes ij., sulphuris viui, cineres corticis, cucurbite siccos[8] pulpe colloquintide ana partem j., distempere hem with vinegre [9]& anoynte herwiþ. þis is good þing þerfore & drieþ swiþe vlcera þat ben hoot, & alle pustulas þat ben in þe heed & in þe face; þis drieþ & soudiþ // ¶ If þe matere be corrupt & swiþe hoot & brennynge, first þou schalt aswage þe heete wiþ vnguentum album rasis þat schal be seid *in* þe antidotarie, & anoynte þerwiþ al his heed, & þanne leie þerevpon a lynnen clooþ wet *in* þe iuys of stooncroppe,[10]

Ulcers accompanying Alopecia or Tinea are sometimes incurable.

Treatment, if there are blood-pustules, and if the skin is full of humours.

℞

[9 lf. 110, bk.]

Cool with unguentum album and a lotion.

[1] *in oile of violet*, Lat. in oleo in fiala.

[2] *viol*, Lat. fiala. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 129, s. v. fialle.

[3] Lat.: Primo casu succurre cum unctione . . . . in secundo casu ponas egrum in balneo.

[5] Lat.: Vlcerosarum autem allopiciarum seu tinearum.

[6] *calose*, Lat. callosus. The references in *N. E. Dict.* are later.

[7] *hile*, O.E. helan. [8] MS. *siccage*.

[10] *stooncroppe*, Wright W., 712. 35. "Hec vermicularis, stoncroppe." Lat.: crassula minor Add. 15,236, fol. 175 b.: "*Cassula minor frigid. sicc. teste de soriz. stoncroppe.*"

& lete þis lye þeron til al þe brennynge be aweie, & þanne aftir þis anoynte his heed wiþ oile of violet. & þanne hele his heed wiþ leuys of bletarum til al þe skyn bicome moist & neische & wiþoute brennyng, & þanne drie it vp & soude it wiþ þingis þat ben afor- 4

Treatment of Tinea in an early stage.

seid // ¶ Item, if tinea be[1] newe, þou schalt do þerto anoþer maner cure / ℞, abrotani agrestis,[2] fumiterre, lappacij acuti,[3] artemesie[4] ana .m. j. boile alle þese in oile til þei bicome al drie þeron, & wiþ þis oile anoynte his heed manye daies, & þanne sprynge þeron 8 poudre of staphisagre & of elleboro; wiþ anoyntyng of þis oile þe

[5 lf. 111]

matere schal be [5] taken out of þe skyn, & wiþ frotyng of þis

Treatment, if there is much phlegmatic (liquid) matter in the skin.

poudre it schal be dried // ¶ If þe mater be fleumatik þat is in þe skyn, & if þere be[6] myche corrupcioun þeron & if þe skyn be 12 crusty,[7] þanne waische his heed wiþ a decoccioun of malowis in watir, & þanne anoynte his heed wiþ oile of camomille & oile of notis medlid togidere; & whanne it is anoyntid, hile his heed wiþ caule leuis, & þus þou schalt do manie daies til þe skyn be more 16 scabbid[8] þan it was. & þan frote it wel wiþ an oynoun til þe skyn bicome hoot & reed, & þan þou schalt waische his heed wiþ lye maad wiþ aschis of a vine, & þeron schulen be dissolued wijndrastis brent.[9] & whanne þou hast waische his heed herwiþ, þan 20

An ointment for removing the hair.

℞

þou schalt anoynte his heed wiþ þe oynement þat wole pile awei þe heeris / ℞, calcis vif ℥ iij., arsenec ℥ j., aloes ʒ .iij., & make herof a poudre & tempere hem togidere wiþ seþing hoot water, & herwiþ take awei hise heeris, & þan waische his heed azen wiþ þe lye þat 24

Another for restoring the hair and skin.

[10 lf. 111, bk.]

to mak heres grow

℞

is aforseid til þe matere be wel dried / þan for to make þe heeris [10] wexe & for to regendre skyn & soude it, þou schalt anoynte þe place with an oynement þat is maad þus / Take aischis maad of a mannes heer ʒ j, fecis of oile, lynseed ana. ℥ iiij, mirre ʒ j & ß, 28 staphisagre .ʒ .ij., euforbij .ʒ j., make þerof an oynement // ¶ If

Treatment, if the matter is melancholic (cold and dry).

þe matere come of malancoli, þou must take hede to make þe matere neische and moist wiþ waisching of a decoccioun of violet & fumiterre in water, & anoynte it wiþ oile of violet til þe matere be 32 resolued & þe skyn bicome neische, & þe pacient schal ete moist

[1] *not*, erroneously inserted. Lat. Item fit aliter cura tineæ novæ.

[2] *abrotani agrestis*, Wr. Wü., p. 544. 20, *suþerwude*. Add. 15,236, f. 14 bk.: "*Abrotanum. gallice aueroyn. anglice suthernewode*." See *Alphita*, p. 1.

[3] Add. 15,236, f. 17 bk.: "*Lapacium acutum. anglice reddoke*."

[4] *Ibid.*, fol. 12: "*Artemisia. A. mugwort*."

[6] *be*, in margin. [7] *crusty*, Lat. crustosus.

[8] *scabbid*, Lat. ulceratus. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 320.

[9] Lat.: in quo dissoluta sit fex vini combusta.

metis, & þou schalt baþe lim in swete watir, & þan þou must drie it vp wiþ medicyns þat drien þat ben aforseid /

A general prescription of Galion for skin-diseases.

Þis is a medicyn þat is approued of G. & is good for tineam & vlcera þat ben harde in þe heed, & for pustulis þat ben clepid saphati,[1] & for impetiginem & morpheam,[2] & for fallyng awei of heeris, & for al maner scabbe. ℞, gallarum .3 iij., seminis secute 3 .ij., baurac .3 j. & þe iiij part of [3 i],[3] sulphuris vif 3 ij. & ß., arsenec rubij, aristologie rotunde ana ℈ ij, salis armoniaci, fulliginis, amigdalarum [4] amarum, colloquntide, eris vsti, venarum citrinarum, & in stide þerof þou miȝt take lumbricos terestres brent, litargirij, capparum foliorum, fice sicce,[5] radices canne siccarum, flos eris, alumnis sicci, rosarum, mirre, aloes, olibani ana 3 ß., picis liquide, foliorum oliue, vellis vaccini, ana .3 j., grinde hem sutilly & tempere hem wiþ eysel, & sette hem in þe sunne in a vessel of glas, ouþer in a vessel of erþe glasid[6] wiþinne, & meue hem wel in þe sunne, til it bicome al an oynement, & herwiþ anoynte his heed, til it be perfitly hool, saue þou muste take kepe of þingis þat ben aforseid þat þe humouris be purgid /

℞

[4 lf. 112]

## Of þe fallynge of heeris //

Baldness is caused by old age, by sickness, by a corruption of the humours.

CAluiciem is a fallyng awey of a mannis heeris tofore, & is as miche to seie as ballid. & oon cause herof [is][8] kindely as whanne a man is oold for to be ballid, & oon þerof is vnkyndly, as whanne a mannis heeris falliþ awei for sijknes as it is aforseid & remedijs þerfore in þe nexte chapiter here tofore. & if þis cause come for elde þanne it is incurable // ¶ Also ballidnesse [9] comeþ of humouris rotid þat ben vndir þe skyn as it is in allopucia & tinea, & þe cure herof is bi avoidyng of humouris as it is aforseid.[10] ¶ þe

[9 lf. 112, bk.]

[1] *Saphati*, Hebr. Sapahath.—Philipps. "Saphatum, a dry Scurf in the head."

[2] *morphea*, a skin-disease. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 243, s. v. Morfew.

[3] Add. 26,106, fol. 46 b.: et quartam partem 3 i[us].

[5] *fice sicce*, Lat. fisti sicce. Halle Table, p. 87: "Fistakia so named bothe in Greeke and Latine, and vulgarly Fistici, are the frutes of a tree." Fisti-nut, from fistick-nut.

[6] *glasid*, vitreatus.

[7] This paragraph is omitted in the printed editions of Lanfranc's Surgery and in Add. 26,106. It is preserved in Roy. MS. 12. C. XIV, fol. 32, where it forms part of cap. II, but with a separate heading. The translator took it for cap. III, but did not alter the following chapter-numbers. [8] *is*, wanting.

[10] De propr. rer., lib. V., cap. 66, Add. 27,944, fol. 67: "*Ballidnes is priuacioun and defaute of heer, and comeþ of defaute of moist fumosite in þe formere partye of þe heed; so seiþ constantyn. . . . Ofte þe heer of men*

cause whi þat' makiþ a man ballid ben þese / as whanne þe skyn recchiþ along', & if' his bodi be drie & þinne & his skyn hoot', þan
℞ þou must' do þis cure / Take oliu*m* mirtinu*m* & oliu*m* de mast*ice* ou*per* oliu*m* ladani, & anoi*n*te *per*wi*th* his heed. & if' þe tyme of' þe ȝeer be coold, þou muste anoi*n*te hi*m* wiþ oliu*m* de spica //

Treatment, if the patient is young,

¶ Wh*a*nne a m*a*nnes heeris falliþ awei so i*n* vnkyndeli tyme, as þe while he is ȝong', þan make hi*m* a baþ & anoynte hi*m* wiþ camomille & wiþ bittir[1] almondis & wiþ oile maad þerof' // If a man

if the skin is tender.

bicome ballid for cause þat' his skyn is to neische, þese ben þe signys þerof' as whanne a man haþ fewe heeris & sotil / þanne take oliu*m* mirtinu*m* & oliu*m* mast*icis* wiþ oilio laurino, & herwi*th* anoi*n*te his heed, wh*a*nne hise heeris ben schaue*n* awei // ¶ Item, take capilli vene*r*is, ladani ana, grinde hem & medle he*m* wi*th* wijn & wi*th* olio mirtino / If' a m*a*nnes heed be waische*n* [2]herwiþ, it' wole make hise heeris longe & make he*m* sitte faste / Also take wate*r* þat' bletis ben soden yn & a litil mustard, & þerwiþ waische hise heeris & afte*r* anointe hi*m* wiþ oile // ¶ Also to make heeris þat' þe falle not' / take leuys of' mirte & sette he*m* i*n* wate*r* til þe watir þerof' bicome al troubly þan take li .j of' þe wate*r* & oliu*m* enfantini or of' oile þat' is vnripe & medle he*m* togidere. & þan seþe he*m* til þe wate*r* waaste awei, & þanne caste þerto canel & ladanu*m* grounde*n* & resolued i*n* wijn, & make herof' an oynement' & anointe herwiþ þe rotis of' þe heeris /

[2 lf. 113]

An ointment for preserving the hair from falling off.

## Of litil pustulis þat wexiþ i*n* a m*a*nnes face or i*n* children hedis /[3]

¶ iij°. c°/

Saphati, a scab on the head and face.

SAphati be*n* litil pustule þat' wexiþ i*n* a mannes heed & i*n* children forhedis & her face, & p*r*incipali i*n* wo*m*mens facis, & also i*n* me*n*nys facis þat' be*n* moist', & makiþ su*m*tyme crustis / For

Treatment of Galion.

to cure þis passiou*n*, here þou schalt' haue a good medicyn of' .G. þat' is aforseid of' aischis of' cucurbite & argilla // ¶ Children mou*n* be holpen þerof' if' her norice absteyne hir fro salt' metis & scharpe & fro strong' wijn[4], & þe child schal be baþid i*n* a decoccioun of

*þat ofte seruen venus falliþ and bredi þ baildnes litil & litil. . . . And if a man is withoute hed-her, he is i-holde þe more vnhouest.*"

[1] MS. *butir*. MS. 12. C. XIV, fol. 32 bk.: cum amigdalis amaris.

[3] Lat., Add. 26,106, fol. 47: "pustule parue que nascuntur in capite fronte et facie puerorum."

[4] Gul. de Salic., lib. I., cap. 2, Sl. 6. fol. 55 b.: "*This seknesse is not bred but in children, when þei souken, and it ys clepid a crost, and it ys mad in hem in þe forhed and in þe hede. . . . The cure of it ys þat euery*

camo*mile* [1]& rosis & fenigreci, & þou schalt anoi*n*te þe place wiþ oile of camomille hoot // ¶ Furfurea ben a maner of squamis .i. schellis þat comeþ of brennyng þat is *in* þe skyn ; if þei be frotid wel wiþ a manys nailis, þei wole*n* falle awei, & sumtyme þei be*n* liȝt & wolen falle awei wiþ þe heeris, wha*n*ne þei be*n* schaue & wiþ waischingis of hoot wat*er* / If þis suffise not þ*er*fore, anoynte his heed *with* an oynement maad of farina ciceris & þe seed of malowe uisci temp*er*id *with* vinegre / If it be not remeued herwiþ, anoynte hi*m* wiþ þis oynement // Take farine ciceris .ʒ iij, farine fenigreci, sulphuris viui, nit*ri* croci,[2] sinapis an*a* .ʒ .iiij., temp*er*e hem wiþ vinegre and watir /

[1 lf. 113, bk.]

Furfures (dandriff).

Ointment.

℞

## Of clooþ[3] þat is clepid fraclis or goute roset.

iiijo. oo.

PAnnus is a sup*er*fluite þat falliþ *in* a wo*m*mans face, & comeþ ofte *in* childberyng, & also wha*n*ne hir menstrue is wiþholde, & is as it were a man*er* ledi[4] colo*ur* or p*ur*pur, & sumtyme it is medlid myche wiþ blak, & it comeþ alwei of malancolio*us* mat*er*e. & þou schalt first purge þe mat*er*e *with* a decoccioun of epithi*mi* & gotis whey, & þou schalt make þat [5]he leue metis þat engendriþ malancoly, & þa*n*ne take seed of raphani *in* a newe ly*n*nen clooþ, bittir almou*n*dis, mele of benis, seed of melonu*m* & curcurbite, stampe hem alle togidere & temp*er*e hem wiþ wat*er* & dissolue a litil safron & hony & make þ*er*of an oynement, & herwiþ þou schalt anoynte hir face at euen late, & amorowe þou schalt waische hir face *with* a colature of bran // ¶ If it so be þat þis passiou*n* be oold, þa*n*ne þow schalt make a stronger oynement wiþ þe same oynement, & do þ*er*to eruca þe seed þ*er*of, & argentu*m* viuu*m* slayn[6] wiþ spotil, & pepir & mirre,[7] & temp*er*e hem wiþ oximel, & sumtyme it is nede to sette vpon þe place watir lechis. & after þat anoynte it wiþ þe poudre of catapucie[8] & staphisagre temp*er*id

Pannus, a skin-disease on the face, which affects women, when they are with child.

Apply a purging medicine,

[5 lf. 114]

an ointment,

and leeches.

*day þe place most be anointed with oyle of camomille hoot. And þe noryse absteine hyre fro flesses, and fro chese, and fro scharp metis.*"

[2] *croci*, for *crossi*.

[3] *clooþ*, translated from Pannus. Lat.: De pannis, cossis et gutta rosacea et de lentiginibus et cicatricibus vulnerum.

[4] *ledi*, from "lead." Lat. lividus.

[6] *slay*, Lat. extinguere, precipitate. Comp. H. G. Niederschlag.

[7] *mirre*, mistaken from Lat. *nitro*.

[8] catapucie. Add. 15,236, fol. 74 bk.: "*Catapucia, semen spurge, catapuste, spurge sed.*" The original meaning "a medicinal preparation" is shown in Aelfr. Gloss.: "*Catapodia, a swylfende drenc.*" Compare *N. E. D.* s. v. catapuce.

Auicen. ℞ vnguntum amegdalarum.

with hony // ¶ Also a medicyn of A. for þis passioun / Take argenti viui .ʒ j. gm amigdalarum ʒ ij. medle hem togidere & stampe hem til þou se noþing of þe quik siluer, & do þerto seed of melonis maad clene .ʒ iij., stampe alle þese togidere & anoynte herwiþ hir face aneue & amorowe; waische hir face wiþ watir [1] þat violet haþ leye þeron / Lentigines[2] ben purgid wiþ a strong purgacioun & wiþ a strong medicyn þat ben forseid for pannum //

[1 lf. 114, bk.]

Cossi are small pustules on the face.

¶ Cossi[3] ben litil pustulis & harde þat ben engendrid in þe face, & principali aboute þe [nose],[4] & þei makiþ þe place reed, & þerfore þis medicyn is good. ℞, sulphuris viui .ʒ j, & make it to sutil poudre, & leie it in a pound of watir of ro. in a glasen vessel, & stoppe wel the mouþ þerof, & hange it in þe sunne in þe monþe of Iulij & august bi xv. daies, & euery dai þou schalt meue þe vessel, & with þis watir þou schalt anoynte his face þere þat þe passioun is //

dubium ℞

Gutta rosacea changes the colour of a man's face.

¶ Gutta rosacea,[5] þat is a passioun þat turneþ þe skyn of a mannys face out of his propur colour & makiþ þe face reed. & þis passioun comeþ of humouris brent & abidiþ in þe skyn, & herfore is a good purgacioun þat purgiþ salt humouris. & þis is þe medicyn / ℞, litargiri, auripigmenti, sulphuris viui, viridis eris ana[6] & poudre of litil meis[7] brent, & of þis poudre half so miche as of alle þe opere. & þis schal be poudrid wiþ .ij. partis of trifolij [8] & þe .iiij. part of swynys grese freisch, & make of alle þese an oynement. & on euen anoynte herwiþ his face, & amorowe waische his face wiþ a decoccioun of semina frigidorum[9] & wiþ a litil campher, & þan make his face clene, & þan anoynte his face wiþ olio tartarino,[10] & al þe

A purging medicine.

[8 lf. 115]

[2] "*Lentigo*, a Pimple, or Freckle; a small red Spot in the Face, or other Part, resembling a Lentil."—Phillips.

[3] Gulielm. de Salic., lib. I., cap. 63, Sl. 277, fol. 12, mentions as skin-diseases: *þe ampte, þe teter* and *þe ryngworm*. Dunglison identifies the ringworm with *cossi*, deriving it from Lat. cossis, or cossus, *m.*, a worm that breeds in wood. The description given by Gul. de Sal. differs entirely from Lanfranc's description of *cossi*.

[4] *nose*, omitted in MS., but space left free. *Dubium* in margin refers to it. Lat. circa nasum.

[5] De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 65, Add. 27,944, fol. 100 b.: "*And nurphea is al in þe skynne, & lepra in þe fleische & in þe skynne; þis infectioun is but litil diuers from infeccioun þat hatte gutta rosea, þat infectiþ þe face wiþ smale pymples, and comeþ of a gleymy & a MS. & bloody & colerik humours, þat ben bytwene felle and fleische.*" Sl. 563, fol. 17 b.: "*þo rose goute.*" Gutta rosacea vel rosea, Rosy Drop or Whelk. (Dunglison.)

[6] The dose is omitted, so it is in Add. 16,106, fol. 47 b. Prints: unc. 1.

[7] *meis*, "mice." Lat. pulveris parvorum suricum. *meis* is probably an error for *miis*.

[9] MS. *fin*.

[10] The translator has omitted the prescription of oleum tartarinum, given

remenaun$^{t}$ herof$^{t}$ þou schalt$^{t}$ do of$^{t}$ þis cure & fulfille wiþ medicyns as it$^{t}$ is aforseid / ad pannum /

¶ Cicatrices vulnerum ben remeued wiþ litargirum nutricum, & is good for manie maner þingis, for it$^{t}$ doiþ awei wennys, and it$^{t}$ doiþ awei scharpnes of$^{t}$ þe browis & gendriþ good fleisch *in* woundis & fretiþ awei wickid fleisch, & is maad *in* þis maner / Take litarge & grinde it$^{t}$ sotilli in a morter & caste þerto a litil vinegre & þanne a litil oile of$^{t}$ ro., & þus þou schalt$^{t}$ do til it$^{t}$ come to a perfit$^{t}$ oynement$^{t}$ /[1]

To remove the scars of wounds.

℞

## Of icchinge & smertynge[2] and scabbe.

¶ Capo. vo. pruritus

Icchinge & scabbe comeþ of$^{t}$ salt$^{t}$ humouris, & a mannys kynde haþ abhominacioun þerof$^{t}$, & putteþ[3] hem out$^{t}$ of$^{t}$ þe skyn,[4] & þis falliþ ofte of salt$^{t}$ metis & scharpe metis & of$^{t}$ [5]wiju þat$^{t}$ is strong$^{t}$; & it$^{t}$ falliþ ofte to hem þat$^{t}$ wakiþ & traueiliþ & vsiþ no baþing$^{t}$ & weriþ no lynnen cloþis, & þis is oon of$^{t}$ þe siknes þat$^{t}$ is contagious, for o man mai take it$^{t}$ of$^{t}$ anoþer / þis maner sijknesse comeþ sumtyme of$^{t}$ blood, sumtyme of$^{t}$ fleume, sumtyme of$^{t}$ colre, sumtyme of$^{t}$ malancolie / Also scabbe, sum is drie & summe is wet$^{t}$ / If$^{t}$ it be drie, it$^{t}$ schal propirli be clepid icche / And if$^{t}$ it be moist$^{t}$, it$^{t}$ schal be clepid scabbe / To þe cure herof$^{t}$ þou schalt$^{t}$ avoide salt$^{t}$ fleume, þou schalt$^{t}$ defie þe matere wiþ þis sirup / ℞, abstinthij,

Itch and scabs arise from acid humours,

[5] lf. 115, bk.]

and are caused by salt meat, strong wine, and filth.

They are contagious.

Dry scab is called itch.

Treatment of scabs.

℞

in the Lat. Original. It is written by a later hand on the margin of lf. 114, bk.: "*oylle off tarter.* ℞, *tarter off whyt wyn made in pouder temperd w*$^{t}$ *venygre as past, bynde yt in a clothe & put yt vnder embers, to yt be welle brent; þan put yt in a ston pot with an holle benethe. & þis ys oylle off tarter.*"

Two prescriptions, which are not in the Lat. Original, are added on the same place:

"*aqua pro guta rosacha:* ℞, *lytargiri. argenty viui ana* ℥ *iiij, acety alby li. i, boyll yt to couschoun*[a] *in an erthen veselle, let stande & clere & keep yt.*"

"℞. *salt ar.* 3 *i, saltpeter* 3 *i, salt comun* 3 *i, clere water* ℥ *iiij, mixte togeder with y*$^{e}$ *sexte part off a* 3 *off camffer, let colle, put thes ij waters togeder.*"

[1] The following prescription, translated from the Lat. Original, is written by a later hand on the margin of leaf 115: "*Item gos gres & dow & diaculum, alle sycatryues it rectyfyes.*"

[2] *smertyng*, Lat. pruritus.—Prurigo, emertung, Wr. W., 114. 3.—*emertung*, is probably a mistake for *smertung*, to O.E. *smeortan.* [3] MS. *putte.*

[4] De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 62, Add. 27,944, fol. 99: "*Schabbe is corrupcioun of þe skynne, & comeþ of corrupt humours þat beþ bytwene felle and fleissche, & hurtiþ & greueþ & defouliþ þe body. For as Constantine seiþ, kynde puttiþ out euel humours to þe vttir parties of þe body to clense and to purge þe inner parties.*"

[a] consumption.

abrotani, cuscute, fum*us* terre, an*a* m̄ .j., & take xx. damascenes & xij. figis, & vj. datis, sene ℥ j, thimi, epithim*i* .℥ ß., seþe hem wel in lī iij of water & lī j. of vinegre til þei come to lī j. & dī. cole hem & do þerto iuys of fumi terre & sug*ur* lī .j. & ß, & make þerof a sirup & herwiþ defie þe mat*ere* / & þan þou schalt purge him wiþ
℞ þese pelott*es*, ℞, aloes optimi, cortices mirab*olani*, citr*ini*, an*a* .℥ j stampe hem & temp*ere* hem *with* iuys m*aad* of fumi terre, til þei be þicke as it were hony, & lete it drie til þer mai be m*aad* gobetis
[1 lf. 116] þerof & m*aad* þerof pelottis, & herof þou schalt ȝeue þe [1]weiȝte of ij. ℥. at oonys, & þis medicyne mai be rehersid ofte. ¶ Also blood leting is good þerfore, if op*ere* p*ar*ticlis acordiþ þerfore // ¶ Also gotis whey is good þerfore, in which be leid mirab*olani* wiþ sugre, & ofte
℞ take, for þat clensiþ miche, & is maad in þis man*er* / In lī .j of gotis whey leie ℥ j. of mirab*olani* citr*ini* powdrid an eue, on þe morowe heete hem & cole hem & do þerto ℥ .j of sugre ro. // ¶ If it be drie
Treatment of dry scab. scabbe, hoot watir is good for to baþe him ynne, in which is soden fumi terre & enula, lappacij acuti, & in þe baþ anoynte him *with* oile of ro. & iuys of ache & vinegre, & herw*ith* his bodi schal be
An ointment made by Rasis. wel frotid in þe baþ ouþ*er* in a stewe // ¶ Also an oyment þat rasis made for þe scabbe þat is drie / ℞ salis *communis*, salis gemme,
℞ elleb*ori*, nigri costi. ℥ .j., picis liquide ℥ vj., olium violarum & aceti, & herof make an oynement / & anoynte herwiþ in his stewe & frote him wel, & aftir lete him be þerinne by an hour, & aftir baþe him in a decoccioun of bran & lappacij acuti, enule campane[2] & arthe-
de scabi humida. *misie* // ¶ If þe scabbe be moist / þan make an oynement of rasis /
℞ ℞, argenti viui extincti, [3]& in þis maner þou schalt sle[4] it: leie it
[3 lf. 116, bk.] in a peuter disch & spete þeron, & frote it wiþ mannes heeris, & do
eleborus nygr. þerto: whit litarge, elleb*orum* nigrum, alumen[5] vetus, oleandrum an*a*, grynde alle þese togidere & temp*ere* hem *with* vinegre,[6] & herwiþ al his bodi schal be anoyntid at euen, & at morowe he schal be stewid,[7] and whanne he swetiþ his bodi schal be frotid wiþ vinegre // ¶ Also

[2] MS. *compare.* [4] *sle* = slay. See p. 189, Note 6.

[5] *alumen*, on margin.

[6] The following passage omitted by the translator is written on the bottom of lf. 116, bk., by a later hand: "*& olio communi miscantur de quo totum corpus unguatur in cero, mane intret stupyam et cum sudaueret ffricet corpus cum usne et aceto. vsne .i. mosse off the oke.*"

*usne*, Arab ouchna. See *Littre-Devic.*—"Usnea, a kind of green Moss which grows upon Humane Sculls that have been lying in the open Air for some years, and which is used in Physick."—Phillips.

[7] *he schal be stewid*, Lat. intret stupham. See Skeat, *Etym. Dict.*, s. v. stew.

aʒen scabbe & icching', first' lete þe pacient' blood, & make hi*m* þis oynement' / ℞, sulphuris viui & tm̄[1] de sale & tartaro, grinde he*m* ℞
wel togidere til it' bicome i*n* þe maner of' an oynement', & wiþ þis oynement' anoynte þe pacient', & þis wole delyuere hi*m* fro icching' // ¶ Also if' þe pacient' haue greet' bre*n*nyng' & greet' icching', þanne anoynte al his bodi wiþ oile of' ro. þat' be*n* good, & lete hi*m* reste so .vij. daies // ¶ Also for þe same cause / ℞ succus affodillor*um* & ℞
dist*em*pere it' wiþ whit' hony & anoynte hi*m* herwith, whanne he goiþ out' of' his stewe; for þis oynement' doiþ awey filþe of' þe skyn and clensiþ myche /

## Of morphue[2] and impetigine[3] //

[‡ lf. 117] ¶ vj°. c°

The school of Salerno

and the Arab physicians differ as to the names of the diseases.

NOw we han medycyns dr*a*we*n* of' .ij. wellis & of' manie maistris, þat' is to wite: of' Salerne, & of' Costantyn, & Platearij, & of' Iohannes de *sancto* Paulo & of' o*per*e manie auctouris, as of' Ipocras, Galien, & Serapion, & Isaac, & Iohanne[s] Mesue, Auicen / Hali þe abbot', & Rasis, & of' o*per*e manie auctouris / Alle þese auctouris speciali ʒeue it' us, saue þei acorden not' i*n* names / [5]Forwhi impetigo, serpigo & morphea ben seid i*n* salerne diuers names, for þat' men of' salerne clepen albam & arabes clepen impetigo morphea / & men of' salerne clepen morpheam / men in arabie clepen it' albarec /[5] & þerfore I wole i*n* þis book teche þe

[1] MS. *tm̄*, tantum. This prescription is neither in the prints nor in Add. 26,106, but preserved in Roy. MS. 12 C XIV, fol. 33 b.

[2] *morphue.* See p. 187, Note 2. N.E. morphew, Med. L. morphea, Fr. morphée, Ital. morfea, is probably the Latinized form of an Arab. past part. marfu, connected with marf, 'thin.' See *Lane Lex.*, p. 1132.

The derivation given by Tommas: *μορφή*, is unsatisfactory. Phillips: "Morphew, a kind of white Scurf upon the Body, from the French Word *Mort-feu*, i. e. dead Fire; because it looks like the white Sparks that fall from a Brand extinguished."

[3] De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 63, Add. 27,944, fol. 99: "*And þis euel hatte impetigo, for it lettiþ and greueþ þe skyn and þe fleissch, namliche with tikelinge and icchinge. Also þis euel hatte serpigo, as it were a crepinge euel, for it crepiþ into þe skynne al aboute as it were a serpent oþir an addre, & infectiþ þe skynne and defouleþ it wiþ smale skales aftir cracchinge and clawinge.*"

Lib. VII., cap. 65, fol. 100: "*Morphea is speckes in þe skynne, and comeþ of corrupcioun of mete and drinke, and what is lepre in þe fleische is morphea in þe skynne. Also som morphea is white & comeþ of fleume, & som is blak & comeþ of malencolia, & som is red & comeþ of colera oþir of blood.*"

[5–5] The passage is corrupt. Lat.: Nam serpigo, impetigo, morphea sumuntur aliter apud salernitanos aliter apud arabes. Quod enim salernitani vocant

Serpigo is an acidity of the skin.

difference of' eue*ry* of' he*m*, & afte*r* þat' þe curis of' hem / & I seie þat' serpigo is a scharpnes of a mannes skyn, & it' is clepid serpigo, for it' passiþ fro place to place. Þou schalt' cure it wiþ gu*m*me of' cheritrees distemper*id* wiþ vinegre, ouþ*er* gu*m*me of' plu*m*tre & anoynte wiþ buttir & turbentyne. & þis oynement' is good þ*er*fore / Take gres [1] of' a doke clene purid, ysopi humide, oliu*m* ro., ȝelow wex, terbentyne, mussilaginis se*min*is citoniorum [2] ana, make of' alle þese an oynement', & anoynte him þ*er*wit*h* amorowe, & þanne waische him *in* watir þat' þer haþ leie þ*er*on semen melonum & violet'. & be he ofte baþid wiþ sich swete wat*er*. & good swete mete is good for he*m* þat' engendriþ good humouris //

Treatment:

[1 lf. 117, bk.]

℞

Impetigo, a disease, where the skin gets white.

¶ Impetigo is anoþ*er* maner passiou*n*, as wha*n*ne a ma*n*nys skyn chau*n*giþ *in* oþ*er* colour þan it' schulde, & pr*o*pirli *in*to whit' colour & wiþouten ony harmyng' of' þe skyn. & þ*er* is no þi*n*g' þ*er*on þat' harmeþ a man, saue oonly þe colo*ur* of' þe skyn chaungiþ oþir þan it' schulde be // [3]

Morphea, a kind of leprosy confined to the skin.

¶ Morphea is a passiou*n* þat þe skyn is out' of' his pr*o*pir colour & þe skyn is harmed þ*er*bi. & morphea is a spice of' lepre þat' sitt' *in* þe skyn; for riȝt as lepre sittiþ in þe fleisch, *in* þe same maner riȝt' so morphea sittiþ in þe skyn. [4]

Albaras.

¶ Albaras. [5] Not' oonly þe skyn, saue þe fleisch is harmed þ*er*bi / þis is þe difference of' albaras & morphea / In morphea þe v*er*tu of' expulcio*n* [6] is strong' / & þe mater [7] þ*er*of' is but' litil, & þ*er*fore it' is al putt' *in*to þe skyn / In albaras þe v*er*tu of' expulcio*n* is but' feble & þe matere is corrupt', & þ*er*for it' is boþe *in* þe fleisch & in þe skyn, & þ*er* is but' litil difference bitwixe albaras & lepre, saue albaras abidiþ alwei *in* oon place, & lepre goiþ *in*to al þe bodi / In boþe þese causis it' is nede for to avoide humou*r*is þat' be*n* *in* þe cause [8],

Nota

[7 lf. 118]

Albaras is a local disease of the flesh and the skin.

serpiginem, arabes vocant alunda. Et impetigo apud arabes est morphea, et apud salernitanos aliter et aliter apud nos. Quod autem Salernitani vocant morpheam, arabes vocant albaras.

[2] *Citonia* = Cydonia, quince.

[3] Lat. Add. 16,106, fol. 48 bk.: et non peccat ibi nisi color.

[4] Not in the Lat. Origin.

[5] *Albaras*, Arab. al-baras, leprosy. Compare *Avicenna*, lib. 4, fen. 7, tract. 3, cap. 9, and ff.

[6] MS. *expulsif*. Lat.: virtus expulsiua.

[8] *humouris þat ben in þe cause*. Lat.: Conveniunt in hoc quod omnis humoris indigent euacuatione peccantis. *N. E. Dict.* s. v. cause, q. b. gives references for *to be in cause*: to be to blame.—*Littré Dict.* (14th cent.) ils en sont en cause.—Dufr. gives several references for *in causa esse*: to be ill, from *Causa*, morbus.

sauc þat' oon mote haue stronger medicyns þan þat' oþer. ¶ Impetigo muste haue abstynence fro þingis þat' engendriþ fleume, & he muste haue a purgacioun for to purge fleume / Anoynte þe place wiþ oile of' whete þat' is maad in þis maner / Take whete & leie bitwixe two platis of' iren hoot' / & presse hem togidere & þerof wole bicome oile // ¶ Also in anoþer maner / Take .ij. vessels of' erþe, so þat' þe mouþ of' þe oon vessel go to þe mouþ of' þe toþer vessel, & þat' oon vessel schal stonde in þe erþe, & in þe vessel aboue þou schalt' do þi whete, & þou schalt' stoppe þe mouþ of' þe vessel þat' is aboue þat' þe whete is ynne with a plate of' bras ouþer of' iren þat' is bettere, [1]& þe plate schal be ful of' smale holis. & þan þe mouþ of' þis pott' schal be ioyned to þe mouþ of' þe pott' þat' is in þe erþe with good lute, þat' þere mowe noon eir out' þerof'. & þan make a fier aboute þe pott' þat is aboue þe erþe, & þere wole distille oile into þe pott' þat' is bineþe in þe erþe, & wiþ þis oile þou schalt' anoynte þe place ofte, & frote harde. & if' þis suffise not', þanne þou schalt' sette vpon þe place watir lechis ofte, for to do awey þe fleumatik blood / If' þis suffise not', leie þervpon a mundificatif' of' cantarides stampid wiþ whete, til þe place schyne[2], & þan cure it' vp wiþ an oynment' of' ceruce / Frote him wiþ an oynement' maad of' armoniac & with þe sournes of' citri, & nitro is good þerfore //

Treatment of Impetigo.

Purge and use an ointment.

℞

℞

Oil of wheat obtained by distillation.

[1 lf. 118, bk.]

¶ þe white morphu is curid wiþ purgacioun þat' purgiþ roten fleume, & wiþ þis special medicyn / ℞, trifere minorum .3 .iiij., turbit', puluꝛis pigre .3 .ij., colloquintide .3 ij., make herof' pelottis wiþ hony, & he schal take þerof' .iij pelottis euery wike, & eueri dai bitwixe he schal take .3 ij. of' trifere minorum, & he mote absteyne him fro metis þat' engendriþ [3]fleume; & þe place shal be frotid in þe sunne wiþ an oynement' of tapsia, & þe seed of' raphani, rubie maioris / elleboro nigro & mustard, & distempere hem wiþ vinegre / Also froting' wiþ squillis is good þerfore //

Treatment of the whyt Morphea.

℞

[3 lf. 119]

¶ þe blac morphe is curid wiþ ofte purging' of' malancoli, wiþ gotis whei, & wiþ epithimo, & oþere medicyns þat' purgiþ malancolie, þat' be forseid in allopucia; & his dietyng' schal be moist', & he schal absteyne him fro metis þat' engendriþ malancolie, & he schal be baþid ofte in swete watir, & he schal be anoyntid & frotid as it' is aforseid //

Treatment of the black morffue.

¶ Albaras þat' is whit' is curid wiþ þe same þingis & with

[2] *til þe place schyne*, donec locus excorietur.

Treatment of white Albaras

stronger medicyns þat' ben aforseid *in* þe cure of' þe white morphu, & miche castyng' is good for hem, & þou schalt' frote wel þe place with squillis *in* a stewe, & after þat' spryuge þeron poudre maad of' tapsia, & staphisagre, & þe wombis of' cantarides, & seed of' eruce, & tordis of' a culuere, & þou schalt' anoynte him wiþ blood of' a blac serpent', for þat' is bi propirte good þerfore /

Black Albaras is incurable, [1 lf. 119, bk.] the attendant discoloration of the skin may be cured.

Albaras þat' is blak is incurable, for it' is a particuler lepre, & but' [1]if' it' be so þat' it' mowe be take awei wiþ alle rootis, it' schal neuere be curid; saue þe colour of' his skyn mai be amendid / R, aloxanti, þat' is þe flour of' þe wiþi,[2] mirram, feces of' wijn brent', reed cley, & alyme, poudre alle þese, & herwiþ frote þe place til þe pacient' fele prickyng' & brennyng'. Þis wole deye þe skyn for manie daies, & whanne þis failiþ reherse it' aʒen.

## // Of lepre and of þe domys of lepre[3] //

¶ vij°. c° Leprosy arises from the corruption of the melancholic humours and affects the whole body.

LEpra[4] is a foul sijknes þat' comeþ of' malancolie corrupt', ouþir of' humouris þat' ben brouʒt' to þe forme of' malancolye[5] corrupt. & it' goiþ into al þe bodi, riʒt' as a cancre is *in* oon lyme of' a mannes bodi / For whanne malancolie multiplieþ[6], & a mannes guttis ben not' strong' for to putte it' out', & þe weies bitwixe þe splene ben stoppid & þe poris of' þe skyn closid, þan malancolious blood wole rote wiþinne, & rotiþ complexiouns of' þe lymes. & þe bigynnyng' of' þe mater myʒte be of' blood ouþir of' fleume, colre, [7 lf. 120] ouþer of' malancolie, neþeles whanne þe mater is fulfild [7]it' is malancolie corrupt'. & þis is oon of' the syknessis þat' ben contagious / ¶ In þis place I wole sette curis of' lepre þat' ben profitable for a cirurgian to kunne, & also curis þat' comeþ ofte to a cirurgian handis /

[2] Lat. aloxantum, quod est flos salis. The translator read *salicis* for *salis*. ἀλόσαντον, τό, brine. Matth. Sylv.: "Alosantus i. flos salis et invenitur super petras nili fluminis."

[3] Lat. de lepra et indiciis leprosi The translator read *iudiciis*.

[4] Add. 27,944, fol. 99 b.: "*Lepra meselrye is an universal corrupcioun of membres & of humours.*" Four different kinds of Leprosy are distinguished, "1. the *Elaphantia*; 2. the *Tiria or Serpentyna, and haþ þat name of an addre þat hatte tyrus, for as an addre leneth liʒtliche his skynne and is skaly, so he þat hath þis maner lepra is ofte i-strept and i-haulde, & ful of skales*; 3. *alopicia & vulpina foxissch*; 4. *leonina, it fretiþ as a lyon & destroyeþ all þe membres.*"

[5] *&* inserted.

[6] *multiplieþ*, Lat. multiplicatur.—Multiplye, fructificare, multiplicare. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 246.

Men þat ben leprous,[1] *in* þe bigynnyng her heeris of her heed fallip awei, & þe heeris of her browis, & þe heeris of her berd; & her forheed bicomeþ reed & as it were schynyng. ¶ Also *in* summe þe face wexiþ reed & swelliþ & is sumwhat ledi, & principali aboute [þe nose][2] // ¶ Also her vois is rowȝ ouþer sumtyme it is wondirly scharp, & þe whit of her iȝen bicomeþ al derk, & þe heeris goon awei of her browis / Her noseþrillis bicomeþ smal, ouþer wondirly greet, & her noseþrillis ben streit for to drawe yn wijnd, & her nailis bicomeþ ledi / Also her breeþ wole stynke & her sores / Also her pisce wole be streit[3] & þei schulen haue greet snesyng / Also þei wilneþ myche to comne[4] wiþ wommen / Also þei schulen be heuy, & if her skyn be *in* þe coold eir, it wole bicome as it were þe skyn of a gandir [5]þat þat hise feþeris weren pilid awey / Also þese ben priuy þingis: if þou prickist his leg bihynde, he ne schal not fele it / & if þou waisschist hise lymes *in* watir, anoon riȝt it wole drie yn // Also þese signes ben comoun: his yȝen wolen bicome rounde, & þer wolen wexe pustulis in his tunge, & her nailis wolen bicome greet, & þer wolen wexe scabbis aboute-forþ. And þe fleisch þat schulde be bitwixe þe þombe & þe nexte fyngir þerto schal be wastid awey, & if þou prickist him in þe hele he schal not fele it, & if he be lete blood, her blood wole be scharpe & as it were ful of grauel. & if þou waischist her blood, *in* þe botme þerof wole leue as it were grauel. & þis sijknes aftir þe tyme þat it is confermed is incurable, saue *in* þe firste bigynnyng it mai be curid wel //

Signs of Leprosy: the hair falls off, the face gets red and swollen, the voice gets hoarse, the nostrils are disfigured, the breath is foetid, [5 lf. 120, bk.] the legs lose their feeling, pustules grow on the tongue, the blood is sharp and leaves a sediment like sand.

¶ Þe cure of lepre is not sett *in* þis book, for þis book is of cirurgie, saf þer ben *in* þis solempne medicyns & apreued for to kepe a man, þat þei schulen not wexe, & for to make it priuy, & cauterijs þerfore / For alle þese þingis falliþ for a cirurgian / þis [6]þou schalt knowe: if þe siknes be strong, it is hard for to do ony medicyne þerto; fforwhi, if þe sijknes be strong, þanne he muste haue stronge medicyns, & þat were greet perel, & also þe medicyn muste be ofte rehersid.[7] Saue þou schalt chese a liȝt medicyn þat

Treatment of Leprosy. [6 lf. 121] Strong medicines are dangerous.

[1] The symptoms of leprosy are similarly described by Avicenna, lib. IV., fen. 3, tract. 2, cap. 2.

[2] *þe nose*, wanting.

[3] *her pisce wole be streit*, Lat. item accidit eis strictura pectoris.

[4] *comne* for *comune*.

[7] Add. 26,106, fol. 49 b.: Scias quod in egritudinibus fortibus si fuerint cronice fortes non competunt medicine, nam licet propter egritudinis fortitudinem medicina sit nocciua tamen dari non debet, quia medicinam oportet sepius iterari.

Light purging medicines.

wole falle for to purge þe humour liȝtli // A medicyn maad of gotis whey wiþ epithimo, þis medicyn is riȝt & good, for it purgiþ malancolie litil & litil, & also a man schal not be greued þerebi // Pelottis þat be maad of epithimo þat ben aforseid in þe tretijs of allopucia ben good herfore, for þin entent schal be oonly for to purge malancolie þat is corrupt, & amende his complexioun wiþ good dietyng. Blood letyng is not good þerfore, but if þe cauce come miche of blood / If his breeþ be streit, þanne it comeþ of þe veyne þat goiþ to þe herte / Sumtyme it is in þe veyne of þe nose[1] / þou schalt ȝeue to men þat ben drie lepre & comeþ myche of colre, þou schalt ȝeue him gotis whey ofte for to drynke, & [2]þou schalt, in as miche as þou miȝt, make his complexioun moist & baþe him in tempere baþ & lete him swete þerinne; & þan þou schalt anoynte him wiþ oile of violet & oile of cucurbita, & þou schalt ȝeue him good metis þat engendriþ good blood, & hese metis & hise drinkis schulen be in tempere heete, not to hoot ne to coold // ¶ Summen curiþ hem wiþ þe fleisch of a blac eddre[3] þat ben in drie lond & among stones, & þan þei kutten awey þe heed & þe tail of þe eddre & doiþ awei þe guttis wiþinne / & þan þei doon hem in[4] a vessel of erþe wiþ a litil peper & galyngale & salt & vinegre & watir & oile, & so þei seþe þe eddre til al þe fleisch þerof be dissolued. þanne þe broþ herof is ȝeuen to drynke, & þe fleisch for to ete til þe pacient haue scotomiam[5] & al his bodi to-swolle / Whanne his bodi is to-swolle & he haþ had scotomiam, þan leie him in a bed & lete him ligge; & if þere falle ony þing to him as syncopis, ouþer greet cooldnes of hise lymes wiþoutforþ, or if his herte quake, þan ȝeue

[2 lf. 121, bk.]

Give the patient nourishing food.

A preparation made from the flesh of a black snake

Is given, until the patient becomes giddy.

Then let him lie down and give a reviving medicine in case of collapse.

[1] Incorrect translation. Add. 26,106, fol. 49 b: "Flebotomia namque non convenit nisi quum scis lepram esse valde sanguineam cum hanelitus strictura tunc fit de uena cordis et de duabus guides timendo suffocationem: alia fit de venis nasi propter palliandum faciei colorem."

[3] De propr. rer., *ibid.* fol. 100: "*To hele oþir to hide lepra as plato seiþ, best is a rede adder wiþ a white wombe; ȝif þe venym is awaye & þe tail & þe heed i-smyte of, þanne þe body i-sode in leke, ȝif it is ofte i-take & i-ete; in þe same wise wyne in þe whiche it rotieþ, ȝif þe patient drinke ofte þerof, and þis helpiþ in many iueles, as he telleþ of a blind mannes wif þat wolde slee here housbonde, and ȝaf him an addre with garlek in stede of an ele, þat it myȝte slee hym, & he eet it, and aftir þat by moche swete he recouered & had his siȝt goode & clere.*" The flesh of vipers is commended by Galen for the treatment of elephantiasis. Lib. II., Simpl. de carne viperæ.

[4] *in*, in margin.

[5] *scotomia, σκότωμα, ατος, τό*, dizziness. Vigo Interpret.: "They shoulde saye Scotoma, and it is a disease, when darckenes ryseth before the eyes, and when al thinges seme to go rounde about."

him tiriaca maior wiþ a litil musco ouþer hoot wijn // In þis maner al his [1]fleisch wole pile & alle hise heeris wolen falle awei & newe heeris wolen come vp aʒen / & þis medicyne schal be rehersid so ofte, & kepid wiþ dietyng til he be perfitli hool / Forwhi manie men moun be delyuerid of manye greet sijknessis, if her leche is kunnynge & diligent aboute hem, & bi necligence & defaute of help manie men ben perischid / Cauterijs herfore þou schalt fynde ynowe in þe chapiter of cauterijs, & oynementis þat makiþ clene & soudiþ, all þese þingis þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie.

[1 lf. 122]

A skilful physician often cures, where a negligent one fails.

## ¶ Of waastynge off membris and bicomen smal /

¶ viijo. co/ Limbs become swollen after a streight ligature, they become larger by congestion.

A Mannes lyme bicomeþ smal wiþ greet streynyng of ligaturis þat takiþ awei þe norisching of þe lyme, or of long akyng of ioynt þat enfebliþ al þe lyme / þese þingis makiþ a mannes lymes to bicome smal // ¶ Also a mannes lymes bicomeþ greet oþer þan þei schulde be,[2] whanne veynes ben feble & matere falliþ þerto & þe vertu of souding failiþ, & in þis maner þe lyme swelliþ, & þe mater is fleumatik, & for defaute of heete it turneþ not into quitture [3]saue it abidiþ in þe lyme & swelliþ þe lyme /

[3 lf. 122, bk.]

To restore a wasting limb remove the cause of the disease,

¶ A lyme þat is bicome smal, in þis maner þou schalt make it greet: if þere be ony þing to take awei þerof as akynge ouþer ony strictture, ouþer ony byndyng, þan remeue awey þat first in þe manere as it schal be seid in þe chapiter of ioyntis. Whanne þe akynge is doon awei, þanne waische þe lyme wiþ a decoccioun of malowis & violet & rotis of bismalue in watir, saue his lyme schal be in þe water no lenger þan it bigynneþ for to bicome reed & somwhat to swelle, & be war þat his lyme be not so longe in þe water til þat he swete, & þan drie his lyme wiþ a lynnen clooþ & frote it a litil wiþ þin hond, & þanne take a litil smal ʒerde & bete þe lyme þerwiþ til þou drawe blood þerto, & make a plastre þerto in þis maner. Rȳ, picis naualis, picis grece, resine albe ana, & melte alle þese in a panne. & whanne þei ben molten cole hem þoruʒ a clooþ into coold water, & þanne anoynte þin hondis with oile & þan take it vp of þe watir & tempere it togidere & make þerof gobetis & kepe hem for þin vss[4], herof þou schalt plane vpon [5]a leþer, & leie it to þe lyme þat is forseid, & so lete it ligge adai, & aneuen

apply a wash

and an adhesive plaster.

℞

[5 lf. 123]

[2] Lat. ingrossatur etiam membrum aliquod ultra debitum. Compare *þe colour . . . chaungiþ oþir þan it schulde be*, p. 194, Note 3.

[4] *vse.*

drawe it awey, & so lete þe lyme be til amorowe, & þanne reherse þe waischinge þat is forseid & þe froting & þe beting. Þis wiþouten ony drede wole bringe [þe lyme] aȝen to his greetnes as it schulde be, but if þe lyme be out of ioynct & haue be longe tyme, þan it wole be hard, þan it is yuel to make þe lyme greet aȝen as it schulde. & þouȝ it mowe not be maad greet as it schulde be, neþeles bi þis maner it may be myche amendid //

There is no perfect cure in case of an old dislocation.

¶ If a mannes lyme is gretter þan it schulde be, if þe cause þerof be of fleume þat þou miȝt knowe bi neischenes of þe lyme, for if þou þriste yn þi fyngir, þer wol leue a pitt þerafter, it may be brouȝt aȝen to greetnes þat it schulde be, if it be purgid ofte wiþ a medicyn þat is clepid trociscus de turbit þat is aforseid, & þe pacient schal kepe him fro alle metis þat engendriþ fleume, & he schal be war of greet repleciou of metis & drinkis, & þan þou schalt cure him wiþ medicyns þat schulen be seid in þe chapiter of apostemes of fleume / Take lye maad [1] of aischis of wiju or of an ook, & leie þeron a double lynnen clooþ & wete it wel, & þerwiþ folde þe lyme, & þan streyne þe lyme wiþ a boond, & euery dai þou schalt wete it .ij. siþis in þat lie & bynde so his lyme, & in þis maner his lyme schal drie. Ouþer in þis maner / Take sal nitre & distempere it wiþ watir, & þanne take a sponge þat it be so myche þat it mowe hile al þe lyme & þan lete þe sponge drie so þervpon, & þan wete þe sponge aȝen & leie it on þe lyme aȝen, & lete it drie aȝen & alwei bynde wel þe lyme; & þis þou must do manye siþis. Or take þe leues of lilie celestie & grynde hem wel and þanne leye it vpon þe lyme, & þanne bynde wel þe lyme, & in þis maner þe matere wole waaste awey & þe lyme wole bicome smal as it schulde / If it so be þat þis greetnes come of malancolious blood or of greet fleume, make him a purgacioun with gotis whey & epithimo, or anoþir competent medicyn. & first þou schalt make þe lyme neische wiþ oile of lilie, or wiþ oon of þe oynementis þat ben mollificatiuis þat [2] schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, þanne go to þe cure þat is forseid. Whanne þe swellyng of þe lyme is doon aweie, if it be in hond or in arme, þat falliþ ofte tyme, or in þe foot & in þe leggis & in þe knee, þanne þou schalt make bitwixe þe fyngris cauterijs þat ben clepid cauterium cultellare, as þou schalt fynde in þe chapitre of cauterijs // þe greetnes of a mannes foot þou schalt cure as it schal be seid in elephancia as it is conteyned in his propre chapitre /

If the swelling of a limb is caused by the phlegm, use a purging medicine,

a bandage and compresses, soaked in lye,

℞

[1 lf. 123, bk.]

or in a solution of saltpetre,

℞

or bruise lily-leaves, and apply them.

If the swelling arises from melancholic blood, purge and use a softening ointment.

[2 lf. 124]

## Þe firste chapiter of engendering of humours & þe kindis of hem, & conteyneþ .xviij. chapiters /

Þe .2. doctrine.

¶ 1°. c°. Impostems ingendred off þe iiij humors.

EVeri enpostym is engendrid of .iiij. humouris, ouþir of water, or of wijnd. & it is impossible for a cirurgian for to kune a cure, but if he knowe þe cause þerof, & þerfore me þouȝte þat it was necessarie for to make a propre chapitre of þe generacioun of humouris[1] & alle þe propurtees þerof, þat þe redere of þis book mai knowe þe causis of apostyms & þe curis þerof & metis & drinkis þat ben necessarie in þis cause for norisching & augmenting of þe lymes & for to engendre natural heete / // Whanne þe mete falliþ into a mannes stomac & þou haddist anothamie þerof, þan in þe stomak þe mete is soden, & þan fro þe stomak it goiþ into þe guttis, & þerof þou haddist anothamiam, & þan þe mete goiþ anoon to þe gutt þat is clepid orobum or þe sak. Veynes þat ben clepid miseraice & þere ben manie maners þerof as it is forseid, & þei ben maad fast wiþ þe botme of þe stomac & wiþ þe gutt þat is clepid duodeno, & wiþ þe smal gutt, & wiþ þe gutt þat is clepid ieiunium as it is forseid, & wiþ þese veynes bigynneþ þe .ij. digestioun & beriþ a veyne þat is clepid kilus[3] to þe lyuer, & þat veyne goiþ to þe stomac fro þe lyuer. & þe .iiij. humouris of iiij. substauncis ben engendrid in þis place of digestioun[4] / For þere is engendrid þere a maner spumous substaunce whanne þe digestioun failiþ heete; & þere engendriþ anoþer partie þat is sutil as it were wijn; & þe greet substaunce goiþ adoun & stynkiþ. If þere be engendrid greet fleume[5] & miche, þat is cause for it quenchiþ þe hete of þe stomac / Also in þe same placis is engendrid a subtil substaunce, & scharp hete worchiþ þeron & gaderiþ him hete & scharpnes, & þis is clepid collera rubea; & if humouris wexiþ to miche, it wole achaufe þe lyuer / & causis of engendring of colre ben hote metis & drinkis &

¶ 1°. c°. The first digestion.

The food is sodden in the stomach, and passes through the guts.

Incipit ij dyg°

The mesaraic veins carry the chyle to the liver.

nota

The four humours are produced in the liver.

1. Phlegm, [2 lf. 124, bk.]

2. the Choleric humour, [3 lf. 125]

[1] De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 6, Add. 27,944, fol. 33: "*Þise foure humores beþ i-bred in þis manere: whan mete is i-fonge in þe place of seeþinge, þat is þe stomak, first þe more sotil partie & fletinge* þerof, *þat phisicians clepiþ pthismaria, þat is i-drawe be certeyn veynes to þe lyuore, & þerby þe worchinge of kinde hete it is i-chaungid into þe foure humoures; þe bredinge of hem bigynneþ in þe lyuer, but it endiþ* þere *atte fulle.*"

[3] The translator mistook *kilus* for the name of the Vein, perhaps in reference to the *Vena cava*, called *Vena chillis* by the translators of Arab. medical works, from κοιλη.

[4] Lat.: Ita in hepate ex chylo veniente a stomacho quatuor humorales substantiæ generantur.

3. Blood, traueile & fastyng' & stronge saucis // ¶ Also þ*er* is a clene sub-
staun*ce* engendrid þ*at'* kyn*d*eli hete worchiþ þ*er*on, & þ*at'* is blood.
& þe mat*er*e herof' is good metis & drynkis þ*at'* ben swete // ¶ Also
4. the Melancholic humour. þ*er* is engendrid ano þ*er* substaun*ce* þ*at'* is sum*m*what' stynkyng' & is 4
clepid malancoli & is enge*n*drid *in* .ij. maners: oon man*er* is þis of'
greet' hete þ*at'* is bre*n*nyng' & of' greet' cooldnes þ*at'* wexiþ hard[1];
& þe cause herof' be*n* grete metis,[2] & metis þ*at'* engendriþ malancoli /
These four humours have different qualities. And þes iiij. humo*ur*is Sanguis, Colera, fleumtica & Malancolia, & 8
eu*er*y of' he*m* haþ diu*er*s qu*a*litees, for blood is hoot' & moist', ffleume
coold & moost', Colre hoot' & drie, Malancoli coold & drie // ¶ Also
[3 lf. 125, bk.] of' þese humo*ur*is [3]sum*m*e ben kindeli & sum*m*e be*n* vnkyndely, &
þ*er*fore *in* þis chapitre we wole*n* make me*n*cioun of' alle, ffor bi 12
gendring' of' þese humo*ur*is enpostyms be*n* engendrid //

Phlegm is either natural or unnatural. ¶ Of' fleume þ*er*e be*n* ij. kyndis, oon is natu*r*al & þe to þ*er*
*in*natu*r*al / Natu*r*al fleume is coold & moist' & whit', & goiþ sum-
The natural Phlegm quiets a man's nerves. what' to swetnes,[4] of' which lordschipe[5] þer folowiþ a litil wilnyng' 16
for to comou*n* wiþ wy*m*men, & þe palesie, & [he is][6] pesible, &
loueþ wel for to haue reste[7] / Saue þe moost' p*ar*t' of' fleume is *in*
a ma*n*nes brayn, & *in* hise lu*n*gis, & in his stomac, & *in* hise guttis,
It is chiefly in the back of the head and in the spine. & *in* hise ioynct*es*. And þe lordschip of' fleume is *in* þe hynd*er* 20
p*ar*t' of' a ma*n*nes heed, & *in* þe rigbonys. & fleume doiþ þre *pro*-
fitis, þe .j. is þis: sum*t*yme a ma*n*nes kynde failiþ blood, & þan
kinde worchiþ vpon fleume & makiþ blood, & of' o þ*er*e humouris þis
mai not' be do / þe ij. *pro*fit' of' fleume is þis: for fleume goiþ wiþ 24
blood for to norische diuers lymes / þe .iij. *pro*fit' of' fleume is þis,
þ*at'* it' acoldiþ þe ioynctis & makiþ he*m* moist', for ellis in greet'
meuyng' þei schulde*n* wexe drie / Of' fleume þ*at'* is innatu*r*al ben
[8 lf. 126] .iiij. maners [8]as: fleume dulce, fleu*m*a acetosu*m*, fleu*m*a ponticu*m*, 28
fleuma dulce. fleu*m*a salsu*m* // ¶ **ffleuma dulce** is in .ij. maners. þe firste man*er*

[1] *of greet cooldness þat wexiþ hard.* Lat. ex frigiditate ingrossante.

[2] *grete metis,* Lat. cibi grossi.

[4] *swetnes,* a mistake for *whitnes.* Lat. ad paucam tendens albedinem. De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 9, *ibid.* fol. 35: "*Kyndeliche fleume is coolde & moist, & white in colour, and fletinge in substaunce, a litwhat swete in sauour, o þir al werisch & vnsauoury.*"

[5] *of which lordshipe,* Lat. de cuius dominio.

[6] *he is,* wanting.

[7] *Ibid.*, fol. 35 bk.: "*a verray fleumatik man is in þe body lustles, heuy & slowȝ, dul of wit & of þouȝt forȝetteful, neissche of fleissche and quauy, bloo*[a] *of colour, whitliche in face, ferdeful of herte, ful of spittinge snyuel & rokeinge, ful of slouthe & of slepinge, & of a litil appetite & of litil þurst.*"

[a] bloo, MS. bood.

is þis: as whanne fleume is medlid wiþ blood, or as whanne hete worchiþ wiþ fleume to turne it into blood // ¶ **fleuma acetosum** is seid in .ij. maners / as whanne ebullitium[1] comeþ to fleume dulce & makiþ him to rote, & it [is] herto as it bifalliþ in oþere þingis þat ben swete, as to swete winis whanne sournes comeþ þeron it bicomeþ coold, & in þe same manere fleuma acetosum makiþ fleuma dulce coold // ¶ **fleuma salsum** is moost drie of alle, & þis is whanne þer is ony part of colre medlid wiþ fleume, þan it is clepid fleuma salsum, for þe hete of þe colre makiþ it salt / ¶ **fleuma vitreum** was liquide fleuma, & wiþ cooldnes it is congilid, or sum partie of malancolie is medlid & congiliþ it hard // ¶ **Colre** sum is natural & sum is innatural / Natural is liȝt & scharp & reed in colour &[2] in substaunce, & þe more hoot þat it is þe more reednes it makiþ / þanne vertues of colre ben þese / A colerik man schal haue hasti entendement & sotil [3]of witt, & hardi & hasti þouȝt, & hasti answere, & liȝtly meued to wraþþe[4] / Of colre innatural ben .v. maners, as citrina, [vitellina][5], adusta, prassina & eruginosa / **Colera citrina** is medlid wiþ subtil fleume / **Colera vitellina**[6] is medlid wiþ greet fleume / **Colera adusta** is in .ij. maners; oon is þis, þat it is to miche brent in[7] þe lyuer; þan wiþ þis brennyng þe subtil partie departiþ fro þe grete parties, & in þis maner it takiþ a spice of malancoly // ¶ In anoþer manere, partijs of malancoli þat ben brent, [ben][8] medlid þerwiþ // ¶ And þer is iij. maner of colre adust, & is whanne his blood is adust *id est* brent as it schal be seid here after // ¶ þer is anoþer maner of colre þat is clepid **prassina**,[9] þat is swiþe bittir // ¶ Eruginosa is lijk þe rust of copur, & þis maner of colre is miche freting & scharp, & G. seiþ þat þis maner colre is engendrid of hoot metis & scharpe as oynouns, garlek, mustard, & oþere mo // ¶ Of malancoli þer ben .ij. maners—as malancoli natural & malancoli innatural / Malancoly þat is natural

*fleuma acetosum.* *fleuma salsum.* *fleuma vitreum.* [3 lf. 126, bk.] *Colera innatura lis.* *Colera citrina.* *Colera vitellina.* *Colera adusta.* *Collera prassina.* *Colera eruginosa.* *Galion.* *Malancoli.* *The natural Melancholy.*

[1] *ebullitium*, Lat. ebullitio.

[2] MS. *colour*, erroneously inserted.

[4] De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 10, Add. 27,944, fol. 36: "*And so colerik men beþ generalliche wraþeful, hardy, vnmeke, liȝt, vnstable, inpetuous; in body long, sklendre & lene; in colour broun, in eer blak and crips, hard and stif; in touche hoot, in puls strong & swift.*"

[5] *vitellina*, wanting.

[6] *colera vitellina*, called *ȝellowȝ colera*, in De propr. rer. ibid.

[7] MS. *&* for *in*. [8] *ben*, wanting.

[9] De propr. rer., *ibid.* fol. 35 b.: "*þe þridde maner of colera hatte prassina, & is grene of colour and bittir scharp as an herbe þat hatte prassium, & marubium, & porrus in latyn.*"

[2 lf. 127] haþ þese signis / þe .j. is as it' were fecis of' blood,[1] [2]& her colo*ur* is as it' were ledi & blac, & her bodi sch*a*l be leene & drie, & þei schule*n* haue good appetit' for to ete, & þei schule*n* haue good mynde for to kepe þ*in*gis *in* her þou3t, & þei schulen be dredeful & ful of' enuye & gile & sorowe & coueitous / Malancolie *in*natu*r*al come*þ* of' humours brent' & corrupt', Of' eu*er*y of' þese humours ben engendrid diuers maners of' enpostyms / & eu*er*y man*er* postyme haþ diuers cure as it' schal be seid here-aft*er*.

The unnatural Melancholy.

## A general word of empostyms /

¶ ij. c°.

A Postyme haþ manie diuers names of' diuers me*n*, for lewid cirurgians[3] seien, þat' þ*er* is noon apostym but' þat', þat' makiþ quytture / Saue I seie, & alle auctou*r*is seien þat' eueri swellyng' *in* a lyme, wheþir it' be greet' or smal, it' schal be clepid apostym / For .A. seiþ: litil swellyngis schule be clepid litil apostyms, & grete swellyngis schulen be clepid grete apostyms / þ*er*fore apostym is seid swellyng' *in* lymes, ouþir inflatiou*n*[4] þat' chau*n*giþ þe lyme oþ*er* þa*n* it' schulde be; & þe mater herof' come*þ* of' manie diu*er*s þ*in*gis; ou*þer* it' come*þ* of' humou*r*is, or of' watir, [5]or of' wijnd / If' it' come*þ* of' humou*r*is, þa*n* it' come*þ* of' blood, ou*þer* of' fleume, or of' colre, or of' malancolie // Also enpostyms þat' come*th* of' humours: su*mm*e come*þ* of' natural humours, & su*mm*e of' *in*natural; & su*mm*e of' sengle humours, & su*mm*e of' humou*r*is medlid togidere / And su*mm*e enpostyms come*th* of' causis wiþ*in*neforþ, & su*mm*e of causis *with*outforth / þe causis wiþoutforþ is fallyng' ou*þer* smiting', or of' a wou*n*de, or chau*n*ging' of' eir / Of' þe causis wiþ*in*neforþ: as of' wickidnes of' humours, or to ful of' humou*r*is, or to ful of' wate*r*, or of' wijnd / or wha*n*ne a man is hurt' wiþoutforþ: or wiþ greet' hete þat' brenne*þ*, or wiþ greet' cooldnes of' eir þat' constreyne*þ*, or of' greet' drienes þat' constreine*þ*, for alle þese causis humou*r*is gaderiþ togidere & makiþ enpostyms // Also if' a man falle vpon a stoon or vpon a*n* hard þ*in*g', or if' a ma*n* be smite wiþ a stoon or wiþ a staf', or þoru3 prickyng' of' a venimous beest': alle þese þ*in*gis mou*n* engendre venimou*s*[6] enpostyms / In þis man*er* þou [7]schalt' knowe

Any swelling in a limb is called Apostema. Auicen.

It arises from the humours, [5 lf. 127, bk.] or from water or wind in the body.

The exciting cause is either external or internal.

[7 lf. 128]

[1] De propr. rer., *ibid.* fol. 36: "þe *kyndeliche malencolie is coole and drye, þat is i-bred in blood as drastes in wyne.*"

[3] *lewid cirurgians*, Lat. rurales cyrurgici.

[4] *inflatioun*, Lat. inflatio, O.Fr. inflacion. *Vigo* l. c. "*Inflatus*, Puffed vp, swellyng."

[6] *a venimous*, cancelled.

diuers enpostyms of wha$^{t}$ humo*ur*is þei come$þ$ / If$^{t}$ super*f*luite of$^{t}$ blood drawe to a lyme, as is clepid flegmon,[1] & þes ben þe signes þer*of*$^{t}$: þe place wole be reed for lijknes of$^{t}$ blood, akynge for þe greet$^{t}$ replecioun þer*of*$^{t}$, beting$^{t}$[2] for þe greet$^{t}$ depnes of$^{t}$ mater, or for greet$^{t}$ akynge / He may haue greuaun*ce* of$^{t}$ a feuer[3] / If$^{t}$ þe blood be þinne in substaunce & hoot$^{t}$ *in* qualite, þan it$^{t}$ makiþ herisipulam. & þis is þe signe þer*of*$^{t}$, þat$^{t}$ *in* þe hiȝest$^{t}$ place þer*of*$^{t}$, it$^{t}$ wole be moost$^{t}$ reed and hoot$^{t}$; & if$^{t}$ þou leist$^{t}$ þi fyngir þer*on*, & wha*n*ne þou remeuyst$^{t}$ þi fyngir, þe skyn wole be whit$^{t}$ þere þi fyngir was, & anoon it$^{t}$ wole bicome reed aȝen, for þe mat*er* þer*of*$^{t}$ is subtil, & þe pacient$^{t}$ haþ greet$^{t}$ brennyng$^{t}$ þer*of*$^{t}$ & akynge // Blood *in* his owne substaun*ce* is more gretter & makiþ more hete, & makiþ apostym, þat$^{t}$ is clepid carbun*c*ulus / þis enpostym comeþ to a man wha*n*ne he haþ habou*n*dance of$^{t}$ greet$^{t}$ blood, & þer*f*or wha*n*ne he is replete of$^{t}$ mete, he schulde baþe him or traueile him-silf$^{t}$, þat$^{t}$ þe blood miȝte falle out, & for his greetnes & hardnes it$^{t}$ mai not$^{t}$ be [4]resolued wi*th* hete, & þanne it$^{t}$ leueþ *in* þe skyn & makiþ apostym.[5] þe signes her*of*$^{t}$ ben þes: þe enpostym is hard for þe þiknes of$^{t}$ blood, & þe colour þer*of*$^{t}$ is swart$^{t}$ reed for þe greet$^{t}$ hete, & þe greet$^{t}$ heete[6] her*of*$^{t}$ makiþ a man sum*t*ime to haue a feuer þer*w*iþ; & sum*t*yme it$^{t}$ makiþ a man to haue sincopin,[7] & þis is speciali wha*n*ne þe mat*er*e is brent$^{t}$, & in þis maner þe mat*er*e þer*of*$^{t}$ is turned *in*to veny*m* /

Superfluity of blood causes **flegmon.**

Symptoms.

Poverty of blood causes **herisipulam.**

Symptoms.

Fullness of blood causes **carbunculus.**

[4 lf. 128, bk.]

Symptoms.

[1] *Halle. Table*, p. 84. "φλεγμονή, id est inflammatio uel collectio, απο του φλεγμου, hoc est a sanguine dicta, written moste commonly hither vnto (with muche rudenes) *Flegmon*, is properly a symple tumore (as Galen sayeth) and an affecte of the fleshie partes, comming of a greater fluxe of bloude then they nede or can naturally susteyne."

[2] *beting*, Lat. pulsatio. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. beat, 13.

[3] De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 59, Add. 27,944, fol. 97 b.: "*And somtyme it come*þ *of ventosite & of wind, & hatte bubo; somtyme of a symple humour, as of blood, and hatte flegmon; þe tokenes* þer*of be*[a]*: rede rednes come*þ *of þe colour of blood, hardenesse come*þ *of multitude of matiere & of hete* þat *wasti*þ *watry matiere, quappinge & lepinge*[b] *of ventosite & fumosite, schuftynge & puttinge, sore ache of þe*[c] *strecchinge of þe place; hete come*þ *of hote matiere, & swellinge come*þ *of multitude of matiere.*"

[5] 26,106, fol. 52 b.: hoc apostema fit cum homo habundat sanguine grosso, et balneatur post ciborum repletionem aut laborat, ita quod sanguis ad extrema movetur et propter suam grossitiem et duritiem non potest a calore resolui remanens in cuti facit apostema.

[6] *heete*, in margin.

[7] *Halle. Table*, p. 122. "Syncope. Συγκοπή, id est animi deliquium, uel præceps uirium lapsus, that is the defecte of the mynde, or a sodeine slyding away of the strengthe of the body, and commonly called swoundynge."

[a] MS. *by.* [b] Lat. pulsus i. saltus. [c] MS. *ofte.*

Natural colre causes Erysipelas.

**Natural colre** makiþ herisipulam,[1] & þe signe þerof' is hardnes for þe greet' drienes of' colre. & þe heed of' þe enpostym is schape as it' were a pyne, for þe grece þat' it' haþ.[2] & þe colour þerof' is reed medlid wiþ ȝelow // 4

Phlegm causes vdimia. (oedema).

An enpostym þat' comeþ of' fleume, is clepid vdimia[3] or ȝima,[4] & is a neisch enpostym, & þe colour þerof' is sumwhat' whiȝt'. & if' þou pressist' in þi fyngir, þer wolé leue þere a pitt' for þe gret' neischenes; & whanne þi fyngir is aweie, it' wole arise vp aȝen. 8 Þis enpostym is wiþout' akynge, saue it' makiþ a greuaunce /

Natural malancoli causes Sclirosis. [6 lf. 129]

¶ Natural malancoli makiþ an hard enpostym, & is clepid Sclirosis.[5] & þe signe þerof' is hardnes, & þe colour þerof' is as þe colour [6]of' malancolie ledi or blac / 12

A watery apostema.

Enpostym þat' comeþ of' blood & watir medlid togidere. Þis is þe signe þerof': if' þou settist' þeron þi .ij. fyngris of' þi .ij. hondis, & first' pressist' þat' oon fyngir & þanne þat' oþer, þou schalt' fele þe watri mater remeue fro þat' oon fyngir to þat' oþer // 16

These are the simple Apostemas.

¶ Þese ben þe differencis of' apostyms þat' ben symple, þat' comeþ of' oon matere at' oonis; & þese ensaumplis ben schewid tofor, for þou schalt' þe bettir knowe enpostyms þat' comeþ of' double matere // 20

Apostemas arising from more than one cause: Apostema flegmonides and herisipilades

¶ Þer comeþ an empostym of' blood & colre; & if' þe more partie be of' blood, þan þe enpostym schal be clepid **flegmonides**; & if' þe more partie þerof' be of' colre, þanne he schal be clepid herisipilades. & þe signes herof' þou schalt' knowe bi þe signes of' 24

[1] De propr. rer., *ibid.*: "*herisipila*, þat *is holy furc per antifrasim*, þat *is contrarie spekinge.*"

[2] Lat. propter igneitatem ipsius.

[3] *vdimia, οἴδημα*, tumour.—Vigo, Chirurgery. The Interpretation: "Undimia is a barbarouse terme, in greke it is called oedema, in latin tumor. For it is softe swellynge wythout payne."

[4] *Zima.* Sinonoma Barth, "*Zima* est apostema flancorum molle sine dolore." From *ζέμα*, that which is boiled, decoction. De propr. rer., *ibid.*: "*In þe same manere aposteme comeþ of fleume, and hatte zimia oþur palus; for riȝt as in mures and in mareys is moche superfluyte of slyme & of wose, so in þis postome is moche superfluyte; and if þou þurstist þy fyngre þer vppon, hit dyueþ inne, for þe rennynge matiere wiþdrawiþ & lettiþ þe vingre entre, & þanne in þe myddel is a putte as hit were þe bore of an hole; & whanne þe fingre is aweye, þe matiere comeþ aȝen & filliþ al þe place.*"

[5] Add. 16,106, fol. 53: apostema quod vocatur scliros ab aliis sephiros vel sclirosis. *Halle. Table*, p. 114. "*Scirrhus* Σκίῤῥος *και* σκληρότης, id est durities, writen of old *Sclirosis*, is (as I gat her of Galen in diuers places) a tumore against nature, and an affecte of harde and thicke partes."

þe symple apostyms // ¶ Also blood & fleume natural [ben][1] medlid togidere, & makiþ an enpostym þat is vdimia. & þe signe herof [is][2] þat þe heed of þis enpostym is reed, & þat opere wole be whit[3] / ¶ Also blood is medlid wiþ greet fleume & malancolie, & engendriþ glandulas & Scrophulas.[4] ¶ Colre medlid with fleume [5]makiþ fleume rennyng, & makiþ þat fleume goiþ wiþ him into ioynctis. & herof þou schalt haue a pleyner teching in þe chapitre of ioinctes. ¶ Also greet fleume is medlid with malancoli, & þerof comeþ glandula & Scrophule / Also malancolie & blood, colre & fleume ben medlid alle togidere & makiþ an enpostym þat is clepid antrax; & þe malice þerof is diuers after euery humour. Saue if blood & colre be feruent togidere & malancolie be malicious, þan þere falliþ manie harde þingis þerto, as quaking of þe herte, & sincopis, & out of hise wittis, & sumtyme deeþ. & þe signes herof ben greet hardnes of þe enpostym, & þe schap þerof as it were a pyn, & greet akynge, & sumtyme he schal not fele it. And þerfore .G. seiþ: hote apostyms, if þei be not felid, ben incurable. & veynes þat ben þeron wolen be of diuers colouris, & vpon þe enpostym þere wole be as it were a litil bladdre,[6] & þe colour þerof wole be as aischis, & it semeþ þat it is drawe ynward wiþ a þreed.[7] & þis enpostym is seid contagious.

Of humouris þat ben [in][8] natural, þese þingis [9]folowiþ þerof / Of fleume þat is corrupt cometh Bocia & testudines / Of malancolie comeþ scrophule & glandule, as it is aforseid. & of alle þese þou schalt haue propre chapitris / Of colre þat is brent & of opere humouris þat ben brent & corrupt þere comeþ manie pustulis, & summe þerof ben ful malicious after þe malice of þe matere / Herof comeþ ignis persicus, miliaris, formica, herpes, herpes estiomenus.

are caused by the blood and choler.

[5 lf. 129, bk.]

Glandula & Scrophule.

Antrax is caused by Melancholy, Blood Choler and Phlegm.

Symptoms of Anthrax.

Galion.

Anthrax is contagious.

[9 lf. 130]

Bocia & testudines caused by corrupt Phlegm.

Diseases arising from corruption of the humours:

[1] *ben*, wanting. [2] *is*, wanting.

[3] Incorrect translation. Add. 26,106, fol. 53: facit apostema quod videtur vdimia, nisi quia in superficie magis rubet.

[4] *Halle. Table*, p. 115. "*Scrophula* (so called by Auicenna, Guidone de Cauliaco, Bruno, Theodorico, Lanfranco, and others a *Scropha*, a pregnante soowe: because it or the lyke, is a disease common to hogs) is a harde Scirrhous tumore, in the glandules of the share or arme holes, but chiefly in the necke."

[6] Compare *Guilelm. de Salic.*, I. 59. Sl. 277, fol. 11: "*In þe antrax . . . . þer been smale bladdres aboute þe copp of it, as þouȝ fier hadde touched þe place.*"

[7] De propr. rer., lib. 7, cap. 59, Add. 27,944, fol. 93: "*And also it semeþ þat hit is i-drawe to þe ground þerof wiþ a maner þrede, i-fastned to þe vttir partye of þe bladder in þe myddel.*" Not in *Gulielm. de Salic.*

[8] *in*, wanting. Lat. De humoribus autem non naturalibus.

**ignis persicus.** Ignis *persicus* is a signe[1] þat þere ben manie pustule þeron & venymo*us* wate*r*. & þe pustule ben reed al aboute & ȝelow, & occupieþ al þe lyme. & it is wiþ greet brennyng. & þis comeþ of
**Miliaris.** colre brent and þinne / Miliaris haþ litil pustulis, & haþ not so greet brennyng, ne þe place þerof is not so reed. & þis comeþ ofte
**fformica.** of fleume medlid wiþ a litil colre // ¶ fformica is a pustula þat is swiþe feruent, & haþ a cruste aboue, & it comeþ of colre brent. & þis is goynge & fretiþ þe lyme aboue, & it hath greet brennyng //
**Pruna.** ¶ þe firste[2] is a pustula þat comeþ of malancolie & is blac or
[3 lf. 130, bk.] ledi, & it comeþ of þe venemous mater of malancoli / [3]Herpes
**Herpes esthiomenus.** estiomenus is as miche to seie as fretyng him-silf, & þis comeþ in manie maners / It comeþ in medlyng of colre þat is brent & malancolie innatural & brent & sutil. & whanne þis falliþ into a lyme, it fretiþ þe lyme for þe greet malice þat it haþ // ¶ Also þer is anoþer maner passioun þat haþ manie diuers names, for summen
**Cancrum & lupum.** clepen it cancrum, & summen lupum. & men of fraunce clepen it malum nostre domine[4] / And lumbardis clepen it fier of seint antony, & summen clepen it herisipulam. Of alle þese diuers names is no charge of, saue þe signes of þis sijknes ben þese: freting & brennyng & blac colour & stynkynge, & þat riȝt foul stynkyng. & or þe skyn þerof be to-broke, it wole not stynke, saue þe place þerof wole be ledi. & if þou felist þe place wiþ þi
**Cancer vlceratus** fyngir, þou schalt fynde þe fleisch þerof al corrupt // ¶ Cancer is a postym þat is swiþe corrupt. & is in .ij. maners: as cancer vlceratus, & cancer þat is not vlceratus. ¶ A cankre þat is not

[1] *signe*, probably mistaken for *siknesse*. Lat. ignis persicus est egritudo in qua sunt multe pustule.

[2] Lat. Pruna similiter est pustula. The translator read: prima.—Phillips. "*Pruna*, a burning or live Coal; also a Carbuncle, Plague-sore, or fiery Botch."

[4] *malum nostre domine*; This name, given to *Erisipelas*, is due to the miraculous cures of this disease by intercession of the Holy Virgin. They are first reported by *Hugo Farsitus*, a canon of Saint Jean des Vignes, in Soissons. In his book, *De Miraculis Maria Suessionensis*, he relates the miracles, as seen by himself in the year 1128, and mentions several instances where women suffering from a severe skin-disease have been cured by the help of the Holy Virgin. Further account of a plague known under the name "mal des ardents" and of cures by the help of the Holy Virgin, is given by *Gautier de Coincy*. See G. d. C., ed. *Foquet*, p. 138.

The same disease is also called *fuoco di Sant Antonio*. See Tomm. Dict., *Maladie S. Antoine* (Godefr. Dict.). The Saints Germain, Main, Othoine and Verain, have likewise given their names to the *erisipelas*. *Quinte Ess.*, 8. 23: "fire of St. Antony, a brennynge sijknes clepid þe fier of helle."

vlceratus is *in* .ij. maners: oon comeþ of malancolie rotid, & bigynneþ for to wexe *in* þe mychilnes of a fecche or of a pese. & þanne it wole wexe alwei *in* a maner brennynge; & euere as þe matere wexiþ, so wole þe brennyng wexe forþ. & it wole haue veynes of diuers colour. & sum colour þerof wole be ledi, & sum wole be purpur, summe þerof wole be grene. & þan þis is ful of colerik matere corrupt. & it haþ greet akynge, & if þou pressist it with þi fyngir, þe malice þerof wole be miche more / þis passioun comounly wole wexe *in* placis þat ben glandule / þis maner enpostym comeþ ofte *in* a mannes þies & *in* a wommans brest & *in* oþere placis / Cancer vlceratus. Alle þe signes þerof ben tofore seid *in* his propre chapitre /

Cancer non vlceratus

[1 lf. 131]

It has variously coloured veins,

and chiefly affects glandulous parts.

Now alle þe signes of enpostyms ben seid, go we to þe curis / þou must take kepe, wheþer þe enpostym come of causis wiþoutforþ or wiþinne / If þe enpostym comeþ of causis wiþinneforþ, þanne þou must purge þe matere or þou leie þerto ony repercussijf or ony maturatif or ony resoluyng þing / forwhi a repercussijf[2] mai not do awei al þe matere, þouȝ it sumwhat aswage þe akynge *in* þe firste bigynnyng / neþeles itt makiþ þe matere hard, & aftirward þe patient [3]schulde haue þe more penaunce / A resoluyng *in* an vnclene bodi drawiþ more matere þerto þan it resolueþ. ¶ A maturatif makiþ þe enpostym to wexe more, if his bodi be vnpurgid, & makiþ þe matere of þe enpostym feruent / In what maner þou schalt purge diuers maters, *in* þe chapitre of allopucia þou schalt fynde it, & *in* þe chapitre de doloribus iuncturarum, þat schal be seid here aftir / þou schalt worche *in* enpostyms þat falliþ *in* a mannes bodi wiþoutforþ. If þou wost wel þat his bodi is replet, þis schal alwei be þin entencioun, for to drawe þe matere awei *in* þis maner: / If þe enpostym be *in* a mannes mouþ, þan þou schalt make him no gargarisme;[4] & if it be in his ers, þan þou schalt make him no laxatif medicyn / & if it be *in* a wommans maris,[5] þan þou schalt ȝeue hir no medicyn for to make menstrue; saue þou schalt alwei go to þe contrarie herof: as if enpostyms be *in* partijs aboue, þan þou schalt ȝeue catarticum / If þe enpostym be bineþe, þan ȝeue

Treatment of apostema.

Nota.

When the causes are internal, purge before using medicines.

[3 lf. 131, bk.]

When the causes are external use a contrarious medicine, i. e.

Nota.

a purgative, when the apostema is in higher parts,

[2] MS. repercussist.

[4] *gargarisme*, a gargle. Vigo, Chirurgery, Interpretation: "A gargarisme is when we cause water to bubble in our throtes, not sufferynge it to go downe."

[5] *maris*, Lat. matrix, O.Fr. marris. Sloane 2463, fol. 194 bk.: "*The moder is a skyn, þat þe childe is enclosed in his moder-wombe. And manye of þe sekenesses that women hauen, comen of greuaunces of this moder, that we clepen þe marice.*"

an emetic, when it is in lower parts.

him medicyns for to caste. ¶ Whanne þe matere is purgid, þan bigynne we curis of hoot enpostyms / þou must[1] be war of repercussiuis in ten maners. ¶ þe j. cause is þis, if his bodi be replet / as it is aforseid. ¶ þe .ij. is, greet fume of humours & venymous. ¶ þe .iij. is gretnes[2] of humours rotid. ¶ þe .iiij. cause is, if apostym wexe in a noble lyme as in a mannes eere, or in a wommans tetis, or in þe rigge abouteforþ. ¶ þe .v. cause is: if þe enpostym be in þe þrote, or nyȝ þe brayn, or in ony place nyȝ þe herte, or nyȝ ony lyme þat norischeth / ¶ þe .vj. cause is in a child. ¶ þe .vij. cause is, if it be in an oold man. ¶ þe .viij. cause is if it be in a man þat risiþ vp of sijknes. ¶ þe .ix. cause is if it be apostema creticum.[3] ¶ þe .x. cause is, if an enpostyme be in a noble membre, & be putt fro þat place to anoþer. ¶ In noon of þese .x. causis, þou schalt make noon repercussif in hote enpostyms as þou schalt fynde þe maner in þe antidotarie of repercussifs / ¶ To enpostyms of blood, þou miȝt do medicyns repercussifs & dissolutiuis sotilly, so þat þe firste bigynnyng[4] repercussifs ouercome þe mater of enpostym myche, & in þe stat[5] of þe enpostym lasse, & in þe ende þerof þou schalt [6]vse clene resoluyng þingis / If þou miȝt not wiþ repercussiuis do awei þe enpostym ne resolue him, saue he bigynneþ to quytture, þan þou schalt do þerto medicyns maturatiuis, til it be wel quitturid. ¶ Of repercussiuis resolutiuis maturatiuis & þe manere of worching þerof þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie. ¶ Whanne þe enpostym is quitturid & sufficiently rotid, þis þou miȝt knowe whanne þe akynge is al aweie, & whanne þe matere is neische þerof, & þan opene þe enpostym, þat þou seest moost competent // Saue or þou opene ony enpostyms, þou must be war of þus manie þinges: ¶ þe j. is, þou schalt opene noon enpostym or he be perfitli rotid, but if þe enpostym rotid ony oþir lyme, or þat he were nyȝ ony noble lyme, or nyȝ ony ioynct // In oþere causis þou schalt abide til he be perfitli rotid. & in þe kuttyng þou schalt loke where þe skyn is most þinne and moost hangyng, & þere þou schalt opene þe enpostym.[7] ¶ þe .ij. enten-

[1 lf. 132] Repelling medicines must not be used in the following cases:

.1. .2. .3. .4. .5. .6. .7. .8. .9. .10.

In case of a blood-apostema use a repelling

[6 lf. 132, bk.] a solvent medicine.

In case of suppuration apply a maturing medicine.

Open the abscess when it is ripe.

.1. Take care not to cut, if the abscess is near a joint,

looke well apon thes Rulles

[2] *gretnes*, grossities. [3] *creticum*, Lat. criticum.

[4] *þe firste bigynnyng*, determination of time denoted by accusative. Add. 10,440, fol. 20: "*and be war, þat þe tyme of chaungynge of þis medycyn* þou *take it not awey with violence.*"

[5] *in þe stat*, Lat. in statu. Add. 27,944, fol. 98: "*whan þe posteme is in state.*"

[7] Lat.: facias apertionem ubi materia magis dependet, et ubi pellis est magis tenuis.

cioun is þis, þat þou schalt be war, wh*a*nne þou openest an [1 lf. 133]
enpostym, þat þou hurte no senewe, ne no veine ne noon arterie. .2. not to injure a blood vessel.
¶ þe .iij. cause is, þat þou schalt not avoide al þe mater at oon
tyme, & *pr*incipali wh*a*nne *per* is myche mat*e*re, & þe enpostym is .3. to evacuate the pus slowly.
greet // ¶ þe .iiij. is þis, þou schalt alwei opene þe enpostym in .4. to cut in the direction of the limb.
endelong þe lyme & not ouerþwert. Wh*a*nne þou hast opened þe
*en*postym, þ*a*n þou schalt cure hi*m* vp[2] as it is aforseid in þe cure of
vlcus virulentu*m*. Þ*a*n þou schalt fille þe wou*n*de þerof wi*th* oold
l*y*nnen cloop þat is whi3t, anoon to .iij. daies [wiþ] mundificat*iu*is of ℞
3elkis of eiren & mele, aftir .iij. daies wiþ vn*g*uentu*m* apo*st*olorum[3]
& oon of þe mundificat*iu*is þat schulen be seid *in* þe antidotarie, &
wiþ regendring þi*n*gis & drijng þi*n*gis. ¶ A colerik e*n*postym Choleric apostemas ripen slowly.
comeþ late to rotyng, but if it be rotid wiþ ony mater leid wiþout-
forþ; þ*ou* shalt cure þis enpostym *in* þe same maner as þou schalt
enpostyms of blood, saue þis mote haue coldere medicyns / Car- No*ta*. Carbuncles
bunculis schule*n* be curid as antrax, & þe cure herof schal be seid
herafte*r*. [4]**Vdimia** schal not be smiten yn wiþ reper*c*uss*iu*is[5] saue [4 lf. 133, bk.]
it schal be waastid awei *in* þe firste bigy*n*nyng *in* þis maner. Þou Udimia (Oedema) shall be treated with purging medicines.
schalt purge hi*m* wi*th* trocis[6] de turbit, or wiþ ano*þer* medicyn þat
purgiþ fleume. Þ*a*n stewe[7] þat lyme wiþ a decoccioun of absinthij,
abrotane, sticados, & squinanti. & take aischis of a vyne or of an
ook, & make þerof lie & wete þeri*n*ne l*y*nnen cloþis & leie hem Apply compresses.
vpon þe place hoot, & binde hem streite þerto þat it hile al þe
enpostym, & in þis maner þe mat*e*re þerof schal be drawen awei //
If it so be þat þere be ony blood medlid þerwiþ, or if þer haþ be
leid þerto ony maturatif so þat þe mater þerof be rotid, þ*a*n opene
it. Wh*a*nne it is opened, it mote haue stro*n*ger mundificat*iu*is þ*a*n A softening plaster used by Rasis .Auicen.
ony o*þ*er for þe hardnes of þe quitture & þe greetnes þerof / þis is
a mollificatif þat rasis made & A. R. bdellij, galbani,[8] opoponac

[2] *cure him vp.* Compare Sloane 277, fol. 1 b.: "*be it flesched vp wiþ powdres & oynementes incarnatifes.*"

[3] Phillips. "*Apostolorum Unguentum*, a cleansing Ointment, so call'd, because it is made of twelue Drugs, according to the Number of the Apostles."

[5] Lat. vdimia proprie non repercutitur.

[6] *trocisce*, Lat. trociscus. Sloane 277, fol. 1 b. (xvth cent.), "*a trosce of þe trosces maad azens scrophules.*" Vigo l. c. "*Trochiscos* in Greke is a lyttle whele. Amonge the apothecaries, it is a confection made of sondrye pouders and spices, by the meane of some lyquoure. In latine they call it Pastillum."

[7] *stewe*, Lat. evapora.

[8] "*Galbanum*, a kind of strong scented Gum issuing out of a Plant call'd Fennel-Giant, which grows in Syria." Phillips.

ana, & make hem neische with oile of lilie in a morter, & grinde hem wel togidere. & þan do þerto fenigrecum & lynseed as myche as alle þe oþere & medle hem wel togidere, & herof leie an enplastre
[1 lf. 134] vpon an hard enpostym wiþ þis oonly, or medle þerwiþ fatte 1figis 4
& leie þis enplastre þerto til it be resolued & maad neische / þis medicyn makiþ an hard enpostym to bicome neische & resolueþ him wiþout ony swellyng / þer ben oþere manye medicyns þat ben mollificatif & resoluyng þat þou schalt finde in þe antidotarie // 8

**a watri empostym must be treated like oedema.** A watri apostym schal be curid as vdimia, saue it schal haue drier medicyns, & þou schalt cure him in þe same maner as it is seid in þe chapitre, whanne a mannes lyme is to gret, for to make it smal //

**a windi empostym** Ventosum apostema, þat is apostym þat is ful of wijnd. þou 12 schalt cure it wiþ medicyns þat consumeþ wijnd wiþinne & wiþoute / wiþinneforþ as of vsyng of comyn & carui, & he mote be war

**Internal treatment; external treatment.** of growel[2] & metis þat swelliþ; wiþoutforþ wiþ oilis þat consumeþ wijnd, or with þis oile, ℞. rue, cimini, seminis fenicli, anisi, carui, 16

℞ ameos[3], apij, ana .ʒ ß., cold oile lī. ß., do alle þes in a viol of glas, & do þat glas in a vessel wiþ water, & make þe water seþe & kepe
[4 lf. 134, bk.] wel þe glas þeron þat it breke not, & wiþ þis oile anoynte þe place

℞ hoot / Item .℞. calcem and 4distempere it wiþ swete wijn, & make 20

℞ þerof as it were an emplastre & leie þervpon / ℞. olii anetini[5] .ʒ ij., cere. ʒ ß., ysope þat it be drie & poudrid. ʒ j., & make herof a plastre. ¶ Herisipiladcs[6] or flegmonides schulen be curid in þe same maner þat ben herisipulam & flegmon / Of glandulis & scrophulis, 24 we wolen speke in her propre chapitre //

**Treatment of Anthrax.** ¶ Antrax schal be curid wiþ avoiding of noious matere, & wiþ

**First remove the evil matter by bleeding and purging,** þinges þat comfortiþ þe herte & þe vertu. Neþeles at þe firste bigynnyng her vertu failiþ, & summe þat ben late blood or purgid 28 ben lost / þerfore manie men ben agast for to lete hem blood or ʒeue

**if the patient is strong,** hem ony medicyn laxatif / Ech mesel[7] if þe pacient be strong, I wole lete him blood adai, & in þe same nyʒt I wole ʒeue him a medicyn laxatif // Saue herof þou schalt take kepe if he be feble, 32 & his herte quake, & his pous falle, þan it is folie for to lete him

[2] *growel*, Lat. legumina. See *Prompt. Parv.*, "Growelle or grewelle, Ligumen."

[3] *ameos*. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. ammeos.

[5] *oleum anetinum*, oil of Fennel.

[6] Phillips. "Erysipelatodes, a Swelling like the former [Erysipelas], the Skin being of a darker Colour, and the Symptoms more gentle: a Bastard Erysipelas."

[7] *cch mesel*, Lat. ego vero. Compare *selwylly*, Prompt. Parv.

blood or ȝeue hi*m* ony medicyn laxatif', saue take þe cure oonly i*n* goddis hand // ¶ I wole telle an ensample þat' bifel i*n* þe citee of' mediolanen*sis* þat' it' mowe be ensample to þee & lernyng' / þer was a ma*n* of' xxx. wy*n*ter oold, [1]& an antrax come vpon hi*m* i*n* þe riȝt-side of' his necke, & he was so greet' woxe aboute his necke & his þrote, & he was so swollen, þat' þere was but' litil difference bitwixe þe gretnes of' hise schuldris & his necke. & neþeles I fond his vertu strong'. & I wiste what' sijknes it' was bi a bladdre þat' satt' þer vpon, & was i*n* þe riȝtside of' his necke, & þat' was þe firste bigynnyng' of' his sijknes / & neþeles þer is manye lechis of' greet' name þat' cowde not' knowe þat' passioun / Also I lete hi*m* blood i*n* boþe his armis, & drowe out' blood ynowȝ. & þo I dietide hi*m* as a ma*n* þat' hadde a feuer agu. & amorowe I ȝaf' þe colature of' fruit' of' mirab*olani* citr*ini*,[2] þe which þou schalt' fynde i*n* þe chapitre of' allopucia / Vpon þe enpostym þere þe bladdre was, I leide scabiose grounden wiþ grese. I foond neuere bettere medicyns i*n* þis caas þan þese ben / For þe man was al dissolued of' his sijknes of' þe brennyng' & of' þe akynge, saue þe place þat' was to-swoollen, was not' þe lasse, & þe man was not' þe more feblid for his laxatif', ne for no medicyn þat' he hadde / & on þe morowe I lete hi*m* blood i*n* his oon arm, [3]& ȝaue hi*m* a medicyn laxatif i*n* lasse quantite þan I dide raþere, & þan þe swellynge aswagide miche, & i*n* þe place þere þe bl[a]ddre was I fond a maner cruste as it' were a þing' þat were brent' with fier & was of' þe brede of' iij. ynchis. & wiþinne a fewe daies þe cruste was arerid vp, & þe pacient' felide no greet' greuaunce. & i*n* þe same place þere þe bladdre was, þere was a deep vlcus. & þoruȝ þe greet' hole I siȝ þe þrote & þe gret' veines, & I putte yn myn hond / & I ȝaf' þe pacient' good norisching' metis, & I made hool vlcus wiþ mundificatiuis, til he was al hool bi þe help of' god //

and leave the cure of a feeble patient in the hands of God.

The author relates how [1 lf. 135] he cured a man, who had a big anthrax on his neck;

first he bled him,

then he used several medicines.

*Nota*

[3 lf. 135, bk.]

A scab appeared on the part,

and underneath a deeply-rooted ulcer, which he cured with cleansing medicines.

¶ Pustule þat' comeþ of' humours corrupt' as ignis p*er*sicus[4] & miliaris,[5] &[6] ffor*n*ica[7] schal be purgid wiþ medicyns þat' purgiþ colre

Ignis persicus, Miliaris and Formica

[2] MS. inserts *hinc*, referring to another chapter.

[4] *ignis persicus*. Herpes zoster (Dunglison). Phillips: "a Gangrene, it is also taken for a Carbuncle or a fiery Plague Sore."

[5] De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 61, Add. 27,944: "*amonge auctoures þis euel is i-clepid herpes milii oþer graunlesus, an euel ful of graynes. But swiche bleynes beþ litil and smale as greynes of mylie.*" Phillips: "*Herpes Miliaris*, or *Pustularis*, a sort of yellow Bladders or Wheals, like Millet-Seed, that seize the Skin, cause much itching, and turn to eating Ulcers."

[6] MS. ¶ instead of &.

[7] MS. *ffornica*. Vigo Interpret. "Formica is a little excrescence, or

are treated with purging medicines.

& malancolie. & þat same medicyn schal purge humours þat' be brent', as fumus terre, cuscute, lappacium acutum, cene,[1] absinthium & opere mo / Also þou schalt voide þe matere wiþ medicyns þat' comforten þe herte, & kepiþ þat' þe venym ne smite not' to þe herte; þan þou schalt' cure þe place with þingis þat' makiþ cold vpon þe place. & whanne vlcus is þeron þan it' is no nede, saue drie it' vp as it' is aforseid in þe cure [2]of' vlcera. Saue abouteforþ þou schalt' leie colde þingis til þe cure be perfitli do / & þere come ony bifalling' þerto,[3] þan alwei 3eue him medicyns for to comforte þe herte, þat' ben forseid in antrace // Sumtyme tofore alle þinges pruna[4] ben good / And formicam þou schalt' brenne / tforwhi a cauterie drawiþ out al þe matere þat' is corrupt' & waastiþ it' awei.

[2 lf. 136]

Strengthen the patient's heart.

herpes estiomenes cura

¶ Herpes estiomenus[5] is curid after þe purgacioun of' þe matere, þat' þou schalt' algatis take hede for to do / if' his vertu be strong'. & þou schalt' algate aboute þe sijknes[6] leie a defensif' of' bole & terra sigillata & oile of' ro. & vinegre / þis defensif', as seiþ .A., & I haue ofte preued it', þis defendiþ eueri lyme fro corrupcioun, & þis wole not' suffre þat' þe matere schal make noon vlceracioun ne no fretyng'. & vpon þe place þat' is corrupt' & deed, þou schalt' leie an hoot' iren, & do awei alle þe partis þat ben corrupt. & þis þou my3t' do with a medicyne corosif', saue an hoot' iren is bettere / Whanne þe rotid matere is aweie, þanne make clene þe place wiþ a mundificatif of' iuys of' ache, & do þerto a litil mirre. & whanne þe place is wel clensid, þan do þerto a medicin [7]for to regendre fleisch, & þanne drie it' vp /

Auicen

Apply a medicine which protects the limb from corruption,

and cauterize the slough.

[7 lf. 136, bk.]

## Of empostyms of þe heed //

¶ iij° c°

THow3 we han maad a general tale of' enpostyms, neþeles apostym in eueri lyme haþ diuers curis / þerfore I wole make to euery

outgrowynge in the Skynne, somewhat brode aboute the botome, which when it is scratched causeth as it were the stynge of an ante, or pismare, and therfore it is also called in greke myrmecia."

[1] *cene* for *sene*.

[3] Lat. si praua superveniunt accidentia. . .

[4] Lat.: Aliquando super omnia adiuvat prunam et formicam urere. The translator misunderstood *pruna* (name of the disease) for *pruna* (plums). Compare page 208, note 2.

[5] Vigo Interpret. "If the substaunce be grosse, and aygre it vlcereth the skynne vnto the fleshe, & is called herpes esthiomenos, that is eatynge or gnawynge herpes."

[6] Lat.: sed ponendo supra locum sanum iuxta *ægritudinem* defensiuum. . .

enpostym a diuers chapiter // ¶ I seie þat in þe skyn of a mannes heed ben diuers enpostyms / If þere be[1] enpostym þerof sutil fleume, ful of fleume as it schal be seid heraftir in þe chapitre of bocium[2] / þis maner sijknes is engendrid bitwene þe skyn & the fleisch, & it is su[m]what holowȝ, & ben clepid testudines for þe lijknes of a beest þat is clepid so, & ben engendrid of hard fleume, & ben, as it were, hard knottis þat were maad fast to þe scolle, as it were hornis / For I seie a man came to me, & he hadde in his heed vij. suche maner þingis in diuers placis, & summe þerof weren as longe & as scharp as it were a gotis horn or þe lenkþe of a mannes þombe, & þei weren greuous to þe man, & I hadde miche wondre þat þer were noon vlcera in þe skyn / Whanne I siȝ wel þat þei hadden her bigynnynge of þe scolle boon, I [4]wolde not entermete þerwith of þe cure, & I counseilide him þat he schulde putte him into no mannes cure for to cure him, for it þouȝte to me impossible.

The Testudines are between the skin and the flesh, and are like hard knots.

[3] **reta mirabilis**

A man came to Lanfranc, with seven such knots situated on his skull.

[4] lf. 137]

Lanfranc thought the cure impossible.

¶ þe curis of al þe enpostyms in þe heed, ben þese / If it be of neische matere or of rotid matere, þan þou schalt not take hede for to drie it wiþ mollificatiuis, þouȝ I seide so in enpostyms of fleume in þe general chapitre; for þat myȝte schende[5] þe scolle wiþ liquid mater or corrupt matere. & if þe matere þerof is hard, make it neische wiþ maturatiuis, saue lete þou not it rotie to myche. & or it be rotid to miche, opene it in þe maner of a triangle þus; for þis empostym of þe heed for þe gretnes of þe skyn, and for it is ful of pooris, it mai not wel be clensid, but if þe woundis were so miche þat þe mundificatif myȝte come to þe botme. Whanne þe enpostym is kutt in þe forseid maner, þanne avoide þe mater & fille þe place al wiþ pecis wet in oil of rosis, & sugre molten þeron, & alym & leie þis in þe botme þerof til [6]þe place be wel maad clene. Aftirward wiþ vnguentum apostolorum & opere þingis þat engendriþ fleisch, cure him as it is forseid in þe cure of vlcers þat ben olde // ¶ Nodus is curid wiþ kuttyng of þe skyn endelongis vpon þe place & drawe him out wiþ alle hise rotis. & if þer leueþ ony rote of him, þan leie þeron þe poudre of affadillorum, or of sum

Treatment of Apostemas on the head.

If the swelling is hard, soften it with maturatives,

open it,

◁

and cleanse the wound.

[6] lf. 137, bk.]

**Nodus.** must be removed by cutting and by the use of a Corrosive.

[1] *be*, above line.

[2] This passage is corrupt. Lat.: Nam fiunt ibi apostemata a subtili phlegmate vel ab alia phlegmatis specie ut mucilaginosi et pulmosi et est sicut cancerosi bocii erit dictum.

[3] Vigo Chirurgery transl. Traheron, fol. 5: "The sayde Rhete mirabile is like a nette, and is therfore called Rhete, for thys pannicle is compouned onely wyth Arteries, as Guido hath declared."

[5] *schende.* Lat.: quia sic posset cranium inficere liquida materia.

liȝt' corosif' or vnguentum viride, þat' þe rotis þerof' mowe frete awei þerwiþ; & þan regendre & þan drie it' vp // Watir þat' is gaderid in children hedis,[1] ouþer it' is wiþinne þe scolle or wiþoute þe scolle / If' it' be wiþynne þe scole, it semeþ to me so perilous, þat I wole bitake þe cure to god / If' þe watir be wiþoutforþ, it' mai be curid wiþ anointing' of' oile of' camomille & solfre grounden togidere; & þanne make him .iij. cauterijs: oon a litil aboue þe forheed, & oon bihinde þe nolle in þe welle[2] þerof', & oon aboue þe hindere celle. Þese cauterijs wiþ þe forseid anoyntingis driep & waastiþ þe matere of' þe watir // ¶ þe water þat' comeþ in children hedis, is engendrid in þis manere / whanne [3]þe maris of' a womman is watri, & þe child þat' liþ þerine liþ foldyng' adounward his heed vpon hise knees. & þan þe moisture falliþ adoun & fyndiþ a void place in þe childis heed & entriþ þerinne / & þis passion makiþ a child deed ofte, or he haue ony age for to be holpen /

Water in a child's head is fatal, when within the skull;

when outside the skull, it may be cured, with ointments, and caustics.

This affection occurs owing to the [3 lf. 138] particular position of the child in the mother's womb.

## / Of enpostyms of þe rootis of a mannes eeris //

¶ iiij .co

An apostema on the roots of the ear occurs sometimes, when the patient is feeble.

APostyme þat comeþ in a mannes eere or in þe rotis of' a mannis eeren. & þis comeþ sumtyme in die cretico, whanne þat' a mannes kynde is not' so miȝti for to putte out' þe gretnes of' þe mater bi sote ne bi noon oþer avoiding', & þan kynde worchiþ what' it' mai, & driueþ þe matere an hiȝ to þe heed & abidiþ in þe rotis of' þe eeren, & þere it' engendriþ apostym. & in þis place it' is perilous, for it' is so nyȝ þe heed & veynes & arterijs & neruys / þis manere enpostym ofte sleeþ a man whanne þe matere comeþ violently // þe matere of' þis enpostym, ouþer it' is colre, or blood, or fleume, or malancoli; & alle þe signes herof' ben aforseid / þe cure of' [4]þis enpostym mai not' bigynne with repercussiuis, saue it' mote bigynne wiþ mitigatiuis, & with þingis þat' puttiþ out' þe matere / Waische þe place wiþ a decoccioun of' camomille soden þerinne / & þanne aftir þat' anoynte þe same place with oile of' camomille, & þan wete wolle in þe same oile & leie þervpon, & bi no maner leue þou not' þat þou leie in his eere oile of' bittir almaundis, for it' is a greet' help // ¶ If' þe mater be deep & it' be hard for to drawe it' out', þan it' were good to sette vpon þe place a drie ventose

It is often fatal.

[4 lf. 138, bk.]

Begin the cure with mitigatives,

apply oil of bitter almonds.

[1] Hydrocephalus and its cure is treated at some length by most of the ancient physicians. See *Paul. Aegineta*, ed. Adams, vol. II., p. 250. Our author's description is abridged from *Gulielm. de Salic.*, lib. I., cap. 1.

[2] *welle*, Lat. fontinella.

for to helpe to drawe out þe matere, & aftir resolue þe matere & leie þerto mitigatiuis for to do awei þe akynge / ¶ If þe matere wole not be resolued in þis maner, saue it bigynneþ to be quitture þeron, If pus is formed, open the apostema, taking care not to injure a blood-vessel or a nerve.
þan wiþ tempere maturatiuis þat ben not to hote, make þe enpostym quitture / Whanne þe place is wel rotid abide þou no brekyng of þe enpostym, saue opene þe place sotilly wiþ an instrument þat is competent þerto / & þou muste be wel war þat þou touche no veyne, ne noon arterie, ne no senewe, for þerof mizt come [1]myche perel, for [1 lf. 139]
þere ben nerues in þe same place, if þei were kutt or prickid, þe pacient mizte lese his vois for euere / & if þere were ony veyne kutt þerof, þer mizt come greet perel þerof. & whanne þe place is opened, þan make þe place clene wiþ mundificatiuis, þat schulen be Then cleanse the wound.
seid in þe antidotarie / & whanne þe place is perfitli clene, þanne make þe fleisch wexe & do þe cure perfitli / For bi yuel curyng in þis place mizt engendre a festre, þat ofte tyme comeþ of an enpostym /

## Apostyms of þe necke and of þe þrote /

APostyms þat ben in þis place, or it is wiþoutforþ in þe senewis, or in þe braun, or it is wiþinneforþ bi þe place þat ¶ v°. c°.
a mannes mete goiþ doun, or bi þe þrote, or it is bitwixe þe .ij. Apostemas of the neck or the throat, are either external or internal.
placis in a place þat is clepid ismon.[2] & comounli þe enpostyms þat ben in þis place, comeþ of blood, or of fleume, & ful seelden it comeþ of colre, & more lattere of malancoli. þe humours þat ben
in þe cause,[3] þou schalt knowe bi signes aforseid / If þe matere be In the former case, an outward swelling will be seen, but the swallowing and breathing will not be affected.
in þe braun of the necke wiþoutforþ, þat þou mizt knowe [4]bi schewing of þe enpostym wiþoutforþ. & bi þese signes þou schalt knowe [4 lf. 139, bk.]
whanne þe enpostym is wiþoutforþ, if þer is no letting in ysophagus þere þe mete schulde go adoun, & if wijnd be not stoppid, þan þou mizt wite wel þat þe enpostym is wiþoutforþ, & also bi þe schewing þat is outward / And if þe enpostym is wiþinne, þan þe If the apostema is internal, swallowing and breathing will be difficult.
pacient schal not swolowe adoun his mete, ne drawe wel his breeþ / If þe enpostym þat is wiþinne swelle greetly, his izen wolen swelle þerwiþ, & he schal not suffre his tunge in his mouþ, & he ne schal

[2] *ismon. Sinonom. Barth.*, p. 26, "*Ysinon* est inter ysofagum et tracheam arteriam." Read *Ysmon*. From *ισθμός*, neck, narrow passage. See *ισμός* in *Stephanus Thesaur.* De propr. rer., lib. V., cap. 24, Add. 27,944, fol. 49 bk.: "*& it happiþ þat þis euel matere is somtyme al i-gedred wiþinne þe skynne þat departiþ þe weye of þe breeþ from þe weye of þe mete & drynke, þat hatte isophagus & bredeþ squynancye, þat sleeþ in on day.*"

[3] See page 194, note 8.

not' speke, & þer wole go out' miche spume of' his mouþ / þanne
Some physicians 'break' this apostema with a piece of wood, but that is dangerous.
summe lechis þat' ben hardi wolen putte a smal tree *in* his þrote &
breke þe enpostym, & *in* þat' maner þe pacient' mai be delyuered;
saue þis maner worching' is not' sure, for *in* þis maner manie men
dieþ, & þe deeþ comeþ not' of' þe sijknes, saue it' is defaute *in* þe
leche[1] / þis maner sijknes þat' is so hid wiþinneforþ, it' mai be helid
First, bleed the patient either from the Vena [3 lf. 140]
wel *in* þe bigynnyng' *in* þis maner[2] / If' þe enpostym be hoot', þou
schalt' lete him blood *in* þe veine þat' is clepid basilica, & if þe
patient haþ had þe [3]sijknes longe or þou come to him, þan þou
Basilica or Mediana,
schalt' lete him blood *in* þe middil veyne of' þe arm þat' is clepid
mediana, & he schal blede so longe til he swoune almoost', & *prin-*
on the next day from a vein under the tongue,
*cipali* if' he be strong' & ful of' fleisch / In þe .ij. dai þou schalt'
lete him blood *in* þe veines vndir þe tunge / & loke þat' þou do no
þing' aftir her counseil þat' seien þat' *in* þe firste bigynnyng' þou
schalt' lete him blood *in* veines vndir þe tunge, & after þat' in þe
heed veine or *in* sum opere place. For *in* þis manere leting' blood,
if' his bodi were replet', he miȝt' liȝtli be achekid// ¶ Whanne þou
then give a gargarisme, mixed with the excrements of a sparrow, hen, dog, or a child.
hast' lete him blood as it' is aforseid, þan make him a gargarisme
wiþ a decoccioun of' ro., sumac,[4] balaustiarum, lentium, & galla-
rum wiþ þe which be distemperid þerwiþ diameron,[5] or tordis of'
a sparow, or of' an hen, or þe tord of' an hound þat' etiþ manie
boonys & noon oþer mete,[6] or a childis tord dried while it' is souk-
yng'. ¶ Also take an houndis tord þat' etiþ oonly boonis & of'
hennis, satureye[7] ana, & make þerof' poudre & distempere it' wiþ
The patient shall drink barley-water [3 lf. 140, bk.]
water & hony, & make þerof' a gargarisme, & he schal drinke water
of' barley, & he schal no þing' ete, saue a þing' maad of' wheete-[8]bran
℞
and eat a preparation of wheat-bran.
*in* þis maner[9] / Take newe bran of' whete & caste þeron hoot' water
& hele it' & lete it' stonde so an hour, & þanne grinde it' *in* a morter
wiþ a pestel & cole it', & þanne seþe it' wiþ a litil salt' & ȝeue it' þe

[1] *it is defaute in þe leche*, Lat. medico imputatur.

[2] Much of our author's treatment is borrowed from *Avicenna*, Lib. III., Fen. 19, Cap. 11, ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 188.

[4] *sumac*, Fr. Sumac; Arab. Summāq. "*Sumach* or *Sumack*, a kind of rank-smelling Shrub that bears a black Berry, made use of by Curriers to dress their Leather." Phillips.

[5] *diameron*, *διαμώρων*. *Vigo* Interpretation, "*Diamoron*, a confection made of mulberries."

[6] By this kind of food the *album græcum*, the white dung of a dog is produced.

[7] *satureye*, savory. Wr. Wül. 609, 30 (xv), sauereye.

[9] Lat.: nihilque comedat nisi candarusium factum de furfure in hunc modum. *Matth. Sylv.*: "Candaros vel candarusium—est ordeum cui non est cortex," from *χόνδρος*, grain, groat.

pacient' / & do þeron penidis.[1] & if' he mai not' swolowe it' adoun, þanne sette a litil ventuse *in* þe welle of' his necke[2] *with* fier & þan he schal swolowe, & anoynte al his necke tofore & bihinde wiþ oile of' camom*ille*. & vpon þe anoyntyng' leie wolle vnwaischen,[3] & make a sutil plastre of' a nest' of' irundinis, & is good for þe squinacie,[4] & is *maad in* þis man*er* / Take a nest' of irundinis & boile it' longe *in* watir, & þanne cole it' þoruȝ a seue þat' þe grete gobetis moun be cast' awei / þan take þe rotis of' lilie & seþe hem *in* oþer wat*er* & rotis of' bismalue, & þe rote of' brionie & leues of' malue & bismalue, & violet', & *per*itorie.[5] & wh*a*nne þei ben boilid, grinde hem wel, & medle he*m* wiþ wat*er* of' irundinu*m* þat' is forseid, & do þer*to* leucyne & mele of' fenig*reci*, & þan do þer*to* oile or grese, & make herof' an enplastre / þis enplastre is good to resolue enpostym & make it' quitture, whe*per* [6]it' be wiþinne or wiþoute, & make it' abrood upon a cloop & leie it' vpon hoot'. & anoint*ing*' is good wiþ oile of' camomille medlid wiþ butt*er* þat it' be oold & not' salt', & aft*er* þe anoyntyng' leie þervpon wolle vnwaische // ¶ [7]If' þe enpostym be wiþinne, it' is good þat' me leie þer*to* no reper*cussiuis*, saue vse gargarismis m*aad in* þis man*ere* / ℞, ficus siccas, semen malue, semen lini, seþe þese *in* wat*er* & þan cole hem, & make þerof' a gargarisme; or wat*er* of' figis medlid wiþ butt*er*, þat' makiþ maturatif' euer*i* maner enpostym.

Anoint his neck,

and apply a plaster made from a swallow's nest.

℞

Irundines *id est* swalowes.

How to prepare this plaster.

[6 lf. 141]

In case of an inward apostema use a gargle.

℞

[1] *penidis*, Vigo Interpr. "*Penidie* are made of the Apothecaries wyth suggre wrethen lyke ropes." Fr. penide; Lat. penidium, from *πενίον*: spool on which the woof is wound.—Compare *diapenidion* in *Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat, 1886, II. p. 77, note.

[2] MS. *tofore* inserted but deleted.

[3] *wolle vnwaischen, vn*, in margin. Lat. lana succida. Lewis, *Latin Dict.*, gives a reference from *App. Apologia:* recens lana tonsa succida appellata est.

[4] *squinacie*, Lat. squinatia, quinsy. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 357, note.

[5] *peritorie*, Lat. parietaria; wall-pellitory.

[7] The passage from lf. 141, l. 5 till lf. 141, bk., l. 8 (p. 220. l. 15), is repeated in lf. 143, with some alterations. The corresponding words from the Latin are quoted to show the independent character of the two versions. l. 18, 19. If þe — — manere] It is good if þe enpostym be wiþinne or þe more p*ar*tie be wi*th*ynne, & if it mai not be resolued ne do awei wiþ reper*cussiuis*, þ*a*n it is good to vse garg*arisms*, þat ben maturatifs, m*aad* in þis maner. (*Bonum est etiam si apostema fuerit interius, aut maior eius pars, cum tempus prolongatur quod non repercutitur nec resoluitur: vti maturatiuis gargarismatibus ut hoc.*) 20, 21. seþe — — cole hem] putte he*m* in wat*er* & seþe he*m* in wat*er* (*coque in aqua*). 21. or] & medle þerwiþ. 21, 22. medled wiþ butter] & butt*er* & wijn. þat makiþ — — enpostym] þis wole make enpostym þat is wi*th*yn*n*e in þe þrote maturatif (*maturat omne intrinsecum apostema siue in gutture siue in stomacho siue in intestinis fuerit generatum*).

If this apostema shows itself outwardly, it must be carefully opened and cleansed.

Whanne þe enpostym is rotid; þat' þou schalt' knowe bi þe aswaging' of' þe akynge, & if' þe enpostym schewe wiþoutforþ, þanne opene it' wiþ an instrument', & be war þat þou hurte no senewe, ne no veine, ne noon arterie. & whanne it' is opened, make it' clene wiþ mundificatiuis þat' schulen be seid *in* þe antidotarie / And if' þe enpostym be wiþinneforþ, þan þou schalt not' breke it' wiþ þis gargarisme þat' is aforseid, saue þou schalt' make a gargarism þat' haly vside / Take galle, acacie, psidiarum, balaustie, aluminis iamini[1] & seþe hem *in* water & cole it' & make [2]þerof' a gargarism, for þis gargarism wole breke enpostym / Whanne þe enpostym is broke, þan þou schalt' bringe out' þe mater wiþ hoot' water, & dissolue þerinne butter & oile of' violets, & make þerof' a gargarism, & lete him vse þis gargarism til al þe matere be drawe out', & þan after þat' make him a gargarism of' liquiricie,[3] yreos & tamarisci / If' þe matere be coold, þan þou muste vse hottere gargarism, & þan þou muste vse mundificatiuis þat' per be þerinne mirre, sarcocolle,[4] þat' schulen be seid *in* þe antidotarie *in* þe chapiter of' mundificatiuis.

℞ [2 lf. 141, bk.]

Ranula vndr the toung an apostema that affects the breathing and swallowing.

¶ It' falliþ sumtyme þat' for reume þat' falliþ adoun of' a mannis heed, þer wexiþ *in* þe rote of' þe tunge a maner round þing' in þe gretnes of' an almaunde, & lettiþ a man þat' he mai not' wel drawe his breeþ ne ete his mete / & *in* þis maner þou schalt' cure him as it' is forseid wiþ þingis þat' voidiþ þe matere & wiþ resoluynge þingis.

A Lady had an internal and external swelling on her neck,

¶ I wole sette *in* þis place a cure þat' bifel *in* þe citee of' mediolanensis of' a ladi þat' was .L. wynter oold, & hadde a squinacie of' fleume þat' occupiede al hir necke tofore wiþinne & wiþoute,

1, 2. þe aswaging] cesing. and if] if. 2. schewe] be seen. 3, 4. be — — arterie] be wel war of veynes & arterijs. 4. whanne it is opened] þan. 5. and] *om.* 6, 8. wiþinneforþ — — galle] al wiþinne & wole not breke wiþ þe gargarism þat is aforseid of butter & figis & water & wijn, þan þou schalt breke him wiþ a medicyn þat haly þe abbot vside as wiþ a gargarism of gallarum. (*Si fuerit intra, nec rumpatur: cum gargarismate prædicto de butyro, ficuum aqua et vino rumpatur cum ingenio subtili Haly ab. scilicet cum gargarismate stypticorum sicut decoctionis gallarum.*) 9. & seþe — — þerof a gargarism] *om.* 10. wole breke] brekiþ þe. 11. þan þou schalt bringe out þe mater] drawe out þe quitture. 11, 12. & — butter] & a litil butter þerinne. 12. & make þerof] & herof he schal make. 12, 13. & lete him vse þis gargarism] *om.* matere be drawe out & þan] quitture be drawen awei after þat. 14. of liquorice — tamarisci] wiþ liquoris & thamarisci soden in watir.

[1] *Sinonom. Barth.*, p. 1, "*Alumen iamem, A. scissum, Alimen de pluma*, idem."—*Matth. Sylv.* "Iamen est prouincia Iameni uel Aliamen."

[3] *liquiricie*, lycoryce, *Pr. Parv.*, p. 303. See *lyquoris* in 2nd version.

[4] *Sarcocolla* "Is the Gumme or liquore of a tree growyng in Persia." *Halle. Table*, p. 109.

[1]saue wiþoutforþ þe swelli*n*g' was moost', & þe wo*m*man miȝte not' speke, ne swolowe *in* no mete. & þis wo*m*man was vndir þe cure of' a ȝong' man þat' was my scoler, and he cowde not' wel fare þerwiþ, & þo he was *in* dispeir of' hir lijf', I was sent' after & foond hir in wickide staat',[2] for sche eet' no mete *in* manye daies tofore, & sche durste not' slepe for drede, lest sche schulde be achekid. Þan I tastide hir pous, & it' was wondir feble, & I tastide þe place of' þe enpostym, & I knewe wel þat' sche schulde be raþere achekid þan þe enpostym wolde breke wiþoute or wi*th*ynne, for þe mate*r*e was so greet' / & þan I took a rasour, & lokide where þe mate*r*e was moost' gaderid for to enge*n*dre quitture, & it' was moost' able vndir þe chy*n*, & I felide þe place wiþ myn hond & tastide it' aboute þat' I miȝte be war of' nerues & arterijs, & þere I made a wou*n*de, & þere I drowe out' mate*r*e þat' was corrupt', & it' was foul stynkynge mate*r*e, & al miȝte I not' avoide anoon. & þo þe pacie*n*t' hadde bette*r*e hir breeþ, & hir pous was co*n*fortid, [3]for þe lungis miȝte take yn eir, & þerwiþ þe herte was comfortid, & þan I ȝaf' hir broþ, & þat' ȝede out' þoruȝ þe wou*n*de þe moost' part'. Þo I studiede how I miȝte best' do, & I lete make a pipe of' siluir, and putte it' *in* at' hir mouþ & passide forþere þan þe wou*n*de was, þat' it' miȝte fulfille þe place of' þe þrote. & þan I leide al aboute hir necke mundificati*u*is & maturati*u*is for to quitture þe toþer deel of' þe mate*r*e, & so I kepte it' til þer come out' of' þe wounde a greet' gobet' of' viscous mate*r*e & stynkyng', & was schape as it' were a greet' gutt'. & þerinne þe firste mate*r*e was engendrid, & wha*n*ne þis was oute, þe sty*n*king' wente awei þerwiþ, & þe wo*m*man biga*n* to be stronger, & wha*n*ne þe wou*n*de was maad clene I driede it' vp & soudide it'; & *in* þis maner þe pacie*n*t' was maad hool. ¶ Wha*n*ne þou fyndist coold mate*r*e rotid *in* þe forseid placis, þou schalt' not' abide til þe enpostym breke him-silf', sauc þou schalt' opene it' as it' is aforseid / & if' it' be not' rotid, þan make it' more maturatif', & opene it' as it' is aforseid / And þis þou muste wite þat' þou miȝte [4]not' abide to longe wiþ þe openyng': for þe herte & þe spi*r*itual lymes ne mowe not' longe endure wiþoute*n* eir.

[1 lf. 142]

she could neither speak nor eat,

nor sleep for fear of choking.

Lanfranc opened the apostema with a razor, where it was most ripe.

The patient could breathe,

[3 lf. 142, bk.]

but her food went through the open wound;

Lanfranc introduced a silver tube,

and the gangrenous parts were removed by suppuration.

When cold matter suppurates, open the apostema, before it breaks by itself.

[4 lf. 143]

[2] *in wickide staat*, in statu pessimo.

## / Of enpostym of subcilio /[1]

¶ vjo. co. If there is a hot apostema in the arm-pit, bleed from the Vena nigra or basilica.

If the apostema is cold, use mild medicines,

THis maner of enpostym haþ no nede of repercussiuis for causis þat ben aforseid, saue it is[2] greet nede þat he be avoidid wel wiþ purgaciouns / And if þe enpostym be hoot, þou schalt lete him blood in a veyne þat is clepid vena nigra,[3] or in þe veyne þat is clepid basilica in þe arm. & if þe matere be coold, þan avoide þe matere wiþ medicyns maad of turbit or sum oþer medicyn þat falliþ þerfore. & as myche as þou miȝt þou schalt take þerto wiþ medicyns þat haue not to greet drawyng / For if þou leiest þerto þingis þat ben to strong drawing, þan þe enpostym wole wexe þe more / þerfore þou schalt anoynte him wiþ oile of camomille, & leie þervpon wolle vnwaischen. & his dieting schal be sotil. & if þis suffise not, þan leie vpon a maturatif / & whanne it is rotid þou schalt opene [4]it, & principali if it be of coold matere. Saue if[5] þere be glandule þeron, as it falliþ ofte, & it be not ouir al rotid, as in oon place hard anoþir place neische, þan þou schalt haue þis in certein, þat þis passioun schal be clepid bubo, & þe cure þerof is hard.[6] For if þou drawist out þe matere þat is neische,[7] þe matere þat is hard is yuel to defie. & ofte þer comeþ þerof sclirosis or a festre, & it wole make a man yuel disposid & feuerous, as G. seiþ.[8] & þerfore aswage þe akynge & þan make rotyng wiþ maturatiuis; for þe matere þat is rotid wole helpe to rotie þe matere þat is hard. & whanne it is al neische þanne opene it / If it so be þat it breke bi it-silf or it be ful rotid, þan do þerto mundificatiuis, & vpon þe place þat is hard leie maturatiuis, & kepe wel þe place þat is open fro festrynge. Mundificatiuis & maturatiuis þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie pleynlier.

and open it, when it is ripe.

[4 lf. 144]

bubo. is difficult to heal.

*Galion.*

[1] Lat.: De apostemate sub titillico, id est sub ascellis. The translator made *subcilio* out of *sub ascellis; titillicum*, arm-pit, from *titillo*, tickle.

[2] *is*, above line.

[3] Matth. Sylv.: "Nigra uena, purpurea, media communis." V. media = V. mediana.

[5] *saue if*, Lat. hoc saluo, si esset . . .

[6] Lat.: tunc nullam habes viam tutam, quum tunc est bubo, cuius cura est difficilis.

[7] MS. inserts &.

[8] Lat.: "totum corpus in mala tenet dispositione febris et doloris; tamquam qui ad suam salutem, si nisi unam habuerit viam, ut dicit Galienus velit nolit, per eam, etsi mala fuerit, pertransibit." A more accurate translation of this passage is given in Sl. 2463 (xv. cent.) in a treatise on Surgery compiled from various authors, in which several chapters of Lanfranc's work are embodied. Ib. fol. 110 b.: "*And as Galyene seith, he that hath but one weye to his hele allthouȝe þat weye be nat good, he muste holde hit wille he nylle he.*"

## An enpostyme of þe helpers /[1]

¶ vijo. co/ In case of an apostema on the arm, bleed the Basilic Vein, [2 lf. 144, bk.]

THis enpostym if' it' be hoot', þan lete him blood *in* þe arm aforȝens, & not' *in* þe same side *in* þe veyne þat' is clepid basilica, & þan þou muste surely leie *per*to repercussiuis,[2] & if' repercussiuis suffisen not', þan resolue it' & leie maturatiuis *per*to, & þan abide til it' be *per*fitli[3] quitturid, but' if' þe mat*er*e be so violent' þat' it' were *in* poynt[4] to schende þe lyme, þan opene it' & be wel war of' the braun þat' is *in* þat' place / Manie men þat' ben vnkunnyng' & supposen þat' place to be fer fro ony noble lyme,[5] makiþ þ*er*on a deep kuttyng', & supposiþ to haue gret' worschip þ*er*of'; & manie idiotis wolen *pr*eise hem[6] wel *per*fore. & þan þe lacertis þ*er*of' ben hurt'; & wh*an*ne þe lacertis ben soudid aȝen, þan þe lyme þat' it' seruede fore schal be contract', wherfore þe mannes arm mai be lost' *in* sum *par*tie or *in* al / þ*er*fore wh*an*ne þou wolt' kutte þis enpostym, þou schalt' but' kutte abouteforþ *in* þe skyn, & not' to depe bi no man*er* wei for drede of' þe braun, & of' senewis, & of' veynes & arterijs, & wh*an*ne þe place is opened, þan leie þ*er*to mundificat*iuis*. If' þe openyng' be nyȝ þe elbowe, & þouȝ þe enpostym be moost' quitturid, þ*er*e be wel war þat' þou opene not' þe enpostym aboue þe elbowe .iij. fyngris brede, neiþ*er*[7] wiþinne ne wiþoute. & also nyȝ þe poynt' of' þe elbowe it' is *per*ilous, for it' is gret' hap if' it' be euere soudid. & þouȝ it' be soudid, þe mouynge of' his arme schal be lost'. If' þ*er* falle ony enpostym *in* þis place, & it' come of' greet' mat*er*e so þat' his bodi be replet', þan he mote haue greet' avoidyng' wiþ laxatiuis, & þan resolue þe mat*er*e, and worche as it' is aforseid *in* þe gen*er*al chap*iter*. *In* þe same man*er* þou schalt' cure þe enpostym of' his armis & of' hise hondis.

Unskillful physicians, in cutting too deep, hurt the muscles, and so the patient may lose his arm.

[7 lf. 145]

¶ Panaricium[8] is an enpostym þat' is *in* þe heed of' a mannes fyngir aboute þe nail / & is swiþe hoot', & greuous, & reed, & ful of' fier, & sumtyme it' makiþ a man to haue þe feu*er*e, & sumtyme it' fretiþ awei al þe poynt' of' a mannes fyngir / þe firste cure of' þis enpostym is, þat' first' þou schalt' lete him blood, so þat' alle þingis

panaricium, an apostema of the fingers, near the nails.

Treatment: First bleed the patient,

[1] Lat. De apostematibus adiutorii.

[2] *in poynt*, Lat.: nisi materia esset adeo violenta quod esset ad corruptionem membri parata. "*And in such poynt the body bileueth.*" Wright, *Popular Treatise*, p. 140.—"*Engelond & normandie . in god point he brozte.*" *Rob. of Glouc.*, 8868. Compare Fr. embonpoint.

[3] *curid*, erased.

[4] *silf*, erased. Lat.: & inde laudantur ab aliquibus idiotis.

[5] MS. inserts &.

[6] Vigo Interpret.: "Panaritium is an aposteme about the rootes of the nayles, and it is called in Greke Paronichia; in latyn reduuia." See Dufr. s. v. redubiæ.

If his condition allows, then apply a plaster, compresses or an ointment.

falle þ*er*fore as elde & stre*n*kþe & custu*m*. & þa*n* þou schalt' make hi*m* an enplastre of' vinegre & opiu*m*, & vpon þe plastre þou schalt' leie a ly*n*nen cloo*þ* wet i*n* a decoccioun of' psillij, or anoynte it' wi*þ* an oynement' þat' is coold. & in[1] al maner þou schalt' [2]take hede to do awei þe greet' hete & saue his fyngir fro corrupcioun / If' þe aki*n*ge & þe bre*n*nynge go not' awei i*n* þis mane*r*, & it' be i*n* wei for to quitture,[3] þa*n* leie þ*er*vpon scabiose grounden wi*þ* grese & do þe cure þ*er*to, as þou schalt' fynde in þe cure of' antrax & carbunculis. & enpostyms þat' come*þ* *in* ioynctis þou schalt' fy*n*de *in* her pr*o*pre place of' akynge of' ioy*n*ct*es* /

[2 lf. 145, bk.]

## Apostym wi*þ*outfor*þ* aboute þe spa*u*dis and þe gibbositees[4] //

¶ viij°. c°. If there is an apostema on the shoulders, purge the patient,

A Postym þat' come*þ* aboute the spa*u*dlis wi*þ*outfor*þ*, leie þou noon reper*c*ussif' þ*er*to, saue it' is bett*er* to drawe þe mat*er*e outward. First' þou schalt' p*u*rge hi*m*, for it' is greet' nede i*n* þis place, & þa*n* þou schalt' leie þ*er*to resoluinge þi*n*gis & maturatiuis ;

and open it when it is ripe.

& wha*n*ne þe enpostym is rotid þou schalt' not' abide, to it' breke it'-silf',[5] & pr*i*ncipali i*n* a coold cause, saue þou schalt' opene þe enpostym & drawe out þe quitture, & þa*n* þou schalt' leie þ*er*to mundificatiuis, & fulfille þe cure as it' is aforseid / In þis place þou schalt' take [6]hede þat' ofte tyme wha*n*ne þe enpostym is quitturid & is not' opened wi*þ*outfor*þ*, þa*n* it' brekiþ i*n*ward bitwene þe .ij. ribbis, & wha*n*ne it' is to-broke, þe pacient' feli*þ* but' litil greua*u*nce þerof', & þa*n* þe quitture leue*þ* wi*þ*i*n*ne, & i*n* long' tyme herof' come*þ* a festre. þ*er*fore þou schalt' not' abide til it' breke it'-silf' outward, saue þou schalt' opene it' wha*n*ne it' is quitturid, & þa*n* leie þ*er*to mundificatiuis & cure it' vp, as it' is aforseid i*n* o*þ**er*e enpostyms /

[6 lf. 146] If a ripe apostema breaks by itself, a fistula will arise.

Treat this fistula with mundificatives by means of a syringe, after having widened the hole of the fistula by a tent.

¶ If' it' so be þat' þ*er*e engendre a festre þ*er*on, or it' be maad clene & entre i*n*ward, þa*n* he mote vse waischingis þat' be*n* mu*n*dificatif', & caste it' in wi*þ* an instrument' m*aa*d in þe maner of' a clisterie. & if' þe hole þ*er*of' be streit' wi*þ*outfor*þ*, þa*n* þou schalt' putt' yn a tente of' þe pi*þ* of' eldre, or of' a sponge, or of' malu*m* terre,[7] or

[1] *in*, above line.

[3] *in wei for to quitture*, Lat. in via maturationis.

[4] *Gibbositas*, tumour. *Dufr. Gloss.*—"Gibbosity, a bunching or standing out of any part, especially of the Back."—Phillips.

[5] Lat.: non expecta crepationem per se.

[7] "*Malum terræ*, ciclamen, panis porcinus id. g^e^ dilnote and erthenote." *Alphita*, p. 107. mal. t. = galluc. Wr. Wü., 133. 20.

brionie, or gencian, & putte *in*to þe hole of' þe festre. & þis wole make þe hole of' þe festre to wexe more wide þan it' was, þat' þe ende of' þe instrument' mowe be putt' þat' schal be schape in þe maner of' [1]a clisterie. & þanne þou schalt' seþe hony & mirre *in* watir, so þat' *þer* be .x. *par*tis of' wat*er*, & of' hony .ij. *par*tis, & of' mirre .ij. *par*tis, & if' þou doist' *þer*to ysope & sauge, it' wole be þe bettir. Sumtyme it' is good for to do wijn *in* þe stide of' watir, & principali if' þe place be wiþouten ony hete. & þis decoccioun þou schalt' caste *in*to þe festre wiþ an instrument' as it' is aforseid, & make þat' þe pacient' turne hidir & þidir, vpward & dou*n*ward, þat' it' mowe waische wel þe place *þer*e þe quitture is. & þan make þe pa*tient* turne & ligge vpon þe hole of' þe festre, & make him cowȝe þat' al þe quitture mai goon out' wiþ þe decoccioun. & wh*a*nne it' is al oute, þan þou schalt' make him a tent' & anoynte it' *in* oile þat' þe wou*n*de close not' togidere. & *þus* þou schalt' worche, til þou se þe waischinȝ come out' of' þe festre *with*oute ony quitture. & wh*a*nne þe festre is al clene, þan þou schalt' fulfille þe cure *with* oynementis þat' wolen regendre fleisch & fulfille þe cure as it' is aforseid / If' it' so be þat' þe wei of' þe festre þat' goiþ in & out' [2]be bicome hard & callous so þat' it' be a verri festre, þan þou muste hete an hoot' yren þat' it' be as greet' as þe hole of' þe festre & bre*n*ne al þe hardnes þerof', & afti*n*ward make þe cruste falle awei *with* buttir & o*þ*ere þingis, & þanne make it' clene, & þan drie it' & soude it'.

[1 lf. 146, bk.]

Keep the wound dilated until it is perfectly cleansed.

When the passage of [2 lf. 147] the fistula is callous, use the hot iron.

¶ Also it' bifalliþ þat' children han grete bocchis *in* her brest', & þat' comeþ of' cowȝinge þat' puttiþ out' þe mat*er*e, & also it' comeþ of' greet' wynd þat' puttiþ out' þe mat*er*e / þe cure herof' in þe firste bigynnyng' is *in* þis man*er* for to aswage cowȝing', as almaundis grou*n*den wiþ penidis & temp*er*id *with* a decoccioun of' fenel, & þis he schal vse / Also take swete almaundis .ij. *par*tis, dragag*anti*,[4] semen *citoniorum*[5] an*a*, oon *par*ti, Iulip *quod* sufficit'. & make herof' a souping' medicyn,[6] þat' it' be as þicke as hony. & wh*a*nne þe cowȝinge is aswagid, þan make him a baþ wiþ rotis of altea, &

**Mitigatio[3] Tussis**

Children have apostemas in their chest in consequence of coughing and of wind in their body.

Allay the cough,

and apply a lotion.

[3] MS. *Metegacho.*

[4] Vigo Interpr.: "*Dragagantum.* Tragacantha is a brode. & a woddy rote appearyng about the earth, wher-oute manye lowe braunches sprynge, spreading themselues al about. There cleaueth to thys rote, a gummy liquour of a bright colour, & somwhat swete in tast, which they cal commenly dragagantum."

[5] *citonium* = Cotonea malus, Cydonea, "Quince." Wr. Wü., 13, 19. "*Citonium*, goodaepel."

[6] *a souping medicyn*, Lat. medicina sorbilis.

leues of malue, & fenigrec, & lyne seed soden *in* watir, & þis schal be cast vpon þe enpostym wiþ a vessel holden an hiȝe þer*e* from /
[1 lf. 147, bk.] þ*a*nne aftirward þou schalt [1]dissolue þe mat*er*e & make it neische w*i*th medycyns þat ben forseid *in* hard enpostyms, & þan cure it vp as it is aforseid *in* þe enpostyms of wijnd. ¶ A greet boch þat comeþ of þe passiou*n* of þe riggeboon, whan*n*e þei ben of þe ioynct, is incurable whanne it is co*n*fermed /

## Of an enpostym apperi*n*gè i*n* þe mouþ of þe stom*a*c /

¶ ixo co

If there is an Apostema at the stomach, the liver, or the spleen, strengthen the affected part,

WHanne þ*er*e schewiþ an enpostym *in* þe mouþ of þe stomac & aboute þe regiou*n* of þe lyuer & of þe splene: þouȝ sum*m*en wollen take hede to þe contrarie, bi my general rule[2] it is good & p*r*ofitable to comforte þe place wiþ oile of mast*ic*, & oile of spica, & oile of lilie, & wiþ cold enplastris of rosis, & of absinth*io*, squinanto, cip*er*o, citonijs wiþ mele of barli & o*per*e þ*in*gis. & þou schalt be wel war of reper*cussiuis*, wh*a*nne þe enpostym is nyȝ ony p*r*incipal lyme, saue þou schalt leie þ*er*to resoluyng & maturatif þ*in*gis. & loke þat þei be not medlid wiþ no þ*in*gis þat ben reper*cussif*; for if þou leidist reper*cussiuis* vpon þe stomak, or [3]þe lyuere, or þe splene, þei wolde be *en*feblid þ*er*wiþ, & to al þe accioun of þe bodi wolde be enpeirid; for þese lymes seruen principaly for to norische al þe bodi / þ*er*fore þou schalt not vse *in* þis caas pure maturatiuis, ne pure reper*cussiuis*, ne colde þ*in*gis / What schalt þou do *in* þis caas? þou schalt avoide þe mat*er*e, & þou schalt comforte þe place w*i*th stiptikis, & temp*er*e attractiuis, & do awei þe mat*er*e. & if þou miȝt not, þan resolue þe mat*er*e, for it is greet perel[4] of þis enpostym, for it wole liȝtli turne *in* to sclirosym, & þan it wole be hard to resolue, & aftirward it wole be cause of þe dropesie / þ*er*fore if þou seest[5] þat þe enpostym bicome hard, þan þou muste leie þ*er*to mollificatiuis & wiþ comfortatiuis. & þou muste be *in* þis caas ful wijs. & wh*a*nne þe enpostym is maturid, þan opene it as it is aforseid, & leie þ*er*to mundificatiuis & cure vp þe enpostym as it is aforseid.

apply resolving medicines, but beware of repellents.

[3 lf. 148]

This apostema easily gets indurated, and causes dropsy.

## // Of an enpostym þat comeþ *in* iguine .*id est* þe gryndis

¶ x. co/
[5 lf. 148, bk.] APostym comeþ often time *in* iguine for vlcera of þe ȝerde & of þe feet, for [6]þe place is discending adoun of humours to þat

[2] *rule*, above line. [4] *perel*, above line. [5] *seest*, in margin.

place,[1] & þan it is not so greet drede[2] þerof.[3] Saf if his bodi be ful of wickid humours, þan it is greet drede þerof / þis matere þou muste resolue in þis maner. Take oile of camomille & anointe þerwiþ þe enpostym, & leie þervpon wolle vnwaische, & if it resolue not in þis maner, þan leie þerto maturatiuis, as it is aforseide. ¶ If þe matere be hoot, þan lete him blood in þe veyne þat is clepid sophena. & þou schalt sotille[4] his dieting, & leie þerto resoluyng þingis þat ben not to strong, & þat þei drawe not to harde. & whanne þe cours of humours ceessiþ, þan leie þerto stronge resoluyng þingis. & in þis caas þis is good þerfore: lie of askis & of vryne, & wete þerinne stupis & leie vpon þe enpostym, for þis makiþ maturatif & waastiþ it sotilly & drieþ it / If þou myȝt not resolue it, þan leie þerto maturatiuis & opene it, & þan leie þerto mundificatiuis & hele it vp as it is aforseid /

Apostemas in the groins are caused by ulcers of the yard or the feet.

℞

Apply resolving medicines; if the matter is hot, bleed from the Vena Saphina.

℞

## Of an enpostym of þe haunche & of þe cox.

¶ xj. c°.

IN þis place ofte tyme engendriþ an enpostym, & þou schalt fynde þere þe curis þerof in þe chapitre of dolour of ioynctis; [§ lf. 149] saue if þe enpostym be without þe haunche in þe hipe, or in þe leg, or in þe foot, þan þou schalt do þerto þe same cure þat is aforseid in þe enpostyms of þe arm. Saf herof þou schalt take kepe, þat oftetymes an enpostym gaderiþ in a mannes hipe al wiþinne in þe depnes of it, þat a leche schal not knowe it, but if he be þe more wijs / þerfor ypo[eras] seiþ: in placis þere enpostym is, and þe quitture schewe not out, it is perilous / þerfor þou muste taste it wiþ þi fyngris, & loke where it is moost maturid, & opene it, and drawe out þe quitture, þan leie þerto mundificatiuis, & þan fulfille þe cure as it is aforseid /

Apostema on the legs are treated like those on the arms.

A deep apostema in the hip must be opened.

ypocras.

[1] Lat.: Sæpe prouenit apostema in inguine propter vlcera virgæ et pedum: propterea quod locus est descensus humorum ad illa loca. The translator mistook "descensus" sb. for descensus part.

[2] *drede*, above line.

[3] Compare Guiliel. de Salic. I. 42. Sl. 277, fol. 5 b.: "*This seeknesse is cleped bubo or dragoncell,*[a] *or aposteme of þe grynde, & it is maad as oftest of cold matere whiche is cast out of þe lyuere to þoo places, & oþerwhile it is hoot. It is maad also, when a man is seek in his ȝerde for filþehede of wommen or of oþer cause.*"

[4] *sotille*, Lat. attenuare. O.Fr. soutilier. Compare *sotilen* with the abstract meaning, "argue subtly." – *Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat, Gloss.

[a] Dufr. *Gloss.*: "Dracunculus, ulceris vel cancri species."

## Apostym of þe ȝerde & ballokis /

xij. co.

RIȝt as enpostyms comeþ in o*þ*ere lymes, riȝt so þei come*n in* a mannes ȝerde & *in* hise ballokis, of humo*ur*s hoot or cold, as bi þese signes þou miȝt knowe. Sumtyme a ma*n*nes ȝerde swelliþ *wit*h wy*n*d, þ*at* þou miȝt knowe bi enpostyms of wy*n*d þ*at* be*n* aforseid. & it falliþ ofte to ȝo*n*ge children,[1] & also þis enpostym þou miȝt knowe [2]*in* þis maner, if þe place be hard & heuy & þ*er* is no difference bitwixe þe colo*ur* he*r*of & of þ*at* o*þ*er p*ar*tie of his bodi.

A windy apostema of the yard occurs frequently with children.

[2 lf. 149, bk.]

A hot apostema of the yard and the testes is treated with blood-letting, a suitable diet,

¶ In an hoot enpostym of þe ȝerde or of þe ballokis, þou schalt lete hi*m* blood *in* a veyne þ*at* is clepid basilica in þe same side, & *in* þe .ij. dai lete hi*m* blood in þe sophene / Also þou schalt forbede hi*m* wijn & fleisch & al mane*r* swete metis þ*at* engendriþ blood or colre. Þ*an* þou schalt leie þ*er*to medecyns to putt awei þe mater, þ*at* ben maad *in* þis maner. ℞, cortices g*r*anato*r*u*m*, rosas siccas, & lentes & seþe he*m in* wat*er* til þei dissolue, & þ*an* grinde he*m in* a morte*r* wiþ oile of ro*s*es & a litil vinegre, & make herof an enplastre & leie it þ*er*on hoot / Also take succi portulace siluest*ris*, & oliu*m* ro*s*a*r*u*m* & a litil vinegre, & wete heryn a ly*n*nen cloop & leie it aboute þe ȝerde & hise ballokis / Wh*an*ne þe cours of þe mater ceessiþ, þ*an* do þ*er*to mele of barly & of benis, or diste*m*pe*r*e þese wiþ þe ȝelke of an ey & wiþ iuys of morel & oile of ro*s*es, & leie þ*er*on. & wh*an*ne þe enpostym goiþ awey, þ*an* leie þ*er*on enplastre of mele of benis [3]& of fenigrec & camomille diste*m*pe*r*id *wit*h gotis talow / If þis enpostym gadere quitture & vlcera, þ*an* cure it as þou schalt fynde in þe chapitre of vlcers of þe ȝerde.

℞

a hot plaster,

℞

and dressings.

[3 lf. 150]

A cold apostema of the testes is treated with an ointment and suppositories.

¶ A coold e*m*postym þ*at* is in þe ballokis schal be curid wiþ anoynti*n*g of þe mate*r*e wiþ medicyns or wiþ scharpe suppositorijs; for þis d*r*awiþ þe mater fro þe ballokis / If it be so þ*at* þe enpostym be woxen hard *in* þe ballokis, þ*an* leie þ*er*to þis enplastre þ*at* I haue ofte p*r*eued / Take bran of whete & grinde it wel in a morte*r* til it bicome al poudre, & þ*an* diste*m*pe*r*e it wiþ oximel maad of .ij. p*ar*tis of vinegre & oon p*ar*tie of hony, & dissolue þe*r*i*n*ne gu*m* armoniac & make herof an enplastre & leie it on hoot, & þis schal be remeued ofte. Þis is auicens medicyns.

℞

A plaster for an indurated apostema.

¶ If a ma*n*nes ȝerde be swollen wiþ wijnd & þe cause be hoot, þ*an* lete hi*m* blood; if it be coold, þ*an* leie þ*er*to enplastris, & *in* þis caas among alle ope*r*e þi*n*gis þis is good / Take oile of ro*s*es iiij.

[1] Add. 26,106, fol. 59 b.: accidit quibusdam iuvenibus calidis.

*par*tis, of' wex o *par*t', melte he*m* togidere & þa*n* waische he*m* *in* coold wate*r* til it' bicome as it' were a whit' oynement', & herwiþ [1]anoynte þe place / If' it' be hoot', þa*n* þou schalt' make hi*m* caste, & þou schalt' ʒeue hi*m* agnus castus,[2] & seed of' rue & comyn & anise & o*þe*re þingis þat' waastiþ wijnd, & make an enplaste*r* of' þese þingis þat' distrieþ wijnd / ¶ An enplaste*r* þat' gilbert' made for swellyng' of' a ma*n*nes ʒerde & it' is mitigatif' .Ry, crummis of' whit' breed & grinde he*m* *in* a morter & tempere hem wiþ watir, & þa*n* boile hem til þei bicome þicke, & do þerto a litil oile & a litil hony, & þa*n* boile hem togidere & leie it' vpon hoot' // If' a ma*n*nes ʒerde be swollen wiþ hete of' liggyng' bi a wo*m*man, þus þou schalt' helpe hi*m* Take leues of wiþi & sepe he*m* *in* wate*r* & baþe his ʒerde herynne & binde þerto þe leues // Also sepe lynseed & leues of' malue & grynde hem togidere & make he*r*of' a plastre /

A plaster for a cold windy apostema.

[1] lf. 150, bk.]

A plaster for a hot windy apostema.

.Ry.

A lenitive plaster of Gilbert.

Ry

## The cure of scrophularum & glandulum /[3]

¶ xiij°

Scrophula is caused by Melancholy; Glandula by Phlegm.

[4] lf. 151]

These apostemas are treated with purging.

Ry

The patient shall neither drink water, nor weep, nor sleep on a full stomach.

CUre of glandular*um* & scrophular*um* is almoost' oon, saue he*r*of' is a difference / Scrophule comeþ þe moost' *par*t' of' malancoli & ben worse to dissolue. & glandule comeþ þe most' *par*t' of' fleume, & ben liʒter to resolue / In boþe causis it' is [4]necessarie to *purge* þe matere. & þe medicyn laxatijf' maad of' turbit' is good þerfore þat' is aforseid *in* þe chapitre of' allopucia, or *in* þis maner as .A. makiþ it' / Ry turbit' zinzi,[5] zucare .ʒ .ij, & ʒeue þis ofte, or trociscus de turbit' maad wiþ diarubarbe, & þou must' sotile his dietyng', & he schal not' ete to miche, & he schal drinke no wate*r*, & he schal holde his heed an hiʒ, & he schal kepe hi*m* fro wepinge, & he schal not', wha*n*ne he is ful, slepe anoon þerupon, & þou schalt' anoynte þe place wi*th* oile of' camomille, & wiþ oile of'

[2] Besides the names given in *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. Agnus castus, there are: "*Agnus castus*, frutex est, i. bischopeswort." *Sinon. Barth.*, p. 1. "A. c., toutsayne." Wr. Wü. p. 562, 24 (xvth cent.). "Chastlambe" in *Maplet.* A greene Forest, fol. 39. De Propr. Rer. (Add. MS. 27944, fol. 216 *a*): "*Agnus Castus is an herbe hoot and dryue and haþ vertu to kepe men & wommen chaste a plinius seiþ.* ¶ *Þerfore wommen of Rome vsede to bere wiþ hem þe fruyt of þis herbe in dyrige and service for dede men, whanne þey moste nedes lyre chaste for comyn honestee.* ¶ *Þis herbe is alway grene as dyascorides seiþ. and platearius also, and þe flour þeref is nameliche y-cleped agnus castus.*"

[3] Sl. 2463, f. 97 (see p. 222, note 8): "*Because þat þe cure of scrophules & glaundules, as who seith, is bothe oone, but þer is a difference be as moche as scrophules ben for þe more partie of malancolye . . .*"

[5] MS. ZZ.

.℞. lilie, & wiþ þis oile þat' is apreued / ℞, radices electerij,[1] radices malue visci,[2] & kutte hem smal & leie hem in oold oile of oliuarum & do hem in a vessel of' glas, & sette þis glas in a vessel of' water, & make þe water to seþe, & be war þat' þou saue þe glas fro brekinḡ. 4

Use one of the following plasters. One prepared with goat's-dung.

& wiþ þis oile anointe him, & þan leie þeron wolle vnwaische / And if' þis suffise not', make him a plastre of' gotis tordis & oximel, or quik lyme & swynys grese þat' it' be freisch / & oold,[3] or þis medicyne / ℞ staphisacre, seminis-lini,[4] farini orobi, resine [5]albe & 8

.℞. [5 lf. 151, bk.] ℞

make herwiþ an enplastre wiþ ole & vinegre / Also anoþer þat' is swiþe good. Take radices lilij, & seminis lini, anᾱ,[6] boile hem in wijn til þei dissolue, & þan do þerto of' culuer tordis & make it' a 12

Another prepared with dove's-dung.

þicke plastre, & þou schalt' putte þerto culuer toordis more or lesse as þou seest' þat' þe mater resolueþ more or lesse, as þou seest' þat' it' nediþ. ¶ Also diaculon[7] rasis, & diaculon Iohannes Mesue þat' schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, ben good for to resolue scrophulas / Whanne þou resoluest' þe mater & sum þerof' goiþ awei, & sum 16 þerof' leueþ hard, þan þou schalt' do þerto sumtyme mollificatiuis & sumtyme resoluyng' þingis //

Glandula and Scrophula must be opened when they are quite ripe.

¶ Glandule & scrophule ben parti of' douce fleume or of' blood; it' is ful hard to make hem clene, for sum partie þerof' wole leue 20 hard & wole not' bicome maturatif'. þou schalt' [not][8] haste to opene hem saue þou schalt' leue if' þou miȝt', til it' be al rotid, & þan open it' & leie þerto mundificatiuis / & in þis place it' is good to leie þerto vnguentum apostolorum & poudre of' affodille & opere 24 liȝt' corosiuis. & þou schalt' in no maner leie þerto realgar,[9] ne noon

[10 lf. 152] violent' [10]þingis, & leie þeron a mundificatif' in which be medlid rotis of' lilie wel soden, for þis mundificatif' makiþ clene & also quitturiþ þe remenaunt' of' þe matere / þou must' take greet' dili- 28 gence for to make clene glandulas & scrophulas, for þei ben ful hard

[1] Lat. elaterium, ἐλατήριον. *Alphita*, p. 53, "*Elacterium* succus cucurbite agrestis idem. sed *electerides* sunt cucumeres agrestes tam fructus eorum quam ipsa herba." Vigo *Interpr.*: "Elaterium is the iuice of a wild cocomber."

[2] *malua viscum* = Althæa officinalis, marsh-mallow.

[3] Some words omitted. Lat.: cum axungia porcina, sine sale antiquo.

[4] MS. *staphisacre seminis. nitri.*

[6] *partes æquales* om.

[7] "*Diachylon*, a Plaister made of the Mucilages or pappy Juice of certain Fruits, Seeds, and Roots, whose Office is to ripen and soften." Phillips.

[8] *not* om. Lat.: Non ergo festines in earum apertura.

[9] *realgar*, Arab. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.* *Alphita*, p. 156, *Realgar* vel *risalgar* est uena terre." Vigo *Interpret.*, "Realgar is made of brymstone, vnslaked lyme, and orpigmente. It kylleth rattes."

to make clene, & ofte þer engendriþ þerof festris / ¶ If þou desirist to cure glandulas & scrophulas wiþ kuttyng, loke wher glandula or scrophula be neische, & be war of veynes & senewis, & loke þat þer be no veine þere nyȝ. Þan take him vp wiþ þi lift hond & drawe him vp as hiȝe as þou miȝt & kutte þe skyn endelongis þe necke, & be war þou touche not þe clooþ þat he is folde þerinne, & þane score[1] him & drawe him out al hool *with* þe clooþ, & if þer leue ony þing þerof, caste þeron poudre of affodille or sum oþer liȝt corosif, & þanne regendre fleisch & soude it vp / If it so be þat glandula or scrophula be closid *with* veynes or wiþ arterijs, þan kutte him not in no maner, for þer miȝt come greet perel þerof.[2]

In extirpating the apostema take care not to injure a blood-vessel.

12 // Þe cure of þe cancre not vlcerid & his cure /

CAusis & difference þou hast herd of a cankre [3]& in what maner þou schalt cure cancrum þat is not vlceratus / Rasis seiþ, & it is sooþ, & I haue seen ofte tyme, þat whanne ony man touchiþ a cancre wiþ iren or wiþ ony medicyn corosif, but if þei kutte him awey clene wiþ alle his rotis, ellis þei makiþ þat þe cancer is vlceratus / & for to make a cancre vlceratum, it ne falliþ for no goodnes, saue it makiþ þe patient haste þe fastere to his deeþ, & schortiþ his lijf & bringiþ him in turment // ¶ Þerfore if a cancre be in a place þat he mai be kutt awei wiþ alle hise rotis, whanne he is kutt awei, þan þou schalt brenne þe place wiþ an hoot iren or wiþ gold, & þan þou schalt fulfille þe cure as it is aforseid in þe chapitre of a cancre þat is vlceratus.[4] ¶ If it so be þat þe cancre be perfit & greet, þan þou schalt touche him wiþ noon iren ne wiþ no medicyn corosif, saue þou schalt kepe þe patient wiþ good dieting, & he schal ofte tymes haue medicyns for to purge malancolie wiþ gootis whey & *with* epithimo, & sumtyme lete him blood, & þou schalt anoynte þe place wiþ vnguentum rasis

¶ xiiij .c°. [3 lf. 152, bk.] Rasis

Unless a non-ulcerating cancer is removed thoroughly, it becomes an ulcerating one.

Use the hot iron after cutting.

A large and fully developed cancer shall neither be cut nor cauterized.

[1] *score.* Lat. discarnare.

[2] Sl. 2463, fol. 98: "*But if þe glandule or þe scrofule be intrikes*[a] *with veynes, arteries oþer synewes, so þat þei cleue oþer be faste knytte to hem, for nothing þou schall nyȝe hem nother with Iren noþer with noone other corosyue medecyne.*"

[3] A different opinion is expressed in Sl. 2463, fol. 115: "*The cure of þe canker is done in two maners. The tone cure is for to kutte away all þe membre þat þe canker is inne, with all þe syknesse; and þis is an yuell cure and may be done, but it is not plesaunt.*" Ibid., fol. 115 b.: "*And ȝf þer be noon oþer remedie but for to cutte hit away with alle þe rotes, me thenkith hit is more honest to leue hit þanne to do hit.*"

[a] Lat. intricata.

[1 lf. 153] de thutia, þat is [1 2]aforseid *in* cura cancri vlcer*ati*. & þou schalt leie
þer*on* colde leues, & alwei þis schal be þin entencioun, for to kepe
Many patients would live a long time if they were not treated by unskilful physicians. þat þe cancre wexe not ne rotie not / I haue seen ful manye lechis
þat hadden greet name *in* cirurgie þat founden cancris *in* men, and
wexe not, & þe cancris were not vlcerati & miȝte ful long tyme
haue lyued if he hadde be kept aftir my teching *in* þis book; saue
vnkunnyng cirurgians weneþ þat in kutting of a cancre þei schulde
finde quitture & ben disseyued, & so disseyuen hem-silf & also þe
pa*tient*, & þan whanne þei han kutt þei fynde nouȝt saue fleisch
corrupt wiþout quitture *in* þe maner of a sponge, wherfore þe lippis
of þe wounde wole come aȝen worse þan þei were tofore & more
stynking. & wiþ þe greet stynkinge þe spirit is schent, & makiþ þe
p*atient* þe raþere drawe toward þe deeþ / & if þe cancre were not
vlcerat*us* þe pa*tient* miȝte lyue long*e* þer*with*.

## Bocium þat comeþ of humours corrupt.

¶ xv° c°. "Bocium" is caused by corrupt phlegm, [3 lf. 153, bk.] or arises from hot apostemas. BOcium is a postym þat comeþ of humours, & *principali* it is
enge*n*drid of fleume corrupt / Sum*t*yme it comeþ of [3]hote
enpostyms, as wha*n*ne þei be*n* rotid & not opened. & þouȝ þe
subtil mater be dr*a*wen out, þat op*er*e part bicomeþ hard & leueþ
þ*er*e longe tyme / & sumtyme a rume[4] falliþ adoun of his heed *into*
his necke & makiþ þe mat*er*e wexe more / þis maner enpostym haþ
manie diuers signes / Sum maner þerof is lijk as it were cley, &
su*mm*e is lijk schellis. Su*mm*e is as it were chese, & su*mm*e is as
it were drastis of oile, & so þis enpostym *in* his corrupcioun takiþ
manie diuers colo*u*ris /

This apostema is treated with drawing and caustic medicines. þis enpostym schal be helid wiþ dr*a*wyn*g*e þing*is* & wastynge
þat schulen be take*n* bi þe mouþ & leid to wiþoutforþ / þou schalt
ȝeue him bi þe mouþ a medicyn for to purge fleume, & þan þou
schalt ȝeue him a medicyn for to waaste þe mat*er*e & is maad in þis
.℞. A caustic medicine. maner / ℞ p*a*ruam plantam nucis a terra cum suis radicib*us* extirpatam i*d est* take a litil plauntein of a note & take it vp of þe ground
wiþ alle hise rotis, & grynde it wiþ greynes of pep*er*, so þat if þ*er* be
of þe notis ℥ iiij., þan do þ*er*to of pep*er* ℥ j, & þis þou schalt boile

[2] In later hand at the bottom of the page: *contra ffetorem cancri.* ℞ *pulueris corticis quercus ffarine sileginis ana succi appii mell ana succus & mell inspissentur decoque super ynguem cum puluere ffarina. Item decoque pulu*erem *corticis quersini in aqua et inde tepide laua cans*erem *a ffetore paliando.*

[4] *rume*, rheum, O.Fr. reume.

*in* a quart' of' wyn [1]of' paris til it' come to þe half', & þ*a*nne cole it', [1 lf. 154]
& herof' þe pa*tient* schal take eu*e*ry dai ȝ ij. // ¶ Enplastris þat' A caustic plaster.
wastiþ be*n* enplast*ris* þat' enpostyms of' fleume be wastid þ*er*w*ith* /
If' þou desirist' for to cure it' wiþ kuttyng', þ*a*n þou must loke, wher
þe mat*e*re þat' is wiþ*in*ne be neische or hard. & wher it' be among'
veynes & arterijs, þou schalt' touche it' wiþ noon iren *in* no man*er* /
If' it' so be þ*at*' þe mater be neische & if' þou miȝte kutte it' for In extirpating this apostema
p*er*els þat' ben forseid, þ*a*n kutte it' & drawe out þe mater, & leie do not injure the integument wherein
þerto mundificatiuis, & alle þ*in*gis as it' is aforseid *in* þe general the tumour is situated.
chapitre / If' þe mat*er* be hard & þe enpostym be hangynge & be
fro veynes & arterijs, þ*a*n kutte þe sky*n* endelongis aboue, & be war
þ*at*' þou touche not' þe bagge þ*at*' bocium sittiþ þ*er*on & scarre[2] it'
al abouteforþ & drawe him out' w*ith* al his skyn. & if' þ*er* leue
þ*er*on ony þ*in*g' of' his skyn, þ*a*n caste þ*er*on poudre of' affodille, &
make it' clene wiþ poudre of' sum liȝt' corrosif' þ*er*wiþ—vng*uentum*
viride,[3] & þ*a*n regendre fleisch, & þ*a*n drie it' vp as it' is aforseid /

## [4]Of þe akynge of ioynctis. [4 lf. 154, bk.]

NOw it' is seid pleynlier of' alle enpostyms, now speke we of' ¶ xvj° c°.
passiouns þat' come*þ* *in* ioynctis. & þis passioun is myche Diseases of the joints are similar to
lijk to enpostyms *in* causis & signes & curis, & also it' diuersiþ apostemas,
miche fro o*þ*er*e* enpostyms / For þouȝ þe place be greet' to-swollen,
it' come*þ* but' late or neuere to quitture. Swellynge & akynge of' but they rarely terminate in suppuration.
ioinctis, þis passioun is vnknowen to manie kunnyng' lechis þ*at*' han
greet' name. Bi þe cause þ*at*' cirurgians ben clepid algate to þis
man*er*e passioun, þ*er*fore I haue studied to make a general chapitre
of' passiouns of' ioinctis. & I haue take miche þ*er*of' þe bokis of'
Rasis & of' myn owne worchi*ng*' þ*at*' I haue p*r*oued. ¶ þe causis Pains in the joints are caused by an evil condition of the limbs or the body,
þ*at*' maki*þ* aki*n*ge *in* ioynctis : or it' come*þ* of' yuel co*m*plexioun of'
lymes, or it' come*þ* of' hoot' co*m*plexioun þ*at*' heti*þ*, or it' come*þ* of'
coold co*m*plexioun þ*at*' cooldi*þ* / Drie ligaturis of' ioynctis con-
streine*þ* & maki*þ* akynge,[5] & moist'nes maki*þ* neu*er*e akynge wiþ-
outen o*þ*er [6]mater / Mater þ*at*' maki*þ* aki*n*ge of' ioy*n*cts is ofte tyme [6 lf. 155]
habou*n*daunce of' blood, & ofte tyme it' is raw fleume, & moost'
p*r*incipali colre or blood medlid w*ith* fleume / & it' come*þ* ful seelde
of' fleume, but' if' it' be medlid wiþ ony o*þ*er þ*in*g' as colre / In what'

[2] *scarre.* Lat. scarnare.
[3] *vnguentum viride.* See Notes.
[5] Lat. sicca (complexio) ligamento junctarum astringendo dolorem aliquando generat.

maner þou schalt knowe which humour be *in* þe cause of akynge of ioinctis, þou schalt finde *in* þe chapitre of allopucia & *in* þe general chapitre of enpostyms, if þou takist good kepe of þe signes of þe forseid chapitris, what humour is *in* cause of akynge of ioinctis / Saue þis þou muste take hede, þat ofte tyme raw fleumatik humo*ur*is makiþ akynge of ioinctis as it is forseid, & þan þe colour of þe lyme schal be but litil[1] chaungid þerfore / & þan a leche but if he be þe more expert þeron mai be bigilid. & sumtyme a litil quantite of colre wole schewe vpon þe lyme, & þan þe leche wole leie þerto coolde þingis, & þan þe mat*er* of fleume wole bicome hard, & so þe greuaunce wole be worse þan it was / þerfore it is greet nede þat þe leche be kunnyng & knowe wel þe [2]mater of passiou*ns* of ioyntis.

and frequently by phlegmatic humour.

The physician can easily be in error, and apply wrong medicines.

[2 lf. 155, bk.]

¶ þe cure of akynge of ioinctis þat come*þ* of yuel complexiou*n* oonly, þou schalt remeue w*ith* þingis þat ben contrarie to þat complexou*n*:[3] as if þe mater be hoot, þan þou schalt remeue it w*ith* colde þingis, & if þe mater be coold, þan þou schalt remeue it wiþ hoot þingis, & if þe mater be of drienes, þan þou schalt remeue it wiþ moist þingis, & wiþ metis & drinkis þat makiþ fatt, & wiþ rest[4] & wiþ gladnes; for as faste as his bodi bicome*þ* fatt, he schal be hool of þat passiou*n* / þis passiou*n* þat come*þ* of humours, is curid w*ith* mitigacio*n* of þe akynge, & I fynde diuers opiniou*ns* þeron / & þerfore I wole schewe he*m* in þis chap*iter* / Auicen seiþ: þat wh*a*nne þou wolt worche in þis mater, þi principal entencio*u*n schal be for to do awei þe akynge / And Rasis forbediþ þat þou schalt leie þerto no reper*cussiuis*, ne noon resolutiuis but if þe mater be avoidid tofore / For to do awey þe akynge: saue avoide þe mater, or leie þerto a reper*cussif* or a resolutif. & þan Rasis seiþ þat þou schalt avoide him, & auicen for[5]bediþ þat / In what maner schulen we worche þanne, wh*a*nne þou fyndist a man þat haþ greet akynge? / First þou schalt leie a plastre to þe lyme þat it be mitigatif or an oynement þat be mitigatif, & þe difference herof schal be aftir þat þe mater is // Also þou miȝt ȝeue him sumwhat bi þe mouþ for to aswage þe akynge. & þou schalt fynde greet plente *in* þis chapitre of defensiuis & mitagatiuis to defende þe mater / And wh*a*nne þe akynge is perfiȝtli swagid lete him blood

Treatment, when the illness arises from a bad condition of the body.

If it is caused by the humours, soothe the pain.

**Auicen** and **Rasis** differ in their treatment.

[5 lf. 156]

Apply first a lenitive plaster or ointment, or give a medicine, then let blood

[1] A second *litil* deleted.

[3] Lat.: Cura doloris iuncturarum quæ ex mala complexione sola est, non est nisi cum contrariis complexionis malitiam removere.

[4] MS. *rost*.

if þe cause be of blood. & if it be of anoþer cause avoide it. & if þou letist him blood, þou schalt do it *in* a lyme aforȝens. & if þou wolt avoide þere matere, loke þat þou knowe þe cause / for þis is ful necessarie for a leche to kunne / Whanne þe mater is avoidid & þe akynge ceessid, þan þou schalt bigynne wiþ resoluynge medicyns þat ben forseid. ¶ Also *in* curis of akynge *in* ioyntis be wel war þat þou feble not his appetit, for þis sijknes comeþ moost of humours þat ben vndefied. & þerfore þou schalt *in* as miche as þou miȝt make him haue good ap[1]petite & good digestioun / If þou fyndist oonly þe mater coold, þat makiþ ful seelde ony gret akynge, saue it makiþ þe lyme heuy. Þis þou schalt wite þat *in* a coold cause þat makiþ akinge *in* ioinctis, þouȝ it be hard to do awei, neþeles þou schalt ȝeue him no strong medicyn ne he schal not be purgid hastili as manie men weneþ, saue it schal be do wiþ a propre medicyn þat is sure. & it schal ofte be ȝeuen, so þat þou mai algate kepe his appetit, for þer is noon so strong medicyn þat mai avoide þe mater al at oonys / And if þou ȝeuest him a strong medicyn it wole afeble hise vertues. & þerfor þou must chese a liȝt medicyn þat mowe comforte þe stomac & þat it mowe be ȝeue ofte //

from the sound limb,

or evacuate any evil matter:

and attend to the patient's appetite and digestion.

[1] lf. 156, bk.]

Therefore do not give a strong purgative, but a mild one in several doses.

¶ Of akynge of ioyntis þou hast had general rulis; now we mote speke of curis here after. ¶ If þou be sent after to a man þat haþ arteticam,[2] þat is as myche to seie as a goute, first þou muste loke wher þe mater be hoot or coold, or wheþer he haue strong akynge or liȝt akynge / & if his akynge be strong, þan [3]leie þerto mitigatiuis / In oon maner þou schalt ȝeue him medicyns bi þe mouþ þat ben mitigatif for to take awey þe akynge, & enplastris þat ben mitigatif, & leie vpon þe place. ¶ A good medicyn þat schal be ȝeue bi þe mouþ: R. glandes & leie hem *in* vinegre adai & anyȝt, & after þat drie hem to þe sunne or *in* an ouene, & þan kepe it / & whanne þou wolt ȝeue it, grynde it & ȝeue þerof ʒ .j.; þis medicyn makiþ blood greet & remeueþ þer from / Also take lentes

**Arteticam.**

When gout is attended with

[3] lf. 157]

pain, give lenitive medicines, and apply plasters.

.R.

[2] *artetica*, arthritica, gout, *Trevisa De propr. rer.*, Lib. VII, Cap. 56 (Add. MS. 27,944, fol. 96 *b.*). "*Arthetica is ache and evel in fingres and tone wiþ swelling & sore ache / and whanne hit is in þe fyngres, hit hatte cyragra, and in þe toone hit hatte podagra, if hit is in þe whirlebones and ioyntes it hatte sciatica passio, and comeþ of colerik blood & of fleumatik humours, & comeþ most ofte of reumatik cause.*" The author of the Treatise on Surgery, preserved in Sl. 1736, mentions this disease as a hereditary one. Ibid. fol. 122 b.: "*also yt ys often tymes sene þat þis arthetica passio gose by erytaunce as fro þe [fadyr] to the childur, and so forth to odyr.*"

A medicine only to be given in great need.

excorticatas, semen coriandri, succum glandulum, hermodactulis[1] wiþ sugre & coold watir, saue herof' þou must' take kepe þat' þese medicyns schulen not' be ȝeue but' *in* greet' nede, & whanne þe akynge is so greet' þat' it' mai not' be take awei. & þei mai be moost' sotilly ȝeue whanne þe mater is subtil & scharp / & if' þe mater be greet' & miche, þan þis medicyn schal not' be ȝeue. ¶ If' þe mater be coold & of' greet' akyng', þan take hermodactulis, thuris ana xx. partis, cucumeri partes .x, & ȝeue þerof' ℥ .iij. vpon þe place / If' þe matere be litil & scharp [2]& subtil / ℞, amigdalas, camphore ana, grinde hem & tempere hem wiþ watir of' roses / Also anoþir in þe same kinde / ℞, mirre, panis albissimi & subtilissimi ℥ j, opij ℥ ß, grinde hem wel & tempere hem wiþ milk of' a cow, & leie it' þeron whanne it' is greet' nede / Item ℞, opij, cortices mandragorae ana .ℨ .v, grinde hem & tempere hem wiþ þe iuys of' portulacae & oile of' roses & a litil vynegre / Also an oynement' for to ceesse þe akynge / ℞, olium rosarum ℥ iiij, cere ℥ j., melte þe oile & þe wex togidere & waische it' with oile of' roses, & þan do þerto citrini ℥ j., opij ℥ ß / If' þe mater be myche & be neiþer more in quantite þan in qualite, & þou wolt' defende more þe cours of' þe mater, þan do awei þe akynge.[3] ℞, cortices granatoris, sandali[4] albi, & rue,[5] & roses, boli armenici, ferrugine,[6] opij, confice cum succo mirtillorum vel foliorum salicis, or with a decocciun of' hem in watir wiþ a litil oile of' roses & vinegre & make herof' an oynement'. & whanne þe akynge is aswagid, þan dissolue þe mater of' blood wiþ letyng' blood. & þat' suffisiþ as it' is aforseid. ¶ Colre þou schalt' dissolue in þis maner / ℞, mirabolanorum citrinorum .ȝ vj.,[7] grinde hem & leie hem al anyȝt' in lī ß of sirup of' viole, & ℥ .iiij. of' wijn of' pomegarnates þat' ben swete, amorowe boile hem alitil & do þerto ȝuccare .ȝ ß, hermodactylorum .ℨ ß., & ȝeue it' him in þe mornyng'. & if' þou wolt' make itt' more coold, do þerto .ℨ .ij. of' musilaginis

[2 lf. 157, bk.]

An oinement' þat' sesses ache

[7 lf. 158]

[1] "*Hermodactyla*, crawanleac." Wr. Wü. 137, 3.—"Hermodactylus, a round-headed Root, brought from Syria, which is of an insipid Taste; and gently purges Phlegm." Phillips.

[3] Add. 26,106, fol. 63: Si uero materia fuerit multa et times plus de quantitate quam de qualitate, et uis plus prohibere materiæ cursum quam extinguere . . .

[4] *sandali albi*, σάνταλον. The d in sandal is explained by influence of Arab. sandal (Devic). Matth. Sylvat. mentions three sorts of Sandal: album, ruffum et citrinum. See *Alphita*, p. 161. *whit saunders* and *reed saunders* are distinguished in Sloane MS. 2463, fol. 155 *b* (c. c. 1450).

[5] *rue* for *rubidi*.

[6] Lat. foenugreci.

psillij or ʒ .j. ¶ Þis is a good electu*arie* þerfore .℞, citoniorum lĩ ß., & make hem to gobettis, & leie hem *in* vinegre adai & aniʒt' / & þan wrynge hem & grinde hem smal, & do þerto scamonie þat' it' be good .ʒ .j, cardamomi, cubube .ʒ .iij, spice nar*di* .ʒ .j, ros*is* .ʒ .v, ʒucc*are* lĩ ſ, make herof' a letuarie þat' purgiþ wel colre & comfortiþ þe stomac. Þou schalt' ʒeue herof' .ʒ .ij. & þou miʒt' scharpe it' more if' þou wolt' *with* a litil hermodact*ylis*. ¶ Þese ben good pelottis for þe same cause / ℞, aloes .ʒ .ij, hermod*actylos* .ʒ j, scamonie .ʒ ß, ros*is* .ʒ .j, make herof' pelottis *with* siru*po* viol*arum*, & þou schalt' ʒeue herof' .ʒ .j. Wh*anne* þe passioun bigyn*neþ* to go awei *with* þese medicyns, þan þou schalt' leie þerto plastris þat' ben resoluynge: as of' malue & bismalue, camomille, mellilotu*m*, absinthiu*m*, *pe*ratorie, semen caulium, aneti, fenug*reci*, [1]semen lini, furfuris, & swynys grese, & gandris grese, & hennis grese, & oile of' camf*re*, & oliu*m* aneti. & wh*anne* þe cours of' humours ceessiþ, þan þou schalt' vse oonly resoluyn*ge* þingis & make þerof' enplastris / Also to do awaye residue of' þe akin*ge*, þis is a good medicyn / ℞, oli*um* camom*ille* ʒ .iiij, cere .ʒ j., sem*in*is aneti & caulium, flor*um* camom*ille* ana .ʒ .iij. & make herof' an oynement' / Also *in* anoþer maner / ℞, fenig*reci*, semen lini, aneti, & tempere hem *with* iuys of' caul*ium*. & herof' þou must' take kepe, þat' as ofte as þou wolt' vse clene resolutiuis, þou schalt' algate waische þe lyme þat' is to-swollen wiþ a decoccioun of' malue & bismalue, & flor*um* of' camom*ille* & melliloti, absin*thii* & op*ere* mo, & þe lyme schal be waische þerwiþ til it' bicome reed, & þan þou schalt' anoynte him / And þis þou schalt' wite þat' as meuyn*g*' & baþin*g*' greueþ þe passioun *in* þe firste bigyn*nyng*', riʒt' so þei ben *in* þe ende riʒt' greet' helpin*g*' / For to stuwe & baþe doiþ awei þe laste part' of' þe mater & makiþ a mannys lymes haue her meuyn*g*' as þei schulde haue. & also it' is good wh*anne* þe pa*tient* goiþ out' of' [2]his stue, if' hise io*inctis* akiþ, þan frote hem wel wiþ salt' grou*nde* / If' þe mater be coold þou schalt' diʒte him wiþ diaʒinʒiber*is* þat' is aforseid *in* allopucia. & þan þou schalt' dissolue wiþ trocisco de turbit' wiþ hermodact*ylis* m*aad* *in* þis man*er* / ℞, diaʒinʒiber*is* predicti ʒ j. & ſ, turbit' electi .ʒ .j, hermodactulor*um* albor*um* solidor*um* ʒ ſ, & viij greines of' anise, & make þerof' a gobet' wiþ a litil hony. & þis schal be ʒeue *in* þe mornyn*g*'. & þerafter he schal drin*k*e a litil wijn hoot' & a litil water; or wiþ þese pelottis / ℞, hermodact*ylorum*, saturionis[3]

.℞. A good electuary, to purge choler and to strengthen the stomach.

.℞. Pills for the same purpose.

Resolving plasters:

.℞. [1 lf. 158, bk.]

.℞.

A lotion for the limb.

.℞.

Moving and bathing is obnoxious at the beginning of the illness, but useful at the end of the cure.

[2 lf. 159]

℞

℞

[3] *Saturion*, iarus. See *Alphita*, p. 158.

sene ana .ʒ .v, ierapigre[1] þat entriþ in pululas cochias .ʒ .x, pulpe coloquintide, centaurie. ana .ʒ .v, euforbij .ʒ. ij, turbit .ʒ .ß., cassie,[2] sinapis, piperis, castorij ana .ʒ .j. & make herof pelottis with hony. & þou schalt ʒeue herof .ʒ j. at oonys, & þis medicyn schal be ʒeue manie tymes. & in daies bitwixe he schal take diaʒinʒiberum of oure makinge þat is forseid. & if it be in winter, þou schalt ʒeue him diatrion piperion[3] or anoþer hoot eletuarie // ¶ Anoþer electuarie þat dissoluiþ akynge in ioyntis þat comeþ of raw mater.

℞. ℞, camedrios,[4] centaurie minorum ana. ʒ .viij, aristologia longa.

[5 lf. 159, bk.] ⁵gencian. ana. ʒ .vj, agarici .ʒ .ij, vtriusque spice ana .ʒ .j, make

A lectuare þat dysolues Ache in Iunnotes hem wiþ hony. Þou schalt ʒeue herof þe quantite of a note eerli & late. Men þat ben lene schulen not take þis medicyn // Whanne þe patient is purgid sufficiently, þan þou schalt vse enplastris for to

℞ leie to þe place / ℞, oold swynis grese þat it be freisch lī j., & medle þerwiþ quyk-lyme & make þerof a plastre & leie vpon þe

℞ place / Also take stercus caprinum & distempere it wiþ vinegre &

℞ hony ana, & leie it þeron / Also ℞, aristologia, radices yrios, elleborus, & piper, boile hem in oile & do þerto ʒelow wex & make þerof an oynement. ¶ Also diaquilon maad of litarge & oile & iuys of mustard seed. & if þou wolt haue mo remedies, go to þe

Rasis. book of Rasis, & þere þou schalt fynde in þe chapiter of ioyntis, medicyns ynowe þerfore. ¶ Also if þou desirist to comforte þe lyme & do awei þe coold mater wiþ repercussiuis, in þe laste chapiter of þis book þou schalt fynde repercussiuis & mollificatiuis ynowe //

## / Of sciatica passio[6] /[7]

¶ xvij°. co [8 lf. 160] Pain in the haunches

Akynge of haunchis schal be curid wiþ avoidinge of þe mater id est laxatiuis, for repercussiuis ben not þerfore, for þe matere[8] is in þe depnes of þe lyme, &[9] ne mowe not come þerto. Resolutiuis

[1] "*Hiera Picra*, a purging Electuary invented by Galen, and made of Aloes, Spikenard, Saffron, Mastick, Honey, &c." Phillips. [2] MS. cassif.

[3] *diatrion piperion*, a medicine composed of three sorts of pepper.

[4] "Chamœdrys, the Herb Germander, or English Treacle." Phillips. Camedreos ance Teterwose. Wr. Wü. 569, 47 (xvth cent.).

[6] MS. *passis*.

[7] *De Propr. rerum*, Lib. VII, Cap. 57 (Add. 27,944, fol. 96 *b*.): "*Gutta sciatica is an yuel* þat *comeþ of humours* þat *falliþ doun into* þe *grete senewe* þat *is bytwene* þe *grete brawnes of* þe *hanche as constantyn seiþ. ¶ And comeþ ofte of gleymy humours i-gadred togedres in* þe *holowznes of* þe *ioyntes & of* þe *haunche / somtyme of blody humours i-medlid wiþ colera & alle þese beþ ofte cause of ache* þe *whiche ache strecchiþ into* þe *legges & anon to* þe *hele & also anon to* þe *litil* [*too*]."

[8] The subject is: *repercussivis*.

[9]

ben not' þerfore, for þei mai not come to þe depnes of' þe mater. & for þe mater is so greet', it' schulde more drawe to þe place humouris þan dissolue. Saue þou must' aswage þe akinge, & þou schalt' do awei þe akynge with oile & hony & fatnes þat' doiþ awei[1] akinge. must not be treated with repellent or resolving medicines.

¶ If' þe mater come of' blood, þan lete him blood in a veyne þat' is clepid basilica in þe same side, & in þe secunde dai lete him blood in a veyne þat' is clepid sciatica, & principaly if' þe mater descende adoun wiþoutforþ toward þe foot', for þan it' mai principaly be holpen / If' þe mater come of' fleuma, þan purge him wiþ pelottis of' hermodactilorum / Saue herof' þou schalt' take kepe þat' bifore his purgacioun bineþe forþ[2] he schal haue a vomet. For if' þou make him a medicyn laxatif' bineþeforþ & no vomet' tofore, þan it' wole drawe more þe mater toward þe place þan aweyward / þerfor first' þou schalt' make him a vomet', & aftirward a medicyn laxatif' / And þerfore medicyns laxatiuis summe ben propre for akynge of' þe hauncheis, as coloquintida, yrios, sarcocolla, [3]centaurea, agaricus, & infusioun of' aloes. For infusioun of' aloes wole make blood passe fro him at' his sege, & þan þe akinge wole go awei & he schal be hool / & whanne he is perfitli maad clene wiþ medicyns laxatiuis, þan þou miȝt' leie þerto enplastris maad in þis maner / ℞, nasturcij,[4] peretri,[5] capparis, grinde hem & tempere hem wiþ lie maad of' askis of' a fige tree, & make þerof' a þicke enplaster as it' were hony, & anointe þe place til it' be ful of' bladdris & þe bladdris ful of' water, riȝt' as þe place were brent' wiþ fier. & þan anoynte þe place wiþ butter, & leie þeron caule leeues þat' þe bladdris soude not' togideris anoon; for þe lenger þat' þei leueþ þeron, þe bettir it' wole be. Eiþer anoynte þe place oonli with mel anacardi,[6] & þat' makiþ bladdris. & what' maner þou schalt' make mel anacardi, þou schalt' fynde in þe antidotarie þat' techiþ to make medicyns & cauterijs / Saue herof' þou must' take kepe þat' þou schalt' not vse þese medicyns þat' makiþ cauterijs, but' if' his bodi be wel avoidid wiþ medicyns laxatiuis tofore; for if' his bodi be [7]not' purgid, it' wole drawe more

Use bloodletting, if the illness is caused by the blood.

Purge, if phlegm is the cause, and first give an emetic.

[3 lf. 160, bk.]

When the patient is well purged, apply plasters.

℞

A blistering plaster.

.Nota.

Purge the patient before applying the blister.

[7 lf. 161]

[1] *awei*, above line.

[2] *bineþe forþ*, Lat. per inferius. See *N.E. Dict.*, s. v. beneath-forth.

[4] *nasturtium*, a kind of cress.

[5] *peretrum*, Lat. piretrum. Anthemis pyrethrum (Dunglison), "Piretrum . . pelestre."—*Alphita*, p. 145. "*Pyrethrum*, Bartram, wild or bastard Pellitory, an Herb the Root of which is very biting and hot."—Phillips.

[6] "*Anacardus*. Or after Ruellius *anacardium:* is the frute of a tre. growing in Sicilia, and Apulia, called vulgarly, Pediculus Elephantis. The iuyce wherof is called *Mel Anacardi*, which is a ruptory medicine."—Halle, *Table*, p. 10.

mat*er* to þe place þan aweyward. ¶ Also a3*ens* þe sciatica passio
.R. here þou schalt' haue an exp*er*iment' p*re*ued of *Avicenna.* Take
A plaster of Avicenna. gotis tordis & drie hem, & make hem to poud*er*, & distemp*er*e hem
wiþ strong' vinegre & made hoot', & make herof' a plastre, & leie it' 4
vpon as hoot' as þou maist' suffre, & anoynte þ*er*wiþ his haunche.
¶ Also a medicyn þat' is forseid of' camedrios & centaurea[1] is good
þ*er*fore, for it' wole drawe awei hi ɣryne / ¶ Item: caut*er*ijs ma*a*d
*in* þe nexte welle vnd*er* þe place of' þe akinge be*n* gode þ*er*for aft*er* 8
þe tyme þat' his bodi is ma*a*d clene w*ith* p*ur*gaciou*n*s, & tofore þou
schalt' make hi*m* no caut*er*ijs.

## Of þe man*er* of dieting of he*m* þat han pass*ions* in ioinct*es* / 12

¶ xviij°. co
A patient with a disease of the joints shall abstain from wine,

IN what' man*er* þou schalt' diete m*en* þat han passiou*n*s *in*
ioi*n*tis. þou schalt' wite þat' þ*er* is no þing' so greuo*us* to þis
passiou*n* as is wy*n*, & it' is principali forbede *in* an hoot'
cause, & so it' schal be *in* a coold cause; for wh*a*nne it' is 16
take, it' p*er*siþ li3tli to þe ioi*n*tis, & makiþ wei to þe mat*er* for
to falle þ*er*to / Saue if' þe pass*ion* be coold, & þe pa*tient* mai
[2 lf. 161, bk.] not' wel [2]defie his mete, þan þou schalt' grau*n*te hi*m* a litil
and if there is hot matter, from meat and fish; wijn, & not to miche for þe causis þat' be*n* forseid. ¶ In an 20
hoot' cause make hi*m* dri*n*ke þat' is forseid *in* þe chapit*er* of' dieting'
of' wou*n*dis, or he schal vse vinu*m* *g*ra*n*ato*r*u*m* wiþ coold wat*er*. &
þe pacient' schal absteine hi*m* fro fleisch & fisch & vse lact*ucis*, por-
t*ulacis* / & if' he be gretli feble, þan þou schalt' 3eue hi*m* litil 24
chikenys. & lete þou not' hi*m* drinke wijn bi no man*er* if' his
and if the matter is cold he shall eat only once a day. passioun be hoot' / & whoso haþ þe coold passiou*n* herof', he schal
holde hi*m* wel apaied[3] for to ete oonys adai & not' to miche. &
lete hi*m* drinke ydromel wel soden / for if' he mai suffre hu*n*g*ur* & 28
þirst' he mai soone be hool. & he schal *in* no man*er* ete, but' if' he
haue wil þ*er*to.

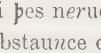
## ¶ The firste teching of egrit*udines* of ɣen, ouþ*er* passiou*n* & anothami / 32

¶ ij°. co/

NOw wolen we make a tretice of' pass*ioun* of' lymes þat' falliþ
for no wou*n*dis, & curis þ*er*of' comeþ ofte to cirurgians

[1] *centaurea*, written above *cauterie*.

[3] *he schal holde him wel apaied*, Lat. sit contentus. See *N.E. Dict.*, s. v. apaid. O.Fr. apaier. Compare: je m'en tieng bien paiez. (Littré.)

handis[1] / I wole bigynne of sijknes of yzen & to speke of anatho- The anatomy of the eyes.
miam þerwiþ þat was not forseid in þe .ij. book / þou schalt fynde
in summe bokis of auctoritees þat a mannes izen ben maad of .iij. The eye has three
humouris & of .vij. cootis. & in sum bokis [2]þou schalt fynde þat [2 lf. 162]
þe izen ben maad of .iij. cotis or of .iiij. or of .vij. or of .x., & alle humours and seven coats.
þei seien sooþ. Saue þe .j. coote þat maketh þe schap of þe ize,
ben but .iij. þat scheweth out in þe hole of þe ize, & þerfore me
mai seie .vj. & also þre[3] / And fro þe brain tofore comeþ .ij. bind- Two processes reach from the brain to the eyes.
ingis þat ben not of nerues, saue þei ben of þe substaunce of brain,
& þat oon comeþ out in þe riztside, & þat oþer in þe liftside, & ben
schape as it were þe hedis of .ij. tetis, wherbi þe witt is take.[4] &
after þese .ij. comeþ out ij. nerues, & ben fast to þe izen, & ben Two nerves, crossing each other,
schape in þis maner:  þan þat nerue þat wexiþ in þe
riztside of þe brayn, whanne he goiþ out of þe scolle boon & entriþ enter the Orbitam,
into orbitam, þat is þe holow place þat þe yze sitt on, & goiþ to þe
ize in þe liftside. & bi þes nerues comeþ þe spiritis of lijf & of siztt and confer the spirit of life.
to þe yzen / Of þe substaunce of dura matris is engendrid rethina,
þat is þe þinne skyn þat goiþ without þe ize, þat is clepid þe vilm The eye is enveloped in the Retina (film).
of þe ize. And þis seruep of greet seruice, & þis vilm was maad
swiþe þinne þat it ne hurte not humouris, & þat it lette not þe
meuynge of þe ize, and it [5]byndiþ in al þe ize, & it defendiþ þe ize [5 lf. 162, bk.]
fro harmynge of þe boon //[6]

¶ Þere comeþ manye sijknessis in þe izen, & summe comeþ of The diseases of the eyes have partly external, partly internal causes.
causis wiþoutforþ, & summe of causis wiþinneforþ / Wiþinneforþ:
as of yuel complexiouns, or of yuel humours; wiþoutforþ: as of
greet hete of þe eir, or of greet cooldnes of þe eir, or of poudre, or
of fume, or of wynd / And þere ben oþere maner sijknes of þe ize,
& þat ben seid contagious: as obtolmia & blere ized, & alle þese
sijknessis comen to cirurgians handis. & **obtolmia** is clepid a whit Obtolmia. Icchinge. Scabbe. Sebel. Vngula. Cataracta.
welke or a reed poynt,[7] & icchinge & scabbe, sebel, vngula, cataracta,

[1] Lat.: Volentes tractare de passionibus membrorum particularium, que non sunt vulnera, quæ sæpe veniunt ad manus chirurgi . . . incipiemus ab ægritudinibus oculorum.

[3] The passage is corrupt, and the corresponding Latin phrase differs: Tunicæ tres quæ in oculi formatione tres præcedunt humores, in ordine causant ex ipsis tres alias, quare dici possunt sex et tres.

[4] Lat.: quibus sensus comprehenditur odoratus.

[6] Lat.: Facta fuit ergo retina valde subtilis, ne læderet humores: et ne motum ipsorum in dilatatione comprimeret. Et facta fuit sclirotica: ut oculum totum cum cornea ligaret: et defenderet ab ossis oculi nocumento. The translator omits the description of the Anatomy of the eye. See Notes.

[7] Lat.: ophthalmia, vlcus, albula, macula simplex, punctus, rubedo. The

Dilatacio Pulpe. Inuersacio Palpebrarum. Ordelius. Grando. Nodus. Pilus. ffistala lacrimalis

dilatac*ion* pulpe,[1] inuersac*ion*, palpebra*rum*, ordelus, grando, nodus, & pilus, fistula lacrimalis. ¶ Also þ*er* be*n* o þ*er*e man*er*e sijknessis of þe i3en: as blind & hurting*e* þat mowe not be curid /

[3 lf. 163] iij man*er* ob*t*a*l*mia

It is forseid what þing is enpostym in þe gen*er*al *capitulo* of 4
enpostyms. & it is forseid þat euery þing þat gaderiþ humo*ur* to-
gid*er*e & makiþ swellynge,[2] [3]schal be clepid enpostym[4] / In þe same
man*er* obtalmia[5] is clepid enpostym of þe i3e. & þ*er*e be*n* .iij. man*er*s
of obtalmia: as li3t, & streng*er*, & al þ*er* strong. Li3t, as wh*an*ne 8
a m*an*nes i3e bicomeþ reed & haþ bre*n*nynge þ*er*inne & pric*k*inge, &
þ*er* is no swellyn*g*e þ*er*on. & þis mai come of a cause *with*outforþ:
as of hoot eir or of coold, or of smoke, or of poudre, or of wak*ing*e,
or of *tra*ueile. & þe cure herof is but li3t; for þis sijknes mai be 12
curid in þis man*er*. Take þe white of an ey & scume[6] it, & loke
þat þ*er*e falle no filþe þ*er*on, & leie it into his i3e; for þis is þe best
medicyn[7] amo*n*g alle medicyns þat be*n* clepid colliries, for it wole
make coold his i3e & do awey þe akynge. & it abidiþ þe lenger in 16
his i3en, for it is viscous // ¶ If þe cause be cold,[8] þan þis cure
suffisiþ: þ*a*nne lete him dr*y*nke a litil sutil wiju, & make him a
fomentacio*un* of ros*is* & flouris of camom*ille*, & fenigrec soden in
wat*er*. & if þis suffise not, þan [9]þou muste lete him blood, & avoide 20
awei þe humo*ur*is. & þou muste caste into his i3e a whit collirium,
& it is seid in o þ*er*e spicis of obtolmia.

1. Mild ophthalmia. The eyes get red, and feel burning, but there is no swelling.

Treatment.

℞

Apply an eye-wash,

Nota.

a fomentation, and if necessary bleed the patient.

[9 lf. 163, bk.]

2. Severe Obtolmiæ.

¶ Obtolmia þat is strong. þese be*n* þe signes þerof: greet 24
reednes, & þe veynes of þe i3en be ful replete, & þe corner of þe
i3e schal watri, & he schal haue greet aking*e* & pric*k*ing, & sum-
tyme þ*er*e come*þ* in þe first bigy*n*nyng vlcera þ*er*on, as it were

translator mistook this list of names of eye diseases for a definition of "ophthalmia." On the other hand he took the words "Dilatacio, Pulpe, Inuersatio, Palpebrarum" as names for four separate diseases.

[1] *pulpe*, for *pupillae*.

[2] On the bottom of the page: "*contra obtalmia Recipe, the inner rynde off the ceritre, sethe yt in venyger, & hold a sponffulle in thy movthe lucke warme, so do oft in þ^e day.*"

[4] Sl. 2463, fol. 84 b.: "*As it is sayd of auctores in* þe *generall Chapiter of enpostumes,* þ*at euery flowyng of humore* þ*at swellith a member ouer his kyndely beyng is an enpostume, riȝt so obtalmia is cleped an enpostume of* þe *eye.*"

[5] *obtalmia*, med. Lat. form of ὀφθαλμία, inflammation of the eye.

[6] *scume*, despumare. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 450. "*scummyn lycurys*, despumo."

[7] Lat.: quod non dicitur vilipendi, quia est nobilior medicina. Sl. 2463, fol. 85: "*and sette not liȝtly þerby, for it is* þe *nobelest medicyne.*"

[8] MS. *hoot*. Lat. si causa sit frigida. Sl. ibid.: "*and yf* þe *cause be of colde.*"

white prickis or reed, & sumtyme þer ben noon sich pointis þeron þat a man mai se, saue al his iȝe is reed & to-swollen. & he schal haue greet akinge & pricking. & þouȝ þer be noon vlcera þeron, þe cure mai be do al in oon maner. ¶ If þe akynge be swiþe greet, þan aceesse þe akynge, & þan lete him blood in þe heed-veyne[1] þat sitt in þe arme & in þat same side þat akiþ. & if he haue passioun in boþe his iȝen, þan þou schalt lete him blood in boþe his armys. & þou schalt lete him blood þe quantite after his elde & after his strenkþe; or sette a ventuse vpon his schuldris, & þat is more better, for þe mater comeþ more [2]of blood þan of colre. & þat þou miȝt knowe bi þe signes of blood þat ben forseid // ¶ And if þe mater come of colre, þat þou miȝt knowe bi greet akinge & scharp, & litil swellinge. & þe mater wole be ȝelow aboute hise iȝen. & he schal haue but litil reednes. & þan þou schalt lete him blood in lasse[3] quantite þan[4] if þe mater come of blood. & blood leting is good in þis caas, for þe scharpnes of colre mai be take awei wiþ þe blood leting. & þan þou schalt purge him wiþ a decoccioun of fruitis with mirabolanis þat ben forseid in þe chapitre of allopucia. & if colre be medlid wiþ ony partie of gret mater, þat falliþ ofte tyme, þan þer is no medicyn so good as cochie Rasie. & first he schal do þingis þerto for to aceesse þe matere / ℞, a ȝelke of an eij, & as miche of oile of rosis, & as miche of iuys of verueine, & ℈ j. of saffron, & ℈ j. opij; medle þese togidere, & make þerof an en-plastre, & leie it vpon a sotil lynnen clooþ, & leie it on þe iȝe. & in his iȝe leie collirium album with wommans milk[5] þat noryschiþ a maide child; for .G. made þis medicyn[6] / Rasis made collirium album in þis maner, [7]& it is good þing, for I haue preued it ofte

The symptoms are great pains and swelling.

Treatment. Soothe the pain by blood-letting

or by cupping.

[2 lf. 164]

If choleric matter is the cause, use blood-letting and purging.

Purging Pills. Cochie Rasis

℞ Mitigatum optimum *contra* dolorem in oculis

Colirium album Galion. Rasis.

[7 lf. 164, bk.]

[1] vena cephalica. [3] Lat. maiori. [4] MS. þat.

[5] The use of woman's milk for an eye-salve is mentioned by Galenus *De Compositione Medicamentorum*, Lib. IV. Cap. 3.

[6] The translator has omitted the following prescription preserved in Sl. 2463, fol. 85 b.: *and he cleped hit helpyng, for he, þat he made hit fore, was holpen by one leyng therto.* ¶ *Take iiij.* 3. *of ceruse sarsed, and distemper hit wit water on a marbull stone tenne dayes, and kepe hit euermore couered þat þer falle no pouder þerinne; thanne take .ij.* 3. *and an halfe of gomme arabik and putte hit in þe water, to þat hit be molten in þat water, and þanne cole hit and medele yt as well as þou may wit þi forsayd ceruse; and whane þis medecyne is made liche paste, adde therto these thynges sotilly poudered and sarsed twyes or thryes thoruȝ a sotyll lynnen clothe.* ¶ *Take amidum .iiij.* 3. *sarcocolle, safran, opium ana þe iiij. partie of a* 3. *grynde hem all wel togeder longe tyme, and make smale pillules and reserue hem, to þat þou haue nede, and whanne yt ys nede dystempere one of hem with* (fol. 86) *womannes mylk and administer yt.*

A Collyrium used by Rhasis.

℞ tyme. Take ceruse waische .x. *par*tis, sarcocol*le* gree*t*' .iij. *par*tis, amidi .ij. *par*tis, dr*a*ganti[1] .j. *par*ti, opij .j ß / Grinde alle þese togid*er*e & tem*per*e hem wiþ rein wat*er*, & make þero*f*' pelottis as gret' as it' were a pese & kepe he*m* / & wh*a*nne þou wolt' worche þ*er*wiþ, tem*per*e oon þero*f*' wiþ wo*m*mans milk þ*at*' it' be as þicke as it' were must',[2] & leie þero*f*' *in* hise iȝen þre siþis *in* þe dai. Þis collirie accessiþ þe aki*n*ge. & *in* sum*t*yme it' curiþ obtolmi*a*m *in* oon dai as I haue p*re*ued itt' manie tymes. & wh*a*nne he haþ slepe, if' hise iȝ*en* cleue togid*er*e, þ*an* he schal waische hise iȝ*en* wiþ wat*er* of' ros*is* hoot', & þ*an* leie *in* þe corn*er* of' his iȝe puluus citr*i*nus, þ*at*' is m*a*ad in þis man*er* / ℞, sarcocolle x. partis, aloes, croci, licij an*a* p*ar*tes .ij., mirre p*ar*tem vnam, & make hero*f*' sotil poudre, & leie hero*f*' a litil *in* þe corn*er* of' his iȝe /

'puluis citrin*us*

The patient's diet: He shall take neither meat nor wine;

& wh*a*nne þe reednes & swellyng' of' his iȝe is aweie, he mote be war of' his dieti*n*g', for he mai ete no fleisch ne dr*i*nke no wijn, saue he mote ete colature of' br*a*n wiþ almaunde milk. & wh*a*nne he lieþ *in* his bed his heed mote lie hiȝe, & he schal ligge [3] vpon þe hool side & not' vpon þe soor side / & if' boþe his iȝ*en* be*n* soor, þ*an* he mote diȝte him as sutilli as he may.[4] & he mote ofte tyme haue þe sauo*ur* of' wat*er* coold, & þe sauo*ur* of' wiþi & campher, & he mote lie in a derk hous þ*at*' he mowe se no liȝt'. & wh*a*nne þe mater goiþ awei faste & his bodi [is][5] þ*an* clene, þ*an* sette him *in* a baþ of' swete wat*er*, & lete him be þ*er*in but' a litil while[6] / If' it' be so þ*at*' þe akynge aswage not' wiþ blood leti*n*g' & colliries & laxatiuis, þ*an* it' is a signe þ*at*' þ*er*e is pustula woxe þ*er*inne, & it' is nede for to make it' maturatif'; for þe aki*n*ge wole not' goon awei, til it' be m*a*ad maturatif'. & *in* þis caas baþi*n*ge is ful noious / For if' akinge be go sum*w*hat' awei, it' wole come aȝ*en* wiþ baþi*n*g'; þ*er*fore thou schalt' attende for to make maturatif'.[7] & putte *in* his iȝe a collirie

[3 lf. 165]

he shall lie in a dark room,

and take a bath, when the matter has gone.

Bathing is noxious, when there is a pustule.

Maturative medicines:

Colirium thuris

[1] *draganti*, Lat. dragaganthi.

[2] *must*, Lat. mustum.

[4] Sl. 2463, fol. 86: "*and yef bothe eyen be sore he schal lye vpward, his hodes muste be wyde.*" Lat.: caputia vestium non sint stricta.

[5] *is*, omitted.

[6] Sl. ibid.: "*And yef it be plesaunt to hym lete hym abyde therinne, and lete hym foment his eyen and his heuede. And yf he wexe riȝt hoot in þe bathth, lete hym dwelle therin not passyng an houre, but þenne þe pacient schal be purged ayen.* ¶ *And in þe laste ende of þe obtalmia yt ys good to take hoot salt water, þat rosen haue be enfusyd inne, and lete hit droppe downe fro an hyȝe vpon þe hornes of his heued, þat yt mowe passe downe so by the eyen.*"

[7] *thou schalt attende for to make m.*. Lat.: ergo in tendas ad maturandum. Compare O.Fr. s'atendre à faire qu. ch.

of' thus wiþ al[1] togidere til þe quitture schauwie, for þan þe akinge wole aceesse / For whanne pustula is to-broke, & quitture is gaderid, þan þou schalt' putt' þeron a collirie of' leed. & þan þou schalt' fulfille alle þingis þat' schulen be seid wiþ vlceribus / A collirie of' thus þat' is maturatif' for [2]pustulis is maad in þis maner / ℞, thuris albi gummosi grossi, partes .x, antimonij, sarcocolle ana. partes .v, croci partes ij, & tempere hem wiþ muscilage of' fenigrec; & make þerof' pelottis, & kepe hem for þin vss. & whan þou hast' nede herof', þan tempere a pelot' with þe forseid licour, & make it' moist' & binde it' vpon his iȝe, & lete þis ligge til þe akynge go awei; & putte in his iȝe colirium de plumbo, þat' is maad in þis maner / ℞, plumbi vsti, antimonij, ȝucare, eris vsti, gummi arabic, draganti ana partes .viij, opij partem ß., & make herof' a sutil poudre, & þan tempere it' wiþ reyn-watir & wiþ water of' rosis, & make þerof' pelottis. & whanne þou wolt' vse hem, distempere oon þerof' or tweyne wiþ water of' rosis, & binde it' vpon his iȝe; for þis collirie soudiþ & gendriþ fleisch / Aftir þe tyme þat' it' is soudid, if' þere leue a litil ampulle,[3] þan þou schalt' cure it' as þou schalt' fynde in his propre place. ¶ ffleumatik mater makiþ ful seelden ony enpostym in þe iȝe, & malancolie myche latter; neþeles we wolen telle curis of' hem. ¶ Signes of' [4]fleum ben þese: greet' swellynge & manie teeris, & litil reednes ouþer noon; & þe cure herof' is to purge him wiþ cochijs or wiþ trocisco de turbit', saue cochie ben more better. & þou schalt' putte in his eere muscilaginem[5] fenigrec, & putte in his iȝe ȝelowe poudre þat' is forseid. & vpon his iȝe þou schalt' leie enplastre maad of' aloe, mirra, acacia, & croco ana, & distempere hem wiþ mussilagine fenigreci. & in þis caas good wijn wole do him good, drunken in mesure / If' it' come of' malancolie, þou schalt' knowe bi blaknes of' al þe bodi[6] & leene, & bi drienes of' hise iȝen, & ful litil reednes or noon in hise iȝen. & þe cure herof' is for to purge wel malancolie, & baþing' & fomentacion wiþ rosis & violet', & flouris of' borage & buglossa. & þis þou schalt' wite þat' in euery maner of' obtalmia, in þe ende þerof' baþing' ben good.

Colirium plumbe. [2 lf. 165, bk.]

℞

.℞.

Apostemas in the eyes seldom arise from phlegm. [4 lf. 166]

In this case purge and apply a plaster. ℞

Treatment of an apostema if Melancholy is the cause.

Nota.

[1] Lat.: cum coto, donec super cotum sanies apparebit. The translator read "toto." Sl. 2463, f. 86: "*with cotoun, to þat þe quytture schewe vpon þe cottone.*"

[3] *ampulle*, a tumour in the skin of the hands or the feet. See Tomm. *Dict.*, s. v. ampolla. The Lat. has *albula*. Matth. Sylv.: "*Albule* id est macule oculi albe."

[5] MS. ℈ inserted.

[6] Sl. 2463, fol. 87: "*All þe body of þe pacient ys blakkyssh.*"

If pain and swelling follow an injury, apply blood drawn from a living dove.

¶ If þat reednes of þe iȝe come of smytyng & akynge, & swellynge come þerwiþ, þan it is necessarie for to haue a ȝong culuer quyk, & lete hir blood *in* a veyne vndir hir wynge wiþ a nedle, & putte it in his iȝe as hoot as it comeþ fro þe culuer.[1] Þis doiþ awei [2]þe akynge, & þe reednes & þe brennyng.

[2 lf. 166, bk.]

de vlceribus oclorum.

These ulcers are accompanied with continual pain.

vij maner vlcus

The symptoms of an ulcer are pain and a red point in the eye.

¶ Vlcera ben engendrid *in* a mannes iȝe. & þan þer comeþ greet akinge þerwiþ & abydynge, & þis mai not be doon awei wiþ collirium album, ne wiþ noon mitigatif / And þere ben vij. maner vlcera, & of alle we wolen telle her curis schortli & profitabli, of curis þat I am expert of[3] longe tyme. ¶ The signes of vlcera þat pustula comeþ þerof ben þese: grete akingis þat mai not be swagid wiþ collirium album, & þer wole *in* his iȝe appere a reed poynt or a corn. & if al his iȝe be reed, þan þe poynt or corn wole be more reed, & þat point wole make greet agreuaunce, & greet swellinge, & greet betyng, & manie teeris / It is greet nede *in* þis passioun for to sotille his dietyng, & do þerto þingis for to make mitigatif, as colirium album, & lete him blood, & do al þe cure as it is aforseid / If þou miȝt not defende þe mater wiþ alle þese remedies ne aswage þe akynge, or þer wexe a corn þeron or vlcus, & collirium de plumbo ne wole suffise for to soude vlcus, þan þou schalt leie þerto mitigatiuis for to do awei þe akynge. & do *in* his iȝe collirium [4]eliser,[5] for þat wole defende þat þe enpostym schal not wexe, þat is maad *in* þis maner / ℞, antimonij, emathitis,[6] ana partes .x., acacie partes .iij., aloes partem .j., grinde hem sotilly & tempere hem wiþ iuys of

Treatment:

Apply Colirium album to relieve pain;

and if this is insufficient,

[4 lf. 167]

Colirium Eliphur. ℞

[1] The use of blood taken from a vein under the wings of a dove is mentioned by Galen: De Simplicium Medicamentorum medicamentis, Lib. X., Cap. II. 3. Trevisa translation of *Bart. de Propr.*, Lib. VII., Cap. 16, (Add. 27,944, fol. 84), "*Also philosophres telleþ as Constant, seiþ þat þe blood i-drawe out of þe poynt of þe riȝt wynge of a culver, oþer of a swalwe. oþer of a lepwink, & i-doo in þe bygynnynge vppon þat mole, clensiþ hit miȝtyly / for þe blood of þese foules heteþ and dissolveþ strongliche.*"

[3] *of curis þat I am expert of*, Lat. curam quam sum expertus.

[5] MS. *elifer*, Lat. elesir, the form of Arab. eliksir as preserved in Ital. elisire. It means in its pharmacological sense an alcoholic liquor, in which aromatic substances are dissolved. Devic (*Dict. Ét.*) states, that the Arabic word is merely a transcription of Greek ξηρόν, dry. Lanfranc gives a curious explanation of the word in the present passage, which has been omitted by the translator: collyrium elesir: quod est dicere penetrativum, quod egressum uveae prohibet. Sl. 2463, f. 87 b.: "*colirium eleser þat is þe seyne persyng, þe whiche defendith þe egression of vuea.*"

[6] *emathites*, hæmatites, bloodstone. Mentioned as a stiptic and an eye-medicine in *Galen* (ed. Kühn, vol. X., 330); in *Bart. De Propr.*, Lib. XVI., Cap. 39 (Add. 27,944, fol. 199 *b*), "*Emathites is a reed stoon . . . . & is good azeins þe flux of þe bladdre and to sore yhen.*"

corigiole,[1] & make þerof polottis; & dissolue herof wiþ watir of
*rosis*, & binde it faste to his iȝe. Þis collirium fasteneþ his iȝe, &
makiþ þat þe enpostym may wexe no ferþere / ¶ Macula[2] is a wem Macula is a white spot on or near the pupil of the eye.
4 *in* a mannys iȝe, & sum*m*e be white þerof & sittiþ vpon þe siȝt of
þe iȝe,[3] & sum*m*e bisidis þe siȝt. & þis comeþ of an oold obtalmia*m*.
& herto p*r*incipali is good collirium albu*m* of .G. þat is forseid. & Galien
Þis collirie is good þerfore / ℞, aloes, croci. ana *p*artes viij, eris vsti Colirium album
8 waischen, *gummi* arabici, opij, ana *p*artes vj., mirre xij. *p*artis,
climie[4] *p*artes iiij., thurus *p*artes .iij, grinde alle þese sotilly & tem-
pere hem wiþ swete wijn, & make þerof pelott*is*, & kepe hem: &
wiþ þis colliric I tem*p*erid collirium album. Galien & I haue curid Galien
12 wiþ þese .ij. colliries, & wiþ caut*e*rijs, & kutt*i*ngis of veynes, manye
men / & I curide þerwiþ a man þat was clepid sir Reynold Manesyn. A nobleman who had lost his eye-sight
& he hadde obtolmiam *id est* postym *in* his iȝe longe tyme to[5]fore, [5 lf. 167, bk.] was treated by Lanfranc,
& þerof came manye wemmys *in* his iȝe; sum*m*e þerof weren white
16 & sum*m*e þerof weren reed, & maden þat he miȝte not se, &
anoþer man ledde him. & þouȝ þer were leid mete tofore him vpon
þe boord, he miȝte not se þerof / & þo I lokide to him; & wiþinne and after a month he could play backgammon.
a monþe he miȝt se to pleie at þe tabler.[6] & I dide awei alle þe
20 wemmys of his iȝen, so þat he miȝte se as wel as euere he dide
tofore / & þere tofore he hadde manie oþere lechis, & leiden in his
iȝen stronge collirijs, & algate his sijknes was more & more: & so
his siȝt was binome him þre ȝeer. ¶ Collirium .G. is good for Colirium Galien.
24 obtolmiam, as I haue apreued manie siþis; & it is good for vlcera
þat ben newe & not olde, & for wemmis.

& sumtyme sich a maner pricke comeþ of smytynge, or of greet If a 'point' in the eye is caused by an injury, use blood-letting,
crijnge, or of blood as þoruȝ brekynge of a veyne, & makiþ a poynt
28 in a mannes iȝe, & þerfore blood letynge is good. & do *in* his iȝe

[1] "*Corrigiola.* So called of the Apothecaries, and of the Frenche men Corrigiole, is oure common knottgrasse, called in Greke polygonon, in Latine Seminalis and Polygonum mas." Halle, *Table*, p. 29.

[2] *macula* as a name for an eye-disease is not used by the Latin authors. It occurs in *Bart. de Propr. rer.*, and is translated by *webbe, mole.* See p. 248, note 3.

[3] *þe siȝt of þe iȝe.* Lat. cornea. "The sight of the eye, that is, the hole of the skinne called Ragoides, out of which the vertue visible worketh his operation." Cooper. Compare O.E. *sêo*, f., O.H.G. *seha*, f., the black of the eye.

[4] *climie.* Matth. Sylv. "Klimia. Cadimia. alkimia Auicenna: est fumus seu fuligo adherens superioribus fornacis in purificatione cuiusque metalli. sioria vero est fex descendens ad inferiora."

[6] *tabler.* Lat.: vide ipsum ludentem in vesperis ad tabulas cum taxillis. "*Tabler*, or table of pley or game." *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 485.

and apply the blood of a dove and a woman's milk.

blood of a culuer, & waische his iȝen wiþ wommans milk warm, as it comeþ out of þe tete.[1]

[2 lf. 168]

¶ Rubedo *id est* reednes, pruritus *id est* icchinge, sebel, sca[2]bies, & vngula, goiþ al *in* oon cours.[3] & oon herof is cause of anoþer / For of long reednes tofore comeþ icchinge, & sumtyme icchinge is cause of reednes, & of þese .ij. comeþ scabbe *in* þe iȝe liddis; & if it gadere togidere *in* þe corner of þe iȝe, þan it is clepid vngula / þerfore þou must first cure hastily þe reednes & þe icchinge of his iȝen, lest þer come ony oþer sijknes þerof / Reednes may be curid wiþ þe white of an ey & *with* collirium album / Galien seiþ: icchinge may be curid wiþ whit wijn, *in* which be grounden aloes, & leid *in* his iȝe wiþ soft lynnen clooþ, & bounden þerto. ¶ Scabies is whanne þe iȝe liddis ben reed & to-swolle, & ful of reed pinplis. & þis passioun makiþ greet icchinge & brennynge, & manie teeris / þe cure herof is þis: waische hise iȝen wiþ wijn *in* which be resolued grene coperose, þat is clepid vitriolum romanum.[4] & if þis suffise not, þan þou schalt make collirium rubeum in þis maner / ℞, emathitis, vitrioli adusti ana partes tres, eris vsti partes duas, mirre, croci, ana partes x., piperis longi partem ß; tempere alle þes wiþ old [5]wijn, & make þerof pelottis, & kepe hem; and whanne þou wolt vse hem, distempere hem wiþ oold wijn, & do it *in* his iȝe / If þe mater be greet & strong, þan þou muste vse collirium viride, þat is maad *in* þis maner / ℞, floris eris partes tres, vitrioli vsti partes .vj., arsenici rubei, baurac, spume maris, ana partes .ij, armoniacum dissolued *in* iuys of rue; & grinde alle þe opere sotilli, & medle hem þerwiþ also & make þerof pelottis, & dissolue oon

Redness of the eyes causes itching and vice versa. Both occasion scab and vngula.

Galien

Scabies. The eye-lids are full of pimples.

Colirium rubeum ℞

[5 lf. 168, bk.]

Colirium viri[de] ℞

[1] *Trevisa l. c.*, Lib. VII., Cap. 17 (Add. 27,944, fol. 84 *a*), "*Also it happiþ þat blood wooseþ out of veynes & of pipes & comeþ to þe yȝen, & veynes breke þ or be i-hurt in þe kertil þat hatte coniunctiue, & þan suche vnhiȝtnes of þe yȝe comeþ of blood þat comeþ so to þe yȝe. ¶ Culuir blood or turtil blood dissolueþ & departeþ þis blood þat is so i-ronne as constantinus seiþ, & so doþ wommun melk wiþ ensens, & so doþ freisch chese i-medlid with hony wiþouten salt, if it be laide þerto.*"

[3] *Trevisa l. c.*, Lib. VII., Cap. 16, "De lippitudine albugine de panno siue de macula. *Another evel of þe yȝen þat we clepiþ a webbe, & Constantinus clepiþ it albugo, & bredi þ in þis manere.* ¶ *ffirst a rewme renneþ to þe yȝen, & þerof comeþ an yeel þat hatte obtalmia, a schrewed blereynes & ache & aposteme; & if it is evel i-kept þerof leveþ a litil mole & infectioun, & longtyme turneþ & growiþ into a webbe & þicke, & occupieþ more place þan al þe blacke of þe iȝe. ¶ This webbe turneþ into clooþ by more þicnes & occupieþ more place, for it ocupieþ al þe blake of þe yȝe, & at þe last it turneþ into þe kynde of a naile of þe honde.*"

[4] *Vitriolum Romanum.* "The one growyng of it-selfe in the earth by concretion, and is vulgarly called Coppa rosa." Halle, *Table*, p. 139.

þerof' *in* watir of' rue distillid & leid *in* his iȝe // ¶ **Sebel**[1] is seid, Sebel, an inflammation of the veins of the eye.
whanne þe veynes þat' ben ioyned togidere *in* þe iȝe,[2] ben ful of' blood & wexiþ greet', & sumtyme a clooþ þat' is *in* a mannes iȝe. For
4 to cure þis passioun collirium rubeum is good þerfore, or collirium viride þat' ben forseid // ¶ **Vngula** sittiþ *in* þe corner of' þe iȝe þat' Ungula, a web in the eye, sometimes covering the whole eye-ball.
is next' þe nose, & gooþ forþ vpon þe iȝe til it' hile al þe iȝe; & sumtyme it' comeþ of' a superfluite of' fleisch þat' wexiþ *in* þe corner
8 of' a mannes iȝe, & wexiþ forþ abrood as it' were a clooþ. & þer ben manie maners þerof', & oon is sotil & þinne, & goiþ ouer þe iȝe. & of' sum men þat' is clepid a clooþ, & þat' oþer maner is more fleischi
& þicke, & is clepid vngula / þe cure [3]herof' ben collirium viride & [3 lf. 169]
12 rubeum, þat' ben forseid: & if' þis suffisiþ not', þan it' mote be kutt' If Collyriums prove insufficient, cut away the growth.
awey wiþ instrumentis as miche as me mai kutte awei þerof', &
aftirward cure him with collirijs / In þe kuttinge of' vngulam be
war þat' þou kutte not' þe fleisch *in* þe corner of' þe iȝe to depe; for
16 if' it' were kutt' to depe, his iȝe schulde watre, & be ful of' teeris al þe while he lyueþ. ¶ Also *in* scabbe, sebel, & vngula, purgacioun is good, & blood leting'; & þe patient schal absteyne him fro alle swete þingis & scharp, for al þese forseid passiouns comeþ of' blood
20 corrupt'. ¶ **Cateracta**[4] is water þat' falliþ doun bitwixe þe .ij. **Cateracta.** Cataract is a water between the two skins of the eye.
skymnes of' þe iȝe & abidiþ tofore þe place þat' is clepid pupilla, þat'
is þe poynt' of' þe iȝe. & þan it' defendiþ þat' a man mai not' se;
& it' is clepid cataracta, bi þe liknes of' an instrument' þat' is a
24 mille / & sumtyme þis passioun bigynneþ, & sumtyme it' is confermed / Signes of' þe bigynnynge ben þese / It' semeþ to þe patient At the beginning of the disease the patient sees double.
þat' he seeþ briȝt' þingis tofore him, & him þinkiþ þat' oon þing' is
.ij. þingis or þre / & sumtyme it' semeþ to him þat' þing' þat' he seeþ
28 to be ful of' holis / & sumtyme þese þingis [5]mowe come of' yuel [5 lf. 169, bk.]

[1] "*Sebel* idem quod Serasif i. vene rubee que sunt in albo oculorum." *Sinonima Serapionis*, ed. Venet. 1497. Arab. Pers. zabēl, Dung, a dried gourd, basket. (Johnson.) Fr. sébile, basket.

[2] Lat.: Sebel dicitur quando venæ conjunctivæ et corneæ, quæ sunt in earum superficie — — replentur sanguine. The translator mistook 'conjunctivæ' for 'conjunctæ.'

[4] *Cataracta.* The Latin authors used this word for 1. waterfall, 2. floodgate, sluice of a river (Scheller *Dict.*). In its pathological meaning, it is first found in *Platearius*, xiith cent. (*Practica*, Lib. II., Cap. VII., fol. 209 *b*, Lugd. 1525, quoted by Hirsch, *Klin. Monatsbl. f. Augenheilkunde*, 1869, p. 284). The explanations vary according to the above-mentioned Latin significations. Lanfranc adopts the meaning 'gate.' Lat.: "et dicitur cataracta per similitudinem illius instrumenti, quod est apud molendina: quod quando eleuatur, currit aqua per canalem: quando deponitur nihil currit." Molendinum, "*a mylle*." Wr. Wü., *Voc.*, 596, 27.

This irregularity may arise from a disordered stomach, and then it is easily cured.

disposicioun of þe stomac, & þan it is not so greet drede þerof; for whanne þe stomac is curid, þese signes wolen go awei / In þis maner þou schalt wite wher it come of þe stomac or of þe ize / If þese signes comen whanne þe stomac is ful, & whanne he is fastynge & þei come not, it is a signe þat it comeþ of þe stomac / And if it is in hise izen contynuelli, þan it comeþ not of þe stomac, but it is sijknes of þe izen / ¶ Also purge him oones wiþ pululas cochias, & if it is neuer þe bettir, þan þou miʒt wite for certeyn þat þe passioun comeþ of þe stomac. And if þis passioun haþ longe durid in a man, & if þou miʒt no þing se in his ize, þan þou schalt wite for certeyn þat it is a bigynnyng of cataracta / Whanne cataracta is confermed, it schal not be hid to a mannes witt þat is vsid in þe craft. & in þis maner þou schalt knowe it: þou schalt se a maner colour vpon þe poynt of þe siʒt of þe ize, þat wole sumtyme be whit, & sumtyme in þe colour of askis, & sumtyme a litil grene: & þis stoppiþ al a mannes siʒt //

When the Cataract is developed, a spot on the pupil of the eye is discovered.

[1 lf. 170]

The Cataract can be cured by medicines at its early state.

Regulate the patient's diet, purge and apply a Collyrium prepared with the gall of several animals.

R

A Collyrium prepared with lye.

[1 lf. 170, bk.]

Cure of Cataract by operation: Dilate the pupil of the

þis maner siknes [1]schal be helid wiþ phisic or it be confermed. & whanne it is confermed, it mote be curid wiþ a mannes hand. þe patient mote absteine him fro sopers[2] & fro al maner fatte potagis, & from al maner moiste fruitis, & fro al maner fruitis þat engendriþ moistnes / saue he schal vse hote þingis, & he schal ofte be purgid wiþ pillis cochie rasis, þat is þe beste þing laxatif þat mai be for izen, & þan make a collirie of gallis of beestis þat is maad in þis maner. R, fellis grue, fellis stelionis, fellis hirci, fellis anticipitris,[3] fellis aquile & perdicis, & alle þese gallis ben drie, & take herof .x. partijs, euforbie, colloquintide, ana. partem .j, grinde alle þese & tempere hem wiþ þe iuys of fenigreci & make þerof pelottis. & whanne þou wolt worche þerwiþ, resolue oon þerof wiþ water of fenel distillid, & leie it in his ize twies on þe day ./ ¶ Anoþer liʒt medicyn þat is preued / Take askis of vynes & sarce hem & make þerof lie with good whit wijn, & lete it stonde in a glasen vessel, & lete it clarifie þerinne. & þis is a good collirie þerfore, for þe more cold þat cataracta is, þe bettir þis medicyn is þerfore / And if cataracta be [4]so confermed þat it stoppe al þe liʒt, þan it is incurable wiþ medicyns, & also þer ben manie opere incurable. ¶ And if it so be þat he se not, þan make him close his izen togidere, & frote al softe vpon þe ize lid þat is soor; & if it be in boþe his izen, þan serue so boþe, & þan lete him opene his

[2] *soper*, cœna. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, s. v. supper.
[3] *anticipiter*, med. Lat. for *accipiter*. Dufr. Glass.

iȝen sodeinli anoon, & loke if̄ þe poynt̄ of̄ þe iȝe bicome whit̄,[1] & if̄ it̄ bicome not̄ whit̄, þan it̄ is of̄ .ij. þingis; ouþer it̄ is opilacioun of̄ þe nerue, þat̄ comeþ fro þe brain & is holow & defendiþ þe siȝt̄, or it is cataracta þat̄ is greet̄ & stoppiþ þe nerue, & stoppiþ þe weie of̄ þe spirit̄ þat̄ it̄ mai not̄ come to þe poynt̄ of̄ þe siȝt̄ þat̄ is clepid pupilla / If̄ þou frotist̄ his iȝe as it̄ is forseid, þan lete him do vp his iȝe hastili, & þou schalt̄ se þan vpon his iȝe a whit̄ þinḡ as it̄ were a peerle, þan þou miȝt̄ sureli worche wiþ instrumentis of̄ cirurgie[2] / First̄ þou schalt̄ make þe pacient̄ sitte vpon a stool tofore þee, & þou schalt̄ sitte a litil hiȝer þan he, & his iȝe þat̄ is hool þou schalt̄ bynde faste þat̄ he ne mowe no þinḡ se þerwiþ, & þan þou schalt̄ haue in þi mouþ a fewe braunchis [3]of̄ fenel, & þou schalt̄ breke hem a litil with þi teeþ, & þan þou schalt̄ blowe in his iȝe .ij. siþis or iij. þat̄ þe fume of̄ þe fenel mowe entre into his iȝe / þan þou schalt̄ haue an instrument̄ of̄ siluir, schape in the maner of̄ a nedle, and it̄ schal sitte in a greet̄ hafte þat̄ þou mai þe bettir hold it̄ wiþ þin hand, & þan þou schalt̄ bigynne aforȝens þe lasse corner of̄ þe iȝe, & þou schalt̄ putte in þin instrument̄ anoon to þe corn þat̄ is in þe iȝe, & whanne þou seest̄ þe point̄ of̄ þe instrument̄ vndir þe corn,[4] þan lete þe point̄ of̄ þin instrument̄ goon anoon to þe water þat̄ is gaderid tofore þe iȝe / And whanne þou hast̄ broken þe place þat̄ þe water was ynne, þan presse it̄ adounward, & drawe out̄ al þe watir þerof̄ clene,[5] & if̄ þer come more watir þerto, þan þou must̄ reherse þis werk aȝen. & if̄ þer come no more watir þerto, þan þou schalt̄ leie vpon his iȝe a plastre maad of̄ þe ȝelke of̄ an eij wiþ þe white, & bole leid vpon lynnen cloop & binde vpon his iȝe, & lete þe patient be in a derk place, & he schal heere no

eye by rubbing the eyelid.

It will not dilate, if there is an obstruction in the nerve.

In the dilated pupil a white spot like a pearl is seen.

Then bandage the sound eye,

[3 *i.e.* 171]

and pass a silver needle through the eye-ball until it reaches the white corn and the cataractic water.

When you have pressed out this water,

apply a plaster to the eye,

and let the patient be in a dark room,

[1] *whit* for *wid*, Lat.: vide si pupilla dilatatur.

[2] Lat.: quod cum videris manum ullatenus non apponas. This method of testing, whether a cataract is fit for operation or not, has already been proposed by Galen, as mentions *Paulus de Aegina*, Lib. VI., Cap. 21. We find the same in *Hali Abbas*, Lib. IX., Cap. 28, fol. 279, ed., Lugd. 1523. See Magnus H., *Geschichte des grauen Staars*. Leipzig, 1876.

[4] *corn*, a mistake; the translator did not know the meaning of "cornea." Lat.: et impellas instrumentum usque ad corneam: quia tunc videbis illum. Cum autem instrumentum videbis sub cornea illum impellas vsque ad aquam quæ est coram pupilla.

[5] *& drawe out al þe watir þerof clene*, an insertion of the translator. The operation which he describes is the dislocation of cataract by depression. A fuller and more accurate account of it is given by John Vigo, who begins his description with the following words: "And yf the cataractes cannot be healed, when they are confirmed, then we must turne to handy operation. And though we counseyled to leave it to y^e^ tothdrawers, yet we wyl declare y^e^ maner therof." Traheron, *Vigo*, fol. 136^b^.

and in perfect rest, for 8 days.

greet noise, & he schal not traueile wiþinne .viij. daies, & he mote be kept so þat he cowȝe not [1]& fro wrapþe / Sumtyme þe poynt of þe iȝe siȝt is stoppid wiþinneforþ, & þan he schal neuere be curid þerof; ouþer it wole be greet maistrie for to cure it. & if it mai be curid, þis is þe cure þerof: þou muste purge him with pigra rasis, & wiþ pululis cochijs þat rasis made, & þei muste be ofte ȝeue, & þou muste do in his iȝen drijnge collirijs & oþere dryng medicyns / Ouþer it mai come of causis withoutforþ as of smitynge & þat mai liȝtli be curid / First þe patient schal be lete blood, if age mai suffre it & oþere particlis þat be forseid, for blood letynge wole helpe for to avoide awei þe enpostym, & þan þou schalt make him an enplastre wiþ oon of þese medicyns, & it schal be bounden þerto softli / Rȝ, mele of beenis þat be sotil & grinde it wiþ wiþi leeues smal / Also take mele of beenys & flouris of camomille & þe rote of altea .ʒ. ij., & also biteine .ϑ .j., absinthium .ʒ j. & seþe hem in water & make þerof an enplastre & lete þe patient reste, probatum est.

[1 lf. 171, bk.]

An obstruction of the pupil from internal causes is difficult to cure.

pigra Rasis

If the obstruction arises from external causes, let blood

and apply a plaster.

℞

Hordeolum is a swelling in the eye-lids,

¶ Ordecilus is a litil swellinge, & is long & smal & comeþ to a child whanne it is bore, & þis passioun wole sitte in [2]his iȝe liddis / þe cure herof is for to lete hem blood & purge him of humours corrupt, & do þerto þis medicyn: medle aloes with licio[3] & make þerof a poudre / Also þou schalt anoynte him wiþ storax liquida & anointe him þerwiþ / ¶ Also resolue a litil opoponac in water, and make an enplastre þerof & leie vpon the place, & þe same þing doiþ diaquilon, & or þou leie ony plastre þervpon, þou schalt make a fomentacioun wiþ hoot water.

[2 lf. 172]

and affects new-born children.

**Grando.** A knot in the eye-lids.

¶ Grando & nodus. Grando is as miche to seie as an hail stoon, & nodus is a knotte, & þus comeþ in þe iȝe liddis, & sumtyme it wole schewe wiþinneforþ, & sumtyme wiþoute. & whanne it schewiþ wiþoutforþ, opene it & leie þeron diaquilon & oþere þingis for to consume þe mater. & if þis suffise not, þou schalt take it wiþ þi .ij. fyngris & drawe it harde, & þan kutte þe skyn þeron & drawe him out, & þan þou shalt soude it wiþ þe white of an eij & oþere þingis þat ben soudinge //

If medicines fail to effect absorption, extirpate the growth.

**fistula lacrimalis**

¶ ffistula lacrimalis,[4] þat is as miche to seie as a feestre wiþ

[3] "Lycium. Is the Juice of a thorny tree, growing chiefly in Capadocia and Lycia, of three cubites heyght." Halle, *Table*, p. 63.

[4] Sl. 2463, f. 90: "*A ffystule in þe wyke of þe eye, hit comyth of concours of rennyng of humores to þe corner of þe eye besyde þe nose, & because of her multitude & gretnesse þey may nat passen out but abyden there & maken an emynence, as hit were a lupyne; & therfore of sume hit is cleped lupinus.*"

teeris / þis comeþ *in* þe corner of' þe iȝe next' þe [1]nose, & engendriþ þere & makiþ a þing' as greet' as it' were a pese. & if' þese humours leeue þere longe þei wolen rotie & þei wolen make vlcus þere, & þer wole come manie teeris þerto, and þei mai not' be maad drie, & þis mai leeue þere so longe þat' þer wole engendre a feestre þerof'. & but' if' þat' feestre be curid while it' is freisch, it' wole rote þe boon, & þe lenger þat' it' wexiþ oold, þe worse it' wole be for to cure.

[1] lf. 172, bk.

At the inner angle of the eye a growth begins, which ulcerates,

gives rise to a fistula and finally affects the bone.

¶ þe firste bigynnynge of' þis cure is for to avoide þe heed wiþ cochijs & wiþ pigra, þan do þeron þis collirium / ℞, aloes, thuris, sarcocolle, sanguinis draconis, balaustie, antimonij, aluminis, ana, floris eris a litil, as miche as wole be þe fourþe part' of' oon of' þe forseid. & make of' alle þes sotil poudre & distempere hem wiþ reyn water or wiþ water of' roses, & caste it' in þe corner of' his iȝe, but' þe place schal be maad drie first'. & þan þou schalt' do þerto oon of' þe mundificatiuis þat' schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, or þis medicyn þat' is aproued / Take clene mirre .ʒ .ij. & make þerof' poudre & make it' þicke wiþ þe galle of' a boole, þat' it' be as þicke as it' were an oynement', [2]& leie it' vpon lynnen clooþ & leie þis þervpon, for þis wole soude þe place & make it' clene / ¶ If' it so be þat' it' be not' curid with þis medicyn, þanne it' is a signe þat' þe boon is rotid, & þan þou muste opene þe skyn & vnhile þe boon, & touche þe boon wiþ an hoot' iren as fer as it' is rotid / & þanne leie þervpon buttir or grese þat' þe scar þer mowe falle awei, & þan þou muste reherse þe cauterie aȝen. & þanne leie þervpon buttir, & þus þou muste do til þe boon be clene, & þan leie þervpon oile of' rosis hoot' medlid wiþ ʒelke of' an ey til al þe brennynge falle awey. & þan drie þe place with drijnge medicyns, & þan regendre fleisch & soude it', & þou schalt' wite þat' þer is noon so good maner medicyn as þis is / For if' þou wolt' leie þerto ony corosif' water, þat wole brenne forþere þan it' schulde / & also it' were greet' perel for þe iȝe & þerfore it' is good for to worche as it' is aforseid / [3]

a cleansing ointment.

℞ puluis contra fistula lacremali.

Apply a powder,

[2] lf. 173]

If the disease has affected the bone, use the hot iron repeatedly until the diseased part of the bone is removed.

[3] The end of this chapter, omitted by the translator, is given in Sl. 2463, fol. 90 b.: "¶ *Also he*[a] *seyth þat yf þe bone be schauen with Instrumentis þat all þe corupcion is seldome taken awaye, wherefore þe corupcion comyth ayen bycause of þe partie whiche lenyth behynde corupt.* ¶ *He seyth also þat alþouȝ the corupcion be taken away never so well, yet nature departith a litell follikell þerfro aforne þat þe flessch mowe be faste knyt other soudid to þe bone and what tyme þe bone is touchyd with an hoot Iryn, þanne all þat is corrupt dissenerith fro þat ys hoole, and þe complexion of þe place is tempered.*

[a] Lanfrank.

## Of þe passioun of eeris.

¶ ijo. co.

Nerves go to the ear from the brain.

[1 lf. 173, bk.]

The sound is conveyed to the brain through the ear passage.

This passage is curved.

The ear is made of cartilage, that it may both sustain itself and be pliable.

The diseases of the ear belong partly to Surgery, partly to Physic.

[2 lf. 174]

All these diseases may be comprised under "aching of the ear."

Simple aching arising from a hot complexion is treated with oil of roses, and some opium.

If caused by a cold complexion it is treated with hot oil of lilies.

AS it is aforseid þat nerues comen fro þe brain to þe iȝen / in þe same maner nerues comen from þe brain & goiþ into þe eris & makiþ heerynge & ben instrumentis of witt. [1]þe hoolis in a mannes eeris ben maad in a deep holowe boon, & it was bi þis skille þat it schulde vndirstonde sownynge, & þat þe sowne schulde not come into þe brayn anoon, but alitil & alitil bi degree, & also for þis skille þat þe coold eire ne þe hoot eire schulde not sodeinly entre yn; & þe wei þat goiþ into a mannes eere, ne goiþ not riȝt forþ, but hidir & þidir, for if þe weie were riȝtforþ, it wolde þe raþere be hurt of al maner þing / þe eere was maad of cartilaginis þat is hardere þan fleisch & neischer þan boon, þat it miȝte be pliaunt. & if þei schulde be maad oonly of fleisch, þei schulde haue noon sustentacioun for to bere hem vp. & if þei hadden be maad oonly of hard boon, þei miȝten not haue be meued, & þerfore itt was moost nede þat þei weren cartilaginous: þat is as miche to seie as maad of gristle þat is neischer þan boon & hardere þan fleisch. To þis lyme þer comeþ manie sijknessis, & summe þerof falliþ for cirurgie as apostimes & vlcera, & summe falliþ to phisik as greet sownynge in þe eeris & sibillus, & [2]defaute of heeringe & deefnes.[3] Akynge of þe eeris sumtyme is an yuel, & sumtyme harme fallynge þerto / & þerfore it is mi purpos for to speke boþe of sirurge and of phisik in þis chapitre. ¶ Alle þe sijknessis of þe eeris moun be take in þis maner, as akynge of eeris. Ouþer it is apostym & without vlcera, or it is wiþ enpostym & vlcera; þan it is of yuel complexioun & hoot;[4] þat þou miȝt knowe bi scharp akynge & reednes of þe place. & þan þou schalt cure it wiþ castynge into þe eere oile of rosis, boylid hoot as he mai suffre, wiþ þe .iiij. part of vinegre / & if þe akynge go not awei in þis maner, þan þou schalt do þeron a litil of opium / And if it come of yuel complexioun þat it be coold, as coold wynd or of coold eire entrid þeron, þis þou miȝt knowe bi greet cooldnes in þe place, & þan þou schalt cure him wiþ þingis þat schal be cast into þe eere, watir of maiorana, or oile of lilie, þat þou schalt fynde þe composicioun in þe antidotarie. & in þis maner hoot oile schal be putt in his eere &

[3] MS. *deesires*.

[4] The translation is corrupt. Lat.: aut est sine apostemate vel ulcere aut cum apostemate et ulcere. Si sine apostemate et ulcere: tunc aut est propter malam complexionem calidam — — aut propter malam complexionem frigidam.

no coold þing', & þou schalt' stuwe þe pacient'[1] / Sumtyme it' comeþ of' sum þing' þat' falliþ *in* his eere as a worme or a corn or a stoon, or watir; þis þou schalt' knowe bi þe tellinge of' þe pacient'; for if' þer be ony þing' wiþinne, me mai se it'. If' it' so be þat' þer be falle yn ony stoon, þan caste *into* his eere oile of' ros*is*, or oile of' almaundis, & if' þer be falle yn ony corn, þan þou schalt' do noon oile *in* his eere; for it' wole make þe corn wexe greet'. Make a litil instrument' of' tree or of' sum oþer þing' & wete it' in terbentyn & putte it' *into* his eere, & touche þerwiþ þe stoon, ouþir þe greyn, & þan it' wole cleue þerto, & þan drawe it' out' / ¶ Also smite his eere wiþ þe pawme of' þin hand, & bi hap it' wole falle out' þerwiþ / Also sette a ventuse wiþ fier vpon þe hoole of' his eere, for þis sumtyme wole drawe out' a corn ouþer a stoon.[2] ¶ If' þer entriþ ony worme into a mannes eere, þan fille his eere ful of' flact watir,[3] & þan drie it' / And if' þis suffisiþ not', fille his eere ful of' oile of' almaundis þat' ben bittir; & if' þis suffisiþ not', þan do *in* his eere iuys of' calamynte.

[1 lf. 174, bk.]

Aching caused by a foreign body in the ear:

If it is a stone, cast hot oil into the ear;

if it is a grain use an instrument,

or try the cupping-glass.

If it is a worm, apply warm water.

¶ If' þe akynge come of' humo*ur*is gaderid to apostym, þat' þou mi3t' knowe bi greet' akynge, & akynge of' his pous,[5] & bi þe swellynge of' þe place, þan þou muste bigynne for to aswage þe akynge wiþ oile of' ros*is*, & lete him blood *in* þe heed veyne *in* þe same side. If' it' so be þat' he mai not' be lete blood, for sum cause þat' lettiþ, þan garse him vpon his schuldris, & putte *in* his eere oile of' ros*is* wiþ a litil vinegre. If' þee þinkiþ þat' þe mater comeþ of' colre, þat' þou schalt' knowe bi signes þat' ben forseid, þan purge him wiþ a decoccioun of' mirabol*anorum* / If' þe mater be not' aswagid, ne þe akinge do awei, þan bigynne for to leie mussillaginis of' fenigrec & of' lynseed, & rotis of' altea, wiþ wommans milk, & do it' flat'[6] into his eere / & vpon þe eere leie an enplastre þat' it' hile al þe eere, maad of' lynseed, & barli, & rotis of' altea, & of' lilie, & medle hem *with* gandris grese & grese of' an hen. & þis cure þou schalt' contynueli do, til þe quitture come out' of' his eere, & þe

[4 lf. 175]

If the pains are caused by an apostema,

bleed the patient from the Vena Cephalica, or scarify his shoulders;

if this fails to soothe the pain, apply a poultice and a plaster, until suppuration begins.

[2] The translator has omitted the case when water is in the ear. Sl. 2463, fol. 83 b.: "*And yef be water enterid into þe ere, doo Galyenys experyment. ¶ Take a rodde of wilowe othyr a twigge of þe vyne and putte þe tone ende in þe patientis ere, & lappe wex aboute þe tother ende and sette hit on fyre, ffor by þe vertu of þe fyre þe water schal be clene dried vppe.*"

[3] *flact watir.* Lat. flaccidus. O.Fr. flaccide. N.E. flat water. Compare *flaccid.* Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, and *flaisch*, p. 265, note 1, *flasch*, p. 266, note 3. O.Fr. flasque, Lat. flaccidus, another form of flaccidus.

[5] Lat.: per fortem dolorem et pulsationem.

[6] *flat*, Lat. tepidus. See above, note 3.

akynge aceesse.[1] & þan þou schalt cure it riȝt as vlcera of þe eeris
If the matter is caused by cold, ben curid, þat schal be seid here aftir / Also if þe mater þat makiþ
[2 lf. 175, bk.] þe enpostym come [2]of cooldnes, & þat falliþ ful seelde, but if it
come in an old man, & þat þou miȝt knowe bi þe akynge & bi þe 4
purge, cooldnes of þe place, þan þou schalt bigynne to avoide him wiþ
instil oil of lilies into the ear, pill*ulas* coch*ie* & wiþ a clisterie. & caste into his eere oile of lilies,
& resolue in þe same oile ʒ .ß. euforbij ouþir .ʒ. j. de turbit, &
anoynte al aboute his eeris wiþ þe forseid oile of lilies, & leie þer- 8
apply A fumigacioun ffor the eere vpon wolle vnwaischen, & make him a fumigacioun to his eere wiþ
hoot water in which schal be soden maiorana & calamynte. & if þis
and a garlic-plaster. suffisiþ not, leie þer-vpon an enplaster or an oynement, & of garleke,
& rotis of lilie soden to-gidere & grounden wiþ butter, & do þerto 12
leuayn, & do þerto oile of lilie or of camom*ille*, & a litil vinegre, &
make an enplastre and leie vpon his eere, for þis enplastre rotiþ
coold mater & drawiþ it out, & if þou miȝt se ony place in þe eere
þat quitture is gaderid on, þan it is good to opene þat place & 16
drawe out þe quitture as it schal be seid heraftir. & þan þou schalt
[3 lf. 176] cure it riȝt as þou schalt cure vlcera þat schal be seid herafter.

If the pain arises from wind in the ear, Sumtyme akynge of eeris comeþ of greet [3]wynd & sound in þe
eere, & noise & wynd þat comeþ of þe heed & falliþ into þe eeris.[4] 20
Þis þou miȝt knowe liȝtly, for wiþ þe akynge he schal haue a maner
noise in his eeris & pipinge / & þe cure herof schal be avoiding of
instil oil of rue. greet humours, & þou schalt caste into his eere oile of rue, & in
þe same oile schal be dissolued a litil castor, & he mote kepe him 24
fro al þing þat engendriþ wynd.

If the pain is caused by ulcers in the ear, ¶ Also akynge of þe eeris comeþ of vlcera þat ben wiþinne in
a stinking pus will be discharged. þe hoole of þe eere, & sumtyme þei comen of an enpostym goinge
tofore. & þe signes herof ben akynge & cours of quitture þat 28
stynkiþ. & þe more stinking þat þe quitture is & þe more departid
fro whit colour, þe worse it wole be to cure / ffirst þou schalt make
The mundificatives. clene his heed with cochijs & wiþ pigra, & þan þou muste do mundi-
ficatiuis to his eere & drijng þingis. & be war þat þou worche not 32
.G*alien*. as .G. seiþ þat summe worchiþ: þei leide þerto an oynement þat
A noxious ointment. was good for woundis, & alwey þe patient hadde þe more penaunce,[5]
.G*alien*. & þe sijkenes woxe more & more / & þerfore .G. axiþ what is good
[6 lf. 176, bk.] [6]þerfore / And .G. seiþ: who þat seiþ þat it schal be curid wiþ 36

[1] *accesse*, O.Fr. acesser.

[4] Lat.: Fit etiam dolor auris propter grossam ventositatem ad aures de cąpite descendentem.

[5] *penaunce*, Lat. dolor; *penaunce* usually means "penitence."

drijnge þingis, he seiþ fals; for drijnge þingis constreineþ, & apostym is constreynyng / And summen han now newe rulis: þat wiþ contrarijs contrarie þingis schulen be curid / In þis maner þou schalt worche. Make poudre of mirre, & of aloe, & olibani, & sanguis draco ana, & take oon tent & wete it in hony, & folde þe tent in þe poudre, & putte þe tent in his eere anoon to þe botme / & if þe tent mai not come to þe botme þerof, þan dissolue þe forseid poudre wiþ watir & hony, & caste it yn / If it so be þat vlcus be swiþe cold, þan þou schalt cure him in þis maner / Take þe rust of iren, & grinde it smal, & leie it in an erþen vessel with vinegre, & boile hem togidere, til þe rust bicome drie. & þus þou muste do ofte tyme. & þan þou muste poudre it azen, & seþe it in vinegre azen til it bicome þicke as hony, & þan do þis in his eere, for þis wole hele vlcera, & þis wole drie þe moistnes þerof, & þis wole do awey þe akynge / And take hony .3. .x., vinegre 3. viij., & boile hem liȝtly at þe fier til it be wel skymed,[1] & þan do þerto 3 .ij. of vert de grece, and [2]medle hem wel togidere, & wete herynne a tent, & putte it in his eere, & þis is good for vlcera þat ben oold.

One must not apply drying remedies.

℞ ffor vlcers in þe eere

A powder that is applied to the ear by a tent.

℞ A preparation of rust heals the ulcer, dries the moisture and allays the pain.

℞ An application for old ulcers.

[2 lf. 177]

¶ If a man be deef, þan it comeþ of summe of þe forseid causis, & principali of longe akynge; also it comeþ of child beringe, & þanne it is incurable / Also if it comeþ of humours þat stoppiþ neruos, & þe cure herof is for to purge him wiþ cochijs & pigra, & caste in his eere oile of bittir almaundis & opere medicyns þat ben openynge. & oon þerof is þis / Take pulpe colloquintide .3 .j., castor, aristologia rotunda, succi absinthij ana 3. ß, euforbij .ʒ. j, costi grana .xv, & make herof smale pelottis, & dissolue oon herof wiþ oile of almaundis þat ben bittir, & do it in his eere; saue þou schalt make him a fumigacioun tofore wiþ a decoccioun of sanbuci, absinthij, sticados / Also take whit oile .3 .j., & grynde hony & oile togidere / If þe passioun comeþ of defaute of spiritis, þanne putte herof in his eere, & þanne he schal be baþid & haue reste, & vse metis þat engendriþ good blood, & he schal heere sotil voicis for to make him haue heerynge / & summe seien þat þe fatnes of grene [3]froggis, þat lyuen among trees;[4] take hem & seþe hem, & gadere þe fatnes of hem & caste in his eere, for þis haþ vertu for to make men heere. ¶ Also take a litil garlek & make it clene, & do þerto þe .iij. part of tartre, & grinde hem smal togidere, & boile hem in vinegre, & whanne it is coold þan coole it, & of þis vinegre leie hoot to his eere /

Deafness resulting from child-bearing is incurable.

If it is caused by the humours, purge and instil opening medicines into the ear.

℞ a ffumygacio.

℞ If deafness arises from a weakness of the spirit, strengthen the patient,

[3 lf. 177, bk.]

and apply the fat of green frogs.

[1] *skymed.* Compare *scume*, p. 242, note 6.

[4] Some words like *is good* are wanting.

## Of þe passiou*n* of þe nose & anoth*amia*.

¶ iij. co. The nose has two holes through which the brain is purged.

AS we haue bifore seid þat' *per* ben .ij. hoolis in þe nose *þat'* þe brayn is p*ur*gid *per*bi of' super*fluite*. & þe nose is not' neruous, & þe nose is a *pro*pre instrument' for to smelle. & þese .ij. hoolis in þe nose ben m*aad* fast' *in* þe scolle. & *in* þat' place is ordeyned a þ*ing*' þat' is clepid colatorium,[1] & eir is gaderid *þerinne* þat' makiþ v*er*tu of' smellynge. & þoru3 þat' place þe super*fluitees* of' þe brayn be*n* po*ur*gid, & *per* is oon hoole *þer*of' þat' goiþ toward þe mouþ. & þe nose is m*aad* of' .ij. boones in þe maner of' a triangle in þis maner. Δ Δ. þe scharpe eendis þat' be*n* aboue ben ioynynge wiþ þe boones of' þe i3en. & þe boonys of' þe nose þat' be*n* bineþe ben cartilaginous for þe causis þat' ben forseid.[2]

Air is gathered in the "colatorium," and there is the seat of smelling.

The nose has two bones,

*Latin Original.*

[In parte vero inferiori vnum quodque illorum duorum ossium habet quandam cartilaginem propter iuuamenta que sciuisti. In medio vero habet aliam cartillaginem, quæ nasum in duas partes diuidit, quæ durior et fortior est duabus aliis, quæ sunt in nasi fine. Iuuamentum vero illius medie cartilaginis est, ut si vni parti nasi nocumentum acciderit, pars alia totius suppleat iuuamentum. Duo autem ossa nasi coniunguntur ad inuicem : & fit nasi forma, quæ cum his quæ dicta sunt, plures habet vtilitates. Prima, vt sit tutamen & coopertorium superfluitatibus : quæ de cerebro diriuantur. Secunda, vt aerem recipiat, qui est ad receptionem odoratus necessarius mediator. Tertia, quod quamuis maior pars aeris que attrahitur vadat ad pulmonem : tamen aliqua eius pars per nasum tendit ad cerebrum. Foraminis autem quod est inter nasum & os, iuuamenta sunt tria. Primo vt cum os clauditur, possit aeris fieri attractio ad pulmonem.

and three cartilages.

The nose provides the brain with air.

The nasal cavity communicates with the mouth, I. that one may breathe through the nose,

[1] *os colatorium.* I could not find this name in the ancient authors, but it occurs frequently in the Latin translations of the Arab authors. The idea that it is the function of the nose to purge the brain is an old one. Compare A. C. Celsus de Medicina Lib. IV. Cap. V., ed. Daremberg : "Destillat autem humor de capite interdum in nares, quod leve est, interdum in fauces, quod pejus est ; interdum etiam in pulmonem, quod pessimum est." Avicenna mentions the "os colatorium" in connection with this theory in his Canon Lib. I. Fen. I. Doctr. V. Cap. 1., ed. Venetiis. 1527, fol. 9. "Ossa autem porosa facta fuerunt . . propter additionem necessitatis causa, rei alicuius, que necesse est ut in ea penetret sicut odor, qui cum aere attrahitur in osse, collatorio simili, et cerebri superfluitates, que per ipsum expelluntur." We find the same theory in the French name for a cold : "rhume de cerveau," and for the same reason "Hellebore" is called "brain-purging." *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. brain.

[2] Three leaves or four are wanting, and I insert the Latin text from the *Editio Argellata Ven.*, 1546, f. 239, bk., and Add. 26,106, f. 71.

Secundo, vt per illud cerebri anterior ventriculus expurgetur. Tertio, ad intercisionem adiuuet literarum, & voces melius explicandas : quoniam cum in loquendo sit necessarium vocem temperare : literas incidere : syllabas solidare : ad hoc saepe labia clauderentur & dentes : si non esset alia via, per quam posset aer superfluus exalare apud literarum incisionem totus conculcaretur aer, qui literarum incisionem & syllabarum prolationem sua multitudine impediret : & vocem etiam generatam non claram emitteret : facit ergo in verborum & vocis prolatione foramen hoc quod facit foramen fistulæ superius,[1] quod in vocum et tonorum modulationem remanet absolutum : quare voces & toni inde magis exeunt absoluti.[2]

2. to purge the brain; 3. it helps in the articulation of words.

In naso vel naribus plures concurrunt egritudines. Nam ibi fiunt pustulæ, vlcera, caro superflua, polypus, cancer, fluxus sanguinis, fetor, & olfactus priuatio.

**Pustulæ** fiunt vt plurimum ab adustis humoribus, et sunt cum punctura & ardore. Et cura est phlebotomia & corporis euacuatio, et iniectio albuminis oui cum oleo ros. in simul agitatis. Pustulis fractis, fiat vnctio cum vnguento albo Rasis.

Pustulas and Ulcers are treated with bloodletting and an ointment.

**Vlcera** quoque si calida fuerint, curantur eodem modo. Si frigida, cum lauatione vini et mellis, & cum vnguento apostolorum, et cum vnguento viridi dicendorum.

**Caro superflua** remouetur cum instrumentis chirurgicis ; si non potest tota cum instrumentis remoueri : remouetur residuum cum puluere asfodillorum & cum vnguento viridi, & apostolorum, & cunctis mundificantibus : & remotis superfluis cum unguentis solidantibus compleatur.

Proud flesh is removed with an instrument.

**Polypus** dicitur a polypo pisce : cuius malitiosa est astutia : quia quando vult piscibus saturari, ascendit saxum quod est in litore maris : & ipsi multum assimilatur, pisces fatigati videntes saxum, non aduertunt de polypo propter similitudinem : sed volentes quiescere, salliunt de mari : polypus illos absorbet : & in eius conuertit nutrimentum. Sic iste morbus cum naso magnam habet affinitatem : quoniam eius materia est catarrhosa frigida grossa descendens a capite : & in via propter eius grossitiem & tenacitatem hæret naso seu substantiæ nasi inuiscata : et humores capitis agitatione moti naturæ volentes descendere, & exire, materiam ibi recipiunt congregatam :

The polype is a disease, so called for its similarity with the animal.

[1] Add. 26,106, fol. 71 b., on margin : gallice flaute.

[2] The whole preceding passage about the utilities of the nose, and especially the utility of the "nares posteriores," *i. e.* the communication between the nasal cavity and the pharynx, is taken from *Avicenna*, l. c. Cap. 4.

quæ humores illos in suam conuertit malam naturam: et ex ipsa quotidie augmentatur. Differentia vero est inter polypum & carnem superfluam: quoniam caro superflua, non habet profundam tenacitatem cum nasi substantia: nec cum ipso naso nimis assimilatur: immo potest de facili segregari: polypus vero firmiter adheret cum naso: & non sine violentia separatur. Quorum scilicet polyporum aliquis est curabilis: aliquis incurabilis. Curabilis est substantiæ mollis & tractabilis: nec nasum reddit durum: nec in colore nigrum seu fuscum: nec est multum supra circa cerebri confinia inuiscatus. Incurabilis vero nasum reddit durum, liuidum seu nigrum: & magnam profunditatem tenet, quam quanto magis videris maiori nigredine maiorique participari duritie, maioremque profunditatem occupare, tanto plus ab eo existima fugiendum: quoniam naturam tunc tenet cancri: quanto plus eum curare niteris tanto plus videbis eius malitiam augmentari.

There are two kinds of polype:

1. The incurable one has the nature of a cancer.

Curabilis vero cura est secundum quod diximus in cura superfluæ carnis quæ ibi consurgit cum ablatione sive cum instrumentis & cum vnguentis mundificativis: & aliis quæ nouisti: præcedente semper corporis et capitis purgatione: sicut multoties est ostensum. Cauteria quoque secundum quod audies, multum valent ad polypi materiam consumendam. Eius vero quem incurabilem diximus, non assumas curam. Si tamen rogaris nimis, palliatiuam curam adhibe: sicut in cura cancri recolimus ostendisse.

2. The curable one may be treated like proud flesh.

## De anatomia oris, & contentorum in ore, & passionibus doctrinæ tertiæ tractatus tertii Cap. iiii.

The membrane lining the mouth is continuous with the integument of the stomach.

Totam vero oris concauitatem interius circundat panniculus qui continuus est cum meri, & cum stomacho: quare accidit quod multæ res tangentes palatum prouocant vomitum. Ad oris concauitatem duæ perueniunt viæ: quarum anatomiam superius habuisti; in earum summitate est epiglottis: quæ est creata ad perficiendum vocem: et ut seruet aliquid de aere attracto ad anelitum. Hæc epiglottis ex tribus est composita cartilaginibus: vna est eminens ante & dicitur clypealis & a laicis dicitur guttur vel nodus gulæ: alia est posterius cum osse laudæ continua et uocatur nomen non habens.[1] Tertia vocatur cymbalaris siue cooperturalis:[2] & continuatur cum nomen non habente: & cooperit clypealem: et ista cymbalaris mouetur per eius musculos: quare cum homo comedit, viam claudit

The organ of voice is composed of three cartilages.

[1] Cartilago cricoidea. [2] Cartilagines arytænoideæ.

canne pulmonis: & viam aperit oesophagi. Cum autem homo loquitur, aperit viam canne pulmonis: & claudit viam oesophagi. Quare multoties accidit, quod si homo comedens dicere vellet aliquid ignoranter: quod aliquid viam intraret canne pulmonis: quare natura moueretur ad tussiendum: nec cessaret, donec quod cannam intrauerat, esset ad extra expulsum.] [1]til þat mete be out of his þrote, saue algate he schal couȝe til it be oute. & þan aboue þis instrument is vuula þat is þe palet[2] of þe mouþ & helpiþ for to make soun / For þe wynd þat comeþ of þe lungis reboundiþ[3] aȝens þe palet & makiþ þe more soun. In þe holownes of þe mouþ is maad fast þe tunge, þat is maad of whit fleisch, & neische, & of nerues, & veynes, & of arterijs, as it is necessarie þerfore / And in þe þrote of þe tunge ben .ij. wellis þat spotil is gaderid þeron, & holdiþ alwei þe tunge moist / Also in a mannes mouþ ben .xxxij. teeþ. & þerof sittiþ .xvj. in þe cheke boon,[4] & summen han but .xxviij. / And for to hile a mannes teeþ ben ordeined lippis, & ben as it were þe dore of an hous, & helpiþ forto speke & to pronounce wordis / Now to alle þese lymes þat ben forseid: as þe palet of þe mouþ & a mannes tunge & þe teeþ & þe gomis & þe lippis, alle þei han diuers passiouns.

[1 lf. 178]

The mouth contains the epiglottis, the uvula, which helps to make sound,

the tongue, made of white flesh, nerves and blood-vessels,

32. teeþ.

and the lips, by whose help words are pronounced.

Diseases in these parts.

¶ **Vuula** sumtyme wiþ cours of humouris sumtime gaderiþ an enpostym, & sumtyme vuula wexiþ to long,[5] & sumtyme apostym of þe [6]palet comeþ of hoot cause, þat þou schalt knowe bi þe reednes of þe place & bi brennyng; & þanne in þe cure herof þou schalt bigynne for to lete him blood in þe heed veyne, & purge colre wiþ a decoccioun of fretis.[7] & herof þou schalt make him a gargarisme, & þerwiþ he schal ofte waische his mouþ: ℞, lentes, balaustias, psidias, gallas, rosas, sumac, & boile þese wiþ .ij. partis of water, & oon part of vinegre, & herof make a gargarisme / Also þou schalt leie to his palet poudre of rosis, & sandalis,[8] & balaustiarum & a litil of camphre / þis is a good help þerfore whanne þe palet is woxe long wiþ hoot humouris. ¶ If þer come an enpostym of coold humouris, ouþer þat þe palet wexe long wiþ coold humouris, & þat þou miȝt knowe whanne þe place is not reed, & if þer be

Vuula.

[6 lf. 178, bk.]

In case of a hot apostema on the palate (uvula) bleed, purge and use a gargle, **Gargarismus.** ℞

If cold humour cause the apostema,

[2] *palet*, palate. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.* The erroneous identification of uvula and palatum is not in the original.

[3] *rebound*, O.Fr. rebondir. See later references in Skeat, *Et. Dict.*

[4] Lat.: XVI in utraque mandibula.

[5] Lat.: Vuula namque propter humorum decursum aliquando apostematur aliquando solum elongatur.

[7] *fretis*, fruit. [8] MS. inserts *& rosis.*

purge and use a gargle.

miche spotil *in* his mouþ, first' þou schalt' *purge* him wiþ cochijs & pigra, & þan make him a garg*arisme* wiþ þis decoccioun: ℞, aceti p*ar*tes duas, mellis p*ar*tem vnam, boile hem togidere & do þerto poudre of' mirtillor*um*[1] & þe seed of' rosis & peletre[2] & ʒinʒibere, & þan make him poudre of' pepir [3]& sal armoniac, & make herwith a fumigacioun wiþ enbotum.[4] & if' it' be greet' to-swolle, & þan þou muste make consumynge þingis as diameron & sappa michum[5] / If' þe palet' be recchid along', & if' it' be so long' þat' it' lie vpon þe tunge, þan þou muste kutte awei as miche þerof' as þee þinkiþ good, so þat' it' be nomore þan it' schulde be; & be war þat' þou kutte not' to myche þerof', for þer miʒte come greet' perel þerof': as his vois miʒte be apeirid þe while he lyuede, & contynuely couʒinge, & his lungis miʒte be þe worse þerfore & also his piys.[6] & þerfore it' is greet' perel for to kutte a mannes palet'.[7]

[3 lf. 179]

A powder applied by a Funnel.

If the uvula gets too long, remove a portion.

Be ware not to cut too deep.

**the tong'** suffers from many diseases.

¶ The tunge suffriþ manie sijknessis as pustulas and swellynge & kuttynge, & ofte tyme a mannes tunge bicomeþ schorter þan it' schulde be. And þer is anoþer passioun þat' is clepid fili **ranulam**[8] & spasmum, & sumtyme a mannes tunge wexiþ to long'.[9] ¶ The curis of' pustulis & vlcera schulen be seid heraftir / If' þer come an enpostym or ony swellynge to a mannes tunge, & it' come of' hoot' humours, þanne þou schalt' bigynne þe cure þerof' *in* þis [10]maner / ffirst' lete him blood *in* þe heed veine, & þanne make him a decoccioun & a waisching' as it' is aforseid *in* apostym of' þe palet': & he schal holde *in* his mouþ þe iuys of' letuse. & in þe same maner þou schalt' cure swellynge of' a mannes tunge / If' þer come apostym or

Ranulam.

In case of an apostema in the tongue,

[5 lf. 179, bk.]

bleed from the head-vein and use a wash.

[1] MS. over *mirtillor*um is written *mirtelberys*.

[2] *pelletre*, Lat. pyrethrum. "*Pyrethrum*, Bartram, wild or bastard Pellitory, an Herb the Root of which is very biting and hot." Phillips. See *Pelleter* Cath. Angl. and Note ibid.

[4] *enbotum*, Lat. embotum. See *Dufr.* = infundibulum. Fr. embut, a surgical instrument, a funnel.

[5] *sappa michum*, Lat. saramitum.

[6] *piys*, Lat. pectus. O.Fr. pis.

[7] Gulielmus de Saliceto, Lanfranc's teacher, uses a cautery instead of cutting. I give the quotation from an English translation, MS. Sloane 277, fol. 1 (beginning of 15th cent.): "*Be þe grape cutt wiþ a brennynge yren kerunyge, & be it putt in by a pipe to þe grape, þe mouþ holden open. Be þe grape receyued in þe hole of þe pipe. Whiche receyued, be putt in þere þe brennynge yren in þe pipe, & be þe grape cauteried.*"

[8] *Ranula*, a tumor, which forms under the tongue. (Dunglison.) See Vegetius, De re veterin. 4, 5, 1. Gr. βάτραχος. Fr. grenouillette.

[9] The passage is corrupt. Lat.: Lingua quoque multas patitur ægritudines, pustulas, inflationem, scissuram, breviationem fili, ranulam, spasmum et relaxationem.

ony swellynge of coold humouris, þan purge him with pillulis þat If the apostema is caused by cold humours use the purging pills of *Galien*.
be forseid of .G[aliens]. makinge. ¶ Ther was a man þat his tunge
was so swolle þat it myȝte not be conteyned in his mouþ. & first
I made him purgaciouns & waischingis, & þan I made him con-
sumynge þingis; & in þis maner he was curid. ¶ **Scissure** is a "Scissure" is a fissure in the tongue.
passioun in a mannes tunge þat is as it were kutting. & þat schal
be curid wiþ þe iuys of malue soden wiþ psillium & medlid wiþ Use a wash, and let the patient feed on barley-water and hog's-feet.
sugre & sode, & herwiþ he schal waische his mouþ. & he schal
drinke water of barli, & his mete schal be hoggis feet wel soden, &
wiþ þe nerues of þe feet he schal frote wel his tunge. ¶ Also þer When the "frænum linguæ" extends too far, cut it with a golden instrument.
is a preed[1] vndir sum mannes tunge þat he mai not put out his
tunge as he schulde, & also it lettiþ him to speke. þe cure herof
is for to kutte þat preed, [2]& þan brenne him. & it is better for to
make an instrument of goold & brenne it þerwiþ, & kutte also wiþ [2 lf. 180]
þe same instrument / ¶ Also þer comeþ an enpostym vpon a mannes When the apostema is caused by melancholy,
tunge of fleume[3] & also of malancolie, saue of malancolie an en-
postym comeþ but selden / þese ben þe signes if it come of
malancolie: þe place wole be ledi ouþir blak. & þan do þou no try no cure;
cure þerto / If it come of fleuma, þanne frote wel his tunge wiþ if it is caused by phlegm, rub the tongue with salt or vitriol.
salt, til þe blood come out þerof. & if þis suffise not, þan frote it
wel wiþ vitriol / If þe spasme come in a mannes tunge þat wole Against cramp in the tongue use anet-oil and a plaster.
constryne þe tunge inward, þe cure herof is for to holde oile of
anete in his mouþ & of camomille hoot as he mai suffre, & make an
enplastre herof medlid wiþ hoot water, & leie it vpon his heed &
vpon his nolle hoot / If his tunge bicome neische, þan þou muste If the tongue becomes soft, use purging pills and an electuary.
purge him wiþ pillulis fetidis,[4] or with trocisco de turbit. & þan
do þerto þis medicyn: ℞, grana vij. numero, recentis & lucidi
euforbij,[5] & take vij. figis & pare awei þe ryndis þerof & grynde ℞
hem wel togidere, & do þerto as miche raw hony [6]& medle hem to- [6 lf. 180, bk.]
gidere, & make herof þe maner of a letuarie; & herof he schal take
as miche as a bene, & leie it vndir his tunge, whanne he were

[1] *þreed*, Lat. filum. Usually filetum. Fr. filet de la langue.

[3] Lat.: Ranula quoque fit sub lingua. Sl. 2463, fol. 93: "*Ranula is an emynence vnder þe tunge toward þe forther teth in maner of an enpostume, & whane þe tunge is lift vp þer schewith as it were a nother tunge vnder þe tunge.*"

[4] *pillulæ fetidæ*, pills composed from fetid things.

[5] Halle, *Table*, p. 35. '*Euphorbium*, Ευφόρβιον: is the gumm or teares of a tree called Euphorbia growinge in Lybia, found out (by the testimonye of Dioscorides) in y^e^ time of Iuba: and was called by that name (as saith Ruellius) of his Phisicien."

fastynge / Wiþ þis medicyn þe abbot of scint victor was maad hool; for he miȝte not speke, & herwiþ his speche come aȝen.[1]

Toothache caused by hot meat is treated with cold water, by cold meat with hot oil, by sour things with cheese and purslane.

¶ Akinge of teeþ: sumtyme it comeþ of vijs of þe teeþ,[2] & sumtyme of þe gomis, & sumtyme it comeþ of vijs of þe stomac, & sumtyme it comeþ of hoot mete, & sumtyme of coold mete. & if it come of hoot mete, make him holde coold watir in his mouþ, & þat wole cure him anoon. & if it come of coold mete, þan he schal holde in his mouþ hoot oile. & if a mannes teeþ akiþ for sour þingis, þan he schal ete chese & portulacas, or he schal gnawe wiþ his teeþ hoot wex[3] / If it come of vicis of þe heed or of þe gomis, and þe cause come of hete, þat þou miȝt knowe bi reednes of þe place & bi þe hete þerof, & þan þou schalt lete him blood in þe heed veine, & þan þou schalt lete him blood in þe veine þat is vndir his tunge; & þan he schal holde in his mouþ oile of rosis, medlid wiþ watir, [4]ouþer coold watir & vinegre / If þe akynge be so greuous þat it mai not be take awei, þan aswage his akynge wiþ þis medicyn: ℞, seminis iusquiami albi[5] opij ana ℈ .j, seminis apij ℈ .j, grinde hem togidere & tempere hem wiþ vinegre, & make þerof pelottis in þe greetnes of a pece, & leie oon herof vpon þe tooþ, & þis wole do awei þe akinge þerof. & after þe fourþe dai lete him holde in his mouþ oile of rosis, in which is dissolued masticis.

[4 lf. 181]

If it arises from the head or gums let blood.

To soothe the pain, ℞ apply to the tooth a preparation of hyoscyamus and opium.

If the pain is caused by cold humours, purge, use an electuary and instil a medicine into the ear. ℞

¶ If þe akynge come of coold humouris, þat þou miȝt knowe if þe place be not reed ne to-swollen, þan purge him wiþ cochijs or wiþ pigra. & aftir þis he schal holde in his mouþ tiriacam diatesseron.[6]

¶ Also do þis medicyn in his eere in þe same parti þat akiþ / ℞, olium oliuarum ℥ ij., aceti ℥ j., coloquintidae, piperis ana ℈ .j.,

[1] Lat.: cum hac medicina fuit restituta loquela dominæ abbatissæ sancti victoris ad ultimum, quæ propter linguæ mollificationem non poterat uerbum intelligibile bene loqui; dedi ei hanc medicinam, et cito locuta est expedite.

[2] *of viis of þe teeþ*, dentium vitio. *viis* is used synonymously with *defaute*. Sometimes both expressions are used. Sloane 277, f. 12 *b*.: "*These seknesses be maad of vice or defaute of þe norischinge strengþe.*"

[3] This is evidently a way of filling the hole of a tooth.

[5] Halle, *Table*, 52. "*Hyosciamus.* Henbane is called in Greeke Ὑοσκυαμος; in Latin: Hiosciamus, Apollinaris, Faba suilla et Altercum; of Apuleius: Symphoniaca; of others also Fabidum and Fabilonia, and of some Cassilago or Caniculata; of the Apothecaries Iusquiamus. Of Henbane there are three kyndes: the blacke, the yelowe and the whyte."

[6] *diatessaron*, an electuary into the composition of which entered four medicines. "Among Farriers *Diatessaron* is taken for Horse-treacle; — —. Also an Electuary made of Gentian, Bay berries and Birth-wort, of each two Ounces, all beaten to a very fine Powder, and work'd in like manner with two Pounds of Honey in a Stone-mortar."—Phillips.

& boile hem *in* a double vessel, & distille it in his eere flaisch[1] / Sumtyme a mannes teep ben frete & ben holow, & pis comep of humours corrupt pat fallip to pe teep. & *in* pis maner pou schalt cure it / ℞, oli*um* ℥ j., sansuci[2] sicci,[3] semi*n*is sicute ana ʒ ß. boile hem togidere, & pan pou schalt haue [4]a cauterie wip .ij. pointis, & pou schalt haue pe schap herof heraftir, & pou schalt make pe same instrument hoot *in* pe fier, & pan putte it *in* pe forseid oile, & pan putte it in pe hole of his toop, & be war pat pou touche not his gomys wip pe iren ne his lippis: & pis medicyn pou muste reherse ofte tymes / pis medicyn wole bringe water out of pe teep, & it wole do awei pe akynge. ¶ If pou desirist to drawe out ony mannes toop wipouten iren: ℞, cortices radicum mori & piretru*m* ana, distempere hem wip vinegre & grinde hem wel togidere, & drie hem in pe sunne, & departe liʒtli pe toop & pe fleisch of pe gomis & leie of pe medicyn bitwixe pe toop & pe fleisch / Also lac titimalli[5] distemperid wip flour of amidum / Also make poudre of peletre & lete it lie in vinegre *in* pe somer tyme, & kepe it; pis makith neische, pat pe toop mowe be drawe out wipouten ony iren / If a mannes teep ben blac, *in* pis maner pou schalt make hem whit / ℞, farina*m* ordei, sal ana, & leie hem *in* hony, & make perof past & folde it *in* paper [6]or *in* lynnen cloop, & brenne it *in* a furneis. & pan brenne schellis of eiren, & ciperi, alu*m*inis ana partes duas, corticu*m* citri siccoru*m*, camfer ana partem vna*m*, make herof poudre, and frote perwip his teep & hise gomis, & pis wole do awei pe blaknes of a mannes teep /

If the teeth are hollow ℞ cauterize the hole with the hot iron. [4 lf. 181, bk.]

To draw teeth without using the iron. ℞

A powder to make black teeth white. ℞ [6 lf. 182]

## Of pe passioun in wo*m*men brestis /

GOd almiʒti made *in* a wo*m*man tetis for pe norischinge of a child. & a wo*m*mans tetis ben maad of fleisch pat is glandulous, & of veines, & of arterijs, & of ne*r*ues, & ben but veines pat comen fro a wo*m*mans lyuere to hir tetis & pe maris, as it is seid here tofore, & *in* what maner blood tu*r*nep i*n*to milk it is forseid.[7]

¶ v. co. A woman's breasts are made of glandular flesh, blood-vessels and nerves, and the blood is turned to milk in them.

[1] *flaisch*, tepidus. See p. 255, note 3.
[2] "*Samsucus*, maiorana," et cet. *Alphita*, p. 161.
[3] MS. *succi*.
[5] *lac titimalli*. τιθύμαλος, euforbia.
[7] Lat.: et ad ubera veniunt venæ concavæ a matrice, per quas, ut scivisti, pars sanguinis attrahitur menstrualis. et sicut chylus camellinus veniens a stomacho, cum a hepate recipitur, colorem recipit rubeum: sic sanguis a matrice veniens rubeus albescit. Compare *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. XII., Cap. 1, f. 209. "Nam epar rubificat chilum album et facit ipsum sanguinem. Et mamilla albificat sanguinem rubeum et facit ipsum lac."

Egidius.

¶ In a wommans tetis comeþ manie passiouns / ffor, as Egidius seiþ, þat sumtyme þer comeþ þerto apostym of milk, & sumtyme vlcera / And comounly enpostyms comeþ of blood þat is drawe to þe tetis & mai not turne into milk, or if a womman haue to miche blood, & it comeþ of febilnes of vertu as it is aforseid in þe general chapitre of enpostyms. ¶ þe cure of an hoot enpostym in þe tetis / ffirst þou [1]schalt lete hir blood in Basilica, or sette a ventuse vpon hir schuldris. & if þe cause come of retencioun of menstrue, þan þou schalt ʒeue hir medicyns for to bringe out þe menstrue, or þou schalt lete hir blood in þe sophene, & anointe þe place wiþ oile of rosis, & þe fourþe part of vinegre. & if þis suffise not, þan wete a lynnen clooþ in þe iuys of solatri,[2] & whanne þou hast anoyntid þe place wiþ oile & vinegre, þan leie þis clooþ pervpon. & loke þat alle þingis þat þou leist þerto be flasch hoot;[3] for þer schal no coold þing be leid þerto for þe place is neruous, for coold þing wolde greue it. If alle þese medicyns suffisen not, saue þe mater bigynneþ to drawe to quitture, þanne leie þerto maturatiuis. & if þou miʒt not do it awei wiþ repercussiuis ne wiþ resoluynge þingis, & þou ne miʒt not make it maturatif, þan it is drede lest þe womman bicome in a passioun þat is clepid Mania.[4] þan hir heed mote be schaue, & ʒeue hir confortif þingis for hir heed, & ʒeue hir sotil dietynge, & sche schal drinke no wiju ne ete [5]no fleisch. & þou muste worche ful sotilli, ffor I say a womman þat hadde an enpostym in hir brest & come of blood, & so I tauʒte hir for to do[6] as it is aforseid, & þo þer come a lewid cirurgian & repreuede me, & he leide pervpon maturatiuis: & þe more þat he leide pervpon maturatiuis, þe more þe mater wexide greet & þe more brennynge. & þo same cirurgian wolde not heere my counseil / & þe wommans freendis took more hede to þe lewid cirurgian þan to me, & wiþinne .iij. daies Mania come to hir and was oute of hir witt, & so þe frenesie fil on hir / & þis pronosticacioun I seide in þe bigynnynge, but þei wolde not leue mi wordis[7] / If it so be þat it make quitture, þan opene it & do out þe quitture, & þan leie þerto a mundificatif,

Apostemas are caused by blood in the breast, which cannot be turned into milk.

Treatment of a hot apostema.

[1 lf. 182, bk.] Use blood-letting and cupping.

In case of retention of the menstrual blood, bleed from the Saphena: use an ointment and a compress, which must be lukewarm.

If suppuration is imminent, apply maturatives, and if they fail there is danger of Mania.

Shave her head,

[5 lf. 183] and let her abstain from wine and meat.

A woman with an apostema in her breast was treated by an unskilful surgeon, with maturatives,

in three days she fell into Mania and frenzy, as I prognosticated.

If it suppurates, open it.

[2] Halle, *Table*, p. 119. "Solanum hortense, which doctlesse Lanfranke meaneth by Solatrum, doth Galen also call Esculentum."

[3] *flasch hoot*, tepidus. See p. 255, note 3.

[4] De propr. rer. lib. V. cap. 34. Add. 27,944, fol. 53 b.: "*ypocras seiþ þat in wommen in þe whiche superfluyte of blood turned to þe pappis, it bodeþ madnes.*"

[6] *do*, above line.

[7] Lat.: mea tamen prognosticatio multum exaltata extitit.

& be wel war þat þou putte þerinne no greet tent ne long, as manie foolis doon; for a wommans tetis ben ful of nerues, & if þe nerues were pressid wiþ ony tent, it wolde make gret akynge, & wolde lette þe cure þerof. ¶ Also þer ben manie foli lechis, whanne þei fynden [1]in a wommans tetis fleisch þat is glandelous, þan þei wene þat it be wickid fleisch, & ben þeraboute for to drawe it out, & þan þei schendiþ al þe substaunce of þe brest. þou schalt worche wiseli & þou schalt remeue noon herof, for as it is aforseid, al þe fleisch of þe tetis is glandelous. & whanne þat is clensid wiþ mundificatiuis þan þou schalt regendre fleisch, & þan þou schalt drie it / If it be so, þat coold mater gadere to enpostym *in* a wommans brest, & þat comeþ ful selde, loke if þis mater come of fleume, & þan anoynte þe place wiþ oile of camom*ille*, & oile of lilie, & oile of anete, & a litil vinegre medlid þerwiþ. & if it be ony nede first make hir a purgacioun, & if it resolue not, þan leie þerto maturatiuis, & þan do as it is aforseid / & if it so be þat þe mater turne to hardnes & blak or ledi, þan þou muste be war þat þou leie þerto no medicyns þat ben to hoot, for þer mai engendre a cancre þerof ful liȝtli. & if it be so, þan be þou not þeraboute for to make it maturatif, & do þou no cure þerto. & summen seien þat a womman mai be curid for [2]to kutte off al þe brest, & þat is al fals. Saue þou schalt kepe þe place wiþ vng*uentum* de tutia, & sche mote ofte be purgid, þat sche mowe lyue þe lenger. ¶ I-leue þe wordis þat I seie; þouȝ I haue curid manie men of diuers *em*postyms, I miȝte neuere cure a verri cancre, but it were *in* a fleischi place þer I miȝte kut al awei wiþouten ony hurtyng of senewis & of veines[3] / & a wommans brest is ful of senewis & veynes & arterijs. ¶ Vlcera þat ben *in* a wommans tetis schulen be curid as it is aforseid *in* þe general chapitre, saue herof þou muste be war þat þis lyme may not suffre so harde corosiuis for þe greet tendirnes þerof, saue þou schalt do þerto medicyns þat ben mundificatif & driynge / It falliþ to summe wommen þat þe point of hir tete ne goiþ not out, but ben al hid *in* þe tete so þat a child mai not take it *in* his mouþ for to souke / In þis maner þou schalt helpe it / Take þe cuppe of an acurne, & þat is lyk to þe point of a wommans tete, & do þeron terbentyn or pich, & make it hoot & leie it vpon þe point of hir tete & binde [4]it þerto faste, & þis wole drawe out þe point of hir

**Be ware** not to use a great tent, as many fools do.

Many foolish physicians [1 lf. 183, bk.]

remove the glandular flesh, mistaking it for corrupt flesh.

If cold matter gathers into an apostema,

apply an ointment

and maturatives.

If the matter becomes hard, it may easily become a cancer.

In case of cancer,

[2 lf. 184]

operation does not help: but apply an ointment and purge to prolong the patient's life.

I have only cured a true cancer in a fleshy part.

Ulcers in a woman's breast are treated with mundificative and drying medicines.

If the nipples are hid in the breast draw them out with an acorn-cup.

℞

[4 lf. 184, bk.]

[3] There is no condition mentioned in the Latin original, under which the operation might be performed. Roy. 12. C. XIV. fol. 54 b.: de uero cancro nunquam curare potui, licet pluries cum meis uiribus laborauerim.

In case of enlargement of the breast apply

tete. ¶ Also it' bifallip to maidenes þat' her tetis bicomeþ more þan þei schulde be bi resoun, & þou schalt' helpe hem in þis maner / Take stonys þat' me whettip knyues on, & frote þese .ij. stones

℞

the powder of a whet-stone and vinegar,

togidere in vinegre longe, til þe vinegre bicome picke þerof', & make it' hoot' & anoynte þer wip hir tetis, & þan binde hem / þis medicyn defendip þat' þei schulen not' wexe, & make hem bicome litil til þei come to her owne propre schap. ¶ Also take comyn & make poudre þerof', & medle it' wip hony & vinegre; and it' worchip þe more strongli if' þou medle þerwip bole armoniac & terra sigillata; grinde hem & tempere hem wip vinegre, & make a plastre þerof' & lete it' lie þeron .iij. daies, & þan þou schalt' waische it' wip coold water / And a womman be war herof' þat' sche haue no sich medicyn, if' hir brest' schal wexe ony more.[1] ¶ If' þat' milk be gaderid hard in a wommans brest' for hete, þanne þou schalt' anointe hir brest' wip oile of' rosis & vinegre, & þou schalt' make an enplastre as [2]of' solatri, portulace, for þese herbis han propirte for to dissolue. ¶ þis is a plastre þat' wole dissolue mylk þat' is congelid hard, and it' wole make þe mater of' an enpostym maturatif' /

or a plaster of cumin with honey and vinegar.

If the milk becomes hard, anoint the breast with oil and apply a solvent.

[2 lf. 185]

℞

℞, mice panis, farina ordei, fenigreci & seminis lini ana. ℥ j, radicis malue visci & herbe veruce.[3] ana. ℧ .j.; seþe wel þese .ij. laste, & þan stampe hem wel alle togidere & tempere hem wip oile, & make þerof' a plastre & leie it' vpon flasch hoot' /

## ffor brekyng of þe siphac & of his laxyng.

¶ vjo co/

ANothamia of' þe siphac is aforseid / & sumtyme siphac is kutt', & sumtyme it' recchip alongt', & sumtyme it' to-brekip wip lepinge, & sumtyme for greet' wepinge, & sumtyme for greet' crijnge, & sumtyme for greet' traueile. ¶ If' siphac be recchid aboute þe nauele ouþer aboute þe heeris, þat' þou myȝt' knowe in þis maner: þe place wole be to-swolle an hiȝ as it' were an enpostym. & whanne þou touchist' it' wip þi fyngir, it' wole goon yn aȝen. & sumtyme it' wole come aȝen, & it' wole make noon gurgulacioun / þe cure herof' is but' liȝt', & is wip a ligature & wip enplastre þat' schal be seid in þe brekinge [4]of' þe siphac. & if' siphac be to-broke, þou miȝte knowe bi þe greet' noise, whanne þou lest' þin hond þervpon for to putte hem yn

If the "siphac" protrudes at the navel or the groins,

use a ligature and a plaster.

[4 lf. 185, bk.]

If the siphac is broken a gurgling sound is heard, on the application of pressure.

[1] The translator has omitted the following passage: Caueat etiam illa quæ non vult suas ingrossare mamillas: ne illas tangat vel tangi permittat.

[3] *herbe veruce*, Lat. *herbæ erucæ*. Brassica eruca L., white mustard. The translator mistook it for Verrucaria.

aȝen.[1] ¶ Þe cure herof is hard in an oold man. Þan make him a bracal[2] *id est* a boond þat it be þe brede of .iiij. fyngris. & it mote be maad of lynnen clooþ maniefoold,[3] & þou muste make a plate of iren, as brood as þe brekyng is, & þat mote be fooldid manie foold *in* þe forseid ligature, & it schal not be round, but plain. & þou muste ordeyne *per*fore fastnyngis tofore & bihinde & *in* hise flankis, þat it mowe be holde algate *in* oon place, and þou schalt make an enplastre for to leie vpon þe same place vndir þe bindinge *in* þis maner / ℞, glutinum piscium vel carte .ℨ. iiij, picis grece .ℨ. .iiij, picis naualis armoniaci ana. ℨ ij, kutte þese alle to smale gobetis, & do hem in ℨ. ij. of vinegre, & ℨ .iiij. of oile of mast*icis* & lete hem lie þeron adai & anyȝt, & þan melte hem *in* a panne & cole hem. & heron medle poudre mastic & thus, & boli armoniaci, mummie, san*uinis*, dr*a*conis, dragaganti, farine fenigreci ana ℨ ß. medle hem longe togidere / Ouþir take [4]scropholarie[5] þe rynde þerof & grinde it wiþ grese, & make þerof an enplastre, & of þe same rotis make poudre, & ȝeue him þerof eueri dai .ȝ .j. & ß. wiþ wijn / Also ȝeue him euery dai .ȝ .j & ß of poudre maad of þe rotis of valarian temperid wiþ wijn. ¶ And if hise guttis falle adoun into his ballok leþir,[6] þe cure þerof schal be seid in þe nexte chapitre //

Apply a bandage and a plate of iron firmly fastened on the place;

and beneath the bandage apply a plaster. ℞

[4 lf. 186]

## Of hernia[7] of þe ballokis //

¶ vij. co/

THis siknes mai be seid *in* manie maners / In oon maner whanne a mannes bowels falliþ into his ballokis leþeris, & þan it is clepid hernia intestinalis / Or þer falliþ watir into þe same place as

Scrotal hernias

[1] The distinction made between a simple protrusion and a rupture of the siphac is, in fact, one between a less or more developed hernia. The "gurgling sound" has already been noticed by *Avicenna Canon*, Lib. III., Fen. 22, Tract. 1, Cap. 3.

[2] *braccal*, Lat. brachale = cingulum coriaceum Dufr., from med. Lat. bracæ. See *breeches, N. E. Dict.* The use of the "brachale vel lumbare" is mentioned by Gulielm. de Salie, *Chirurgia*. Lib. I., Cap. 43. De crepatura in inguinibus. Engl. transl., Sl. 277, fol. 6 *b*. "*Wiþoute cuttynge moost children & opere in whiche þe guttes comen not down to þe ballock codd, & whiche þat hadde but litel schewynge wiþ a lumbare or a bawdrike, & oure plastre & powdre manye in my tyme I curede þe lumbare or bawdrike oweþ to be maad of lynnen cloþ þrefold.*" Sl. 2463, fol. 123 b. says: "*The cure without inscicion . . . is don with a gyrdell made for þe rupture, þe whiche a man may fynde to sylle.*"

[3] *maniefoold*, Lat.: multis duplicationibus facta.

[5] *scropholarie*, scrophularia, water betony, *medewŏrt* written above. See Wr. Wül. *mēdwurt*.

[6] *ballok leþir*, testiculorum bursa.—*Cath. Angl.*, p. 211. Ledyr; birsa. Sl. 2463, f. 123 *b.*: *þe purs of þe ballokes.*

[7] MS. *hernio*.

**Hernia intestinalis, hernia aquosa, hernia ventosa, hernia carnosa, hernia varicosa. 1.** Either the Zirbus or the [1 lf. 186, bk.] bowels fall into the enlargened Didymus. **2.** They fall through a rupture of the Siphac into the Scrotum. This latter case can only be cured by operation.

it' were a dropesie, & þan it' is clepid hernia aquosa / Ouiþir *þer* comeþ wijnd *into* þe same place, & þan it' is clepid hernia ventosa. And sumtyme *þer* wexiþ fleisch aboute & is greet', & þan it' is clepid hernia carnosa / And sumtyme *þer* be*n* veynes *þer*eaboute ful of' malancolious blood & wele be gret' as it' were notis, & þan it' is clepid he*r*nia varicosa / The firste cause come*þ* in þis maner: Dindimus, þat' anathomia *þer*of' is [1]forseid, wexiþ wide for su*m* moistnes þat' falliþ *þer*to, so þat' ȝirbus, ou*þer* þe bowels falliþ adoun *in* þe same place; and þis maner is ofte seen. Ou*þer* siphac is to-broke *in* þe flank wiþ oon of' þe forseid causis *in* þe chapitre tofore / & þoruȝ þe same breki*n*g' þe bowels falliþ adou*n* ouþir ȝirbus, & bitwixe dindim*us* & mirac þei fallen adou*n* *into* þe ballok leþeris. & þis maner falliþ ful selde*n*. þis laste maner is incurable wiþ ony medicyns, but' wiþ kuttynge it' mai be curid & sewid. & who þat' vsiþ sich mane*r* boo*n*dis aforseid, but' if' it' be *in* children & *in* newe causis, it' is al traueile *in* idil, & þe pa*tient* haþ greet' penau*n*ce *þer*wiþ wiþouten ony p*r*ofit'. ¶ The firste may be curid / & þe .ij. mane*r* is ful hard for to cure, & *þer*fore it' is ful necessarie for a cirurgian for to knowe alle þe maners herof' & anathamia*m* as it' is forseid lest' he falle i*n* errour. ¶ þer be*n* manie men þat' ben hardi for to entermete of' þese curis þat' knowen not' þe maner of' þe sijknes ne þe diffence *þer*of', & *þer*fore þei falliþ aldai *in* errour. & þe lasse good þat' [2]þat' þei ku*n*ne, þe ra*þer*e þei wole ente*r*mete of' sich an hard cause. & þis cause is ful *per*ilous / I haue seen manie wise me*n* þat' coude do þis cure ful wel, & ȝitt' þei wolde not' entermete *þer*of' / þerfore þou muste take consideracio*u*n sotilli, where þe bowels falliþ adoun þoruȝ þe brekynge of' siphac ouþir þoruȝ dindimu*m*, & þat' þou schalt' knowe i*n* þis maner: ¶ In þe firste caas þe bowels or ȝirbus falliþ doun sodeinli wiþ agreuau*n*ce, & þan þou miȝt' fele his bowels or ȝirbu*m* i*n* þe botme of' þe ballok leþir, & þan þer is but' oon skyn to-broke, & þat' is mirac. & wh*a*nne þou wolt' putte yn þe bowels aȝen, þou miȝt' fele in what' place þei goon in. & wh*a*nne hise bowels ben y*n*ne, þan lete þe pa*tient* stonde vp, & hise bowels wolen falle out' sodeinli aȝen, & þan þou miȝt' fele in what' place þei come*þ* out' / In þe .ij. caas ȝirbus or þe bowels, or bope come*n* adou*n* alitil & alitil, & makiþ miche gurgulacio*u*n, & þe wei þat' þei come*þ* out' is algate su*m*what' greet' in dindimo, & þat' wole not' be put' yn wh*a*nne þe bowels ben putt' yn, sau*e* [3]wiþ greet' penau*n*ce & *in* longe tyme. & wh*a*nne þe bowels falliþ þoruȝ dindimu*m*, he makiþ þe ballok leþir neuere þe lengere, & þis is a good

Hernia intestinalis, hernia aquosa, hernia ventosa, hernia carnosa, hernia varicosa. 1. Either the Zirbus or the [1 lf. 186, bk.] bowels fall into the enlargened Didymus. 2. They fall through a rupture of the Siphac into the Scrotum. This latter case can only be cured by operation.

Many unskilful men dare to try these cures,

[2 lf. 187]

whereas some wise men are afraid of doing so.

These two kinds of Hernia must be distinguished.

1. The bowels fall out suddenly through the broken Mirac.

2. The bowels descend slowly, with a gurgling sound.

[3 lf. 187, bk.]

knowinge: whanne þou hast take kepe of alle þese priuitees, þan
þou miȝt wite wherof þe cause is. ¶ Whanne þe bowels falliþ adoun þoruȝ a fissure, *id est* þoruȝ a brekynge, þan þou schalt not traueile forto worche wiþ plastris & wiþ boondis þat ben forseid, but if it be *in* children & *in* causis þat ben newe. & if þe brekynge be but litil, þan þou miȝt make .v. cauterijs vpon þe skyn wiþoutforþ, so þat þe cauterie perse mirac, for þat wole make an hard drowing vpon þe brekinge / & it wole not suffre þat þe bowels schulen not falle adoun þoruȝ þat place, so þat þe brekinge be but litil. If it so be þat þe bowels falle adoun þoruȝ dindimum, þan men haueþ diuers curis. Summen leien a corosif vpon þe ers wiþ dindimum, a medicyn corosif, til þe skyn wiþout be frete, til þou mai se dindimum, & þan aftirward he fretiþ dindimum; & summen drawiþ awei a mannes ballokis, and [1]summen drawiþ not awei, but bi þe wei of þe corosif þe ballokis wolen rotie afterward / ¶ Also summen maken punctual cauterijs *in* þe maner of a cros vpon dindimum, & þan aftirward heliþ it vp / Summen kutten þe hiȝer skyn wiþ a cauterie,[2] & þei streyneþ dindimum, & þei bindiþ it wiþ spago[3] / Sum worchith in anoþir maner: first, þei kuttiþ þe skyn aboue, & þan þei makiþ cauterium aboue vpon dindimum *in* summe partie, & *in* sum parti þei leeueþ hool. & þis maner is lasse worse þan þe toþer þat ben forseid / Summen ficchiþ .ij. nedlis *in* dindimum wiþ double þreed & crossiþ þe nedlis togidere, & þan þei takiþ þe þredis & leiþ þervpon martencium,[4] til al þe skyn þat was take wiþ þe nedelis be rerid an hiȝ. & oþer men han diuers werkis þat I hadde not certeyn, for alle maners þat I heere þerof ben disseyuable / For sumtyme whanne a man haþ miche traueilid þoruȝ, þing þat he haþ do brekiþ aȝen, & þan it wole be worse þan it was raþer. & among alle þe maners þat ben, þat is worst þat is doon wiþ medicyn caustica, for medicyns caustica for þe grete venym & malice [5]þat it haþ, makiþ greet akynge, & is cause to make an enpostym *in* dindimo, and þoruȝ þe agreuaunce þat dindimo haþ, siphac mai be agreued & diafragma. & fro diafragma it mai go[6] to þe brayn, þat is þe welle of alle nerues, & so þe man mai falle in a spasme, & þan he is but deed. ¶ O þou wrecchid leche, þat for a litil money

When the bowels fall through a rupture apply bandages only in case of children.

If the rupture is small, cauterise the skin above the Mirac.

If the bowels fall through the "Didymum," different ways of treatment are proposed.

Some physicians use a Corrosive, [1 lf. 188]

some remove the testicles,

some use cauteries,

some tie a string round the Didymus.

All these cures are uncertain, *Nota.* a relapse may occur.

Caustics are dangerous,

[5 lf. 188, bk.]

they may affect the Diaphragm and the brain.

A bad leech, for a little sum

[2] *wiþ a cauterie*, error for *wiþout cauterie*. Lat.: Alii sine cauterio superficialem cutem incidunt.

[3] *wiþ spago*, cum spago; med. Lat. spacus, thread. See Diez. s. v. spago.

[4] *martencium*, Lat. martentinum. Name of a cautery?

[6] *go*, above line.

endangers a man's life, which is worth more than any gold or silver.

puttist a mannes lijf in perel of deeþ / for þe lawe seiþ, it is better þan ony gold or siluer, for þou for a litil money makist him in perel of deeþ / For a man mai lyue vn-to þe tyme of his ende for þis

The author's advice is, not to cut, but apply the above mentioned bandage and plaster.

passioun. & þerfore I wole counseile to kutte no man / Saue bi my counseil þei schulen make a ligature as it is aforseid in þe brede of .iiij. fyngris of lynnen clooþ or of sendel,[1] as I haue tauȝt hertofore. & make þat enplastre þat is forseid, & teche him good regimen & good dietynge / & þouȝ he be not curid wiþ þis medicyn he schal lyue neuere adai þe lenger, ne þe lasse while þerfore / ¶ I say .ij. men þat hadden þe passioun, & þat oon was .lx. winter oold, & his bowels fel out as it is for seid, & it was ful hard[2] to bringe hem in

He treated in this way a patient who was sixty years of age.

[3 lf. 189]

[3]aȝen, & I made him sich a boond as it is aforseid & a plastre, & tauȝte in what maner he schulde diete him-silf. & I seide to him if he louede his owne lijf he schulde go to no man to kutte him. & he was glad of my counseil, & he bar þe forseid bond & þe enplastre .ij. ȝeer contynueli, dai & nyȝt, & wiþinne þat tyme he was hool, & ȝitt I wiste not wher he schulde be hool or no / & þat oþir man was .xl. wintre oold, & þer fel so greet plente out at his bowels, þat þei miȝte not be putt in aȝen, til þe pacient were sett in a baþ. & þo I putte hem in aȝen / & I toolde of þe perel of kuttynge, & he bad me make sich a boond, & I made him oon & þe enplastre þat is forseid. & I tauȝte him how he schulde kepe him-silf, and how he schulde diete him-silf. & wiþinne a litil tyme he come to me, & seide þat he was almost hool, & þat he wolde were his boond no lenger. & þo I repreuede him, & seide þat he schulde not be hool, but if he weride it lenger / In þis maner þou schalt teche him for to kepe him-silf: he schal algate were his boond & his plastre, saue if he haue greet penaunce [4]þerwiþ whanne he goiþ to his bed an- euen he mai vndo it / And he schal in[5] no maner ete no growel ne raw fruit, ne no mete þat makiþ inflacioun / And he schal drinke no newe wijn, & he schal ete no greet saule,[6] and whanne he haþ ete þan he schal reste him-silf. & he schal not arise, but if his ligature be faste bounden, & he schal not lepe, & he schal not crie ne renne, & he lepe vpon an hors softli. & whanne he sittiþ at

He wore the bandage during two years in perfect health.

Another patient who was forty years old, was cured by similar treatment.

The patient shall always [4 lf. 189, bk.] wear his bandage,

shall abstain from vegetables and new wine,

shall not leap, cry, or run,

[1] *sendel*, Lat. sindon, σινδών, a fine Indian cloth, muslin; *sendel*, O.Fr. *cendal* is derived from *sindon*. See Diez, s. v. zendale. See *sendalle, sendylle*, in *Cath. Angl.*, p. 329, and note *ibid.*

[2] *hard*, in margin.

[5] *in*, above line.

[6] Lat.: ne comedant ad plenam saturitatem. *saule*, O.Fr. saoulée, from saoul, Lat. satullus.

priuy he schal not streyne him-silf to harde, & he schal ete no mete þat wole make him costif. & if he wole ony þing traueile, he schal do it þe while he is fastynge. & if he wole holde alle þes preceptis he mai be hool / & þis medicyne is certeyn, for he schal herfore lyue neuere þe lasse while. and avoid constipation. Nota

¶ If **hernia** be watri, þis is þe signe þerof, þat his ballok wole be heuy & schynynge, & if þou pressist it wiþ þi fyngir þou schalt fele watrynes þeron / ffirst þou must loke wher it be litil or myche[1] — — & þan medicyns þat ben consumynge & driynge suffisiþ / þerfore þat þou schalt fynde here aftir in þe chapitre of þe dropesie. Watery hernia. The scrotum is heavy and shining, the water is felt on pressure. Use drying medicines,

¶ If the [2]mater be greet, þan avoide awei þe mater wiþ kuttynge & wiþ cauterijs. But if þou make cauterijs, þe watir wole come aʒen þerto, & þe cauterijs wolen lette þat þer schal no more mater come þerto. ¶ If þe mater be of wynd : þat þou myʒt knowe bi inflacioun þat is not ledi colour[3] & bi felynge wiþ þi fyngris, if þou felist no watrines þeron, ne heuynes ; þe cure herof is with electuari maad of greynes of lauri & opere þingis þat schulen be said in þe chapitre of þe dropesi in tympanido.[4] ¶ If it be superfluite of fleisch, þat þou miʒte wite wiþ þi fyngris, it wole be hard,[5] þe cure herof mai not be do, but if þou kutte þe skyn þat is wiþoute & drawe out þe mater, & þan soude it, & if it be in þe oon part hard & callous, & in þat oþer part neische, þan it is better þat þou sette noon hand þeron, & principali if it be blac & ledi. ¶ Varicosa schal be curid wiþ gotis whey, & with epithimo, & wiþ purgaciouns of malancolious blood, & þan leie þerto þingis þat ben wastynge / [2 lf. 190] or evacuate the matter with cutting and cauteries. Hernia **ventosa** is treated with an electuary. Hernia **Carnosa.** Cut the skin and remove the matter. **Varicosa.**

## ¶ Of a stoon in þe bladdre & reynis /[6]

A stoon in a man is engendrid of plente of [7]grete humouris wiþinne a man, as we moun se an ensample wiþoutforþ of oþere þingis, in þe maner þat men brennen tilis in a furneis. þei maken first þe tilis of strong cley þat is viscous, & whanne þei han schape it as þei wolen, þan þei leie it in þe sunne to drie / & þan þei doon hem in a furneis wiþ fier. & þe stronger fier þat þe ¶ viijo. co. [7 lf, 190, bk.] A stone in the bladder or the reins arises from a superfluity of the humours and great heat, as tiles get hard in the fire.

[1] Some words are wanting. Lat.: *quæ si sit parua*, sufficit tibi medicamen consumens.

[3] Lat.: Ventosa cognoscitur per tumorem non lucentem.

[4] Lat.: in hydropisi tympanite. See p. 282.

[5] Lat.: Signum hernie carnose est . . . quod sentis, cum tangis, testiculos dura carne circumvolutos.

[6] Compare *Celsus Medicina*, lib. VII., cap. 26. The later authors followed more or less closely.

tilis han, þe stronger þei wolen be, & riȝt so in a mannes bodi, whanne a man haþ miche viscous matere in his bodi & mai not be putt out for febilnes of expulcioun, & þan scharp hete specialy in þe reines falliþ to þat mater & makiþ it hard, & in þis maner engendriþ þe stoon in þe reynes. ¶ Also in children a stoon engendriþ in her bladdre; for þe reynes of a child ben not so hote as a mannes / In þis maner þou schalt knowe wher þe stoon be in a mannes bladdre or in his reynes[1] / If þe grauel of his vrine be whit: þan þe stoon is in þe bladdre / And if þe grauel be reed, þan it is in his reynes[2] / ¶ Summen þat ben hardi wolen asaie for to cure a man wiþ kuttynge þat haþ þe stoon in his reynes; for þei knowiþ [3]not þe perel of woundis þat falliþ in þe reynes þat I haue aforseid, & þan þei doiþ no more saue bringe þe pacient to his deeþ. ¶ Now I wole teche in what maner a man schal kepe him þat is disposid to haue þe stoon, he schal ete no metis þat ben viscous ne to scharpe, & tofore alle þingis hard chese gaderiþ viscous mater & hard. & he schal ete no beef, ne no fleisch of a goos, ne no grete briddis þat swymmeþ in þe water, & he schal ete no fleisch of an hert, & he schal ete no swete breed,[4] & al maner mete þat is maad of swete past, & he schal ete no whete soden, & he schal ete no maner þing þat is maad of milk saue þe whey, & he schal drinke no coold watir, & he schal ete no fruitis þat ben of greet substaunce, as applis, peris, & he schal drinke no newe wijn, ne no wijn of greet substaunce, & he schal ete no þingis þat is to myche salt, & he schal absteyne him fro alle þingis þat engendriþ scharpe humouris & grete, & he schal not ete to greet sauly[5] / In þis maner he schal diete him-silf, he schal ete breed þat is wel leueyned / &

8

12

16

20

24

*Nota*

The position of the stone is detected by the colour of the urinary sediments.

[3 lf. 191]

Rules of dietyng for a man, who is disposed to get a stone.

He shall abstain from sweet things, milk, cold water, apples, pears,

new wine, salted things.

He shall take well-fermented bread,

[1] Barth. *De propr. Trevisa*, lib. VII., cap. 54, indicates another symptom. Add. MS. 27, 944. fol. 96. "*And if þe ston is in þe reynes hit is i-knowe by slepinge of þe fote and in þe ioyntes of þe lift side, and if it is in þe bladder þe ache is in þe schare and þe twist bitwene þe genetras and þe hole at þe rigge bones ende.*"

[2] The translator omits the passage about the causes of stone in general, about the stone in the reins and its treatment. The following sentence, *þat I haue aforseid*, refers to this omitted part. The author says that he will speak about the causes and treatment of the stone in the reins, although it does not properly belong to surgery. Lat.: Ego vero, licet liber iste meus de cirurgia dicatur, et ad instrumentum cyrurgicum de lapide renum tractare non pertineat, tamen quoniam multum assimilatur in causis et curis, quamvis dissimiletur in signis et curis. Et quum ad curas lapidum renum multotiens sum vocatus, propter gratiam scholarium modum quo usus sum in utriusque lapidis curatione, causas, signa, et differentias ponere non postponam.

[4] Lat.: a pane azymo. ἄζυμος, unleavened.

[5] Compare p. 272, note 6.

his breed wole be þe[1] bettir for him if' it' be medlid wiþ poudre [1 lf. 191, bk.]
maad of' fenel-seed & persil, & he schal drinke sutil wiju & cleer, mild wine,
medlid wiþ fair cleer water / And if' his reynes & his bowels weren
hote, þan he mai drinke coold water þat' be fair & clene, & he mai
ete fleisch of' capouns & hennes & chikenes, & partrichis, & of' meat of capons, chickens,
alle opere maner of' briddis þat' mouen in feeldis, & of' hem þat'
woneþ in watir he schal not' ete. & he mai ete pork & motoun & pork, mutton, gelded beasts and veal.
principali of' beestis þat' ben gildid, & he mai ete fleisch of' .iij.
daies poudringe,[2] & he mai ete feel,[3] & he mai ete eiren þat' ben
neische soden; fisch þat' haþ no schellis & þe substaunce of' him be
greet' & hard, he schal not' ete perof' / Alle maner fisch þat' haþ Fishes with scales are
manie schellis, is better þan he þat' haþ no schellis / And of' erbis: better than those without.
he schal ete fenel, ache, persil, sperge, attriplicem,[4] spinochia & The herbs and the kind of fruit he may take.
boraginem, erucam, melones, cucumeris, & he schal be war þat' he
ete no substaunce of' caul, & he schal ete no mustard / And he mai
ete þese maner fruits: almaundis, auellanes, figis, notis, vuas bene
maturas. & he schal not'[5] traueile to miche[6] aftir mete, & he schal [6 lf. 192]
bere noon heuy birþuns, ne he schal not' be girt' to streite, & he
schal not' slepe vpon his reynes. & if' his reynes ben to hote, þan
he schal anoynte hem wiþ oile of' rosis, medlid wiþ vinegre, & he Nota
schal anointe his reynes wiþ a lynnen clooþ wet' in iuys of' colde He shall anoint his loins and abstain from women.
erbis, & he schal absteyne him fro wommen, & he schal touche no
womman to make him haue appetit' þerto / for greet' medlynge wiþ
wymmen wiþ greet' traueile achaufit' a mannes reynes & consumeþ
her natural moistnes / Who so euere vsiþ þis regimen, he schal haue
no drede of' engendringe of' þe stoon / Who so vsiþ þis regimen[7] & If a stone begins to form, use a diuretic syrup.
is disposid for to haue þe stoon, with medicyns he schal do it' awei
or it' be confermed. He schal vse sirupis duretikis[8]: as oximel
diureticum & squilliticum,[9] or he schal vse a sirup þat' auicen
made / ℞, aquæ lī. x, aceti lī. ß, medle hem togidere & boile hem ℞
wiþ ʒ. iij of' rotis of' ache, & rotis of' fenel ʒ. ij, and fenel-seed &

[2] *fleisch of iii daies poudringe.* Lat.: porcos trium dierum salitos. Compare *Liber Cure Coc.*, p. 6. *To powder befe within a nyȝt.*

[3] *feel*, vitulus. O.Fr. veel.

[4] *Attriplex*, Chenopodium vulvaria. *Alphita*, p. 16. "Attriplex agrestis, crissolocanna idem ang. mielde." O.E. *melde*, Leechd. III. Gloss. Compare Germ. *Molten*, *Milten*. Dessen.

[5] *not*, above line.

[7] Lat. Qui vero tali *non* utitur regimine.

[8] Traheron translation of Vigon's *Chirurgery*. Interpret.: "*Diuretike*. Diuretyke prouokynge vrine, or that hath vertue to prouoke vrine."

[9] Traheron, *ibid.* "*Squylliticke* vinaygre is made with the rootes of the greate oynion, called sqylla, or Scylla dryed, and with vynaygre."

ache ana ℥. j, sepe hem alle togidere til pe .iij. part' be consumed awei, & pan cole hem & do perto lī. x of' sugre, & pan clarifie it' &
[1 lf. 192, bk.] sepe it' [1] & kepe it' for pin vss // The vss of' pis sirip wole suffise for to do it' awei; but if' pe mater be pe more greet', & pan pou miȝt' do 4
perto if' pou wolt' oximel squillitic*um*, or pou miȝt' ordeine pe sirip
The best way to purge the kidneys is vomiting. wip modicis [2] erbis diuretic*is*. ¶. per is no ping' so good for to purge mater of' pe reines as is castynge / for whi castinge curip vlcera of' pe reynes / In pe somer pou schalt' make him oonys in pe 8
℞ moneþe sich a maner of' vomet' / Take pe seed of' raphani & make it' clene & kutte it' ouerþwert' in rollis, & lete þis lie in þe forseid
Let the patient take salted meats, sirup .℥ iiij. adai & anyȝt' / & pan lete pe pacient' ete diuers metis, as chese, oynouns, salt' fisch & pingis pat' mai make him drinke 12
wine, wel; & lete him drinke diuers wynes, saue the while he is fastinge,
and first a preparation of radish with syrup, lete him ete 3 notis of' pe forseid rollis of' raphani pat' lay in pe forseid sirup, & whanne he hath ete his saule & drunke, pan binde
then put compresses on his eyes vpon his iȝen neische lynet' or flex, & streyne pou not' it' to harde 16
but' meneli. & pan take watir in which has been soden anetum til it' bicome reed, & take perof' li .j., & medle it' wip pe sirup pat'
[3 lf. 193] and give an emetic. radix raphani lay perinne, & make him [3] drinke vp al togidere, & pan he schal caste vp al his mete & al his drink, & manye wickede 20
humours perwip. & pan make him gadere out' pe foul mater of' his nose, & waische his mouþ & his teeþ; þis medicyn wole do awei þe mater of' pe stoon & purge wel his reynes, þis is pe best' medicyn pat' mai be, for to kepe a man fro pe stoon. 24

If the stone is fully developed, one may either soothe the pains or break and remove the stone. ¶ If' pe man be not' hool in þis maner, saue pe stoon is confermed fast', þan þe cure perof' mai be in .ij. maners: pat' oon is for to aswage pe akynge, & pat' oper is for to breke pe stoon & putte
him out' // Whanne a man hap greet' akynge in his reynes & in his 28
bladdre, & þou wotist' wel it' ben signes of' pe stoon, first' þou schalt'
To soothe the pain apply a clyster of a ℞ decoction of herbs, make him a clisterie wip a decoccioun of' herbis pat' ben mollificatif' & duretik: as malua, violae, bismalue, fenigreci, paritaria, apij,
fenicli, petrosilij scolopendrie, spergi, brusci, [4] sauine, ebuli, sambuci. 32
& if' it' be in winter do perto calamentum, pulegium, origanum, semen fenicli, apij, petrosilij, carui, aneti, leuistici, [5] dauci, milij solis, [6]
[7 lf. 193, bk.] eruce, quatuor semina frigidorum, & impone mel, [7] sal, oleum camo-

[2] MS. *modiu's.*
[4] *brusci*, Ruscus aculeatus, wild myrtle.
[5] Alphita, p. 98: "Leuisticus, keisim idem angl. loueache."
[6] MS. *solus.* *Alphita*, p. 117, "*Milium solis*, granum solis, cauda pecorina idem. g°. et a°. gromel." Phillips: "Milium solis, the Herb Gromwell."

*mille*, & scharpe it' wiþ *benedicta*,[1] and make *þerof'* a clist*er*ie, & þe pacient' schal holde it' wiþ*inne* hi*m* longe tyme, & after þis clisterie do hi*m* in to a particular baþ, & lete hi*m* sitte *þeron* anoon to þe nauele, & in his baþ schule*n* be soden leeues of' malue, *peritorie*, viole, senacion, scutella panici pistati & cortice mu*n*dati; þis maner baþ as I haue ofte p*r*eued, it' aswaged akinge / & wha*n*ne he goiþ out' of' his baþ, make an enplastre of' mele, oile & watir, as þou schalt' fynde i*n* þe antidotarie i*n* þe c°. of' maturatiuis, & leie vpon þe place *þere* þe passiou*n* is / If' þou knowist' wel *þat'* þe stoon falliþ adou*n* of' þe reynes toward þe bladdre bi þe weie of' þe vrine, sette þan vndir þe place *þere* it' akiþ,[2] sichia*m*[3] wiþ fier wiþout' ony kuttynge, for þis wole drawe adou*n* þe stoon. & as þe stoon discendiþ adou*n* to sichia*m* to sette it' lower til he come anoon to þe bladdre, & þan al þe akynge wole go awei. ¶ Tofore alle þi*n*gis fildoniu*m*[4] is good, *þat'* þou schalt' fynde i*n* þe antidotarie of' auicen, for *þat'* is a sure medicyn i*n* þis caas. ¶ Ano*þer* medicyn *þat'* auicen made, & I haue p*r*eued it', and it' [5]doiþ awei akynge *þat'* is i*n* vlceribus renu*m*. ℞, se*m*i*n*is iusqu*ia*mi albi .3. ß, opij, grana .iiij, se*m*i*n*um citruli, lactuce, portulace, ana .3. j., medle al togidere & ȝeue herof' .3. ij. wiþ sugre. ¶ And þis þou muste wite *þat'* þou schalt' ȝeue þe pacient' no þing' for to make hi*m* pisse wha*n* his akinge is strong', & whanne his vrine is stoppid; for *þat'* wole make þe more aki*n*ge / It' is *per*el of' þis passiou*n*, for þe akynge is so greet' sumtyme *þat'* þe pacient' haþ þe spasme *þer*wiþ & is deed *þer*wiþ, saue þou schalt' do awei his akynge wiþ baþi*n*ge & enplastris & anoyntyngis, & þane aftirward þou schalt' make hi*m* medicyns for to breke þe stoon & putte hi*m* out' wiþ þe vryne / ℞, cretan*i* marini,[6] scolopendrie, capillis veneris, spice celtice, an*a* .ʒ. ij., radix fenicli, apij, pet*rosilij*, sp*er*gi, brusci, cicore, *gra*mi*n*is, filipendule, genci*a*ne, saxifrage, squille, asse, an*a* .ʒ j., iiij$^{or}$ se*m*i*n*a frigidoru*m*, se*m*i*n*um fenicli, apij, coriandri, scariole,[7] *gra*norum iuniperi, nucleum

put the patient into a bath

and apply a plaster.

Draw the stone from the kidneys to the bladder by application of heat.

The best medicine is the Philonium.

Another medicine of Avicenna.

[5 lf. 194]

℞

One must not give diuretic medicines to the patient.

A medicine to break the stone.

℞

[1] *benedicta.* Lat. cum benedicta Nicolai.

[2] MS. *makiþ.* Lat. sub loco doloris.

[3] *sichiam.* Lat. syciam G. *σίκυος*, the common cucumber. "A figuræ vel formæ similitudine Cucurbitæ vel cucurbitulæ medicis dicuntur vascula illa, quæ cuti cum flamma affigi solent, cum vel sine scarificatione." Castelli, Lex. medicum.

[4] *fildonium.* Lat. philonium romanum. Matth. Sylv.: "Filonium i. nouus amicus & est confectio quedam sic uocata." Galen, ed. Kuehn, vol. xvii. B. 231, *φάρμακον φιλώνειον.* An electuary with Opium, so called from Philo of Tharsus.

[6] Crithmum maritimum, L.

[7] Sin. Barth.: "Scariola, lactucella, lactuca agrestis idem, an. sowe-thistel."

cerasorum, milij solis, ana .ʒ ß. fiat sirupus cum duabus partibus ʒucari, & tercia mellis squillitici, & itˢ schal be take wiþ a decoccioun
[¹ lf. 194, bk.] of tribulorum & cicerum rubeorum, þis eletuarie is ¹ofˢ auicen
℞ makynge / ℞, cineris vitris, caulis, cineris leporis combusti, cineris 4
A medicine made of Avicenna. scorpionis, cineris testi oui,[2] lapidis spongie, lapidis iudaici, sanguinis hirci sicci, gummi nucis acori, ana .3. j. seminis petrosilij, dauci, pulegij, gummi arabici, seminis albi piperis ana .3. j., auri .3 .iiij., balsami .3. ß., muscati .3. j., make alle þese wiþ good hony þatˢ itˢ 8
be whitˢ & clene, & þou schaltˢ ʒeue .3. iiij. þerofˢ, & .iij. tymes in
þe woke. ¶ Also a good medicyn for þe stoon þatˢ is comen to a
℞ mannes reynes & in his bladdre / Take a litil hare þatˢ bledde
The ashes of a hare burnt alive. neuere blood, & do him in an erþen vessel[3] wel glasid wiþinne wiþ a 12
couercle ofˢ þe same mater, & stoppe itˢ faste, þatˢ þer mowe come outˢ
þerofˢ no fume, wiþ good lute or wiþ pastˢ, & sette þis vessel in a
furneis til þe hare be bicome al aischis, & þan grinde itˢ & kepe itˢ,
& ʒeue him þerofˢ .3. j. whanne he goiþ outˢ ofˢ his baþinge þatˢ is 16
forseid, wiþ a decoccioun ofˢ tribulorum, & hony. I have preued
þatˢ þis medicyn is good, & also þou miʒtˢ medle wiþ þis poudre,
The medicine shall not be too strong, triacle / And þis schal be þin entencioun for to ʒeue him medicyns
[⁴ lf. 195] þatˢ ben notˢ strongˢ for to breke þe stoon, as saxifrage & cantarides 20
as it might hurt the kidneys. ⁴& oþere strongˢ medicyns þatˢ piliþ þe reynes. & ifˢ þe pacientˢ
haue drie reynes & he be leene ofˢ bodi, þan in þis caas .3. j. ofˢ
A medicine of Rasis. Rasis makynge is good / ℞, semina melonum mundatorum .3. xxx,
℞ seminis citruli, seminis portulace, seminis cucurbite, seminis papau- 24
eris albi ana .3. iij, seminis iusquiami albe .3. ij., ʒucari pondus
omnium,[5] saue I do þerto þe double weiʒte ofˢ sugre /

The patient suffers from strangury, if the stone is in the neck of the bladder. If þe stoon be in his bladdre, þan þou schaltˢ worche in þis
maner / Firstˢ þou schaltˢ take kepe wher he haue stranguria. þatˢ 28
þou miʒtˢ wite ifˢ he makiþ watir droppynli & a litil atˢ oonys, &
haþ greetˢ penaunce in his bladdre. þan þe stoon is in þe necke ofˢ
þe bladdre; þan þou schaltˢ make him a clisterie molliticatifˢ þatˢ þou
mowe avoide his bowels, & þan þou schaltˢ frote his noseþrillis with 32
Remove the stone with the finger as with a syringe. watir,[6] & þou schaltˢ presse liʒtly þe place ofˢ his ars þereaboute þatˢ
þou supposistˢ þatˢ þe stoon sittiþ. & ifˢ he remeue notˢ in þis maner,
þan þou schaltˢ putte in siryngam liʒtli in þe condijtˢ ofˢ his ʒerde til
he come to þe stoon. & ifˢ þou myʒtˢ notˢ putte itˢ awei in þis maner, 36

[2] *testi oui.* Lat. testæ oui.
[3] Lat.: pone ipsum vinum in olla terrea.
[5] Lat. ad pondus omnium.
[6] Lat.: faciendo egrum leuare nates. The translator read: lauare nares.

þan putte þi fyngir in [1]his ers, & *þe*re þou schalt fele þe stoon, & helpe wiþ þi fyngir for to putte it awey. Wh*a*nne þe stoon is r*e*meued, þ*a*n þe pacient mai make watir, þ*a*n his ak*i*nge wole ceesse, & þan þou schalt go to þe cure. First þou schalt make h*i*m a clisterie of duritikis / *i*n which schul*e*n be medicyns þat haue *pro*priete for to breke þe stoon, & þ*a*n sette þe pacient *i*n a baþ þat is forseid. & a litil tofore or he go out of his baþ, ʒeue h*i*m of þe poudre of þe hare þat is forseid. & wh*a*nne he comeþ out of þe baþ, leie þis enplastre vpon þe place þat is clepid pectinis.[2] ℞, foli*o*r*um* nasturcij aquatici,[3] & foliorum apij .an*a*. ℥ j, & grinde hem wel wiþ grese. & wh*a*nne þei ben medlid togidere *i*n þe morter, þan hete hem a litil ouer þe fier & leie it vpon, & eu*e*ri dai in þre daies contynuely þou schalt sette h*i*m in þe forseid baþ, & leie vpon þe forseid plastre, & ʒeue h*i*m of þe forseid poudre. þis cure is good & I haue preued it //

[1 lf. 195, bk.]

When the stone is removed into the bladder, try to break the stone with an internal treatment, a bath, and a plaster. ℞

If alle þese medicyns availiþ not, þan þou muste drawe out þe stoon wiþ kuttynge or þe p*a*tient falle *i*nto etikis.[4] & if þou wolt d*r*awe [5]out a stoon of þe bladdre wiþ kuttynge, þan þou muste apparaile[6] alle þ*i*ngis þat ben necessarie for þee: as sirupis & ligat*u*ris, & þan þou schalt binde his hipis & his legʒis faste, þat he mowe not meue, for to lette þee wh*a*nne þou wolt kutte h*i*m. & þanne þou schalt anoynte þi longist fyngir of þi lift hond & þi pombe wiþ oile, & þou schalt putte he*m* in þe pacientis ers, saue first þ*o*u schalt avoide h*i*m wiþ a clisterie mollificatif, & þou schalt sette[7] þi riʒt hond vpon his ers, and grope softli, where þe stoon be, & putte h*i*m to þe hedis of þi fyngris. & wh*a*nne þou myʒt take þe stoon wiþ þi .ij. fyngris, þan þou schalt putte h*i*m to þe necke of þe bladdre toward þe ballokis as myche as þ*o*u myʒt. & þan þou schalt fele þe hardnes of þe stoo*n* bitwixe his ers, & þe ballokis þat is *i*n þe necke of þe bladdre. þan þou schalt wiþ þi riʒt hond take a rasour, & kutte faste by þe þreed þat goiþ bitwixe þe ers & þe ballokis endelongis, saue þou schalt take þe stoon wiþ þi .ij. fyngris þat þe stoon mowe come out. & þ*a*nne ioyne wel þe lippis of [8]þe wou*n*de togidere, þ*a*n þou schalt sewe [not][9] oonly þe skyn aboue, but þou

[5 lf. 196]

If these medicines do not avail, operate.

Prepare the things necessary for the operation, and bind the patient fast.

First use a Clister*ie*,

feel for the stone, hold it between the fingers,

then cut out the stone with a razor.

[8 lf. 196, bk.]

and sew the wound.

[2] Lat.: supra locum pectinis. Os pectinis, the share-bone.

[3] Nasturtium aquaticum, watercress.

[4] *etikis*, Lat.: antequam æger incurrat hecticam. O.Fr. étique. Med. Lat. Ethica uel Ethica febris. Dufr.

[6] *apparaile*. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. apparel, v. 1., to make ready, prepare.

[7] *sette*, above line.

[9] *not*, wanting. Lat.: et labia vulneris optime conjungas *non* solum in superficie.

schalt sewe al þe depnes of þe wounde togidere, & þan þou schalt springe þeron poudre þat is aforseid to woundis. & þan þou schalt binde it with boondis & lynt til þe wounde be perfitli hool / In þis caas þou muste take kepe of manye þingis / First þou muste take kepe of þe age of þe pacient, for children þat ben xiiij. wintir oold ben moost able for þis cure,[1] for her lymes ben tendir ynowȝ, & in þat elde þei ben strong ynowȝ for to be maad hool, & her complexioun is hoot & moist. Ȝonge children & olde men ben not able to be kutt, for in þe kuttynge of hem enpostyms wolen engendre hastili, & þat wole lette þe vrine & make more akynge, & so þei miȝten falle in-to þe spasme, & so wiþ þe spasme þei miȝt be deed / Summen seien þat olde men ben able to be kutt, for her blood is miche laskid[2] & her hete, & perfore þei ben not able to take an enpostym; perfore þei ben moost able to be kutt of þe stoon / Summen seien þat her lymes ben to drie & her vertues ben to feble / [3] & perfore þei ben not able to be kutt, & herwiþ I acorde / þese .ij. þingis: engendrynge of an enpostym, & if þe place þat is kutt wole not soude, þese .ij. bringiþ perel of deeþ / Also þou muste take kepe of þe schap of þe stoon, & what quantite þat he be, for if þe stoon be .ij. forkid[4] or cornerid, or so greet þat he may not be brouȝt into þe necke of þe bladdre, þan þou schalt in no maner kutte him, but if þou miȝt first wiþ þin hond breke þe stoon. & þan if þou miȝt not bringe it out at oonys, þan in diuers tymes þou schalt gadere him out.[5] ¶ And if þe stoon be so greet þat he mai not be brouȝt into þe necke of þe bladdre, þan þou schalt in no maner kutte him, forwhi he mai not be brouȝt out, but if þou woldist kutte þe substaunce of þe bladdre & þat were mortal; but þou schalt put him to þe botme of þe bladdre wiþ instrumentis, & teche þe patient for to kepe him in þat maner þat þe stoon falle not into þe necke of þe bladdre / Also if he be so sutil þat he mai not be felid wiþ þin hond, þan þou schalt not kutte him neiþer. & if þe patient mai be hool in ony [6] maner, [n]or kutt wiþouten passioun, it

**Nota** Children who are fourteen years old, are most fit for this treatment.

Younger children and old men are not fit,

although some people say the contrary.

[3 lf. 197]

If the stone cannot be brought to the neck of the bladder,

you must first break it before cutting.

**Beware.**

Do not cut, if the stone is small.

[6 lf. 197, bk.]

[1] De propr. rer. Add. 27,944, fol. 96: "*& somtyme þey schal be take to surgerye and namelich children and þan ȝongelinge. For in elde kerunyge is perilous, for aftir fourty ȝere þis euel is incurable as it is i-said in amphor.:*[a] *aftir fourti ȝere he þat haþ þe ston is nouȝt i-saued.*"

[2] *Celsus* Lib. VII. Cap. 26, ed. Daremberg, p. 307: "As neque omni tempore, neque in omni ætate, neque in omni vitio id experiendum est: sed solo vere; in eo corpore, quod jam novem annos, nondum quatuordecim excessit."

[4] *ij forkid*, diffurcatus.

[5] Lat.: "pluribus vicibus educatur."

[a] Rhazes, Aphorismi.

is bett*er* þat[1] he be nouȝt kutt þan he be kutt.[2] for men þat ben so kutt schulen neu*er*e gete children, but if it be þe more hap[3]; & also it is p*er*ilous for to kutte / & þ*er*fore I rede þee take þat wynnynge[4] to o*þ*ere cirurgians. ¶ Ful ofte tyme men leie me to scorn, for I wolde not entermete me of sich curis, & seide þat I lefte siche maner curis, for I coude not do it, & þe same þei seide of men þat weren filme broke,[5] & of men þat weren *in* þe dropesie. & I lefte þe curis þerof for perels þat miȝte folowe / ffor if a kunnynge man entermetid him of sich a cure, & if þer fil ony yuele happis to þe pat*ient*, þan wolen vnkunnynge lechis seie þat þei han do þat cure ful ofte, & so he mai be brouȝt into an yuel looss þerbi; for blame & for perels I wolde not vse kuttyngis / þese ben yuele happis þat fallip to a man þat is kutt: as greet akynge vndir þe nauele, & hise lymes bicomith coold, & atach of þe feuere,[6] & greet akinge *in* þe place þat was kutt, alle þese signes ben signes of deep / Good signes herof ben þese: strenkþe of vrine, & þat he mowe go to priuy wel [7]& þat he haue good appetit to mete. ¶ Sumtyme it fallip bi strenkþe, þe stoon is putt into þe ȝerde. & þat I say [in] a man, þat his vryne was stoppid .v. daies *in* þe same maner, & I drowe him out wiþ instrumentis wiþouten ony kuttynge. & if þe stoon sitte *in* þe canel of þe ȝerde, & þou maist not bringe him out wiþ þi fyngris, þin þou schalt binde his ȝerde bihinde þe stoon, þat þe stoon mowe not go into þe bladdre aȝen. & þan grope þe stoon softli wiþ þi .ij. fyngris, & kutte endelongis, as it is aforseid, a litil hole, as miche as þou miȝt drawe out þe stoon, & þane cure þe wounde as it is aforseid /[8]

People who are operated upon, never get children.

I was often scorned because I would not undertake these cures.

A good physician may get a bad reputation by some mishap.

Fatal symptoms after operation are: great pain, coldness of the limbs and fever.

Good symptoms are a [7 ff. 198] strong urine, a good appetite.

Sometimes the stone is removed through the Urethra.

## ffor to drawe out watir of men þat han þe dropesie /[9]

THouȝ þis book be maad oonli of cirurgie, ȝitt it is myn entencioun to speke of þe dropesie, & principaly þat ben wrouȝt ¶ x°. oo.

[1] MS. þan. [2] *& if þe patient . . . þan he be kutt*, an insertion.

[3] Lat.: "Considera quoque quod sæpe per loci nominati incisionem generatio prohibetur."

[4] *þat wynnynge*, Lat.: sed aliis cupidis chirurgis dimitte illa lucrari. *Cath. Angl.*, p. 420, "*Wynninge*. Emolimentum, lucrum."

[5] *of men þat weren filme broke*, Lat. de ruptorum incisura.

[6] *atach of þe feuere*, attack of fever. See later references in *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. attach, sb.

[8] The translator has omitted one chapter: De clauso hermaphrodito & additione panniculi mulieris doctrinæ tertiæ, tractatus tertii, Cap. IX.

[9] The four kinds of dropsy are mentioned in De propr. rerum, Lib. VII., Cap. 52, Add. 27,944, fol. 94 b.: "*þe firste dropesye hatte leucoflewma, and*

The dropsy is a compound disease, caused by superfluity of matter.

[1 lf. 198, bk.] The men of Salerne distinguish four kinds of dropsy. The Arabs only three: yposarca, Aschites, Tympanites.

There is cold matter in all these kinds of dropsy, the exciting cause may be heat or coldness.

When the liver is diseased, cold phlegmatic matter is produced.

[5 lf. 199] The Salernitans say that dropsy is caused by a debility of the liver, the stomach, or other organs.

Some physicians say that the urine will be red if there is a hot cause,

wiþ mannes hond. ¶ I seie þat þe dropesie is a sijknes compound in which superflue mater þat is coold swelliþ þe body / Men of salerne seiden þat þere weren .iiij. maner spicis of dropesie, & iiij. maner dropesies. But auctours of arabie acorden alle at [1]oonys,[2] & seien sooþ þat þer ben but .iij. maner dropesies,[3] & þat oon comeþ of rawe blood, of raw fleume medlid wiþ blood, & is bore into al þe bodi, & swelliþ al þe bodi, & is clepid yposarca. þat oþer is of mater of 3elow3 water & falliþ into þe holownes of þe wombe, & is clepid aschites / þe .iij. is engendrid of greet wynd resolued of coold mater, & falliþ into þe holownes of þe wombe, & is clepid tympanites / Of þis ydropesie summen iugiþ li3tli, & seien þat yposarca comeþ of coold alwei, & tympanites comeþ sumtyme of wynd & of hete, but moost comounli of cooldnes / Aschites comith moost of hete, & ful selden of cooldnes / but for to seie þe sope, alle þe spicis ben medlid with coold mater, & þerfore he seiþ sooþ þat clepiþ euери ydropesie coold mater,[4] for euery spice of þe dropesie mai come of hete or of cooldnes goynge tofore. ¶ þer is no þing þat defendiþ, þat whanne þe lyuere is hoot out of hir propir hete, or if al þe bodi is distemp[er]id in hete, as in feueris, þe patient mai so miche be feblid þerwiþ, þat it may engendre coold mater & fleumatik / Ful ofte I haue had þis caas / [5]þerfore auctouris seien þat þe dropesie comith of þe febilnes of þe lyuere / þerfore men of salerne seien þat it comeþ of defaute of digestioun of þe lyuere. & it comeþ of takinge of yuele metis & drinkis, & of febilnes of oþere lymes, as of þe stomak, & of þe reynes, & of þe maris, & of þe lungis, & of diafragma. & whanne þese lymes ben enfeblid, þan þe lyuere enfebliþ // Therfore it is necessarie for a leche to wite[6] wher it comeþ of causis goinge tofore hoot or coold / And summe lechis halden hem paid for to haue a si3t of þe vrine, & iugiþ þe dropesie hoot & coold bi þe si3t of þe vryne / for if þe vrine be reed, þei wolen iuge þat þe cause is hoot, & in þis maner þei ben

*comeþ of distemperaunce of coldenesse and drinesse, & haþ þat name of white fleume for leucos is white.* ¶ *þe secounde hatte yposarca oþir anasarca, and comeþ of distemperaunce of coolde and of drynes. The þridde hatte aschites and comeþ of distemperaunce of hete & moisture. þe ferþe hatte tympanytes & comeþ of distemperaunce of hete & drinesse.*"

[2] *acorden alle at oonys*, Lat. in una conveniunt. Comp. *Reliqu. Antiqu.* I. 233, *accorde in one.* (*N. E. Dict.*, s. v. accord v. 5.)

[3] Lanfranc follows *Avicenna*, Lib. III, Fen. 14, Tract. 4, Cap. 4, ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 238 b.

[4] Lat.: omnem egritudinem ydropicam appellant materialem frigidam.

[6] *to wite*, above line.

disseyued / ¶ Forwhi, *in* what' maner so þe lyuere be enfeblid of' coold cause or of' hoot', it' wole make his vrine reed / For sumtyme a man mai not' ȝeue a discrecioun[1] of' blood fro vrine, for a litil blood colourid miche vrine, riȝt' as a litil saffron colouriþ miche water / þerfor of' what' cause so it' be þat' his lyuere be enfeblid, his vrine mai schewe reed. ¶ Also þe signes of' yposarcha & aschites & tympanite ben open ynowȝ. [2]In þis maner þou schalt' knowe hem / [2 lf. 199, bk.]

but a little blood colours much urine.

In yposarcha al þe bodi swelliþ, as his face, & his armis, & his rigge-boon, & his necke, & alle his lymes, so þat' in what' partie of' his bodi þat' þou pressist' þi fyngir þere wole be a pitt'. & whanne þe fyngir is aweie it' wole arise aȝen / & it' is a greet' maistrie for to knowe wheþer yposarcha come of' coold cause tofore goynge or of' hoot' cause / If' it' comeþ of' coold goinge tofore, þan his iȝen wolen be discolourid as it' were þe colour of' askis, or pale[3] / If' it' come of' hete goinge tofore, þan his iȝen wolen be ȝelowȝ or sumwhat' reed / & þou muste wite, wheþer he had a feuere tofore or haue þe feuere fortis þerwiþ / or if' he hadde þere tofore an hoot' enpostym þerwiþ, ouþer he haue enpostym þerwiþ / Þese ben þe propre signes of' aschites, þat' his face, & his necke, & his brest', & his armis bicomith smal, & his vois schal bicome smal, & his wombe schal oonli swelle. & sumtyme *in* þe firste bigynnyng' his feet' & his leggis wolen swelle *in* þe firste bigynnynge, for þe greet' strenkþe of' þe mater þat' makiþ it' falle adoun. & if' þou [4]smite his[5] wombe, he wole sowne as it' were a touȝt' leþer ful of' wynd[6] / Þese ben þe propre signes of' tympanites: his wombe & þe regioun of' his stomac schulen oonly be to-swolle, & alle his opere lymes, boþe his feet', & his leggis, & his necke, & his armis wolen bicome smal, & if' þou smitist' him vpon his wombe, it' wole soune as it' were a tympan / & *in* þis passioun þer is lasse agreuaunce þan in aschite & more swellynge. & if' þou pressist' his wombe, þou schalt' fynde it' streite as it' were a corde. & þou schal fele no meuyng of' water, whanne þe pacient' turneþ him from o side to anoþer / Curis herof' þou schalt' fynde ynowe *in* bokis of' phisik / For I nyle telle but' fewe medicyns þerfore, I haue longe tyme vsid.

Signys of yposarca are a general swelling of the body.

If the cause is cold, the eyes will be pale; they are yellow or red, if there is a hot cause.

The signs of ascites are a wasting of the limbs and a swelling of the belly.

[4 lf. 200]

Signes of tympanites. They are the same as in ascites, but there is less pain and more swelling.

¶ Whanne þou wolt' ordeine regimen on yposarcha, ȝeue him

[1] *ȝeue a discrecioun*, discernere.
[3] Lat.: coniunctiva oculi est valde discolorata, cinericia vel pallida.
[5] MS. *his*, twice.
[6] Lat.: auditur quasi sonus vtris de corio vino pleni.

Make the patient who suffers from Hyposarcha sweat, in summer in hot sand or on a sunny hill, [3 lf. 200, bk.] in winter in a hot-house.

trociscus de lactea[1] cum apozimate[2] de radicib*us* fro þe firste dai to þe .iiij., & 3eue hi*m* pelottis de agarico. & wha*nne* þe swellinge bigy*nn*eþ to go awey, if' it' be i*n* somer, þan þou schalt' hele al his bodi i*n* hcot' *gra*uel *þere* þe su*nne* mai 3eue greet' hete, or lete hi*m* sitte vpon an hi3 hil þere þe [3]su*nne* schineþ hoot', þat' he mai swete wel, & þat' his bodi mai wexe hoot' wiþoute & wiþi*nne*. & if' it' be i*n* winter, putte hi*m* i*n* a drie stewe, so þat' þe watir come not' ni3 hi*m*.

℞ Prescription, how to make the decoction.

þus þou schalt' make apozima of' rotis / ℞, corticis fenicli, apij, [ana drac.][4] .x., se*min*um [apii] squinantu*m*, ameos, an*a*. 3 .v., rosar*um* rubiar*um*, spicenarde an*a* .3 .iij, seþe hem i*n* lī .ij. of' watir til þei come to lī .j., cole hem & kepe þe colature. & if' þou doist' þeri*nn*e a litil hony it' wole be þe better / Trocisci de lacte ben maad i*n* þis maner / ℞, rubarbe, lacte, an*a* [drac iii.], se*min*is apij, spice, ameos, amigdalu*m* amaru*m*, masticis, squinante, se*min*is iuni-p[er]i, costi amari,[5] rubee succi, eupatorij,[6] aristol*ogiæ* r*otundæ*, gencian an*a* .3. ß, make herof' gobetis, þe wei3te of' 3 .j., & he schal take oon þerof' wiþ .3̄ iiij. of' þe forseid pelottis de agarico / ℞, agarici .3 .x., succi eupatorij, rubarbar*um*, aristol*ogia* r*otundæ* an*a* 3 .ij, 3ucare albe .3 .v, & make herof' pelott*is*. & þou schalt' 3eue herof' .3 .ij.

How to make the troches.

The Agaric-pills.

Treatment of Ascites.

The disease is almost fatal, if the cause is hot.

If' þou seest' þat' þe cause þat' 3ede tofore þis passiou*n* was hoot', & he make litil vrine & reed, & if' his ve*r*tu be feble of' þe hete, & þou hast' dispeir of' hi*m*,[7] & if' he haue þe feuere þerwiþ, it' is so [8]myche þe worse // If' his vrine schewe þat' þe cause is coold, & if' þe pa*tient* be strong' ynow3, loke if' his wombe be hard. & þan make hi*m* vse sirup acetose m*aad* wiþ seedis & sugre, & 3eue hi*m* þe pelottis of' rubarbe þat' ben maad i*n* þis maner / ℞, rubarberi, succi eupatorij, seminis endiuie an*a*. 3. iij, agarici 3. v., make þerof'

[8 lf. 201] If there is a cold cause, and if the patient is strong, give him rhubarb-pills;

[1] *lactea*, Lat. lacta. "Lacca, a red transparent Substance made as some say, by winged Arts; as Hony by Bees, and gather'd from a Tree of that Name, in Bengala, Malabar &c. Also a kind of red Gum issuing from certain Trees in Arabia, of which the best Sealing hard Wax is made; often us'd in Painting and Varnishing." Phillips.

[2] *Apozima*. "Apozeme, a Physical Decoction, a Diet-Drink made of several Roots, Woods, Barks, Herbs, Drugs, Flowers, Seeds, &c., boil'd together." Phillips.

[4] MS. ß.

[5] Two kinds of *costus* are mentioned in *Alphita*, p. 46: c. indicus, and c. arabicus.

[6] *eupatorium*. Add. 15,236, fol. 3 b. (cc. 1300), "*Eupatorium. saluia agrestis idem. G. eupatorie. A. wyldesage. i. hyndehale.*"

[7] *þou hast dispeir of him*, Lat. de tali ægri salute desperes. Comp. *þou schalt neuere þe lattere be in despeir of cauteriis*. Lat. nec propter hoc desperes, p. 311, note 3.

pelett*is* wiþ þe iuys of endiue. Þou schalt ȝeue *him* herof at oonys .3 .ij, & euery wike þou schalt ȝeue it oonys / If it so be þat if the patient is feeble, he be feble, & if he mai not take so miche, þan *in* þe place of þese gobbets, pelottis he schal take gobetis þat ben maad *in* þis maner / ℞, *semin*is ℞ endiuie 3 .x, esule,[1] succi eupatorij, agarici, an*a*. 3 .ij, & .ϑ .j, rosar*um*, *semin*is citrulor*um*, an*a* 3 .ij, & make herof .x. gobettis wiþ a decocc*ion* of fenel *in* wat*er*: ȝeue *him* oon þerof wiþ sirupo acetoso de seminib*us*. Enplastre[2] his wombe wiþ enplastre maad and apply a plaster on his wiþ .ij. p*ar*tis of oxis dou*n*ge, & oon p*ar*t of gotis dou*n*ge, boli belly. armon*iac*i, sulphuris, & salis, & distempere hem wiþ strong vinegre / Þis is þe cure of tympaniti þat is ful selde curid / & specialy Treatment of Tympanitis. wh*an*ne it is entrid *into* diafragma & is confermed þere / ffirst þou [3]schalt make *him* elect*uar*i de baccis lauri, & þou schalt make him [3 If. 201, bk.] suppositorijs for to distrie[4] wynd, & he schal suffre hungir as miche as he mai, & he schal absteyne *him* fro þingis þat engendriþ wijnd, & þou schalt frote his wombe ofte wiþ a scharp clooþ / Give an electuary Electu*ar*i de baccis lauri / ℞, foliorum rute .3 .x., ameos, *semin*um,[5] ℞ nigille,[6] leuistici,[7] petrocilij macedonici,[8] origani,[9] carui, amigdalarum amarum, piperis l*ongi*, mentastri,[10] dauci, acori, baccarum lauri, castore an*a* .3 .iij., serapini .3 .iiij., appoponac .3 .ij., make herof a lectuarie wiþ .iij. so miche of hony, þis electuarie wiþ consumeþ. ¶ Þus þou schalt make suppositorijs for to distrie wijnd / ℞, cimi- and suppositories. *num*, foliorum rute viridis[11] an*a*. ℈ .j., radic*is* brionie, radicis mali ℞ terre, radicis rafani an*a* .3 .ij., sal nitri .3 .j., & make herof suppositorijs wiþ hony. ¶ Wh*an*ne þou knowist wel þat þe dropesie is of hoot cause, þan þou schalt not forgete to helpe þe side þat is hoot; & also if þe mater be coold, þou schalt helpe *him* wiþ hote þingis. Suppositories.

[1] "*Esula*, quedam species est titimalli, gallice yesele." *Alphita*, p. 50.

[2] *enplastre*, Lat. venter enplastretur. O.Fr. emplastrer. Sl. 277, fol. 1: "*be þe place emplastred wiþ a plastre maad þus.*" Comp. *plasteren*, Prompt. Parv.

[4] *distrie*, Lat. dissoluere, destroy. [5] Lat.: cimini.

[6] *nigilla*. Add. 15,236, fol. 10, "*Nigella i. lollium. G. neel. A. cokel*," fennel flower.

[7] *Ibid.*, fol. 4 b., "*Leuisticum. G. luuache*," lovage. See *E. P. N.*, p. 43, *luwestiche, luvesche.*

[8] *Alphita*, p. 108, "*macedonia vel macedonicum, petrocillinum idem, g. alisandre, a. stamerche.*"

[9] Add. 15,236, fol. 5 b., "*Origanum. G. Origane. i. pulegium. A. puliol reale.*" See *Alphita*, p. 150, "*Pulegium. gallice puliol, a. Brotherwort.*"

[10] *Ibid.*, fol. 7 b., "*Sisimbrium. mentastrum. G. mentastre. A. hors. minte.*"

[11] *Ibid.*, fol. 7, "*Ruta bissara. puganum vel pucanum. hermola idem. G. Rue. A. smalrede.*"

If the cause is hot, [1 lf. 202] give a decoction with chickens, and a syrup.

¶ þis þing' is necessarie for to ȝeue a man þat' haþ þe hote dropesie, a decoccion of' solatrum & endiue; & in þat' watir he [1]schal seþe chikenys for to ete, & first' he schal drinke sirupum acetosum wiþ seedis / And I wole telle þee a cure, þat' I curide in my tyme .ij. men þat' weren in aschite of' hoot' cause, þat' it' mowe be ensaumple to þee / I made hem a sirupe of' platearie[2] in þis maner / ℞, succi scariole li .ij., succi apij & petrosilij, ana. li .j., & boile hem wiþ .ʒ iiij. of' esule, masticis, seminis fenicli, apij, ana. ʒ. ß, seþe hem in watir til þei come to .li .ij., & þan cole hem & do þerto .li .j. ȝucare, & boile hem til þei be perfit'. & whanne þow doist' adoun fro þe fier, do þerto rubarbe .ʒ ß., & lete it' boile a litil, & þan kepe it' for þin vss. & þou schalt' ȝeue it' him in þe morowe wiþ a decoccion of' fenel seed, .ij. in þe wike. & þou schalt' enplastre al his wombe, saue þe regioun of' his lyuere, wiþ þe forseid plastris & dounge & vinegre. & vpon his lyuere leie an enplastre maad of' .ʒ .ij. of' barli mele, & rosis, & sandalis albi & rubei ana. ʒ ß, camphore .ʒ .ij., & distempere hem wiþ water of' rosis & wiþ vinegre. & if' he haue not' þe feuere, þan ȝeue him gotis milk fasting'. And whan þe patient bicomeþ smal in his wombe, þan sette him in a baþ, þat' be soden þerinne sulphur [3]& salt', & he schal be þerinne but' a litil while. ¶ Herof' þou muste be war: whanne water is dried in a man wiþ drijnge wiþ medicyns, þan his lymes leeueþ swiþe drie; wherfore þei falliþ in etik & dien. þerfore þou muste in alle þes þingis be wel war /

Prescription for the syrup.

To be given twice a week.

A plaster is put on the region of the liver.

Finally use a bath. [3 lf. 202, bk.]

Take care in using drying medicines that the patient does not get consumption.

Operation should not be performed on all sorts of people;

þe cure þat' is wiþ iren falliþ oonli in aschite, þat' manie men doon hardili, & takiþ no kepe of' þe particuleris þerof', for þei knowen not' þe science, for þei doon al oon maner to ȝonge & to olde, to stronge & to feble; þei kuttiþ þe skyn vnder þe nauel, & alle men þat' þei kutten ouþer þe mooste weren perischid / Saue þou schalt' take kepe of' kunnynge, & worche bi resoun / for þow schalt' take kepe wher he be strong' or no; & if' he be not' strong', þou schalt' do no cure to him. ¶ Also þou schalt' do no cure to olde men þat' ben to-broke, for þou schalt' not' leeue þe strenkþe of' an oold man, for it' is impossible for to fynde an oold man strong', whanne þe dropesie is confermed on him / If' it' so be þat' he be ȝong' & strong', þan þow schalt' haue good trust' for to helpe him.

patients who are not strong, and old men, are not fit.

One cannot trust in the strength of an old man.

[4 lf. 203] ¶ Thanne þou muste enquere sotilly wher [4]þe principal vijs be of'

[2] Matthæus *Platearius* belonged to the school of Salerno about the middle of the 12th century. He wrote: "Liber de simplici medicina," commonly called "Circa instans."

þe lyuere, for þan þou muste kutte him *in* þe splene side / And if it so be þat þe splene be þe principal of þe dropesie, þan þe kuttynge muste be *in* þe riȝtside. And if þe cause come of lymes aboue, as of þe stomac or of diafragma, þan þou muste kutte him vpon pecten. & if it be in a woman, & come of þe vijs of þe maris, þan þou schalt kutte hir aboue þe nauele. Whanne þou knowist *in* what place þou schalt kutte þe pacient, þan þou schalt opene þe place of þe pacient, & þou schalt presse his wombe adounward as miche as þou miȝt, & make him ete a litil of breed tostid[1] vpon coolis, & wet *in* wijn; & þan lete him sitte tofore þee bitwene a strong mannes armys, þat mai holde him faste, þat he mowe not meue *in* þe tyme whanne þou wolt worche. And þan þou schalt take þe skyn þat is clepid mirac, wiþ þi lifthond *in* þe place *þere* þou wolt make þi kuttynge, & þat skyn þou schalt peerse endelongis wiþ an instrument þat is competent *þer*fore / And be wel war þat þou touche not siphac *in* no maner; and [2]whanne þou hast kutt þe skyn aboue & mirac, þan opene þe place þat þou mowe se siphac. & þan þou schalt peerse a litil hole *in* siphac & sette *þer*to a canel,[3] & drawe out *þer*of as miche watir as þou seest good for to saue his *ver*tu / & þan drawe out þe canel, & lete þe skyn þat is clepid mirac goon ou*er* þe openynge of siphac, for þat wole suffre no þing to go out / In þe morowe opene þe same skyn aȝen þat was kutt first, & putte *in* þe canel, & kepe his *ver*tu as miche as þou miȝt. & *þus* þou schalt do til þou haue drawe out þe watir; saue þou schalt not drawe out al, for þou schalt consume it afterward *with* *pro*pre medicyns / Herof þou schalt take kepe *in* þe tyme, þe whilis þou *dra*wist out þe wat*er*, as it is forseid: þe pat*ient* schal ete good metis, & drinke good drinkis & swete, þat mowe engendre *in* him good spirits & good blood: as good broþis maad of hennys & of capouns. & diȝt wiþ swete þingis, for eueri avoidinge laskiþ miche þe spiritis; & whanne þe spiritis falliþ, þan a mannes vertues failen /

The place of the incision depends on which organ —the liver, spleen, stomach, or uterus—is affected.

Let the patient be held by a strong man;

cut the skin, called Mirac;

[2 lf. 203, bk.]

pierce the siphac, and draw out the water by a cannula at repeated sittings.

Strengthen the patient during this treatment with good food.

## [4]Of ficus, & cancre, & vlcer in manne[5] ȝerde / [4 lf. 204]

¶ xjº .cº.

FIcus is a maner wexynge þat arisiþ vpon a mannes ȝerde tofore. & sumtyme it wole be neische, whanne it is engendrid of fleume / & whanne it is engendrid of malancolie, it wole be hard;

Ficus is a growth on a man's yard; it is either soft or hard,

[1] *breed tostid*, Lat. panem tostum. *Prompt. Parv.*
[3] *canel*, Lat. cannula. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. canal 1.
[5] MS. *manner*.

and may become a cancer.

& if' it' rotie, it' wole turne into a cancre. ¶ A cancre comeþ *in* a mannes ȝerde, riȝt' as *in* oþ*er*e lymes of' a man, & vlcera comeþ of' hote pustulis þat' comeþ þ*er*on, & aftirward þei brekeþ it'.[1]

Ulcers arise either from hot pustules

Ouþ*er* þei comeþ of' scharpe humou*r*is, þat' makiþ vlcera *in* þe same place;

or from intercourse with diseased women.

ouþir it' mai come of' a wo*m*man þat' a man, þat' hadde þe same passiou*n*,[2] hadde leie by hir tofore[3] /

The ficus must be removed by a thread or with cutting,

Þis is þe cure of' ficus þat' com*m**i*th of' fleume: þou schalt' binde hi*m* wiþ a þreed, ouþ*er* kutte hi*m* al awei; & þan þou schalt' soude it' as it' is aforseid *in* oþ*er*e placis / If' it' come of' malancolie, it'

with mollificatives;

mai be curid or þat' it' rotie, wiþ temp*er*e mollificatiuis, as it' is forseid *in* þe cure of' sclirosis *in* þe gen*er*al chapitre of' enpostyms: þat' wh*a*nne he is m*a*ad neische, þ*an* þou schalt' take hi*m* awei wiþ alle his rootis / saue it' is more sure take awei it' wiþ [4]an hoot' iren, & þ*an* leie þ*er*vpon butt*er*, & ȝitt' þou muste touche hi*m* wiþ an hoot' iren aȝ*en*; & þan leie buttir þ*er*vpon. & þus þou schalt' do oftetyme litil & litil til it' be al wastid awei / If' it' be a cancre, it' wole not' be curid but' if' it' be kutt' awei wiþ alle his rotis. And þ*er* is no wei so sure to take hi*m* awei as fier / Alle þe rotis of' hi*m* muste*n* be brent' awei, & þan leie þ*er*vpon a mu*n*dificatif' of' apiu*m*, & aftir þis þou muste leie þerto drijnge þ*in*gis / & *in* þis place þou schalt' not' forȝete to leie a defensif' vpon þe place þat' is hool, for þis defensif' schal defende þe place þat' is hool fro swellynge.

[4 lf. 204, bk.] the surest way is the hot iron.

A cancer must be removed with all its roots.

*Nota.* If there are ulcers in the fore-skin, remove the growth.

¶ Vlc*er*a þat' comeþ *in* a m*a*nnes ȝerde: as wh*a*nne þe skyn þat' is tofore *in* a m*a*nnes ȝerde bicom*m*ith greet', & þis mai not' be curid but' if' þat' greetnes be doon awei. & þis medicyn is good þ*er*fore /

℞ Þe gren water

Take whit' wijn, & of' verte grece .ʒ .j, auripigment' .ʒ .ij; grinde þes .ij. sotilli, & leie hem *in* þe whit' wijn, & meue hem ofte, & kepe hem for þin vss. & þe more cold[5] þat' þis medicyn is, þe bett*er* it' wole be. & þan þou schalt' wete a lynnen cloop *in* þis medicyn, [6]& leie vpon þe ȝerde / For þis þing' wole soude woundis & defende þat'

[5 lf. 205]

[1] Lat.: que postea crepantur. [2] MS. inserts *þat*.

[3] Lat.: Ulcera veniunt .... ex commixtione cum feda muliere, que cum egro talem habente morbum de novo coierat. *Hæser*, III, p. 230, gives a list of references, showing the early knowledge of venereal diseases in the mediæval ages. The earliest quotation is from Richardus Anglicus, *Micrologus* MS., xiith cent.: "Ulcerantur utraque, virga scilicet et testiculi, tempore menstruorum, ex coitu ex salsis humoribus et acutis et incensis, quod satis ex colore cutis et pustularum vel saniei, et ex pruritu et punctura et ardore perpenditur." Richardus gives the same preventative, which is mentioned by Lanfranc: "Ablutio cum aqua frigida et continua abstersio — — et maxime si post ablutionem cum frigida aqua fiat roratio loci abluti cum aceto."

[5] MS. *cold*. Lat.: quanto plus *antiquatur* tanto melius.

*þer* mai wexe no cancre / If' it' so be *þat* a mannes ȝerde be skynned, & be noon o*þer* passioun *þer*on saue *þat*, þan þou schalt' leie *þer*vpon vnguentum album, ou*þer* leie *þer*vpon a lynnen cloo*þ* wet' in watir of' rosis. Also poudre maad of' cucurbita & aloes is good *þer*fore / If' a man wole saue þis lyme algate fro corrupcioun, whanne he ha*þ* leien bi a womman, & he haue ony suspecioun of' vnclennes, þan he schal waische his ȝerde wi*þ* coold water medlid with vinegre /

In case of a simple excoriation, apply an ointment or compresses.

## Of Emeroidis & fistule in þe ers /

EMoroides ben veines *þat'* endi*þ* *in* a mannes ers & ben .v.[1] *þ*ese veines sumtyme openeþ & sumtyme *þei* ben enpostymed. Whanne þe blood *þat'* is *in* þe same veines falli*þ* adoun & mai not' out', þan it' engendri*þ* apostym. & if' þe blood is gret' & fleumatik, þan it' wole engendre ficus, & if' *þat'* blood be greet' & colerik, þan it' wole engendre moralem.[2] And if' þe blood be greet' & malancolius, þan it' wole engen[dre] condilomata / Sumtyme *þer* come*þ* *þ*erto [3]so manie diuers humouris, & maki*þ* diuers enpostyms *in* þe same maner as it' falli*þ* in o*þ*ere lymes, & ofte tyme of' þis enpostym come*þ* a festre, but' if' it' be þe bettir holpe; þe blood *þat'* come*þ* to a mannes ers bi veynes *þat'* ben clepid emoroides is grettere blood þan ony blood of' his bodi / & if' it' so be *þat'* a man haue þe flux of' blood of' þe emoroidis, þou schalt' not' stoppe it', but' it' blede so myche *þat'* it' make þe pacient' feble, saue þou schalt' kepe him wi*þ* good regimen, & he schal vse no metis ne drinkis *þat'* engendrith scharp blood & greet' // For bi þe flux of' blood a mannes bodi mai be kept' from malancolious blood, & it' wole kepe a man fro lepre & fro mania, & fro al sijknes *þat'* come*þ* of' malancolie / Also if' a man is woned to haue hem & þei be stoppid, þan þou muste ȝeue him medicyns for to bringe hem out' / And if' it' so be *þat* a man haue so greet' flux of' hem *þat'* his lyuere be enfeblid *þer*wi*þ*, þan he myȝte falle in a dropesi þer þoruȝ, for to miche flux of' blood mai be cause of' a dropesie / *þer*fore if' þou [4]seest' *þat'* þe flux be to greet', þan þou schalt' constreine blood wi*þ* medicyns *þat'* ben constrictif', & þou schalt' fynde medicyns *þer*fore *in* þe ende of' þis chapitre / Wexingis *þat'* ben clepid **emeroidis**, summe þei falli*þ*

¶ xij°. co. There are five hæmorrhoidal veins, they are sometimes open, sometimes they form tumours.

[3 lf. 205, bk.]

The blood in these veins is the thickest in the body.

Nota Hæmorrhoidal flux shall not be stopped,

as it keeps a man from leprosy mania and other diseases.

Too great flux causes dropsy.

[4 lf. 206]

Emeroides

[1] *De propr. rer.*, Lib. VII., cap. 54. Add. 27,944, fol. 95 b.: "*Emorydis ben fyue veynes þat strecche*þ *oute at* þe *ers, of* þe *whiche veynes come*þ *diuers passiouns and euelis, as boluynge & swellinge, withholdinge and flux.*"

[2] *moralis*, a mulberry form of tumour.

(piles) are internal or external.

wiþoute þe hole of' a mannes ers, & summe wiþinne / Also summe wexiþ *in* þe for side of' þe ers, & summe *in* þe hyndir side. Sumtyme it' wexiþ *in* þe forside toward þe rote of' þe ballokis, & þan þei makiþ greet' akinge / for sumtyme þei letten þat' a man mai not'

ficus can be tied away.

make vrine. If' it' be **ficus,** þat' þou miȝt' knowe, for it' wole be wiþoute hete[1] & neische, & þe cure herof' is but' liȝt'. Þou schalt' take a strong' þreed & knitte þere aboute, & euery dai þou schalt' streine it' more & more, til he falle awei, & þan wiþ dryng' medi-

Moralis consists of many small swellings, like a mulberry.

cyns þou schalt' drie it' vp. ¶ **Moralis** makiþ greet' akinge & haþ manie smalle swellingis as it' were mora celsi, & þe colour þerof wole be reed & sumdel[2] purpur, & but' þis haue help for to acese þe

[3 lf. 206, bk.] akinge, it' wole engendre an enpostym. Þe cure herof' is to lete him

Bleed from the Basilica and the Saphena,

blood *in* þe veyne þat' is clepid [3]basilica & sophena al *in* oon dai,[4] & *in* þe same side þat' þe passioun drawiþ mooste perto. If' he is wont' to haue þe same passioun, þan make him haue þe same flux of' blood. & if' he is not' wont' to haue it', þan þou schalt' ȝeue

relieve the pains with a medicine,

him no medicyns for to make him haue þat flux, & þan þou schalt' acese þe akynge wiþ þis medicyn, & is good for thenasmon[5] & for

℞ alle þe passiouns of' þe ers / ℞, thuris, mirre, licij, croci, ana *partem* .j, opij *par*tes duas, grinde hem & medle hem *with* ȝelke of' an eij

apply an ointment, or tent.

& wiþ þe iuys of' psillij, & ole of' roses, & make þerof' an oynement' / & if' þe akynge be wiþinne *in* his ers, þanne anointe a tent' & putte into his ers, & if' it' be wiþoutforþ, þan leie vpon lynnen clooþ & leie it' vpon þe place. ¶ Also a medicyn of' Haly þe

℞ An ointment to ripen an apostema.

abbot' / ℞, ceruse .ȝ. v., litarge .ȝ. iij., iusquiami albi .ȝ. ij., masticis, grynde hem & tempere hem wiþ þe ȝelke of' an ey & oile of' violet' & make herof' an oynement'. & þis oynement' is good whanne þe akinge is wiþ an enpostym, for þis wole resolue & make

[6 lf. 207] it' maturatif', & doiþ awey þe [6]akinge / ℞, foliorum malue, florum

℞ camomille, Melliloti[7] ana .M. j., fenigreci, seminis lini ana .ȝ. iij., lenticularum excorticarum .ȝ. x., sepe alle þes *in* water til þei resolue & þe water consume awei, & þan putte hem *in* a morter & grinde hem wel, & þan do þerto .ij. ȝelkis of' eiren & oile of' violet',

[1] Lat.: sine colore. The translator read "calore."

[2] *sumdel*, altered in a different coloured ink from *sumdei*.

[4] Lat.: cura est flebotomia basilice lateris eiusdem in uno die, in alio de saphena eiusdem lateris.

[5] Vigo, Traheron Interpret.: "Tenesmos is whan a man hathe greate prouocation to the seege, but can do nothynge. It commeth of tissein, whych signifieth to stretche."

[7] Add. 15236, fol. 5: "*Mellilotum. Corona regia. idem. G. mellilote. A. hunisoke vel redclaure.*"

& make herof an oynement. ¶ If it so be þat *in* þis place of þe forseid þingis come an enpostym & gadere to quitture, þou schalt not abide til it breke him-silf, for þan it wole make a greet hole ynward toward þe guttis. *Þer*fore þou schalt opene it hastili, or it wexe to miche ynward / If þe place of þe emeroide make no greet akynge ne noon enpostym, & if þou wolt drie hem & waste hem, þan þou miȝt worche *in* .ij. maners, do þerto mel anacardi & vnguentum ruptorium,[1] or touche hem wiþ an hoot iren þat is bettere / If he be a delicat man or a feble, drie hem *with* fumygaciouns maad of pulpa coloquintida & seed of mirtillorum, & þe leeues & þe ryndis of capparis, mirra, nux cipressi, & gallis, & make him a decoccoun of þese þingis *in* water [2]&[3] lete him sitte þeron, for alle þese þingis maketh þe emeroidis blak & makiþ hem falle awey / I nolde neuere leie *in* þat place corosif medicyn /

When an apostema begins to suppurate, open it quickly.

Nota

To dry hæmorrhoids, use a corrosive ointment, the hot iron,

and for a delicate patient a fumigation.

[2 lf. 207, bk.]

If þer be greetnes of veynes ful of blood wiþout ony enpostym, & þe patient haue gret akynge þerwiþ, & principaly if he was wont to haue þe flux of emeroidis wiþ blood, & he hadde it not longe tyme tofore, þan þou schalt ȝeue him medicyns to haue þe flux of blood, & þat þou schalt do in þis maner anoon, wiþ þe iuys of a strong oynoun, or wiþ ius of lekis, ouþer if þou makist supposytorijs of hem & frotist þerwiþ þe place, & þis wole opene þe veynys of þe emeroidis / Also þe rotis of maluis wet *in* þe gall of a bole / Also take hony .ij. partis, & vert de grece oon part, & medle hem togidere, & herwiþ anointe a suppositorie maad of lynnen clooþ & putte it yn / If it so be þat þe patient blede to miche & he bicomeþ feble þerwiþ, þan helpe him with trociscus de carabe[4] þat ben gode for to restreine flux of blood of emeroides. & it is good for to restreyne menstrues. ℞, carabe, gummi nucis, balaustie, lacte, succi barbe yreine[5] [6]ana .3. v., thuris .3. ij., opij .3. iij., make herof gobettis wiþ muscillagine psillij, & make euery dai a gobet þe weiȝte of .3. ij., & þou schalt ȝeue oon þerof wiþ sirupo stiptico, & þou schalt make fumigaciouns of driynge þingis: as gallis, balaustie, psidiorum & opere mo þat ben forseid / ℞, nuces cipressi,

If the veins are replete, provoke flux of blood.

If the patient loses too much blood, stop the flux.

℞

[6 lf. 208]

Use a fumigation.

℞

[1] *vnguentum ruptorium.* Vigo Interpret.: "Ruptorie: that, that hath strengthe to breake."

[3] At the bottom of the page, in later hand: *contra emeroides vell bubo vell tenassmoun:* ℞ *mer* 3 *ij, olibani, ameos ana* 3 *j, oppij* 3 ſs. *gosium gres et* [?], *fiat decoctio cum mell vell cum pestello ellido et nido, ſformetur suppositor*um.

[4] Matth. Sylv.: "Caraba i. Karabe. Electrum." Fr. carabé Arab. Kahrabà Devic *Dict.* Amber.

[5] *Alphita*, p. 20: "*Barba yrsina . . . a*ª *buckestonge.*"

cupularum glandulum, corticas granatorum, kutte hem a litil & sepe
A wash. hem in good wijn. & wiþ þis wijn waische þe place an euen &
a morowe / Also a fumigacioun maad of þ tapsi barbasti[1] is good
þerfore / 4

The great bowel is often pierced by an apostema and a fistula is formed.

It falliþ ofte tyme þat after þe flux of þe emeroidis, ouþer if
enpostym be to longe maturatif in þat same place vnopened, þan it
falliþ ofte tyme þat þe grete bowel[2] is peersid. & sumtyme it
makiþ a greet hole[3] in þe same place, & þoruȝ þat hole comeþ out 8
wijnd & sumtyme egestioun,[4] & þis hole is cleped a festre of þe
ers.[5] Of þis cure manye men ben hardi & knowen not þe perels
þerof, & makiþ þe same medicyns in þis place for a festre as þei
[6 lf. 208, bk.] This wants careful treatment. doon in oþere placis / But þou schalt take good [6]hede of þis maner 12
enfestre; þou schalt asaie if þe hole of þe festre go to hiȝe þat it
Look whether the fistula passes the muscles of the buttocks, whether there is much pus touche þe place of þe lacertis of þe ers, þan þe festre is incurable,
& þan a man schal not holde his egestioun, þat it nyle go out
alwei / Also þou muste loke wher þere go out miche quitture ouþir 16
litil of þe hole of þe festre, or wheþir þe quitture þerof be whit or
and great pain. reed / Also þou muste take kepe wher he haue greet penaunce þerof
or no / And aftir alle þese diuers þingis, þou muste diuerseli worche.
For as it is aforseid, first þou muste acese þe akynge & þe swell- 20
ynge, þan þou schalt asaie wher þe festre go to þe lacertis; þat þou
Try with a probe and the finger, how far the fistula reaches. schalt knowe in þis maner / Putte þi fyngir as fer as it wole go, into
his ers, & þan putte a pliaunt tent in þe feestre. & loke in what
place þe tent mette wiþ þi fyngir, & þan say þat þe patient streyne 24
his ers, & þan þou miȝt wite wheþer þe festre go aboue þe braun or
If the fistula passes above the brawn, no. If þe festre go aboue þe braun, þan þe patient schal lete go
[7 lf. 209] apply no corrosive, but only a wash. out wijnd & egestioun at þe hole of þe festre. [7]þan þou schalt in
no maner touche þe festre wiþ no medicyn corosif ne wiþ noon 28
hoot iren; but þou schalt teche him for to vse a waisching wiþ
water & hony & mirre, & wiþ sum mundificatif, and in þis maner
he schal kepe him þat þe malice of þe festre wexe nomore. ¶ O
Many unlearned surgeons, mi briþeren, manye lewid lechis haue I seen þat coude on ruptorie, 32
& þei supposide þerbi for to cure cancris & festris, & al maner crepa-

[1] *Alphita*, p. 182: "Tapsus barbatus—g^e. molayne, an. catesteyl, uel feldwrt."

[2] *intestinum*, inserted in later hand.

[3] *callid ffestula testium*, inserted in later hand.

[4] "*Egestion*, a casting forth, avoiding: In the Art of Physick, the discharging of Meat digested through the Pylorus, or lower Mouth of the Stomach, into the rest of the Entrails." Phillips.

[5] *ffestula*, inserted in later hand.

turis, & þei supposiþ bi þis maner ruptorie[1] for to surmounte *Galien* in worchinge / And men þat han þis opinioun, in þe mo errouris þat þei falliþ, þe more wrooþ þei wolen be, & þe more þei wolliþ vse her ruptorijs / And þerfore þis mai be ensaumple to þee: if a man haue no drinke but eysel, and haþ indignacioun for to fecche ony oþer but halt him þerto, & ʒeueþ þerof to men þat ben aþirst. & if þe drinke agreue hem, & þei speke ony þing þerof, he wole be wrooþ þerfore, & he nyle noon oþer drinke fecche, but algate ʒeueþ hem of þe same til her spirituals bicome drie / And if þe same [2]man hadde wijn ynowʒ & knew wel þe vertu þerof, he wolde ʒeue no man eysel for to drinke nomore / þerfore þou schalt vse medicyns þat ben appreued, & do awei al medicyns þat ben false, & holde þee apaid of þe medicyns þat ben aforseid /[3]

knowing one corrosive apply it in every case. *Gal. n.*

They do like a man who has no other drink but vinegar, and gives it to thirsty people;

[2 lf. 209, bk.] if he had wine, he would not give vinegar.

## Of þe cancre[4] and þe mormole /

¶ xiijo. co /

CAncrene ben rounde vlceris þat falliþ *in* a mannes leggis, & malum mortuum also, & þei falliþ boþe in oon place, þerfore I wole make difference þerof / ¶ Cancrene ben round vlcera & ben foule & comeþ of dedinge of þe skyn,[5] for þe natural spiritis comen not þerto, & þerfore þe place is corrupt / & if þe corrupcioun go anoon to þe boon, þan it schal not be clepid cancrenum, but it schal be clepid aschachiles.[6] & if þe corrupcioun occupie al þe lyme, þan it schal be clepid herpes estiomenus, þat is as miche to seie as etyng him-silf. ¶ þe signes of cancrenarum ben blac vlcera, & þe fleisch þerof wole be foule & of ledi colour, & þe lippis þerof wolen be gret, & þe fleisch þat is *in* þe middil [7]of vlcera wole be corrupt. & it be miche lijk to a cancre þat is vlceratus, but þis is þe difference þerof þat a cancre comeþ of corrupcioun of

Gangrene is a mortification of the skin.

If the bone is affected it is called **aschachiles**

if the whole limb is affected **herpes estiomenus.**

The symptoms of Gangrene are black ulcers

[7 lf. 210]

similar to an ulcerated cancer.

[1] MS. *rurptorie.*

[3] The translator omits a short passage about "Fissure of the Anus."

[4] *cancre.* a mistake. Lat. De cancrenis. Med. Lat. cancrenum, cancrena, is derived from Lat. canceroma, cancroma, canchrema, and has very early been confounded with Lat. gangræna, *γάγγραινα.* Vigo. Interpret. "Cancrena. Gangrena is when some parte of the body thorow great inflammation dieth, but is not yet perfitly dead; when it is perfectlye dead, and wythout felyng: it is called sphacelos in greke, whyche they have turned to ascachillos, sideratio in latine. Some saye, that Gangrena is whan a membre is apte to putrefye. Ascachillos, when it is putrified, but hath not all partes of putrefaction. Esthiomenas, when a membre hath al degrees of putrefaction."

[5] *of dedinge of þe skyn.* Lat.: de cutis mortificatione.

[6] *aschachiles,* the Arab. corruption of *σφάκελος.* Fr. sphacile.

It is caused by general debility.

malancolie, & þis comeþ of lesynge of þe spiritis of lijf / Also þe lippis of þe cancre ben more reuersid and more grene, & a cancre fretiþ more / And perfore þis passioun is clepid of summen a deed cancre /

Treatment of Gangrene: Purge the body from melancholic matter,

Þe cure of þis passioun is in þis maner / first þou schalt avoide his bodi of malancolie, & þouȝ it be not his principal cause as it is of a cancre / ȝitt þe mater þat fallíþ to þe place is greet / þerfore it is good for to clense his blood of malancolie; for it is good þing in vlcera þat ben olde, & principali whanne þei ben in parties bineþeforþ / & whanne he is clensid, þan lete him blood in þe veyne þat is bitwixe þe leeste too of his foot & þe too next þerto, in þe same leg þat þe passioun is on. & vpon þe place þou schalt caste pouder of affodillorum, ouþer remeue awei al þe deed fleisch / If þou wolt worche more surely & bettere, make him a cauterie, þat [1]it be myche & long as þe place is þat [is] corrupt, & wiþ an hoot iren make a cros vpon þe middil of þe passioun as depe as þe deed fleisch is. & þan þou schalt leie þeron a plastre maad of whete mele & iuys of ache, & þan cure it vp as þou doist oþere vlcera, as it is forseid / And in þis caas þou schalt not forȝete in no maner for to leie aboute þe place a defensif of bole & terra sigillata; for þat wole suffre no wickide mater to renne to þe place, & it defendiþ þe hool place fro corrupcioun. ¶ Malum mortuum is a maner scabbe, & comeþ of grete humouris brent, & falliþ to þe place. & sum part þerof leueþ in a mannys flank, & engendriþ glandulas & swelliþ / þe cure herof is to avoide his bodi of greet humouris, þat ben brent; & lete him blood in basilica, in þe same side; & lete him blood in þe foot, as it is forseid / & þou muste dissolue glandulus, as it is forseid in þe chapitre of glandulus & scrophulis; & þan þou muste anointe þe place wiþ drijnge medicyns. þou [2]schalt anointe al þe place with psilatro,[3] til al þe heeris falle awei wiþouten ony violence / Take þe grete titimalle & þe smale, & boile hem in vinegre & in oile, & do þerto a litil sope, & make þerof þe maner of an oynement; & wiþ þis oynement þou schalt anointe þe place harde aȝen þe fier / ℞, olei aceti ana. ʒ .ij., sapponis mollis & sapponis duri ana. ℥ j.; medle hem togidere, & do þerto iuys mali terre ouþer brionie .℥ .ij.; boile hem alle togidere, & anointe þe place þerwiþ, & þou schalt fynde oynementis in þe antidotarie þat ben gode in þis caas //

Then apply a plaster,

and a defensive.

**Malum mortuum** is a kind of scab,

and is treated with purging,

blood-letting,

and an ointment.

℞ an ointment of tithymal.

℞ An ointment of soap.

[1] lf. 210, bk.] The best method is, to cauterize the place with the hot iron.

[2] lf. 211]

[3] *Sinon. Barth.*, p. 35: "Psilotrum, depilatorium idem."

## Of varices, þat ben veynes, and elephancia.[1]

¶ xiiij. c°/ Varices are enlarged veins in the legs.

UArices ben clepid veynes, þat' ben grete, & grene, & purpur, & sittiþ aboute a mannes leggis. and þei comen of' greet' malancolious[2] blood, þat' falliþ adoun. & also it' comeþ of' grete metis & of' greet' traueile, or it' may come of' greet' fleume; & it' wole make a mannes feet' & his leggis al grete, & sumtyme his feet' also[3] // þe [4]cure of' varicium is in þis maner: þou schalt' purge him wiþ gotis whey & wiþ epithimo, for þis purgacioun is propre in þis caas, or purge him wiþ pelottis of' epithimi. & lete him blood in þe veyne þat' is clepid basilica, of' þe arme in þe same side, & also in his foot'. & he schal absteyne him fro metis þat' engendriþ malancolie / þis passioun þow myȝt' cure in þese maners[5] / þis is þe first' maner: loke in his hamme, vnder his knee. þere þou schalt' se a greet' veine; & alle þe grete veynes, þat' ben bineþe in his leg', comeþ out' þerof'. þan þou schalt' take vp þe same veyne wiþ a nedele. & loke þat' þou peerse not' þe veyne, & knytte hir wiþ a þreed. & þe brede of' þi fyngir aboue þat' place, putte yn þi nedele aȝen, vndir þe veyne as þou hast' do heretofore, & knitte in þe same maner wiþ a þreed; & þan þou schalt' kutte þe skyn ouer þe veyne endelongis; & þan take vp þe veyne & kutte hir bitwixe þe .ij. bindingis, & þan þe ende of' þe veyne þat' is aboue schal be brent' wiþ an hoot' iren, & þe neþir side [6]of' þe veyne schalt' be vnknit'. & presse out' þe blood bineþeforþ of' þe veyne, as myche as þou myȝt'. & þanne þe remenaunt' þou schalt' drawe wiþ medicyns þat' ben consumynge. & þe fleisch þere þou madist' þi wounde, þou schalt' touche wiþ an hoot' iren also; & þan þou schalt' leie to þe place mundificatiuis, & þan soude as it' is aforseid.[7] ¶ Also anoþer maner cure: lete him blood oonli in þe same veyne, & take out' of' þe blood as miche as þou miȝt', & purge him ofte, & make him

Elephantia attacks the feet.

[4 lf. 211, bk.] The general treatment consists in purging, and in bleeding from the Basilic vein.

Local treatments: 1. Apply a double ligature on the popliteal vein,

cut the vein between the two ligatures,

[6 lf. 212]

and press the blood out from the lower part of the vein: after removal of the ligature.

2. Use bloodletting and purging.

[1] Lanfranc follows the description given by *Avicenna*, Lib. III, Fen. 22, Tract. 1, Cap. 15, ed. Ven. 1527. Avicenna's list of the occupations that are predisposing to this illness reminds us of the fact that he was a courtier himself. *Ibid.*: "Et plurimum quidem accidunt cursoribus, & viatoribus, & onera portantibus & coram regibus astantibus."

[2] MS. *humour*, deleted.

[3] Incorrect translation. Lat.: "Elephantia dicitur quædam carnis augmentatio, in qua crus vltra mensuram debitam augmentatur cum pede toto, et fit ex grosso fleumate vel ex grossa melancolia non corrupta."

[5] Lat.: Locus autem tribus curatur modis.

[7] This mode of operation is the same as has been described by *Paulus Æginetа*, Lib. VI, 82, ed. Fr. Adams 1844, 2nd vol., p. 406, and by *Avicenna l. c.*, Cap. 18.

enplastris aboute his leggis wiþ drijnge þingis, & diete him as it is
3. Do not try a perfect cure, but purge and bleed several times a year. aforseid. ¶ þe .iij. maner is þis: þou schalt go to no perfit cure
þerof, but þou schalt lete þat blood falle adoun, & þan a fewe
tymes in þe ȝeer þou schalt purge him; & þou schalt laske his greet 4
blood wiþ blood-letyngis, þat ben forseid, & leie enplastris vpon þe
place þat ben drijnge. & þus þou schalt do til al þe swellynge be
goon awey / & þis laste medicyn is þe beste for hem þat haue had
þis passioun longe, & for hem þat ben olde / For if þou kutte a 8
[1 lf. 212, bk.] veyne in hem, [1]þan per wole engendre manie sijknessis aboue, &
make þe pacient deed þe raþere / For I siȝ men þat her veynes weren
so kutt þat weren algate sijk aftirward, & wiþinne a litil time aftir
Elephancia can be cured at the beginning of the disease. þat þei diede. ¶ Elephancia[2] is incurable whanne it is confermed; 12
but bifore þat it is confermed, it mai be curid for to purge þe
humouris þat ben in þe cause wiþ blood-leting, þat ben aforseid. &
Use purging, blood-letting, he schal absteine him fro grete metis, þat engendriþ greet humouris;
keep the legs bandaged before an exertion, use an ointment. & þan he schal not go ne ride, but if his leg & his foot be bounden 16
wiþ a boond faste, & speciali in þe ioynct / But first þou schalt
anoynte his leggis wiþ epithimo maad of acacia, mirra, aloe, ipoqui-
stidos,[3] & alym with vinegre. & whanne þe swellynge bigynneþ to
goon awei, þan make him a stuwe, & lete his leggis be þerinne 20
longe; & be it maad of askis of vines & caul-seed, sticados arabici,
lupinorum, mirre, stercus caprini, fenigreci. Also anointe him, &
binde him, as it is forseid. & in þis maner I haue curid men, þat
ne weren not confermed þeron // 24

## Of wertis in handis and in feet /

[4 lf. 213] ¶ xv°. c° / [4]Porri[5] ben engendrid of fleume þat is greet, & ben white;
verruce[6] comeþ of malancolie, & ben blake, & han mo rotis /
Scissure[7] comeþ of malancolie brent, & makiþ as it were kuttyngis; 28

[2] The disease which Lanfranc describes is the Elephantiasis Arabum, commonly known as Barbadoes leg, quite different from the Elephantiasis of the Greeks, a general term for severe leprosy.

[3] *Sinon. Barth.*, p. 25: "Ipoquistidos est succus fungi qui nascitur ad pedem rosæ caninæ." ὑποκιστίς, ίδος, ἡ, a parasitic plant which grows on the roots of the κίστος, Cytinus hypocistis. (= Holly Rose, *Gerard*, p. 1281.)

[5] "*Porrus*, a Leak, also a kind of Wart." Phillips.

[6] "*Verruca*, (Lat.) a Wart, a little hard brawny Swelling, which breaks out of the Skin, and breeds in any part of the Body." *Ibid.*

[7] "*Scissure*, a Cut or Cleft, a Rent or Chap." *Ibid.*

& if þei comeþ of cooldnes, þan þei schulen be clepid muge.[1] ¶ þe cure of porrorum is for to clense his bodi wiþ trocisco de turbit, & þan frote þe place wiþ medicyns þat ben consumptif; & frote hem wiþ poudre maad of a gotis toord, & tempere wiþ þe iuys of mirti & wiþ þe ryndis of capparis / Veruce schulen be curid wiþ a purgacioun maad of epithimi & gotis whey, & wiþ summe opere medicyn þat is proprid for malancolie, & þan þou schalt vse stronge oynementis / as vnguentum ruptorium, ouþer mel anacardi or sum opir corrosif, ouþer in þis maner is better / garse it al aboutforþ & binde it wiþ a strong preed, & streine wel þe þred & drawe him awei wiþ þe preed, & þanne touche þe rotis of him wiþ a cauterie punctual. ¶ Scissure. It is nede in þis passioun for to purge his bodi of humouris þat ben brent, & make [2]him a baþ of swete water. & þan þou schalt waische his lymes wiþ a decoccioun of bismalue in watir, & a litil oile þerwiþ; & lete him vse metis þat makiþ moist & engendrid good blood, & þan anoynte him wiþ þis oynement / ℞, olium rosarum, cere citrine, adipis anatis colatus, ℞ Isopi humide,[3] muscillagine seminis citoniorum, amilum, draganti, ana, make herof an oynement / ¶ **Muge** schulen be curid wiþ oilis & oynementis / ffirst þou schalt aswage þe akinge wiþ oile, & þan leie þerto a mundificatif þat schal be seid in þe antidotarie, & þan soude it wiþ mirre / If þou seest it at þe first bigynnyng, þan make an enplastre of armoniaco, for þat wole resolue þe enpostym. & þou schalt make þat he vse [not][4] streit schoon, & he schal anoynte his feet, & principali hise heelis wiþ þis oynement / ℞, olium de lilie ℥ .vj., cere ℥ ß., resine ℥ ij., armoniaci ℥ j., farine fenigreci ℥ .ß., thuris, masticis, ana ℥ .ij., & make herof an oynement /[5]

Treatment of porrorum. Apply a caustic medicine.

veruce. Use purging and a strong ointment,

or tie the growth.

Scissure. Use purging, [2 lf. 213, bk.] a bath, a wash,

an ointment.

℞

Muge.

Relieve the pain; apply a mundificative,

a plaster,

and an ointment.

℞

[1] *Matth. Syluat.:* "Perniones vel rasulæ, sunt excoriationes quæ fiunt in nimio frigore in calcaneis, quæ *Mugæ* vulgariter dicuntur," probably allied to *mucus, mungere, μύξα.*

[3] *isopus humida.* Sloane 2463, fol. 159 bk.: "*The fyfte, whiche is nother propurly oynement nor enplastre. but atwixe two, & is cleped ysopus humida. Take wolle that is bytwixe the thyes and the iowes of schepe, as moche as þou wilt, and put as moche water therupon as may covere hit, and lete hit stonde so aduy and anyȝt. and þanne boile hit with a lente fyre, and lete hit wexe cold, and coile hit; and thanne boile hit eftesones in a tymed panne with a liȝt fyre. and thanne lete hit wexe cold, and coile hit: butt loke thou stere hit euermore with a spature of tre till þat it be thikke as oynement.*"

[4] *not*, wanting. Lat.: iube ne calciamenta portet stricta.

[5] Gulielm. de Saliceto, *Chirurgia*, Lib. I, Cap. 57. Sloane 277, fol. 19: "*For cold in wynter þe leche may haue two consideracioun̄s to þe heelynge*

## Of blood-letyng //

¶ xvj

[1 lf. 213*]

Blood-letting belongs to a surgeon's craft.

Nota. Learned physicians leave it to unlearned men and women.

One ought to be both a physician and a surgeon.

Blood-letting is used to keep a man's health, and to remove sickness.

[4lf.213*,bk.] Bleed those who eat and drink much, and have little exercise.

Bleed in order to prevent a disease.

Blood-letyng is a craft for to laske a mannes blood þat is in his veynes / [1]And þis þou schalt wel wite, þat it falliþ for oure craft, þouȝ we for pride take it to barbouris & to wommen; & blood-letynge falliþ principali for oȝrurgians / O lord, whi is it so greet difference bitwixe a cirurgian & a phisician, but for philosophoris bitoken þe craft into lewid mennes hondis / or as manie men haue dedignacioun for to worche wiþ her hondis / & ȝitt mani men weneþ þat it is inpossible þat oon man to kunne boþe þe craftis[2] / But þou schalt knowe wel þis, þat he is no good phisician þat can no þing in cirurgie / And also þe contrarie þerof: a man mai be no good cyrurgian, but if he knowe phisik. ¶ Blood-letynge is vsid bi cause for to kepe a mannes bodi hool, & to remeue awei sijknessis fro a mannes bodi / But þus manye þingis þou muste take kepe in blood-leting: tyme, & hour, & eir, & disposicioun of þe sike man / & þou muste take kepe þat þou lete no man blood but if he mowe endure itt // ¶ First a man schal be lete blood for to kepe him-silf,[3] & principali hem þat etiþ good fleisch [4]& drinkiþ good wijn, & etiþ metis for to engendre myche blood, & traueiliþ but litil, & principali þe while a man is ȝong, & also in eelde if he be myche vsid þerto / Also þou schalt lete hem blood þat ben wont to haue akynge in her ioyntis, ouþer a feuere þat is clepid sinocha[5] or þe squinacie, ouþer pleureses / Alle þese, tofore þe tyme þat þei ben woned to haue her passioun, þou schalt lete hem blood or her passioun come, þat it mowe go awey þerwiþ: & þis maner is clepid preuisiuus. ¶ þe iij. maner: whanne a man haþ greet akynge in

*of sriche maner seknesses: oon of partie of defense* þat *it come not, & another of þe partie of remevynge of þe seknesse i-made. By þe reson of defence that it come not, leue þe patient wiþ all his witt streit schoynge, & haue he dowble schoos & large, & anoynte he euery nyȝt þe heele with an oynement þus maad.*"

[2] Lat.: "aut quum operari ut dicunt quidam cum manibus dedignantur, aut, quod magis credo, quum operationis modum quod apud scientiam est necessarium non nouerunt; et hæc abusio tantum valuit propter antiquam dissuetudinem, quod apud quosdam de vulgo credatur impossibile, quod unus hoc possit scire magisterium utriusque."

[3] Lat. pro sanitate conseruanda.

[5] Lanfranc, *Chirurgia Parva*, Cap. X, Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 25[a] (xvth cent.): "*blood þerfore, ȝif it ouer haboundeþ vpon al þe body, & it is hett with hete enflammynge or brennynge þe herte, & is corrupt, & neþeles it is not roten, þerof is maad a feuere clepid* **synocha continua**. *And ȝif he is roten, þenne is maad þerof a feuere clepid* **synochus continuus**.

his heed wiþouten[1] a feuere, or a squinantes plureses, periplumonia, apostema calida, & eueri sijknes þat' comeþ of' to miche blood. In alle þese causis þou schalt' lete him blood; & þis maner is clepid curantes.[2] ¶ Now I wole telle alle maners in what' maner a man schal be leten blood / ffirst', who schal lete þee blood / þe .ij, whanne it' is necessarie for to be lete blood / þe .iij., in whiche veynes a man schal be leten blood for diuers passiouns, & in what' maner þe veyne schal be kut'. ¶ A man þat' schal be letere blood schal be ȝong', [3]& he schal be no child, ne noon oold man, ne he schal not' quake, & he schal haue a good scharp siȝt'; & loke þat' he kunne knowe veines, & þat' he kunne knowe hem from arterijs; & he schal haue manie diuers tool[4] for to lete blood þerwiþ, & þei schulen be clene and cleer, & not' rusti; & summe of' his tool schulen be longe, & summe schorte, for to peerse aftir þat' þe veyne is greet' þerto / Also children schulen not' be lete blood, but' if' it' were greet' nede, & he were so replet' of' blood þat' he schulde be achekid þerwiþ; þat' þou miȝt' knowe bi þe streitnes of' his breeþ & fulnes of' his veynes, & bi reednes of' his face. Þan it' is necessarie þat' he be leten blood; but' it' is ful greet' drede for to lete a child blood, þerfore I wyle ȝeue no counseil þerto. & if' it' so be þat' he be in perel of' deeþ, þan lete him blood / Now þou art' war of' þis perel, do as þou seest' þat' it' is to do; & þou schalt' warne þe childis fadir & his modir of' þe perels þat' ben aforseid, & saue þee fro blame. ¶ Also olde men schulen not' be lete blood, & ȝitt' summe olde men ben strenger of' vertu þan summe ȝonge [5]men; & þan þou schalt' take hede to þe rule in þis maner: þat' þou schalt' not' lete hem blood whanne þei arisiþ out' of' her sijknes / ¶ Also wommen wiþ childe schulen not' be lete blood, & speciali not' in þe .iij. firste moneþis, ne in þe laste moneþe / Also ȝonge men þat' ben white & pale, & haueþ fewe heeris in her browis, & haueþ smale veynes & priui, ne ben not' couenable to be lete blood; ne men þat' han manie humours & litil blood, for blood þat' is in hem is tresour. ¶ Ffrensch men doon hem-silf' miche harme in þis caas; whanne þei ben ful of' coold humours & corrupt' þei letiþ hem-silf' blood, & þan þei seen her blood corrupt' &

Bleed in those diseases which are caused by abundance of blood.

.1.
.2.
.3.

1. The operator must have [3 lf. 214] the proper age, know the blood-vessels, and have good instruments.

2. Children ought not to be bled except in urgent cases;

it is always dangerous,

and the parents must be warned.

Do not bleed old men, [5 lf. 214, bk.]

nor pregnant women,

nor young men who are pale and have spare hair and small veins.

Much harm is done in France by too much blood-letting.

[1] The Latin editions of Lanfranc read: "Tertio cum dolor fortis adest capitis siue febres fortes squinantes pleuresos," ed. Ven. 1498, fol. 201 bk., Ven. 1546, fol. 249, but Add. MS. 26,106 (xivth cent.), fol. 88, shows the correct reading, which corresponds with the translation: "Tercio cum dolor fortis adest capitis sine febre, cum fortes squinantes, pleureses."

[2] Lat. curatiuus.

[4] *tool*, a survival of the O.E. tôl, N.A. plur.

foul, & þan þei supposen þat' þei han wel doon þat' þei haue lete out' þat' blood, & þe barbour wole seie þat' he mote hastili be lete blood azen / It' were wel better to *him* þat' he hadde kept' his blood, & þat' þe corrupt' humours hadde be voidid awei *in* oþer maner / ¶ Blood-letynge is not' good for a man at' þe firste bigynnynge of cataracta, ne noon ventuse is not' good for *him* / but' *in* causis as it' is forseid, blood-letyng' is good // And [1] if' a man etiþ miche fleisch & drinkiþ miche wijn, for þis wole engendre miche blood / And þan but' if' a man lete *him* blood, þan *þere* wole engendre diuers sijknes þerof', & ofte tyme sodeyn deeþ / Also men *þat'* haue þe goute of' blood, he schal be lete blood tofore þe tyme þat' he supposiþ to haue his passioun; for ofte tyme þis wole take awey his akynge. & *in* alle sijknessis þat' comeþ principali of' blood, it' is good for *hem* to be lete blood / Also men þat' haueþ synocham, blood-letynge is ful necessarie to *hem*, til þei swowne. & þis wole do awei þe feuere, or it' waastiþ so miche þe mater; & þan he muste be holpen wiþ oþere medicyns, þat' þou schalt' fynde *in* bokis of' phisik[2] / If' he be not' lete blood, þan þe blood þat' is *in* *him* wole boile vpward to þe brest', & gadere togidere in the brest', þat' þe pacient' schal be ful nyȝ stoppid.[3] & sumtyme a veine wole breke *in* þe piyse or *in* þe lungis, & þan þat' veine mai not' be streyned ne stoppid, & þan þe *patient* schal die þeron. ¶ In þis chapitre it' is myn entencioun forto speke oonly of' openynge of' veines [4] þat' ben *in* us,[5] & what' vertu þer is þerinne. In boþe armis of' a man *per* ben .iij. veines þat' ben *in* us for to be lete blood þeron / þe .i. is clepid cephalica, & is þe hiȝeste veine of' þe arme, & sitt' next' þe elbowe[6]; & þis veine mote be kut' large, & not' to depe / If' þat' veine be kut' streit', þan ofte tyme it' makiþ an enpostym / & also þou muste be wel war þat' þou touche no synewis / For þe same cause þou miȝt' lete a man blood vpon þe hond, bitwixe his þombe & þe nexte fyngir þerto // Basilica sittiþ adoun aforȝens þe elbowe, vndir þe arme, & þis veine sittiþ ful nyȝ þe gret' arterie: & þerfore a man mote be wel war þat' he touche not' þe arterie veyne. & for þe perel of' þe arterie it' is good for to lete him blood bitwixe þe litil fyngir & þe fynger next' þerto. & þis blood-letynge is good for

**Nota** Do not bleed at the beginning of cataract.

[1 lf. 215] Blood-letting shall be used, if a man eats and drinks too much,

in case of gout—before the illness is quite developed—

in case of synocha,

else the blood may boil into the breast,

and a vein may break.

**Nota**

[4 lf. 215, bk.]

The veins on which phlebotomy is practised are 1. **Cephalica.**

which is cut either near the elbow, or between the thumb and the first finger.

2. **Basilica.** is cut either in the fold of the arm,

or between the little finger and the ring finger.

[2] *& þan he muste be holpen—bokis of phisik*, inserted. Lat.: "aut omnino phlebotomia febrem tollit, aut adeo materiam minuit, quod in putridam de cetero non mutatur."

[3] Lat. quod patiens suffocatur.

[5] Lat. quæ sunt in usu.

[6] Lat. prima cefalica que in duobus minuitur locis prope cubiti plicaturam aliquantulum supra.

alle þe placis vndir þe brest', & for þe lyuere. ¶ Of' þis veine þat' is clepid Basilica, & of' þe veine þat' is c[l]epid Cephalica, comeþ a veine þat' is clepid Mediana / And whanne a man is lete blood *in* þis veyne, it' is perel of' ij. grete synewis þat' liggiþ *in* boþe sidis [1] of' þe veyne. And whanne þou þinkist' to avoide al a mannes bodi, þan þou schalt' lete him blood *in* þis veine, & principali for þe herte & for þe brest'. ¶ In Basilica, *in* þe riȝt' hond, þou schalt' lete a man blood for passioun of' þe lyuere, & *in* þe lift hond for passioun of' þe splene,[2] & *in* þe liftside of' þe forheed[3] it' is good to lete blood for akynge of' þe heed,[4] & principali whanne sijknes is confermed *in* a mannes heed. & þis I apreuede misilf' / for sumtyme it' doiþ awei þe frenesi. & I siȝ a womman þat' hadde akynge in hir heed, þat' it' miȝte not' be take awei, & I lete hir blood *in* hir hond as it' is forseid & purgide hir, & þe veine *in* hir forheed þat' was gretter þan ony oþer veine in hir bodi; & I openede þat' veine, & anoon riȝt' sche was hool / But' whanne þou wolt' lete a man blood *in* þat' place, þou schalt' streyne þe necke & kutte þe veine endelongis; & þis blood-letynge is good for tynea, þat' is in a mannes heed, & for Saphati.[5] & for demigrania þou schalt' lete blood *in* þe templis of' his heed. & þe same blood-letynge is good for passion [6] of' a mannes iȝen / I hadde a ȝong' man *in* my kepinge þat' hadde demigrayn[7] of' hoot' cause, & I purgide him ofte & lete him blood, and I knytte þe arterie þat' was *in* þe same side of' his heed, & þo he was cured for euermore / Also letynge blood *in* þe veynes bihinde hise eeris is good for þe dimigrayn & for tineam / Also letynge blood *in* þe tunge is good for þe squinacie, & for enpostyms, þat' ben as it' were almaundis, & for brancis;[8] but' he

3. Mediana. is selected for general bleeding. [1 lf. 216]

A vein in the forehead is cut against headache and frenzy;

as the author did in the case of a woman.

Blood-letting on the temples is good against megrim, [6 lf. 216, bk.] and an eye disease.

Cut the veins behind the ear against megrim: bleed the tongue against squincy.

[2] *Regimen sanitatis Salerni*, transl. by T. Paynell (1530), fol. h. iiii.: "*Saluatella* is þat veyne betwene þe myddell fynger and the rynge fynger, more declynynge to the myddell fynger. Hit begynneth of *Basilica*. This veyne is opened in the ryghte hande for opilation of þe lyuer, and in the lefte hande for opilation of the splene. There is no reason why it shuld be so, as Auicen saythe, but experyence: whiche Galen founde by a dreame, as he saythe. He had one in cure, whose lyuer and splene were stopte, and he dreamed that he dyd let him blud of this veine, and so he dyd, and cured the pacient."

[3] MS. inserts *for*.

[4] Lat. in capite flebotomatur vena frontis propter capitis egritudines.

[5] MS. *sanaci*. The editions of Lanfranc read *saphati*, Add. MS. 26,106, fol. 89: *saffira*. *Matth. Sylv.*: "Saphiros, Sephiros idest apostema durum cui non associatur sensus." *Vigo Interpr.*: "Sephiros is an arabike word, and it is called in Greke scirros, in latyne durities, that is hardenes."

[7] *demigrayn*, Lat. emigranea. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, s. v. megrim.

[8] *brancus*, med. Lat. Dufr., a throat-disease. *Isid.*, Lib. 4, Cap. 7: "branchos est præfocatio faucium a frigido humore." The editions of Lanfr. read: brachiis.

schal be lete blood tofore *in* þe heed-veyne. & it' is good for þe izen, & it' is good for icchinge & for pustulis *in* þe nose, & for scotomia þat' comeþ of' blood / Sumtyme a man is lete blood *in* veynes *in* þe necke, þat' ben clepid gwide,[1] for drede of' suffocacioun[2] of' blood; & sumtyme in leprous men, þat' schulen be lete blood *in* her lippis bineþe.[3] & þis is good for hote enpostyms *in* þe mouþ, & for hote passiouns of' þe gommys. ¶ In a mannes foot' ben .iij., þat' ben profitable to be lete blood for manie passiouns / And þer is oon veyne *in* a mannes hamme vndir his knee, þat' is good to be lete blood for passiouns of' þe maris, & for to bringe out' menstrue: & it' avoidiþ al þe bodi. ¶ Also þer is anoþer veine, þat' sittiþ bitwixe þe holowe of' þe foot' wiþinneforþ, & is clepid Sophena; & *in* þis veyne wommen ben leten blood for passiouns of' þe maris, & men ben lete blood *in* þe veine of' þe same place for enpostyms of' þe ballokis. ¶ þe veine þat' serueþ for þe scie, is wiþoute bitwixe þe heele & þe holowe of' þe foot' wiþoutforþ, & blood-letynge *in* þis veine is good for scia[ti]cam passionem, as it' is aforseid *in* þe cure of' sciatica. ¶ Herof' þou schalt' take kepe. If' þou þinkist' for to lete a man blood *in* .ij. diuers times, & not' al at' oonys, þan þou schalt' do *in* þis maner; & *in* þis caas, whanne þou wolt' lete a man miche blood, and ne darist' not' do it' al at' oonys; þan whanne þou letist' him blood, þou schalt' make þe inscicioun of' þe veine þe more long', þat' it' soude not' hastili; & þan þou schalt' binde his arme, & smite þe place þere þou wolt' lete him blood wiþ þi fyngir, & make him blede more, as myche as þou seest' þat' good is / [5]¶ Also whanne þou wolt' wiþ blood-letyng' make þe mater go to þe place aforȝens; whanne þou hast' lete out' þe .iij. part' off' blood þat' he schal blede, þan þou schalt' sette þi fingir vpon þe wounde, & make him stonde vp & remeue[6] him-silf', & lete him sitte adoun, & do awei þi fyngir & lete him blede more. & þus þou schalt' do .iij.

Bleed from the jugular vein against suffocation, from a vein in the lower lip,

from the 3 veins in the leg,

1. a vein under the knee.

[4 lf. 217]

2. a vein in the hollow of the foot called Sophena.

3. the sciatic vein.

If you intend to let blood more than once from the same place,

make a larger incision.

[5 lf. 217, bk.] If by blood-letting, you wish to draw the matter to the opposite part of the body, bleed repeatedly.

[1] Lat. vene guidegi.

[2] Phillips: "*Suffocation.* a suffocating, stifling, etc., a Stoppage."

[3] This statement is due to a wrong interpunctuation in the Latin original. Add. 26,106: "Aliquando flebotomantur uene guidegi colli cum suffocatio ex sanguinis timetur multitudine. & aliquando in quibusdam leprosis uene quæ sunt in labiis inferioribus interioribus minuantur propter acola calidum in ore — —." A full stop ought to be between leprosis and uene. Compare *Liber Rasis ad Almans*, Tract. VII, Cap. 21, ed. Ven. 1506, fol. 32 bk.: "Sed due vene que dicuntur guidegi sunt flebotomande, cum anhelitus in lepre principio maxime angustatur." "Vene itidem, que in labiis sunt inciduntur cum in aliquo multiplicantur alcola et ulcera in ore et gingivis."

[6] *remeue him-silf* has the sense of M.E. remuen, O.F. remuer, to move, stir.

siþis or .iiij., for *in* þis maner þe blood drawiþ more to þe partie aforȝens, & þe *ver*tu of þe pacient schal þe better be kept. ¶ Also if a man is wont to swowne in blood-letynge ouþ*er* falle doun, þan lete hi*m* lie & be lete blood / Also or he be lete blood, lete hi*m* ete a schiuer of breed toostid & leid *in* wiin of *gra*natorum. ¶ Alle maner veynes *in* blood-letinge schulen be kutt endelo*n*gis / And whanne þou wolt lete a ma*n* blood *in* þe p*ar*tijs aboue þe necke, þan þou muste binde þe veine,[1] til þe veyne arise þat þou wolt lete hi*m* blood on / And wha*n*ne þou wolt lete a man blood *in* his arme, þan þou muste binde his arme þe brede of foure fyngris aboue þe place; & þou muste [2]be wel war þat þou streyne not to faste, as manie me*n* doon / Manie me*n* binden so faste a ma*n*nes arm, þat he mai not fele his arm / Veynes of a ma*n*nes feet & *in* his hondis, if þou wolt lete a man blood þe*ron*, þan þou muste sette he*m* *in* hoot wat*er*, & lete hem achaufe þe*ron* an hour; & þa*n* þou muste bi*n*de his foot ouþir his hond aboue þe ioinct wiþ a boond, & algate his foot or his ho*n*d mote be *in* þe watir as longe as he schal blede /

Give the patient a slice of bread and wine before the operation.

Before operating cause the vein to swell, by bandaging the limb,

[2 lf. 218]

and by a warm foot-bath.

## Of kuttyngis and bledyngis //

¶ xvijo. co.

SIccia is sett sumtyme for kuttynge & sumtime wiþoute kuttynge, and sumtyme wiþ kuttinge.[3] Wiþout kutti*n*g as vpon a ma*n*nes wo*m*be or wo*m*mans / ffor akynge þat comeþ of wijnd, & it is good for to waste wijnd / Also it is sett vpon þe wei of þe stoon þat falliþ adou*n* of þe reynes, & þan it schal be sett a litil bineþe þe akynge þat it mowe drawe þe stoon lower & lower til it come to þe hole of þe bladdre / Also it is sett vndir a wo*m*mans tetis for to restreyne þe blood of þe nose & of þe maris / Also it is sett vpo*n* þe regio*n* [4]of þe wombe for fallinge of þe maris, þat is clepid dislocacio*u*n of þe maris: as if the maris falle adou*n* *in* þe riȝtside, þan it schal be sett *in* þe liftside / And if þe maris falle *in* þe liftside, þan it schal be sett *in* þe riȝtside / Also it is sett vndir a ma*n*nes eere for to d*r*awe out a greyne or a stoon of þe eere þat is falle yn / Also it is sett vndir a mannes ers to drawe out þe emeroidis þat sittiþ hid fer yn / And it schal be sett *in* eue*r*i place þ*er*e þou wolt make a greet attraccio*u*n / Also it is good for to be sett vpon þe bitynge of a wood hou*n*d, & vpon þe biti*n*g of a venymous beest.

The Sycia is used against flatulence,

to draw the stone from the kidneys towards the bladder,

to restrain flux of blood in case of falling of the womb,

[4 lf. 218, bk.]

to draw a stone out of the ear,

to draw out internal piles,

on the bite of a mad dog.

[1] Lat. opus collum stringi donec appereant.

[3] Add. 26106, fol. 89, bk.: "Siccia aliquando ponitur sine incisione aliquando cum incisione." The printed editions omit this passage.

Cupping with previous scarification is used instead of blood-letting, if the patients are either very old or very young.

It schal be sett þeron wiþ scarificacioun, also in causis þere þou lettist for to drawe blood for febilnes, or for elde, or in children; & hem after .iiij. ȝeer oold we moun garcie, whanne blood letinȝ is forboden hem, & speciali whanne we purposen for to drawe awei mater þat is vndir þe skyn / Also we moun garse a man bihinde in þe nol of þe heed — —[1] & for greuaunce of þe iȝen, & vpon þe .ij. corneris of þe heed for tinea & for pustules þat ben in þe heed vnder [2]a

[2 lf. 219]

Scarify on the head, for eye-disease, skin-diseases, and tooth-ache.

mannes chyn, for wennys of þe face & for vlcera þat ben in þe mouþ & in þe lippis & for akynge of þe teeþ / Also if it be sett bytwixe þe .ij. schuldris for swownynge & for quakinge of þe herte, & for hem þat han to miche blood in þat place. Þis maner letynge blood avoidid a mannes bodi miche & makiþ him feble[3] /

Scarify between the shoulders for swooning.

watir lechis

Also watir lechis[4] drawiþ more blood þan þese / In þis maner þou schalt knowe whiche ben gode watir lechis & whiche ben nouȝt. Þei þat han blac colour medlid wiþ diuers colouris, & þei þat haueþ grete hedis & ben in foule stynkynge watris & han miche spume on hem ben nouȝt / And in þis maner þou schalt knowe whiche ben gode: þei þat han reed wombis & litil reed rewis in þe rigge medlid wiþ grene, & whanne þei haueþ litil hedis & smale tailis, & whanne þei ben in good watir þat ben manie froggis yn. & or þou sette hem vpon a man, þei schulen be kept al adai fastynge. & þan þou schalt ȝeue him a litil scharp blood for to ete, & þan þou schalt waische hem wiþ cleer water; & þan vpon þe [5]place þat he schal be

Bad leeches have big heads and live in foul water.

Good leeches have red wombs, small heads, live in pure water.

Keep them fasting before use.

[5 lf. 219, bk.]

[1] Some words are wanting. Lat.: propter grauedinem capitis.

[3] The sentence to which this statement refers is omitted. Lat.: "Que vero in poplitis plicatura valent ad egritudines renum, et matricis, testiculorum et omnium membrorum nutritiuorum ex sanguine."

[4] Rhasis, Continens, Lib. XV. Cap. 6, ed. Brix, 1486, fol. CC. 3. bk., gives an interesting description of different kinds of leeches: "Sanguisugarum vna est venenosa, que est nigra vehementer ad modum antimonii, habens caput magnum & squamas ad modum piscium quorundam & habens medium viride, etiam alia, super quam sunt pili, habet magnum caput et colorem diuersum ad modum iris, in cuius colore sunt linee ad modum lazuli: que quotiens mordet, inde accidet apostema cum sincopi, febre, ebrietate, et laxitudine articulorum; tamen bona ipsarum est, que assimilatur colori aque in qua erit viriditas, habent super se duas lineas ad modum arsenici; sed blonde rotonde & ad colores epatis apte, que veloces sunt ad attrahendum sanguinem subtilem & que assimilantur caude muris, habentes odorem horribilem & similes locuste parvule et tenui & habentes ventrem ruffum cum nigrore & dorsum viride, sunt meliores; sed peiores erunt in aqua mala valde stabili, in qua sunt ranule multe, tamen bone sunt in aqua bona & optima." This account is copied by Avicenna, Lib. I., Fen. 4, Cap. 22, ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 62, bk. He differs in one point: "illas elige, que in aquis colliguntur, in quibus morantur rane. Neque attendas illud quod quidam dicunt, quod si sunt in aquis vbi morantur rane, sunt male."

sett', þe place schal be wel frotid tofore, þat' it' bicome reed, & þan sette þervpon a ventuse for to drawe þerto blood. & þan anoynte þe same place wiþ blood, & þan sette þervpon þe watir leche. & whanne he is ful & þou wolt' do him awei, blowe vpon þe place baurac, ouþer askis maad of' paper. & whanne he is falle awei, þan sette þervpon a ventuse aʒen to drawe more blood to þe plase. & þan sette þervpon anoþer watir leche, if' þere gaderiþ þerto miche mater. & þis maner is good for al maner blood þat' is rotid, for it' draweth it' out' /

Draw the blood to the place with cupping, before the leech is set on,

and use again cupping, when the leech has dropped.

## Of cauterium or brennyng of large & streite.[1]

¶ xviij co

CAuterium is seid in ij. maners, þat' is to seie large & streit'. & cauterium is seid propurli a brennynge wiþ gold or wiþ sum oþer instrument' þat' is hoot', ouþer wiþ watir or wiþ oile, ouþer wiþ medicyn caustica, ouþer wiþ herbis / And þer ben manie medicyns for to make cauterijs, whiche þou schalt' fynde pleynlier in þe antidotarie / A caterie is clepid streit',[2] whanne it' is maad wiþ an hoot' yren, wiþ gold, or wiþ siluir // Cauterijs þat' [3]ben maad wiþ medicyns þat' han vertu for to brenne / þer is seid a cauterie po[tentia]le whanne it' is not' hoot' in felinge / & þat' caterie preuailiþ wiþouten brennynge as herbis / þer is anoþer maner caterie: actual, for so miche as it' brenneþ in dede / Of' þis caterie auicen[4] spekiþ & seiþ, þat' it' is a medicyn, miche helpinge for to defende, þat mater schal not' departe into al þe lyme; & it' wole comforte þe lyme, & bringe it' into good complexioun aʒen, & it' wole dissolue mater þat' is corrupt', & it' wole streyne flux of' blood. & auicen seiþ, þat' a cauterie is oon of' þe beste pointis of' cirurgie / for þingis þat' mowe not' be fulfillid in long' tyme, wiþ caterie þei ben fulfillid / As it' is seid phisicians leueþ þis craft' to cirurgians. & þerfore it' is greet' wondir if' þer be ony good cirurgian founde, for þei ben alle lewid men. & if' a lewid man schal worche with cauterijs, þan he knowiþ not' þe difference bitwixe a caterie þat' is clepid actuel & potencial. & also þei knowe not' in what' place of' a mannes bodi þei schulen make hem. & þis is so repreued þat' it' is almoost' out' [5]of' vss / Also summen maken cauterijs in vnclene bodies þat' ben ful replet' of

A Cautery is any substance used for burning.

In a narrower sense it is the hot iron, gold or silver. [3 lf. 220]

A caustic medicine is called potential cautery.

The actual cautery is really burning.

The effects of cauterization.

Auicen praises the cautery.

The physicians leave its use in the hands of surgeons, who are all unlearned, and cannot distinguish the Cauterium actuale [5 lf. 220, bk.] and Cauterium potenciale.

[1] The translator misunderstood the meaning of the Latin, "large et stricte," in the following passage: Cauterium dicitur duobus modis, large & stricte.

[2] See the preceding note.

[4] Lanfranc mentions Avicenna, who has a short chapter about cauterization, Lib. I., Fen. 4, Cap. 29; yet he chiefly follows Gulielmus de Salic., Lib. V., Cap. I., but with many additions and alterations.

Some cauterize a patient, who is full of bad humours, wherof a cancer may ensue.

yuele humours, & þan cauterijs wolen do litil profit to passiouns þat̄ ben forseid, but̄ þer wole falle þerto so manie humouris, & make þe place of̄ þe cauterie to swelle, & liȝtly engendre a cancre. & þan men þat̄ ben vnkunnynge ben agast̄ herof̄ & ben not̄ hardi for to make no mo cauterijs. & if̄ þe patient hadde be purgid of̄ grete humours tofore, þan it̄ wolde not̄ haue fare so. ¶ And summen vsen cantarides for to make cauterijs þerwiþ, & leggen it̄ vpon men þat̄ han hote complexioun & drie; & þis is contrarious & falliþ greet̄ agreuaunce þerof̄, & þan þei seien þat̄ cauterijs ne ben nouȝt̄ worþ / But̄ auicen seiþ, þat̄ a cauterie is good tofore alle medicyns for to waaste & consume mater / if þe cauterie be sett̄ in place þere it̄ schulde be, but̄ if̄ the mater be so miche þat̄ þe cauterie mai not̄ consume it̄, as þou miȝt̄ se an ensample herof̄: þat̄ fier ouercomeþ alle þingis / but̄ if̄ þou doist̄ a litil fier among̃ miche wet̄ wode, þer wole come smoke þerof̄. & the fier [1]mai not̄ ouercome to waaste þe wode, for water þat̄ is in þe wode is more þan þe fier / In þe same maner it̄ fariþ of̄ a cauterie þat̄ is in a mannes bodi, if̄ he be ful of̄ humouris, þanne þe cauterie mai not̄ worche. & þerfor þou schalt̄ purge him wiþ laxatiuis tofore þe cauterie as it̄ is aforseid / Also þou schalt̄ make no cauterijs in a man þat̄ is ful of̄ gode humours as of̄ blood, for þan oonli blood-letyng̃ suffisiþ / but̄ if̄ þe patient be strong̃ & þe mater on him be coold & moist̄, þan a cauterie is good for to driue awei þe mater. & a man schal not̄ bere a cauterie, but̄ .ij. moneþis ouþer .iij. at̄ þe mooste. ¶ Now I wole telle þee a good rule / If̄ þou fyndist̄ in a mannes body a lyme in wei of corrupcioun[2]: as herisipula, or herpes estiomenus, ouþer formica, or in yuel disposicioun of̄ a wounde þat̄ bigynneþ to encancre,[3] & for al oþer corrupcioun, þan sette a cauterie in þe nexte welle to þe place, for þe cauterie wole defende þe place fro corrupcioun. ¶ Now speke we of̄ particlis of̄ cauterijs þat̄ falliþ in diuers placis of̄ a mannes bodi, & wiþ diuers instrumentis þei schulen [4]be maad, whiche þou schalt̄ se portraied[5] tofore þe, & her signis forþwiþ. ¶ þe .i. instrument̄ þat̄ is comoun & moost̄ in vss, is clepid **nodulum**,[6] & is an instrument̄ maad in þis maner / Take a brood plate of̄ iren & make þeron an hole, & leie þat̄ plate þere þou wolt̄ make þi cauterie. & þan þou muste haue an iren maad long̃ & smal & maad hoot̄, & putte it̄ in þat̄ hole of̄ þe plate / þis plate wole saue þe place þat̄ þe

Some use Cantarides.

Auicen says, the cautery is the best consuming medicine, if properly applied, and if there is not too much matter.

[1 lf. 221]

As a little fire has no effect on a large quantity of wet wood, so the cautery is inefficient, if the patient is too full of humours.

The patient shall not bear the cautery longer than three months.

Particulars about cauteries, [4 lf. 221, bk.] and the shape of the instruments:

1. **Nodulum**, an iron plate with a hole,

through which the red-hot iron is applied.

[2] Lat.: si membrum invenis in via corruptionis.
[3] *encancre*, med. Lat. incancrire; Dufr., Ital. incancherare.
[5] The figures are omitted. [6] Lat. anodulum, adnodulum.

cauterie schal be nomore but' as þou wolt' / & þat' iren þat' þou schalt' make þi cauterie þerwiþ, schal haue a litil round knap tofore. & þat' iren schal be maad hoot' til it' bicome reed / & þerwiþ þou schalt' make þi cauterie, & whanne þou doist' awei þin iren, þere wole be vlcus. & þan þou schalt' leie þeron butter or oold grese, or grese stampid wiþ caul-leues, & þat' is þe best' of' alle, & leie it' þerto, til þe cruste falle awei þat' þe hoot' iren made. & þan þou schalt' do þerto a litil pelot' maad of' lynnen clooþ round & hard. & þat' pelot' schal be anoyntid wiþ oile, & vpon þe place leie a caul-leef', or an yue-leef', or a vine-leef', & in þis [1]maner þou schalt' holde it' open as longe as þou wolt'. ¶ The .ij. cauterie is clepid **round**, & haþ no knap at' þe ende, but' it' is schape long', & whanne þou makist' þi cauterie, þou muste be war þat' þou touche no nerues ne veynes. & þis instrument' schal be maad in þis maner, þat' it' make a cauterie in boþe endis, after þat' þou desirist', greet' or smal. ¶ The .iij cauterie is clepid **punctuale**, & is ful necessarie whanne þou wolt' make a streit' cauterie. & is maad in þis maner. ¶ The .iiij. is clepid radiale, & is smal & scharp, & is good for children, & is maad in þis maner[2] / ¶ The .v. cauterie is maad in þis maner, & is swiþe comoun & is clepid **calcellare**.[3] & þis wole make a long' brennyng' as ouerþwert' þe heed, & whanne þou wolt' make vlcera long' þat' ben rounde, þan þou schalt' worche wiþ þis cauterie. ¶ The .vj. is clepid **subtile**, & is good for festris þat' sittiþ in þe corner of' a mannes iȝe, & it' is good for yuel fleisch þat' growiþ in a mannes iȝe, & is maad in þis maner / þis sotille [4]cauterie schal be maad hoot' & putt in a canel in þis maner // The .vj.[5] is clepid dactilare, for it' is schape as it' were þe stoon of' a date. & herwiþ þou schalt' make cauterijs in þe haunche. & þere schal be an instrument' schape as a table, & schal be leid to þe haunche in þis maner, & haþ .vj. arisyngis þeron as haþ a stoon of' a date.[6] & oon þerof' is in þe myddil, & .ij. aboue, & .j. binepe, & oon in boþe sidis in þis maner / Whanne þis instrument' is hoot', it' schal be putt' vpon a mannes haunche, & a table bitwixe maad of' iren. & þis table schal be coold, & þer schulen be .vj. holis

After this operation an ulcer is left, on which cabbage-leaves are applied.

[1 lf. 222]

2. The round cautery can be used at both ends.

3. punctuale.

Radiale is used for children.

4. Calcellare makes long burns.

5. Subtile, used for a fistula in the corner of the eye.

[4 lf. 222, bk.]

6. Dactilare, used to cauterize the haunch, is an iron instrument of two parts, one a table with five holes, the other with five eminences fitting into the holes.

[2] The description of the Cauterium radiale is an insertion of the translator. Lat.: "tertium cauterium punctuale, seu radiale, & est necessarium ubi valde strictum uolueris facere cauterium, & est sic factum." Gulielm. de Sal. Sloane 277, fol. 45, bk.: "*þe fifþe is clepyd cauterium minutum, or radiale or viduale þat is a comoun instrument to children.*"

[3] Add. 26106, fol. 98, bk.: "cutellare," printed ed. "cultellare."

[5] The translator, forgetting that he counted the "radiale" as a separate cautery, follows again the numbers of the original.

[6] Lat.: et habet v. eminentias sicut ossa dactilorum factas.

þeron, schape after þe cauterie þat haþ .vj. arisingis out as it is aforseid. And þou schalt make .v. cauterijs vpon a mannes haunche, & .ij. þerof schulen be aboue þe ioynct, & .ij. bi þe sidis, & oon vpon þe ioynct, & .j. tofore þe ioynct. ¶ þe vij. is clepid triangu- 4
7. **Triangulare.** lare, & þerwiþ þer mai be maad .iij. at oonys. & þis cauterie is good for þe haunche also, & is maad in þis maner / ¶ The .viij. cauterie
8. **Actuale** is like a needle, and is clepid actuale,[1] for sumtyme it is maad wiþ a nedle, & it is good
[2 lf. 223] used for the eye-brows. [2]for to make cauterijs þerwiþ in þe browis, & is maad sutil as a 8
**linguale.** nedele. ¶ The .ix. cauterie is clepid linguale, & it is schape as it
**Ceton.** were a tunge of a litil brid in þis maner. & it is good for to make cauterijs vpon a mannes browis / ¶ The .x. cauterie is clepid ceton,[3] & is maad triangulis holowid.[4] & in þe hole þerof þere may entre a 12 scharp instrument þat haþ a fenestre[5] as it were a nedele, & it schal be holde with coold tenaclis, also þe place þat þou wolt
The skin is lifted up with pincers, a hole is burnt through, and some threads of wool put in. make þi cauterie on. þou schalt take vp þe skyn wiþ tenaclis, & putt in þin hoot iren þoruȝ þe hole of þe tenaclis, & brenne þe skyn. 16 þan þou schalt make a corde of wollen ȝerne & wete it in blood, & drawe it þoruȝ þe holis, & þan þou schalt knytte þe .ij. endis togidere, & in þis maner þou schalt holde it open as longe as þou wolt. þis is a comoun cauterie, & þis cauterie mai be maad in þe mouþ of 20 þe stomac, & vpon þe lyuere & þe splene, & vpon þe ballocke-leþeris / Now þou knowist alle þin instrumentis, for to make cauterijs with, & her names / Now telle we in what maner & in what place þou schalt
[6 lf. 223, bk.] make hem / In oold heed-akynge, [6]whanne purgaciouns & laxatiuis 24
When all other medicines are inefficient to remove a chronic headache and other diseases arising from the head, & gargarismis & snesyngis[7] & clisterijs & opere maner of avoidynge, & wiþ enplastris & wiþ anoyntyng, whanne þe akynge of a mannes heed wole not go awei wiþ alle þese, ne þe epilencie,[8] ne noon passioun þat comeþ of þe heed, ne passiouns of þe iȝen, & 28 passiouns of þe eeren, & of þe noseþrillis, & oold couȝe, & flux of
use the Cauterium **Cultellare.** þe wombe þat comeþ of þe reume. ¶ For alle þese passiouns þou schalt make cauterie þat is clepid cultellare in þe welle of þe heed[9]

[1] *actuale*, a mistake for *acuale*.

[3] *ceton*, med. Lat. seto, sedo; Fr. séton; Ital. settone, "seton." Add. 26,106, and the printed ed. read: dicitur ad sectionem.

[4] Lat.: fit cum tenaculis perforatis.

[5] *fenestre*, Lat. fenestra; "la fenestre de la cannule," Paré; see *Littré Dict.*

[7] *snesyngis*, Lat. sternutationes.

[8] *epilencie*, O.Fr. epilence. Plinius: epilenticus. See Dufr. Matth. Sylv.: Epilensia .i. morbus caducus.

[9] Lat. in capitis fontinella. Phillips: "Fontanella, or Fonticulus, a little Well, or Spring: In Surgery, an Issue, or little Ulcer, made in sound parts of the Body, to let out bad Humours, and to Cure, or prevent Diseases. In

bihinde. & first' schaue awei þe heeris, *þere* þou wolt' make þi cauterie as it' is aforseid *with* an hoot' iren, & herof' þou schalt' be ware *þat'* þou lete not' *þat'* iren be *þere* to longe, but þou schalt' hastili make it', & hastily do awei þe iren, & þan þou schalt' do awei þe cruste *þerof'* wiþ butt*er*, or wiþ oold grese, or wiþ leeues of' caul, as it' is aforseid. ¶ þis cauterie schal be holde op*en* wiþ litil pelottis as it' is forseid as longe as þou wolt', til þe pa*tient* be hool / But' or þou make þi caut*erie*, þou muste be wel ware, as it' is aforseid, *þat' þin* iren lie not' to longe, [1]but' hastili take it' awei, for if' it' were *þere* longe his brayn myȝte be harmed *þerbi*. ¶ Wiþ þis cauterie I helide a wo*mman* þat' hadde passiou*ns* *in* hir heed manie diu*ers*, & I miȝte not' make hir hool *with* no *pur*gaciou*ns*, ne wiþ noon anoyntingis, & wiþ þis cauterie I made hir al hool. ¶ Also þou muste make a rou*nd* cauterie & touche oonly þe skyn *þerwiþ*, & do *þerto* seto. þis caut*erie* is good for passiou*ns* of' þe iȝen, & for epilenciam, & for o*þere* sijknessis of' þe heed; but' þis cauterie is not' so good as *þat'* o*þer* tofore. ¶ Also þou miȝt' make a cauterie *in* a ma*nnes* necke bytwixe þe boonys & þe skyn abouefor*þ*[2]; þis cauterie is good for þe spasme. ¶ Also wha*nne* a man is wou*ndid* *in* þe heed, þis cauterie is good for drede of' þe spasme; for herwiþ þe mater schal be consumed, *þat'* nerues ben redi for to take.[3] ¶ Also *in* þe welle vnd*er* þe eeris & bihinde þe eeris þou schalt' make cauterijs for passiou*ns* of' iȝen and for akynge of' þe teeþ. ¶ Sup*er*fluite of fleisch *þat'* is vpon a ma*nnes* browis, þou schalt' do awei wiþ a caut*erie* *þat'* is clepid lingual, [4]schape as it' were a tunge of' a brid. & þou schalt' make *þerwiþ* cauterijs vpon his browis, but' þou muste be war *þat'* þou touche not' þe natural substaunce of' þe browis. & þou schalt' make cauterijs *þer*vpon *with* caut*erium* punctuale, & for to do awei sup*er*fluite of' fleisch *þat'* is *in* þe corner of' a ma*nnes* iȝe. ¶ Sup*er*fluite of' fleisch *þat'* is *in* a ma*nnes* nose, it' mai be remeued awei wiþ cauterium acutum ou*þer* punctuale, for to touche *þerwiþ* þe fleisch a litil & a litil til al þe sup*er*fluite be take awei. & if' þis sup*er*fluite be fast *þer*on & be fer yn, þan þou muste vse a sutil caut*erie*, & putte it' in þe nose-þril

The iron must not be too long on the head.

[1 lf. 224]

The round cautery is good for **passiouns of' þe iȝen.**

A cautery applied on the neck is good for spasm.

The cauterium linguale [4 lf. 224, bk.] is used to remove a growth on the eyebrows.

A growth in the nose is removed with the Cauterium acutum.

Anatomy, the mould or root of the Nose." It was further a name for the place where these ulcers were produced, especially for a place between the sutures of the skull. Compare *Sowd. of Babyl.* 2951: [*he smote hir*] *ouer the founte throughoute the brayn.*

[2] Lat.: cutem superficialiter tangendo.

[3] Lat.: nam materia per hoc consumitur, per quam neruorum inbibitio expectatur.

þoruȝ þe canel, þat þe hete ne mowe not harme þe substaunce of þe nose, but oonly brenne þe superfluite of þe fleisch. ¶ Also þou schalt make a round cauterie vndir a mannes chyn. & þis cauterie is good for weanys þat ben in þe skyn of his face, & for þe place,[1] & for þe palet, & for sijknes in a mannes mouþ, & in þe gomys, & in þe teeþ. ¶ Also þou miȝt make .ij. cauterijs in boþe a mannes armys, wiþoutforþ þe arme, in þe welle þat is vpon þe grete braun a litil [2] bineþe þe schuldre. & þis cauterie is good for sijknes þat ben in þe partie bihinde of a mannes brayn as for þe litarge,[3] & also it purgiþ wel þe nerues of þe necke / Also þou miȝt make anoþer in þe welle vndir þe grete braun, and is good for þe brayn wiþinneforþ as for scotomia & vertigine, & for water þat falliþ adoun fro a mannes heed to hise iȝen, & it is good for al passiouns of a mannes iȝen / Also þou schalt make a cauterie cultellaria[4] bitwene a mannes fyngris / And þese cauterijs ben gode for passiouns ciragra / Also þou schalt make cauterijs in þe brest wiþ a round cauterie, and is good for asma[5] / Also þou miȝt make a cauterie toward þe forke of þe brest aboue for disma[6] / Also þou miȝt sumtyme make cauterijs in þe brest, þat ben clepid cultellaria, bitwixe þe ribbis, & þese cauterijs been good for empima,[7] *id est* apostyme wiþinne / Also þou miȝt make cauterijs punctualia in þe rigboon for gret akinge þat a man haþ in þat place / Also þou miȝt make cauterijs wiþ a round instrument vpon þe regioun of þe stomak, for long febilnes þat a man haþ had in his stomak / Also þou miȝt [8] make cauterijs vnder þe nauele & vppon þe lyuere & vpon þe splene, ffor colicam passionem & for þe sijknes of þe lyuere & vpon þe splene & for dropesie. And alle þese cauterijs wolen be maad best wiþ seton / Also þou miȝt make .ij. cauterijs in þe haunchis as it is aforseid / Also þou

The round cautery is applied beneath the chin for skin-disease.

A cautery applied on [2 lf. 225] the arms is used against lethargy.

A cautery on the fingers is used for chiragra.

Cauteries are used for asthma,

empyema,

for diseases of the rig-bone,

the stomach,

[8 lf. 225, bk.]

the liver, and the spleen,

they are best made with a Seton.

[1] *place* for *plage?* Lat.: saphati et pustulas.

[3] *litarge*, lethargy. Compare *Leechd.* I., p. 200: "*wiþ þa adle ðe man litargum hateð, þat ys on ure geþeode ofergytulnys cweden.*"

[4] Lat.: "Fiunt cauteria cutellaria superficialia inter digitum et digitum in cyragra. De propr. rer. Lib. VII., Cap. 29, Trevisa, Add. 27,944, fol. 87 *a*: "*Difficulte & hardnesse of breþinge hat asma & cometh of double cause of drynes þat streyneþ þe lungen.*"

[5] *asma*, med. Lat. asma, ἄσθμα.

[6] *disma*, Add. 26106, fol. 89, bk.: "propter disimiam." Dufr., "dyspnia, δύσπνοια." *Simon. Barth.*, p. 18: "Disma est species asmatis, sed disma fit ex siccitate, asma ex humiditate."

[7] *empima*, Lat. empimia. *Simon. Barth.*, p. 19: "Empima, i. sputum saniosum ex pulmonis infeccione proveniens." De propr. rer. Lib. VII., Cap. 30, Add. 27,944, fol. 87 *a*: "*empima is a passioun, whan me spetiþ quittir.*"

mi3t make .ij. cauterijs vndir þe knee, for þe akynge of þe knees & of þe ballokis & of þe maris. Also þou mi3t make .ij. cauterijs vndir þe kne, wiþoutforþ for remedie of al þe bodi, for it avoideþ wel alle partijs of a mannes bodi / & I haue seen manie men þat han maad cauterijs in þat place, or his bodi were purgid, & humouris fel so myche þerto þat his leggis & his hipis to-swollen al greet. & if he hadde be purgid tofore, he schulde not haue fare so. & aboue þe ancle ben maad cauterijs for sijknes of þe ballokis. & also it is good for wommen / Also bitwixe þe toos ben maad cauterijs for þe potagre[1] / Also if þou purgist a man or a womman wiþ medicyns laxatiuis, & þan makist a cauterie as it is aforseid. & if þe passioun go not awei at þis oon doinge, þan þou schalt neuere þe lattere [not][2] be in dispeir of cauterijs,[3] but þou schalt bigynne to purge [4]him a3en & make him a cauterie a3en. & if it so be þat he be miche feblid herwiþ, þan þou schalt restore a3en wiþ gode metis & drinkis þat engendriþ good humours. & whanne he is restorid a3en, þan þou schalt bigynne & purge him a3en, & þan make hise cauterijs a3en, & in þis maner þou schalt worche wiþ þi cauterijs. ¶ ffor manie men makiþ oon cauteric or .ij, & if þei seen þat it profitiþ not, þan þei leeueþ of & worchiþ nomore. & manie men contynuede þeron til þe pacient be brou3t al doun & li3tli deed / & in þis maner ne schulde not a leche worche / ffor G. seiþ : it is a feble leche, þat can not helpe þat is able to be holpen. & defaute herof is þis : þat manie lechis 3eueþ medicyns, & ne makiþ no space to bringe þe patient into good staat a3en[5] / Alle þese rulis þat G. seiþ þou schalt attende in þis maner : if þe patient be maad feble wiþ medicyns laxatiuis & wiþ cauterijs, þan þou cesse of þi medicyns & 3eue him comfortatif metis & drinkis for to releue him a3en, & þan þou mi3t worche wiþ þi medicyns a3en. & þus þou mi3t do perfitly þe cure / And heron manie men erriþ þat ben holden ful kunnyng / [6]& perfore I haue sett it in þis place þat it mowe be ensaumple to þee / Also þou schalt make a cauterie vpon rotid fleisch, til þou haue take awei al þe corrupcioun þerof. & in þis caas we mowen vse hoot feruent oile for to springe vpon þe corrupcioun,

Cauteries on the knee are used for the genital organs of men and women.

The patient must be purged before being cauterized.

If the disease is not cured at once, [4 lf. 226] repeat the purging and cauterizing.

Many surgeons use the cauteries wrongly.

*Galien.* Allow the medicine time to work.

*Galien.*

Cauterize corrupt flesh with hot oil.

[6 lf. 226, bk.]

[1] *potagre*, Lat. podagra. *Hamp.* 2984 : "*for sleuthe als þe potagre and þe gout.*" De propr. rer., Trevisa, Add. 27,944, fol. 96, bk. : "*Arthetica is ache and evel in fingres and tone wiþ swellinge & sore ache, and whanne hit is in þe fyngres hit hatte cyragra, and in þe toone hit hatte podagra.*"

[2] *not*, omitted. Lat. : nec propter hoc desperes.

[3] See p. 284, note 7.

[5] Add. 26,106, fol. 93 : si plus dant, non interponunt spacium nutriendi.

so þat it ne touche noon hool[1] place, & þis maner is ful good to take awei corrupcioun of fleisch, & it is bettir þan medicina caustica / Whanne þou wolt worche with medicyns caustica, þan do as it schal be seid in þe antidotarie of þis book /

## Of þe cure of brennyng wiþ fier ouþer with hoot watir or with oile.

¶ xix°. c° 7 Burns and scalds are treated with cold medicines, before blisters are formed,

A Mannes lymes ben brent wiþ fier, watir, ouþir wiþ oile / In þis caas þis is þe firste entencioun: or þe place bigynne to bladdre,[2] þou muste haue medicyns þat ben colde / And if it so be þat þe place be vlceratus, & þou were not at þe firste bigynnyng, or if þe brennyng be so miche þat þou miȝt not defende, þat vlcera ne come not þeron, & þan þou must haue medicyns þat ben lasse coold, & medicyns þat ben clepid stiptica not fretynge / þese ben symple medicyns [3]in þe firste caas / Take marbil stoon & grinden smal, & alle þe sandalis,[4] & solatrum, & watir of rosis, & watir of cucurbita, & water of virga pastoris, & of alle þese þingis make a þing for to leie þeron / Also oile of rosis, & þe ȝelke of an ey ben good þerfore / Also bole armoniac temperid wiþ vinegre is good þerfore. And it muste ofte be remeued & ofte leid to aȝen, for þe cooldnes of ofte remeuyng schal defende it fro bladdring /

with styptics in case of ulceration.

[3 lf. 227] Simple medicines applied in the first case.

Medicines applied in the second case. Naturel medicyns þat ben gode in þe secunde caas: / But vnguentum de calx maad in þis maner / R7, calcis viue bene cocte þat ben maad of an hard stoon, and waische it wiþ coold watir til it lete al his scharpnes, & þan wiþ oile of rosis & wex make an oynement /

R7

Also vnguentum album Rasis þat is maad in þe antidotarie is good þerfore / I nyle for þis cure sette no mo medycyns. Þoruȝ þe grace of god almiȝty þe þridde tretis is fulfillid //

## Here endiþ þe þridde book, and bigynneþ þe fourþe book // Of brekyng of boonis,[5] & sumtyme of brusyng of boonys, and a general techyng for alle //[6]

[1] MS. *hoot*, Lat.: quod loca sana ulterius non attingat.
[2] *bladdre*, vesicari. [4] Lat. omnes sandali. [5] MS. *bookis*.
[6] Lat. heading: "Explicit tractatus tertius huis libri. Incipit quartus, qui est de algebra, et continet duas summas. Summa prima tractatus quarti septem continet capitula. Capitulum primum summæ primæ tractatus quarti, de fractura ossium sermo generalis." The translator has kept the heading of the first chapter, but left out the chapter itself. His first chapter,

A Mannes nose is sumtyme to-broken,[2] & sumtyme pressid adoun. & if he be hastili holpen his nose mai be restorid azen, & if it be longe or he haue ony help, þanne he schal be maymed for euermore[3] / If þou comest at þe firste bigynnyng þou schalt do in þis maner / putte yn þe fingir of þe lifthand anoon to þe brekyng, þi leeste fyngir or what fyngir wole best yn, & wiþ þi riȝthond presse vpon þe brekyng, & arere vpward wiþ þi fyngir within forþ, & presse wiþ þin hond wiþoutforþ & bringe it as it schulde be. Þan make a strong tent & so longe þat he mowe passe aboue þe brekyng, & þan þis tent schal be diȝt wiþ a litil wex hoot & a litil sotil poudre of mastik & sandal, & schape þerof in þe maner of a candel, & þan putte it into his nose, wiþoutforþ leie of consolidatiuis þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, & abouteforþ þou schalt leie a defensif, & þou schalt binde his nose wiþ boondis,[4] & leie sutil lynnen clooþ in boþe sidis of his nose as [5]it is aforseid in þe chapiter of woundis in a mannes face / If þou miȝt not putte yn þi fyngir in his noseþrel, þan make a tent of tre & hile it wiþ lynnen clooþ þat it be oold & neissche, & þan anointe þis tent wiþ oile of rosis, & putte þis in his noseþrel in stide of þi fyngir, & þerwiþ arere vp his nose wiþinneforþ,[6] & wiþ þin hond wiþoutforþ make his nose euene til þe boon be brouȝt in his propre place þat is to-broke. ¶ Of his dietyng, & blood-letyng, & ventusis, & clisterijs, ouþer suppositorijs, do as þou seest þat it is to do, & as it is aforseid.

[1 lf. 227, bk.] ¶ 10. co/ A broken nose, unless soon re-adjusted, remains deformed. Restore the nose by manipulation. Plug the nostrils with a strong tent. [5 lf. 228] Take care of the general treatment.

¶ If a manes cheke-boon[7] in þe liftside be to-broke, þan putte If the cheek-bone is broken,

which has no heading, is Lanfranc's second one: Capitulum secundum summe prime de fractura ossium faciei.

[2] Compare: *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., Sect. xci., ed. Adams, vol. II., p. 443, and *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. v., Tract 3, Cap. 3, ed. Venet. 1527, fol. 365 *b*.

[3] Gul. de Sal., Sloane 277, fol. 34: "*Thow schalt wite þat þe boon of þe nose is oþerwhile depressyd & oþerwhile broken, & ȝif soþely it be depressyd, þat is to sey born down or broken withoute wounde, anoon in þe firste visitacion, be þe seknesse restoryd, whil it is newe, for ȝif it were hard, ouþer þer schal dwelle euermore fnattydnesse or euel schapp.*" *fnattydness*, translates med. Lat. simitas σιμότης, snubbiness. [4] MS. *broondis*.

[6] Gul. de Sal. Sloane 277, fol. 34: "*And ȝif þou may not do þat wiþ þi fynger, putte in þe hole of þe nose on þe hurt syde a softe rownd sticke maad euene & semely, & anoynted with oyle of rosis . . . and þou maist also lappe þilke sticke in a clene lynen clout & anoynte þe clout wiþ þe same oile, & þanne þe sticke schal be þe more tretable.*"

[7] *Avic.* Lib. IV., Fen. v. Tr. 3, Cap. 2, ibid.: "Si frangitur mandibula dextra, tunc intromitte indicem, et medium manus sinistre in os infirmi. et cet." Gul. de Sal. Lib. III., Cap. 2. Sl. 277. fol. 34 *b*: "*ȝif soþely þe boon of þe vppere chawel or of þe neþere were maad*[a] *withoute wounde, putte þi ryȝt hond in þe mouþ of þe seeke.*" [a] Sl. 6. fol. 115 *b*, *broken*.

re-adjust it by manipulation, and hold it in position by tying the teeth together,

yn þi strongist' fyngris of' þi lifthond tweyne & bringe þe boon *in*to his *pro*pre place aȝen, & *presse* wiþ þi riȝthond wiþoutforþ ; & if' þe cheke-boon be to-broke *in* þe riȝtside, þanne putte yn .ij. fyngris of' þi riȝthond, and bringe þe boon to his *pro*pre place aȝen, as it' is afor- 4
seid. & wha*n*ne þe boon is brouȝt' as it' schulde be, þat' þou miȝt' knowe if' his teeþ sittiþ euene as þei schulde do, & þan binde hise

[1 lf. 228, bk.] teeþ wiþ a strong' þreed wexid [1] & bounden bitwixe his teeþ, & leie

and by applying a bandage.

*per*vpon oon of' þe consolidatiuis & binde hi*m in* þe same maner, þat' 8
þe boond be maad fast' bihindeforþ in his necke. & þan it' schal be turned aȝe*n* to his forheed, & þou schalt' binde hi*m* wiþ þi boond manyfoold, þat' þe boon þat' is to-broke mowe be holde *in* his *pro*pre

The patient shall only take meat fit to be sipped.

place / And þe pa*tient* schal ete no metis but' þingis þat' he may 12
soupe / For if' he chewide, it' wolde make þe boon falle out' of' his place aȝen, & *in* .xx. daies þis boon mai be restorid aȝen //

## ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe þrote and of þe brest // [2]

¶ ijo. co. The upper jaw-bone is immovable, for three reasons.

THe cheke-boon aboue meueþ not', & þat' is for .iiij. causis : oon 16
is þat' þe cheke-boon bineþe is more liȝt' & more able *per*fore, þe .ij. cause is þis : þe cheke-boon is niȝ noble lymes, & if' þe cheke-boon aboue meuede, þe noble lymes miȝten be enpeirid *per*bi. þe .iiij. cause is þis : if' þe cheke-boon aboue meuede, *pere* nolde be noon 20
strong' co*n*iunccio*un* bitwene he*m* / *per*fore þe cheke-boon aboue is

[3 lf. 229] fast' maad to þe boonys of' þe heed, as it' is aforseid *in* anothomia*m*.

The lower jaw-bone consists of 2 bones; joins with the upper jaw-bone by ligaments.

¶ The cheke-boon bineþe is maad of' .ij. boonys ioyned [3] togid*ere* *in* þe chyn. & þis boon is *maad* fast' *with* þe cheke-boon aboue wiþ 24
ligaturis þat' ben stronge & reeching' & wiþ lacertis, & maket*h* þe cheke-boon meue wha*n*ne a man wole, for su*m*me *per*of' comeþ adou*n* fro þe boonys of' þe heed, & ben ioyned wiþ *par*tijs of nerues

Nerves convey the motor phenomena from the brain and spine.

of' þe heed, & of' nuche, & closiþ togidere þe cheke-boon. [Summe 28
comeþ [4]] bineþe aforȝens þe brest', and ben medlid wiþ nerues of' nuche & openeþ þe cheke-boon, & su*m*me comeþ fro þe sidis, &

[2] Lanfranc divides the fourth book into two "doctrines," the one dealing with fractures, the other with dislocations. The scribe of the present translation omits this division and the first chapter of each doctrine. He also puts the chapter on dislocation of the jaw-bone, which was originally the 2nd chapter of the 2nd doctrine immediately after the chapter on fracture of the jaw-bone, still retaining the heading of the 3rd chapter of the first doctrine : "*ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe þrote and of þe brest.*" The two tables of contents show the same order as the original.

[4] *Summe comeþ*, wanting. Lat. Add. 26106, fol. 96 bk. : "alii veniunt ab inferius versus pectus." The prints differ.

meueþ þe cheke-boon round, whanne a man couwid.[1] & þis cheke-boon bineþe mai be brouȝt of þe ioynct fro þe cheke-boon aboue in .ij. maners: ouþer it goiþ of þe ioynct bihindeward, & þan þe teeþ þat ben in þe cheke-boon bineþe goiþ wiþinne þe teeþ of þe cheke-boon aboue. & þan he may not opene his mouþ, & it goiþ out of þe ioynct forward, & þan þe teeþ þat ben in þe cheke-boon bineþe goiþ forþere out þan þe teeþ aboue. & he mai not close his mouþ togidere[2] / These signys ben certeyn whanne þe boon is out of his ioynct / It is greet nede for to helpe a man hastily in þis caas; for if þe [3]cheke-boon be out of ioincte longe, þere ben manie nerues & lacertis & arterijs & veines aboute þat place, & for þis cause it wexiþ hard anoon. & þis place wole soone take enpostym for divers humours þat wolen falle þerto. & if þer falle an enpostym in þis place, þan, for þe brayn is so niȝ, þer comeþ a frenesie þerof & ofte tyme dieþ / & þerfore if he be hastili holpen, þe boon wole liȝtly into þe ioinct aȝen. & þerfore þat ioinct haþ liȝt meuynge / ffor eueri ioinct þat haþ hard meuynge, & he be out of þe ioinct, it wole be hard for to bringe yn aȝen / If it so be þat þe cheke-boon be out of ioinnct hindeward, þan þou schalt take þe boon first wiþ þi .ij. hondis, & lete a man holde his heed & drawe þe boon forþward.[4] & if it so be þat his mouþ be closid togidere, þan þou schalt opene his mouþ wiþ þin hond or with sum oþer instrument, & þan take faste þe boon & drawe it to his place aȝen. & in þis maner þou schalt knowe whanne it is in his propre place aȝen, if his teeþ sitten euene, & if he may opene his mouþ / ¶ If þou miȝt not bringe þe boon to his propre place in þis maner, þan þou muste take a strong boond, & sette it vndir his chyn, þere þou [5]settist þi fyngris, & anoþer man mote drawe þe boond strongly & euene, & wiþ a wagge þou muste opene his mouþ. In þis maner

The dislocation of the lower jaw is either backwards

or forwards.

Help must come soon, [3 lf. 229, bk.]

or the place gets indurated, and an apostema may be formed.

If the dislocation is backwards, draw the bone forwards,

if necessary by means of a strong bandage. [5 lf. 230]

[1] Lat.: in masticando.

[2] Gul. de Sal. Lib. III., Cap. 18. Sl. 277, fol. 42 *b*: "*The tokenes of þe dislocation inward ben þat þe mouþ leueþ opene, & þat þe teþ of þe neþere chawel goon tofore þe teþ of þe vppere chawl. ¶ The tokenes of þe dislocacioun owtward ben þat þe mouth is schut & in no manere may be openyd, & þe seeke may not chewe & þe teþ drawe vp toward þe palett, & þer schewiþ in þe vttere party in þe place of þe dislocacion an opene outberynge out of mesure, & þe speche is bynomen hym.*"

[4] Gul. de Sal. Sl. 277, fol. 42 *b*: "*The dislocacion knowe, wheþer it be to þe innere party or þe vttere, a wyse leche oweþ to putte his þumbes wiþinne þe mouþ of þe seeke, & festene hem vpon þe wange-teþ of þe neþere iowe of þe seeke, & wiþ þe oþere four fyngeres he schal take þe iowe dislocate fro þe vttere, & þat tyme he schal haue a mynystre, which schal holde fast þe heuyd of þe seeke.*"

þou openynge his mouþ, & he drawing' wiþ þe boond as it' is aforseid, al at' oonys wiþouten drede þe boon wole come into his ioynct'.[1]

If the dislocation is forwards, let an assistant draw the bone backwards,

¶ If' it' be out' of' þe ioinct' forward, þan þou schalt' sette a strong' boond vpon his chin, þat' it' hile al þe chin, & lete a man stonde bihinde him & halde þe boond in hise hondis, & he schal sette his knees vpon his schuldris, & he schal drawe þe boon to him wel & euenly. & þou schalt' putte a wegge in his mouþ, & whanne he drawiþ þe boon þou schalt' opene his mouþ wiþ þe wegge al at' oon tyme, & in þis maner þe boon schal falle into his ioinct'. Whanne þe boon is ynne, þan binde it' faste wiþ a ligature & with enplastre, & lete him haue souping' metis, & he schal chewe no mete til þe place be al fast' / ¶ If' it' so be þat' þou were not' at' þe first' bigynnyng', & þe place is enpostymed, & he haue þe feuere & akynge of' his heed, þan schaue his heed & anoynte it' wiþ oile of' rosis & a litil vinegre medlid þerwiþ. & þou schalt' [2]anoynte his heed with sum mollificatif', or wiþ dokis grese or wiþ hennys. & þou schalt' worche as miche as þou miȝt' for to acesse þe enpostym, & for to cure þe feuere, & for to comforte his heed, þat' þe frenesie ne come not' to him / Whanne þe feuere & þe frenesie & þe enpostym be remeued awei, þan cure him as it' is aforseid //

and open the mouth by a wedge.

In case of apostema use ointments

[2 lf. 230, bk.]

to remove the apostema and the fever,

and then reduce the dislocated bone.

## ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe þrote and of þe brest //[3]

¶ iij. co.

THe forke of' þe þrote is clepid of' summen patena, & of' summen cathena.[4] Sumtyme it' is to-broke & nouþer part' of' þe boon ne is not' ypressid yn, & þan þe cure þerof' is liȝt' ynow. But' if' þat' oon ende of' þe boon be pressid adoun vndir þat' oþer, þan it' is ful hard for to bringe it' yn aȝen. Whanne nouþer partie is pressid adoun, þan it' is noon oþer nede for to haue no medicyn but' stupis wet in white of' eiren ; & leie it' vpon þe brekynge of' þe boon, & binde wel þe place wiþ ligaturis ; & his arme of' þe same side mote be hongid to his necke, & in his arme-pitt' þou schalt' leie a bal of' lynnen cloop. & þou muste binde his arme þat' he mowe not' meue his arm [5]toward þe forke of' þe bre t', & in þis maner he mote

The cure is easy if no part of the broken bone is pressed in.

Apply bandages and tie the arm on the injured side to the neck.

[5 lf. 231]

[1] Add. 26106, fol. 97: ita quod tu aperiendo et minister trahendo vna hora locum suum intrat, quia sic sine dubio restaurabis.

[3] *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., 93, ed. Adams, vol. ii. p. 447. *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. 5, Tract 3, Cap. 4, ed. Ven. 1527, p. 365 *b*.

[4] *patena*, *cathena*, names for the *furcula*, as it seems peculiar to Lanfranc. The furcula, taken to be one bone, comprises the sternal bone and the clavicles. "Catena," chain, is synonymous with "clavicula ;" and patena, med. Lat. = plate, is a proper denomination of the sternal bone.

be kept' til þe boon be al hool. ¶ If' it' so be þat' oon ende of' þe boon be pressid adoun, þan a man mote drawe his oon arme, & anoþer man his oþere arme, & þou schalt' wiþ þin hondis drawe þe boon to his propre place. þan þou muste haue a medicyne consolidatif', & wete þerinne a lynnen clooþ, & hile al þe brekyng' of' þe boon þerwiþ, & leie þervpon faldellas[1] wiþ white of' an ey, & þan binde him as it' is aforseid, and his arme to his necke, & in þis maner he schal be kept til he be hool.

If one end of the bone is pressed in, replace it, and apply a medicine.

## ¶ Of brekyng of rigboonys /[2]

¶ iiij. co/

RIgge boonys for her schortnes & for her strongnes ne ben not' to-broke, but' if' it' be wiþ greet' smytyng', & sumtyme þei ben brusid, & þat' makiþ greet' akynge. Also þer falliþ manie perels of' þe boonys of' þe necke if' þei ben hurt', lest' nucha be hirt' also, & þan it' is perel of' þe brayn as it' is aforseid / If' þou seest' yuel signes in þat' caas, go awei þerfro. & if' þou seest' noon yuele signys, þan anointe þe place wiþ oile of' rosis hoot' & leie þervpon wolle, and þanne [3]terbentine medlid wiþ a litil mastic, & þis medicyne þou schalt' vse til þe place be al hool /

If the rigbone is broken, there is danger that the spine be hurt. Flee in case of evil symptoms, else apply an ointment. [3 lf. 231, bk.]

¶ The noumbre of' a mannes ribbis is aforeseid in þe anothamie / A mannes ribbis ben to-broke sumtyme wiþ smytyng' or wiþ fallyng' / Also þei moun be plied inward & not to-broke. ¶ In þis maner þou schalt' knowe wheþir a mannes rib be to-broke or no / Sette þi fyngris vpon þe place & grope softli & presse a litil vp & doun, & if' his rib be to-broke, þou schalt' heere hym sownie,[4] & he schal haue couȝinge & akinge in his side. ¶ It' is ful hard for to restore a rib þat' is to-broke, for sumtyme þat' oon parti plieþ inward, & þan it' is hard for to bringe him into his propre place aȝen / And summen seien þat' þe pacient' schulde ete metis to swelle him þat' engendriþ wijnd, & wole make þe rib goon into his propre place aȝen. & summen seien þat' me schulde sette a ventuse, & wiþ

One knows that a rib is broken by the sound which is heard on pressure.

Some men propose that the patient should take food which produces wind,

[1] *faldella*, med. Lat., diminutive of *falda*, thread.

[2] Lat. de fractura spondilium et costarum.

[4] Gul. de Sal. lib. III., Cap. 5. Sl. 277, fol. 36: "*ȝif it happe þe rybbis to be broken in oo place or in two þat þou schalt wite by touchynge, for þei þat of þristynge down of þe hond vpon þe place or places. þou schalt heere a sown & with þat þe seeke schal suffre penaunce or lettynge of breþ, & principally þe tyme of drawynge of wynd.*" The sound, "crepitus," produced by pressure of the hand on the injured place, as a test whether a rib is fractured, is already mentioned in *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., 96, ed. Adams, vol. ii., p. 452.

others propose cupping. Both are wrong.

þe drawing' þerof' þe rib wole rise vp azen into his propre place / But' I suppose þis wole more make agreuaunce þan helpe þe patient / ffor þe .j. wole engendre an hoot' en[1]postyme / The .ij. it' wole drawe to þe place manie humours / If' þou wolt' take þis cure, þou schalt' do in þis maner : / ffirst' þou schalt' lete him blood in þe side aforzens in þe veyne þat' is clepid basilica, & þan in þe same, & þan anoynte þin hond wiþ terbentine. & loke if' þou miȝt' take vp þe rib þat' is pressid adoun. & þin oþer hond þou schalt' sette vpon þe place þat' is not' pressid adoun. & wiþ þin hond þat' is anoyntid arere vp his rib. & loke þat' þe .ij. endis of' þe ribbis þat' is to-broke come euene togidere, & þan make þe patient to couze, for þis þe beste maner for to bringe him yn[2] / If' þou dredist' nouȝt greet' repleciou̇n of' his bodi, þou miȝt' opene a ventuse whanne þe rib is ioyned. & þan þou schalt' binde wiþ a boond, & vndir þe boond þou schalt' leie lynnet' or sum oþer neische þing'. & þou schalt' binde him in sich a maner þat' þe rib þat' is to-broke ne mowe not' remoue ne falle adoun azen. & þe patient schal vse liȝt' mete as pultes de caudarisio,[3] de amido, de tritico, wiþ penides, & he schal drinke swete wijn temperatli, & þou muste defende [4]him fro wraþþe & fro crijnge, & fro alle þingis þat' wolen make a man to couze. ¶ If' it' so be þat' þe akynge aceese not', & þou ne miȝt' not' bringe his rib as he schulde be, & if' he haþ greet' cowȝynge & acces of' þe feuere,[5] whanne þou hast' lete him blood, þan þou muste kutte þe skyn aforzens þe rib þat' is to-broke, & vnhile þe same rib of' al his fleisch, & þan wiþ instrumentis & wiþ þin hond þou muste drawe vp þe rib, & bringe him in his place as he schulde be. & þan þou schalt' cure þe wounde as it' is aforseid / // His dietynge schal be as of' pluretici til þe feuere & al þe passiouns ben goon awei //

Bleed the patient from the Basilic vein,

readjust the broken rib,

let the patient cough.

Apply a bandage.

If there is strong fever, readjust the rib by operation.

[1 lf. 232]

[4 lf. 232, bk.]

## Of brekyng of þe helpers of þe rigboon.

¶ v. cº. Fracture of the arm bone near the joint is dangerous.

A Diutorium is to-broken ful ofte ouerþwert' wiþ breking' / þe nere þat' it' be þe ioynct', þe more perilous it' is, & þe worse for to cure / In þis place I wole telle þee in what' maner þou schalt' knowe a brekyng', & in what' maner þou schalt' restore it' azen, þat'

[2] Gul. de Sal. Sl. 277, fol. 36 : "*make hym eft cowȝe sadly, & vpon þe place þrist down or broken, þou schalt putte a gret ventuse wiþout cuttynge.*"

[3] Sim. de Janua : "Caudarusium, Spelta, genus frumenti, quod quidam allicam dicunt, quidam Caudarusium."

[5] *acces of þe feuere*, Lat. si febris accideret.

it mowe be an ensample to þee *in* þe breki*ng*,[1] if a m*a*nnes arme & his leggis & his hipe-boon be*n* broke*n* / In þis maner þou schalt knowe: / Lete a man holde his arme [2]wiþ .ij. hondis faste bi þe schuldre, & he mot holde hi*m* in þat maner þat he mowe not meue hi*m*-silf; & þou schalt stonde tofore hi*m*, & take his arme faste bi þe elbowe, & meue his arme hidir & þidir liȝtli til þou heere sownynge of þe boon, & wh*a*nne þou knowist þe place þat it is to-broke.[3] & þis man*er* asaiy*n*g is good wh*a*nne þe brekynge is so pr*i*uy þat no p*a*rtie of þe boon goiþ *in* no side out / Wh*a*nne þou knowist where þe breki*ng* is, or þou bigynne ony þi*n*g for to worche þer*on*, make redi alle þi necessarijs þat ben gode for þe bindyng. ¶ First þou schalt make stupis þat ben euene, & wete hem *in* hoot water in winter, & *in* coold water *in* somer, & þan wrynge out þi stupis þerof & diȝte oile of ros*is* & a defensif of bole, & ij. longe boondis þat þei be .iiij. fyngris brood, & lynnen cloþ þat mowe go aboute al his arme, & a strong corde; & þe corde wole be þe better if it be playn, & not round. & þou muste diȝte smale ȝerdis of drie tree, þat be strong & sotil. & wh*a*nne þou hast diȝt alle þese þingis redi, þan sette þe boon *in* his place as liȝtli — — —[4] w*i*th þin hond wiþouten greuau*n*ce. & þan take [5]oold soft lynnen cloþ, & wete it *in* oile of ros*is*, and wijnde it aboute his arme. & vpon þis leie a cloþ wiþ medicyns consolidatif, þat schal be seid *in* þe antidotarie for brekynge of boonys; & þerfore þese .ij. lynnen cloþis moten be large for to hile al þe brekyng / And þou muste haue cloutis *in* .ij. sidis of þe place þat is to-broke, & þervpon þou muste leie faldellam *in* boþe sidis euene, & wet *in* gleire of an ey. & alle þese þingis þou schalt binde wiþ þi boond, þat schal be þe brede of .iiij. fyngris, & long þat he mowe goon aboute manifoold. & sewe þe foldyng of þe boond þat he mowe not vndo / Vpon þis ligature þou schalt leie faldellam maad of stupis, & he schal oonly be wet *in* wat*er* & leid vpon. & hervpon

Symptoms.

The second [illegible] moving the arm.

First prepare all that you require:

the dressing,

the oil, the bandages,

a strong cord,

and splints.

Reduce the fracture, [5 ff. 233, bk.]

apply soft linen,

two clouts and wadding,

tie a bandage round the limb,

[1] MS. has a full-stop between *breking* and *if*. Lat.: ut sit tibi exemplum in ruptura brachii, crurium et coxarum.

[3] Lat.: et cum tactu locum fracture cognoueris manifeste. Gul. de Sal., Sl. 277, fol. 37: "*When þe adiutorie, or þe boon fro þe elbowe to þe schuldre is broken, it schal be knowe to þe touchynge in þis: The leche schal drawe þe hurt place wiþ boþe his hondes, & putte þat oon hond vpon þe place hurt, & þat oþer wiþinne. ¶ And haue he a mynystre, whiche schal bere vp togidere þe elbowe wiþ þe arm. And þanne þe leche, meuynge softely his handis, schal heere þe sown of þe broken boon, or he schal feele þe disseuerynge of þe parties of þe broken boon.*"

[4] Some words are wanting. Lat.: quantumcumque potes leuius operando.

and splints secured by a cord, which shall be strained but moderately.

þou schalt leie þi splentis[1]; & wiþ a corde þat be brood, & not round, þei schulen be bounden þervpon. & þou schalt streyne middilly,[2] & not to faste / Herof þou muste be war, þat streynyng þat is in þis place & in opere placis ne schulen not be so harde þat þe place bicome blak, ne þat he mowe fele his lyme / Ther ben summen þat streynen so faste a manys lyme, þat þe spirit of me[3]uynge, ne þe spirit of lijf mai not come þerto. & þan þei seeþ þat þe place is to-swolle, & askiþ of þe patient wher he haue miche akynge. & þei supposen to do awei þe akynge wiþ þe greet binding, & in þis maner þe lyme wole rotie, & in þis maner þe patient mai falle into a feuer & þe spasme, & manye men dieþ þeron / But þou schalt worche in þis maner / Whanne þou seest þis caas, vnbinde þe lyme, & as miche as þou miȝt do awei þe swellyng & þe akynge. Aboue þe brekyng towardis the schuldre leie a defensif of bole // If þer come noon akynge ne swellynge, þan þou schalt lete it sitte so boounde .x. daies in winter, & .vij. daies in somer / & þan vnbinde it softly þat þe lyme ne meue not / & loke þat þe boon sitte wel; & þan binde it al togidere aȝen as þow didist first. Whanne þe boon is wel soudid, þan þou schalt take stupis & wete hem in good wijn hoot,[4] & leie þervpon. ¶ Whanne it is soudid, if þer leeue ony þing of hardnes in þe same place, þan do it awei aftir þe teching þat þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie /

[3 lf. 234]

A tight bandage may cause spasm, and prove fatal.

**Nota.** Keep the limb so bandaged for 10 days; then look if the bone is adjusted, and bandage it again.

[5 lf. 234, bk.] Sometimes one or both the bones of the fore-arm are broken,

Sumtyme þe boonys of a mannys arme ben to-broke [5]boþe, & sumtyme þat oþer. & whanne þei ben boþe broken, it is þe more worse / If it so be þat þer be to-broke but oon boon, þan it is no nede for to do but astellas,[6] for þe boon þat is hool wole saue þe ligature wel ynowȝ / The boonys of a mannes fyngris ben sumtyme to-broke, þan þou schalt sette euene þe boon, & binde him wiþ astelles þat ben wel maad þerfore. & þouȝ þe fyngir ne be but a litil lyme, ȝitt þou muste haue good kunnyng & good witt for to diȝte it wel / Dietyng in alle brekyng of boonys schal be first sotil, & aftirward more greet, as it is aforseid //

or the bones of the fingers.

## Of breking of þe boon of þe coxe.

vjº. cº / In case of fracture of the hip-bone or any bone of the leg,

WHanne þe boon of þe coxe is to-broke or ony boon of þe foot, þan þou schalt worche in al maner þingis as it is aforseid in þe chapitre of adiutorie & of þe fyngris / But þis þou

[1] MS. *spletis.* [2] *middilly*, mediocriter.
[4] Lat.: in bono vino calido.
[6] Lat.: non est tibi necessarium astellas ponere.

muste adde more þerto, þat whanne þou hast brouȝt yn þe boon of þe leg, þan þou muste make an instrument, þat is clepid albium ouþer coutelle; & it schal be schape in þe maner of a cros.[1] & þeron his leg mote be sett, so þat his leg mowe [2]bowe to no side / Also it is necessarie þat þe patient ligge also stille as he mai wiþouten remeuyng, til þe boon be fast // But þou muste be wel war herof whanne þat a mannes leg is to-broke, ouþer his hipe, þou muste be war in þe soudyng, þat oon leg be not schorter þan þe oþer / But þou schalt mesure hem algate boþe lich long, & in þe same mesure kepe hem /

apply a splint formed to the shape of the leg.

[2 lf. 235]

Take care that the leg does not get shortened.

## Of þe cure whanne a man is smiten in þe rigbon or ribbis.

¶ vij. c° / IT bifalliþ sumtyme þat a man is smyten or a man falliþ, & þan tendre boonys as þe cheke-boon & ribbis, & [in] children boonys of her arme & of her leggis, for þe tendirnes of þes lymes, þei wolen folde & not breke / In þis maner þou schalt bringe hem aȝen / In þis maner anoynte þin hond wiþ terbentyne, & take þat boon & presse it as it is forseid in þe brekyng of a boon.[3] & if it be a rib, þan þou schalt presse him vpward, as it is foreseid. & if it be in þe arme ouþer þe leg, þan þou muste make ligaturis þerfore & instrument of tree, þat be euene, & þerto his arme ouþer his leg schal be bounden & pressid, for to make him euene. & or þou do þus, þou schalt make a [4]vomentacioun of camomille, malue, & bismalue, fenigreci, seminis lini soden in water; & þan anoynte him wiþ oile of lilie, or wiþ gandris grese, or hen-grese, & þan presse his arme as it is aforseid. Also þou miȝt vse þis medicyn, þat is aproued ofte tyme / leie a plate of yuer[5] in þat side þat þe boon is aplied, &

Tender bones, especially those of children, become bent instead of breaking.

Straighten them by pressure,

by bandaging the limb to a wooden splint,

[4 lf. 235, bk.]

or lay a plate of ivory on the limb,

[1] Lat.: in albiolo seu coutella que sit ad modum cruris formata. The translator read "crucis."

*albiola*, (alueolus) *um.* "ventre, panier, benne, flancs d'un navire."—Dufr.

*coutella.* κοτύλη, anything hollow, the cup of a joint, especially of the hip-joint. It.: cotila. Tomm.

*Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI, Sect. 106, ed. Adams, vol. 2, p. 470, describes the way of arranging a fractured leg by means of "a canal either of wood or earthenware." Adams l. c. gives references from Hippocrates, Celsus and Galen, for the use of these machines.

[3] Lat.: Si maxilla fuerit, manum seu digitos in os pone, premens ad extra sicut diximus in fractura, manum aliam termentina uel pice illinitam suauiter ab extra preme et citius eleua.

[5] O.Fr. yvoyre.

by whose attraction it becomes straight.

þe vertu of þe yuer wole drawe þe boon as it schulde be, & bringe þe boon into his propre plite /

## Of þe greuousnes of þe rigboon whanne he is out of ioyncte /

¶ iij°. c° / viij

DIslocacioun of þe rigboonys is a greuous sijknes. It is aforseid *in* anathomia how manie boonys ben *in* þe necke & in þe rig. & it is aforseid *in* what maner / The firste boon *in* a mannes necke is bounden *with* manye feble ligaturis, & þe ligaturis þerof ben recching[1] & feble, þat þei ne schulde lette þe meuynge of þe heed / þe boonys þat ben *in* a mannes necke beþ more feble þan ony oþer rigboonys, & þerfore þei goiþ liȝtly out of þe ioynte, & it is ful greet drede þerof / If þe hiȝeste boon of þe necke be oute of þe ioynct, it is clepid decollacio, & it sleeþ a man anoon; for þat oþer boon þerof pressiþ yn & stoppiþ a man[2]nes breeþ anoon, & *in* þis maner it sleeþ a man anoon / And if þe ioynct þat is bitwixe þe vij. boon & þe .viij. be out of ioyncte, þan it wole stoppe þe weie of his mete, and it wole lette þe weie of a mannes breeþ also / And if ony boon of þe rigboon þat is bineþe þe .viij. boon be out of ioyncte, but if he be þe raþere holpen, he schal lese his meuyng for euermore[3] / And þerfore it is necessarie as faste þat a mannes rigboon is out of þe ioynct, þat it be brouȝt yn aȝen anoon, & principali þe firste boon of þe necke, for disiunccioun of þat boon wole sle a man anoon, as it is forseid / If þou be *in* þe place, take þe patient bi þe heeris, & sette þi feet vpon his schuldris, & so þou schalt drawe vpward wiþ þin hondis, & presse adoun wiþ þi feet, & bringe þe boon into his ioynct aȝen / Whanne þe .vij. rigboon[4] is out of his ioynct fro þe .viij. rigboon, itt mai ful litil tyme lenger abide. & if it so be þat þis boon be pressid swiþe ynward, it wole sle a man hastily, & it wole ful late be curid / If it so be þat it mai be curid, þer is noon oþer cure þeron, but presse adoun his schuldris [5]& drawe vp þe heed, as it is aforseid / If it so be þat ony of þese boonys be out of þe ioynct outward, þat falliþ ful

The ligaments on the neck are weak,

and the bones are easily dislocated.

Dislocation of the 1st vertebra—decollation—

[2 lf. 236] causes death by want of breath.

If the 7th and 8th vertebræ are out of joint, the ways of food and breath are stopped.

The bone must be replaced immediately after the accident.

Nota

Treatment: Press down the shoulders, and draw up the head.

The displacement may be inwards

[5 lf. 236, bk.]

or outwards.

[1] Lat.: hec ligatura fuit magis aliis laxa.

[3] Gul. de Sal., cap. 19. Sl. 277, fol. 42 b.: "*And of þe spondiles of þe brest, for lettynge brouȝt in in þe lacertis & muscules kyndely & wilfully meuynge þe brest, þe lunge is lettid in his meuynge, & þer falliþ hasty wynd & litel, & vtterlyche deþ. Of þe dislocacion of þe oþere spondiles, þat ben 4, þer falleþ anoþor greuaunce in þe reynes & þe bladdre, & akþe in þoo membris, & peyne of pyssynge or lettynge of þe weyes of þe vryne, & aposteme in þe place, & feuere, & deþ.*"

[4] *rig*, in margin.

seelde, þan sette þe boonys euene, & drawe his heed & presse adoun hise schuldris / If it so be þat ony rigboon bineþe þe .viij. boon of þe necke be out of ioyncte, if þe boon go ynward, it nile take no cure til it sle him / And if it ne be not al out of þe ioyncte, but it pressiþ nucha, alle þe lymes bineþe schulen lese her meuynge / If it so be þat þe boon be out of þe ioyncte & go outward, it is incurable, for he schal be euermore gibbosis, *id est* broken-riggid. Þis is þe cure þerof, if it mai be curid / Arere vp þe boon & presse it[1] als so miche as þou miȝt, wiþ þin hond, ouþer presse it yn with a playn tree, & studie þou in þi witt as miche as þou miȝt for to presse it in aȝen; & leie þervpon oon of þe consolidatiuis, & binde it faste / If it so be þat þere leeue ony hardnes after þe tyme þat þe place is soudid, þan make an enplastre of mollificatiuis þerto, þat þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie; & anoynte him wiþ oynementis, þat þou schalt fynde [2]in þe same place in þe chapiter of mollificatiuis /

An inward displacement below the 8th vertebra causes either death or loss of motion.

In case of outward displacement, the patient remains humpbacked.

Try to reduce the bone by manipulation.

If some hardness is left, apply a plaster and an ointment.

[2 ff. 237]

## Of þe schuldre out of his place.[3]

A Mannes schuldre mai go out of þe ioynct in .iij. maners / Oon maner is þis, whanne þe heed of þe boon of adiutorie, þat is þe poynt of þe schuldre, falliþ adoun vndir þe arme-pitt; & sumtyme he goiþ of þe ioynct forþward, but þat falliþ ful selden / The .iij.: he goiþ out of þe ioynct vpward; & bakward he ne mai not out of þe ioynct, for þe schuldre boon holdiþ itt faste in.[4]

¶ iiij$^{or}$. c$^{o}$ / The head of the humerus is dislocated, 1. downwards into the armpit; 2. forwards; 3. upwards.

¶ The .j. maner þou miȝt liȝtliche knowe bi touching & bi siȝt, & þou schalt fele þe boon in his arme-pitt, & þan þere wole be a greet pitt aboue. ¶ If he be out of the ioynct forþward, þan his arme wole sitte bacward, & tofore þou schalt se a greet pitt / ¶ If he be out of þe ioynct vpward, þat þou schalt knowe in þis maner: his elbowe ne mai not be drawe along fro his body. & if þou wolt drawe him along, þou schalt fynde an obstacle / The .j. maner if it be a child, þan þou schalt take his arme wiþ þi lifthond, & sette þi riȝthond vndir his [5]arme-pitt, & drawe his arme wiþ þi lifthond, & presse þe boon into his ioynct wiþ þi riȝthond; & in þis maner þou schalt bringe in þe boon of a child wel ynow. ¶ If it be a miche

The signs are an outward depression,

and an inability to use the arm.

Treatment: 1. Reduction is effected by extension of [5 ff. 237, bk.] the arm and pressure on the shoulder.

[1] MS. *pressid*.

[3] Compare *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI, Sect. 114, ed. Adams, vol. II, p. 485.

[4] Gul. de Sal., Sl. 277, fol. 43 b.: "*For þe ofteste þe heued of þe adiutorie is dislocate in þe schuldre toward þe place* þat *is called titillicum to þe for-party, & to þe hynder party anentis þe sparde-boon, it is dislocate in no maner.*"

Reduction in a grown-up man is effected by means of a wooden ball.

man, lete him ligge adoun streiȝt', & take a round bal of' tree, & folde him wiþ a clooþ, & leie it' vnder his arme-pitt', & binde him þere faste, & take his hond & drawe it' adounward, ouþer lete anoþer man drawe it' adounward, & helpe þou wiþ þin hond for to bringe yn þe boon, so þat' þou schalt' presse, & þe man drawe al in oon tyme / If' it' ne mai not' be doon in þis maner, þan ordeine a long' perche, & make it' fast' in .ij. wallis of' þe hous, ouþer .ij. postis of' þe hous; & in þe middil of' þe perche make a pitt', & in þe same pitt' leie þe forseid bal, & þe hiȝnes of' þis perche schal be hiȝer þan a man is long', & þan sette vndir his feet' a stool. & loke þat' þe same bal sitte vndir his arme, & lete a strong' man holde doun his arme and his hond, & take awei þe stool vndir his feet', & in þis maner þe boon wole come into his ioynct' / ¶ If' it' be out' of' þe ioynct' forþward, þan take a strong' towail, & leie him vndir his arme, & lete þe oon ende go forþ bihinde his rigge, [1] & þat' oþer ende forþ bi his brest', & lete a strong' man holde þe .ij. endis of' þe towail, & þan binde his arme wiþ anoþer boond aboue þe elbowe; & take it' anoþer strong' man, & lete þese .ij. men holde & drawe al at' oonys; þan þou schalt' with þi .ij. hondis, whanne þei drawiþ, presse þe boon into his ioynct' / Whanne þe boon is in his ioynct', þan þei schulen leeue her drawyng' softly. ¶ In þe same maner, whanne he is oute of' ioyncte vpward, he schal be bounden, & oon man schal drawe him abacward wiþ þe towal, & þat' oþer man schal drawe his arme adounward, & þou schalt' helpe for to presse yn þe boon wiþ þin hondis. & whanne þe boon is in his ioynct', þan wete a pece of' lynnen clooþ in oile of' rosis, & þan pervpon leie a medicyne consolidatif', & þan leie þervpon faldellas wet' in gleire of' eiren, & binde him faste with boondis þat' his arme ne mowe not' out' of' þe ioynct' aȝen, & so he schal be bounden .x. daies. And if' þer come ony enpostym or icching', þan þou muste vnbinde him aȝen, & do awei þe icching' ouþer þe enpostym, and binde it' aȝen as it' is forseid. ¶ If' it' so be þat' [2] þou ne were not' at' þe firste bigynnyng', þan þou muste make þe patient a baþ of' malue & bismalue, fenigrec, lynseed. & whanne he is wel baþid in þis baþ, þan anoynte him wiþ an oynement' laxatif'. & in þis maner he muste be baþid manie daies til þe place be wel moistid; & þan bringe þe boon into his ioynct', as it' is forseid. ¶ If' it' so be þat þou come at' þe firste bigynnyng', whanne a boon is out' of' þe ioynct', þan þou schalt' not' baþe þe lyme in hoot' water in no maner.

Another way of reduction.

2. The shoulder is drawn upwards with a towel, and the arm is drawn downwards.

[1 lf. 238]

3. Reduction is effected in a similar way.

When the bone is reduced,

leave the arm bandaged through 10 days.

[2 lf. 238, bk.] If you come some time after the accident, the patient must take a bath before reduction is tried.

¶ A mannes arme wole out of þe ioynct liȝtlich at þe elbowe,[1] & liȝtly it wole be brouȝt into his ioynct aȝen / But he mai be out of þe ioynct in .ij. maners, as forþward & hindeward, & boþe haueþ diuers cure / In þis maner þou schalt do whanne he is out of þe ioynct forþward: sette stupis in þe folding of his arme,[2] & þan binde a boond þervpon, & lete a man drawe þat boond bakward — —,[3] & þan lete a strong man holde adiutorium, lest his schuldre go out of þe ioynct. & þan anoynte þin hond wiþ oile of rosis, & lete þe ij. men drawe al at oon tyme, & þan presse yn þe boon into his ioynct wiþ þi .ij. [4]hondis, & þan hange an heuy peis at his hond. & if þer leeueþ ony greet þing, lete it be til anoþer tyme. & þan anoynte þin hond & presse it in aȝen, & þan þou schalt binde him with boondis & faldellis, & oile of rosis & consolidatiuis, as it is aforseid / But of þis caas þou muste be war: but if his arme be brouȝt into þe ioinct hastili, þere wole engendre in þe place an hoot enpostym, & þan aftirward it wole be ful hard to bringe it into his ioynct aȝen.

*Nota.*

Dislocation of the elbow may be forwards or backwards.

Treatment, of a dislocation forwards,

of a dislocation backwards.

[4 lf. 239]

If the arm is not soon reduced, an apostema will be formed.

¶ Rasceta, þat is þe ioynct of þe hand / as it is forseid in anathamia, is conteyned of manie boonys & of manie recchinge ligaturis,[5] as it was necessarie for þe grete meuyng of þe hond. þis place wole liȝtly out of þe ioinct, & liȝtli it wole come yn aȝen. ¶ But if a mannes hond be out of þe ioyncte longe, þe place wole enpostym, & þan it wole be hard for to bringe it in aȝen. ¶ In þe firste bigynnyng take his arme wiþ þi lifthond, & sette þe boon into þe ioynct as it is aforeseid, & binde it in al maners as it is aforseid in oþere ioinctis. ¶ Also if a mannes fyngir be out of ioyncte, it is but liȝt for to putte it [6]in aȝen / In þe same maner þou schalt binde a mannes fyngir as it is aforseid in oþere placis / Ther ben

Raceta has many bones and ligaments.

The wrist-joint is frequently dislocated.

Dislocated fingers are [6 lf. 239, bk.] easily reduced.

[1] The Original says just the contrary: difficile dislocatur, et ita difficile restauratur. The translator further leaves out a passage similar to the following one, quoted from the Engl. translation of Gul. de Salic.: "*The dislocacioun or restorynge of þis place is ryȝt dredeful, for þe makynge of it. For whi, þer ben smale boones & havynge schapp of a rolle or polyne, to drawe with water of wellis, whiche sumtyme, oþer wiþ difficulte, or in no manere ben restorid.*"

[2] Lat.: in curvatura vbi brachium plicari solebat.

[3] Add. 26,106, fol. 98: "& fac quod minister trahat stupham seu bindam ad posteriora firmiter et suaviter: et tu manum quam errexeras, plica violenter: vt oppositum tangat pluries humerum: quoniam tunc sine dubio est reducta. Si vero fuerit ad posteriora, fac quod fortis minister teneat adiutorium. et. cet."

[5] Lat.: multis ossibus composita et ligamentis pluribus tamen laxis coniuncta.

manie men þat whanne a mannis lyme is out of ioynct, þei wolen sette þe lyme in hoot water, & seien þat it wole þe better come into his ioinct azen / But þou schalt wite þis, þat hoot watir in þe firste bigynnyng makiþ þe lyme recche, & febliþ it & drawiþ þerto manye humours / & þerfore þou ne schalt do in þis maner, but þou schalt comforte þe lyme wiþ oile of rosis, & sette him into his ioinct anoon, & defende as miche as þou miȝt, þat þere come noon enpostym þerto / But if it so be, þat þou ne come not at þe firste bigynnyng, & þe place bicome hard, þan make him a fomentacioun wiþ a decoccioun of þingis þat makiþ moist & resolueþ as it is aforseid /

Do not put the limb in hot water at the first beginning.

## Of the haunche out of his place.[1]

¶ v°. c°.

ALL þe coniuncciouⁿ of þe haunche is tofore seid in þe chapitre of anathamia. And þis place mai go out of þe ioinct in .iiij. maners: as ynward & outward, forþward & bacward; & sumtyme it comeþ of causis wiþinneforþ, & sumtyme of causis without forþ / [2]Of causis wiþinneforþ: as humours of longe tyme haue falle þerto, as it is aforseid in þe chapitre of dolour of ioinctis / Ther is in þis place a greet box, & conteineþ a greet place, þat beriþ al þe bodi, & it is a place þat takith miche moisture & greet superfluite of humouris, & whanne þer falliþ manie superfluitees to þat place, & þe pacient is not purgid þerof, & traueiliþ, þan humours rotiþ in þat place, & þe ligaturis recchiþ alongt, & in þis maner vertebrum goiþ out of his ioinct / And þis caas in diuers men haþ diuers causis / ffor summen haueþ a box in her haunche swiþe holowe, & þat wole not fulliȝtliche out of þe ioinct / And summen ne haueþ not so holowe boxis, & þan if þe place be ful of yuele humours, þan þe boon wole liȝtliche out of þe ioincte, & it wole liȝtli into þe ioinct azen, & þan it wole liȝtly out azen. ¶ Of causis wiþoutforþ, as of wrastyng or of smityng or of sum oþer þing þat makiþ vertebrum goon out of þe ioynct wiþ violence. ¶ This is þe signe whanne it is out of ioyncte ynward: whanne þou myȝt fele þe poynt of þe boon in his flank, & his feet [3]& his knee turned outward, & þe pacient schal not opene his leg ne his hipe // If it goiþ out of þe ioynct forþward, þan his leg wole wexe miche schorter, & he schal not bringe his hele to grounde, but oonly his toos. ¶ If

The hip-joint is subject to four dislocations, arising from internal or external causes.

[2 lf. 240]

1. Internal causes.

When too much fluid gathers in the box of the haunch, the thigh-bone is easily dislocated.

The acetabulum is more or less concave, the concavity prevents dislocation.

2. External causes.

Symptoms of dislocation inwards,

[3 lf. 240, bk.]

of dislocation forwards,

[1] Compare *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., Sect. 118, l. c., p. 498. *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. 5, Tract 1, Cap. 24.

it be out of þe ioynct bacward, þan his hele wole wexe long, & his toos schorte, & he schal bringe no þing of his foot to grou[n]de, but his hele // and backwards.

Ther ben manie maners of diuers menys for to bringe boonys into her ioynct azen, but among alle I holde þis maner þe beste for þis place: take a long schete þat be not brood, & do bitwixe þe patient leggis, & lete þat oon ende go bifore his brest, & þat oþer bihinde his rig, & make þe .ij. endis fast to a post, & þe patient schal ligge vpon a plain place, & þou schalt binde al his hipe aboue his knee, & þan þe leg softly adounward, & to alle þese boondis make faste a corde, & lete þe moost fastenyng be in þe hipe aboue þe knee, & þan lete oon strong man or ij. drawe þe corde euenlich & harde without ony pluching.[1] & þan þou schalt wiþ þin hondis putte þe boon into his ioyncte. & whanne þe [2]boon is ynne, þan bidde hem lete go þe corde softli azen, & leie hise feet euene togidere. for if hise feet wollen ligge euene togidere, it is a certein signe þat þe boon is in his ioynct. & if hise feet wolen not sitte euene in þe ioynct, it is a signe þat þe boon is not in his ioynct / whanne þe boon is in his ioinct, binde faste his hipe, & lete þe patient ligge stille til he be al restorid / In alle curis of dislocacioun þou hast pleiner teching.[3] The best way of reduction. A towel put under the thigh is fixed to the wall (to effect counter-extension), whilst extension of the leg is made. [1 lf. 241]

¶ Dislocacioun of þis place þat comeþ of causis wiþinneforþ, it is ful hard for to bringe it in azen. & þouz þe boon be brouzt in azen, wiþ a litil cause it wole goon out azen. & þerfore þer is no cure þerof, but avoide his bodi, & make him cauterijs as it is aforseid in þe chapitre of cauterijs. There is no radical cure for a dislocation arising from internal causes.

¶ A mannys knee is sumtyme out of ioyncte, & sumtyme þe round boon þat is þervpon goiþ out of his place / Signys whanne a mannes knee is out of ioyncte ben open ynowz. & if þe round boon be out of his place, þou mizte liztlich knowe it. ¶ In þis maner þou schalt bringe a mannes knee into his ioynct azen / Lete a strong man holde faste his hipe, and [4]anoþer man his leg. & þou schalt wiþ þin hondis presse faste þe boon into his propre place. & if þe place be enpostymed, first þou muste do awei þe enpostym, & þan bringe þe knee into his place azen. ¶ If þe round boon be out of his place, sette þe boon into his place, & þan binde faste wiþ boondis, & þan binde his leg faste vp to his hipe bi an hour, & þan Sometimes occurs a Dislocation of the knee-joint, and a Dislocation of the Patella. Reduction is accomplished by [4 lf. 241, bk.] pressing the boon into its place. In the same way reduce a dislocated patella.

[1] Lat.: non ductu violenti nec tractu.

[3] Add. 26.106, fol. 99: In omnibus aliis curam consequentibus est in precedentibus bene doctus.

vnbinde his legꝭ fro his hipe, & þan binde faste þe round boon þatꝭ itꝭ ne moue notꝭ fro his propre place, & in þatꝭ maner lete itꝭ sitte, for itꝭ wole bicome fastꝭ anoon.

Reduction of Dislocation of the Ankle-Joint.

¶ Ifꝭ þe ioyntꝭ ofꝭ a mannes footꝭ be outꝭ ofꝭ ioyncte or his toos, þou schaltꝭ do þe cure in þe same maner as itꝭ is aforseid in þe hond & in þe fyngris.[1] ¶ þoruȝ þe help ofꝭ god wiþoutꝭ which is no þingꝭ fulfillid, þe .iiij. tretis is fulfillid. ¶ Now I wole bigynne þe .v. tretis þatꝭ schal be clepid þe antidotarie ofꝭ this book. //

[2 lf. 242]

IN þe fifþe tretis clepid þe antidotarie ofꝭ þis book, I þinke to [2]putte medicyns boþe symple & compound / þatꝭ falliþ for cirurgie & beþ necessarie perfore / Butꝭ I ne mai notꝭ sette alle, for

No man could enumerate all the medicines, only God knows them.

per is no man þatꝭ can telle alle þe noumbre ofꝭ medicyns butꝭ oonli god / Neþeles I wole sette medicyns in þis antidotarie þatꝭ I haue longe vsid, & I lernede hem ofꝭ wise doctouris & ofꝭ philosophoris, & alle þei ben aproued /

## Here bigynneþ þe tretise of repercussiuis //

¶ co jo Repercussives are used for hot apostemas, especially if they are in a noble limb.

REpercussiuis bifalliþ for hootꝭ apostymes, & principal whanne itꝭ bigynneþ in a noble lyme: as in þe herte, ouþir in þe brayn, ouþir in þe heed, ouþir in þe lyuere, þe splen & þe stomac, reynes, ballokis, & in þe bladdre // Itꝭ schal alwei be þin entencioun for to putte awei greuous mater fro a noble lyme into anoþer place. ¶ Whanne þou woltꝭ worche wiþ repercussiuis, þou muste take hede to .x. condicioun̄s þatꝭ ben settꝭ in þe iij. tretis in þe general chapitre ofꝭ enpostyms / ¶ Repercussifꝭ is seid in .ij. maners: as large & streitꝭ[3] / large is seid: as eueri medicyne maad ofꝭ coold herbis for to aquenche hootꝭ [4]causis. Streitꝭ is seid, whanne itꝭ puttꝭ awei þe mater & is notꝭ swiþe coold // Ofꝭ repercussiuis þere ben manie degrees ofꝭ cooldnes / Ther ben summe so coold, þatꝭ a man mai notꝭ fele his lyme, & þan itꝭ is clepid stupefactiua[5] / & þis þou schaltꝭ vse whanne per is þingꝭ þatꝭ greueþ more þan þe mater. ¶ Whanne þou ne dredistꝭ notꝭ hootꝭ qualite oonli, butꝭ þou dredistꝭ þe mater, þan þou schaltꝭ vse medicyns þatꝭ ben coold & drie, þatꝭ þei mowe tempere þe complexioun ofꝭ þe lyme, & wiþ þe vertu ofꝭ stiptica þei wolen comforte þe lyme,[6] & þese ben propirli clepid repercussiuis / Whanne þou hastꝭ entencioun oonly for to make

Repercussives are understood in a wider or stricter sense.

[4 lf. 242, bk.]

Some are very cold, and are called Stupefactiua.

Some are less cold but dry:

Stiptica.

[1] MS. repeats this sentence.

[3] *large & streit.* See p. 305, note 1.

[5] Vigon transl. *Traheron Interpr.*: "*Stupefactyve.* That, that hathe strengthe to astonie, and take awaye felynge."

[6] Lat.: et sua stipticitate uirtutem membri confortent.

coold, þan it' is no force þouȝ þi medicyn be not' stiptica / But' wh*a*nne þou wolt' make ony repe*r*cussiuis, it' is necessarie þat' þei be coold & drie. ¶ Medicyns þat' be*n* coold & repe*r*cussiuis, su*m*me ben simple & su*m*me ben compound / Of' simple medicyns, su*m*me ben of' herbis, & su*m*me ben of' trees, & su*m*me ben leeues, & su*m*me ben rotis, & su*m*me ben seedis, & su*m*me ben flouris, & su*m*me ben greynes[1] of' minerals, & su*m*me ben watris, & su*m*me ben oilis. And su*m*me þe*r*of' I wole sette i*n* þese bokis þat' be*n* [2]greetli i*n* vss toward us / And þe*r*e be*n* medicyns coold & moist' þat' þou miȝt' vse for to ate*m*pe*r*e þe complexiou*n* of' lymes þat' ben distemp[*er*]id i*n* hete & drienes. ¶ Malua, capillus[3] veneris, psil- lium, portulaca, atriplex. Mercurialis,[4] Rapa, cucurbita, Melones, Citruli,[5] Semen malue, se*m*i*n*is iiij$^{or}$. frigidor*um*, Semper viua, lactuca ortulana[6] ¶ Iusquiamus, Mandragora, Papauere, argentum viuum, f. & h. i*n* iiij.[7] ¶ **Oilis** coold & moist': Oleum violaciu*m*, Oleum nenupharinu*m*,[8] Oleum de lilijs albis, Oleu*m* mirtinu*m*. Istis[9] medicinis potest vti qu*um* intendis infrigidare sine expulcio*n*e ut' dictu*m* est' // þese medicyns þou miȝtist' vse wh*a*nne þou entendist' for to make coold wiþouten expulciou*n* of' þe mater as it' is forseid. ¶ Medicyns þat' be*n* symple coold & drie, þat' ben clepid verry repe*r*cussiuis ben þese / **Solatru***m*, crassula maior & minor,[10] virga pastoris / vmbilicus veneris, cicorea, Endiua, Gramen, Epatica,[11] Ipoquistidos, veruene, Semper viua, Corigiola,[12] Sangu*i*naria, Edera, Acetosa, Scariola, plantago maior & minor, Nenuphar. **De g*r*anis**

Repercussive medicines are either simple or compound.

The simple medicines.

[2 lf. 243]

Herbs.

Oilis.

Medicines that are cold and dry, or Repercussives in a strict sense.

[1] The translator misunderstood the Lat. genera mineralium.

[3] MS. *capillis.*

[4] Add. 15.236, fol. 4 *b.*: "*Linochites, mercurialis, idem. G. mercuria, A. smerewourth.*" Compare *Alphita*, p. 116: "*linozostis g*$^{e.}$ *mercurie. a*$^{a.}$ *scandany.*"

[5] Phillips, "*Citrull*, a sort of Cucumber or Pumpkin of a Citron-Colour."

[6] Halle, *Table*, p. 57: "Lactuca satiua, or Hortensis, *þat* is gardin letuce."

[7] frigidum et humidum in quarto gradu.

[8] *nenupharinu*m, Arab. Pers. nītufar, nīnūfar (Littré). Nymphæa alba. Add. 15,236, fol. 5 *b.*: "*Nenufar .i. flos vngule, caballine aquatice A. waterlilye.*" Compare *Alphita*, p. 124; *Barth. Sinon.*, p. 31.

[9] MS. *istius.*

[10] Add. 15,236, lf. 11: "*Crassula maior G. crassegeline* vel *orpine. Crassula minor .G. terce de soris .A. stoncrop.*"

[11] Add. 15,236. Cf. 3 *b.*: *Epatica .G. coper .A. liuerwort.*" Ibid. lf. 11: "*Epatica .G. epatik* vel *coper .A. liurewort.*"

[12] Add. 15,236, lf. 3 *b.*: *Corigiola. Centinodia. lingua passerina. G. Coriogiole.*" Halle, *Table*, p. 29: "*Corrigiola.* So called of the Apothecaries, and of the Frenche men Corrigiole, is oure common Knottgrasse, called in Greke polygonon, in Latine Seminalis and Polygonum mas."

[2 lf. 243, bk.] **seminibus, fructib***us*. Ordeu*m*, Silligo[1]; auena. [2]Spica, Lollium, ffabe, Mirtilli, Berberis, Sumac, Pira, Poma, Sorbe, mespila, Castanea, Glandes, Galle, Maiorana, Mora matu*ra*, vua acerba, Capreoli, vitis.[3] ¶ **De floribus folijs & corticib***us* / Balaustie cortices, Cortices mali granata, Cortices arbor*um* stipticorum[4]; Rosa, Nenufar, fflos spine, ffolia piror*um*, pomor*um*, sorbor*um*, rubij, & spine. ¶ **ffolia** / Salicis, Populi, Tremuli, Papiri, Canne.[5] ¶ **De linis.** omn*es* sandali. ¶ **De mineralib***us* **& lutis** / Saphir*us*, Bolus armenicus, Marmor, Alabaustrum,[6] Cathinia, Litargir*um*, munda[7] ferri, Ematistes, Corallus, antimoniu*m*. ¶ **De lutis.** Terra sigillata, Argilla, lutum[8] omne, cimolea,[9] Camfora, Cerusa. **De gummis.** Gu*m*ma p*ru*ni,[10] cerase, amigdale, Acacia, opiu*m*. **De olijs.** Oleum rosa*rum*, & eueri oile þat is maad of coold þingis & drie, of flouris, leeues, & ryndis þerof / Also watir of rosis, & wat*er* þat is maad of alle þingis þat ben coold & drie, and distillid[11] / If þou be sent after into a cuntre, þere ben noon apotecarijs, þan if þou canst make þese medicyns þat ben forseid & medicyns þat schulen be seid heraftir, þan þou miȝt fulfille þi p*ur*pos[12] & do þi cure. þou miȝt make [13]of þese þingis: oynementis, epithima, cathaplasmata, emplastra, enbrocaciou*n*s, pultes, encatismata. Of þese names manie men tak*ith* oon for anoþer, & þerfore I wole telle þe diuersite of alle. ¶ **vnguentu***m* is maad of .iiij. ʒ of oile & 3 ß. of wex in winter, & ʒ j. in somer, & ʒ j. of þingis þat þin oynement schal serue þerfore.[14] and oynementis schulen be algatis colid. ¶ **Epithima** is þis, whanne þingis ben sotilli poudrid & temperid wiþ water of ros*es*, ouþer wiþ vinegre, ouþer iuys of ony herbe, so þat it temperid *in* þe þiknes of hony & leid vpon þe place, & hilid wiþ lynnen clooþ, ouþer wiþ leþer, þis is clepid epithimu*m*. ¶ **Cataplasma** is, whanne herbis ben grounde & soden ouþer raw, & al þe substaunce of þe herbe þerwiþ & medlid wiþ mele & grese, & it ne schal not be hard ne neische, but *in* þe meene, & it schal be leid

A physician is sometimes obliged to prepare himself his medicines.

[13 lf. 244]

vnguentum.

Epithima.

Cataplasma.

[1] *Silligo*, a kind of very white wheat.

[2] MS. *Spata*, *Spleta*. Lat.: Add. 26,106, fol. 109, "*spaca*"; ed. 1498, fol, 207, "*spica*." The preceding words show that *spica* is the correct reading.

[3] *Capreoli vitis*, the tendrils of vine. [4] MS. *stipticoris*.

[5] MS. *panne*. [6] med. Lat. alabaustrum.

[7] Lat.: murga uel merda. [8] MS. *litum*.

[9] *cimolea*, a kind of earth, so called after Cimolus, an island in the Cretan sea, where it is found. [10] MS. *Summa pruna*.

[11] Lat.: omnis aqua ex rebus siccis et frigidis distillata.

[12] Lat.: de quo tuum poteris propositum adimplere.

[14] et ʒ .i. puluer*is* rerum puluerizandarum, que ponuntur in unguento.

flasch hoot vpon þe lyme. ¶ **Emplastru***m* is seide, wh*a*nne manie diuers þingis, as poudris and gu*m*mis & fatnessis, wex, talow, & oile be*n* soden togidere til þei bicome hard, & maad *in* gobetis & kept. & þan it schal be maad abrood vpon leþir, & leid vpon þe place þat þou wolt haue it: as diaculon, apostolicon,[2] oxirocroceu*m*,[3] & o þ*er*e manie. ¶ Pultes[4] & cathaplasma be*n* al oon, but *pro*pirli pultes ben clepid, wh*a*nne þ*er* is mele, watir, & oile wiþouten herbis, & it schal be clepid cataplasma, wh*a*nne herbis be*n* medlid þ*er*wiþ. ¶ Embroca[tio] is seid, wh*a*nne a m*a*nnes lyme is putt *in* hoot watir, wiþouten ony decoccioun of herbis þeron, & þat hoot watir schal be cast vpon þe lyme from an hiȝ, & so it schal be do longe, & þis is clepid embrocare.[5] ¶ Encatisma is seid *in* .ij. maners: sumtyme it is seid for a clisterie, & sumtyme for a particuler [baþ],[6] anoon to þe nauele & non aboue þe nauel /

Emplastrum. Pultes. Cataplasma. Embroca. Encatisma.

¶ Medicyns þat ben compound togidere: Wh*a*nne þou entendist for to make a lyme coold, & not putte awei þe mater, þou schalt take iuys of herbis þat ben coold þre partis, olei ros*is* oon p*ar*t, of vinegre half a p*ar*t, & medle hem togidere. If þat þou wolt þat it worche more str*o*ngely, þan do þ*er*to argillam rubeam / til it be as þicke as it were epithima, & leie it to þe place. & herof þou must take kepe, þou schalt vse þingis þat ben able for a m*a*nnes complexioun / In þis maner if þou leist coold þingis to a place, [6 & ne hast not þi p*ur*pos þ*er*of, þan þou schalt leeue þe coold medicyns, & make medicyns þat be*n* competent to þe same complexioun / for sum medicyne is for peter þat is not good for poul, for þe diuersite of complexioun. & al þis teching þou miȝt fynde generalich *in* þe tretis of enpostyms. / ffor if pet*er* be of complexioun hoot & moist, & poulis complexioun be coold & drie, oon repercussioun wole not serue hem boþe *in* oon point. & for þis cause þou muste diuerse þi medicyns; for þis is al dai preued bi experiment as þou miȝt se ofte tyme, þat crassula maior is a good repercussif for coold mater,

2. Compound Medicines.

Choose the medicines [6 leaf 245] according to the patient's constitution.

Some medicine is good for Peter and bad for Paul.

Nota.

[1 lf. 244, bk.]

[2] See p. 125, note 3.

[3] *oxirocroceum*. Lat. oxiracroceum. Matth. Sylv.: "oxirocroceum, i. emplastrum compositum ex aceto et croco."

[4] *pultes*, Lat. plur. of puls, tis. This plur. form used as sing.: Add. 10,440, fol. 23: "*be þer soþen a þinne pultes or gruel of barly*." Compare the plur. form *pultesses*, Gasc. Steel Glas 997 (Skeat, *Et. Dict.*). For *poultice*, see Ital. pultaceo.

[5] *embroche*, Traheron Vigo Interpret.: "Embroche commeth of embrocho, whyche signifyeth to raine. And it is an embrocation, when we drop downe liquour from a hyer place, vpon some parte of the bodye, and vpon the head." See p. 339, note 1.

[6] Lat.: dicitur enim clistere, aliquando dicitur particularis balneatio.

& vmbilicus veneris is coold *in* þe same degre, & ȝitt' it' is not' so good repercussif' for þe same mater /

A medicine if there is a hot discrasia.

This is a good medicyn reper*cussif'* *þere* *þat'* *þer* is miche discracia hoot' & litil mater / ℞, sandal*i* albi, spodij, acacie, an*a* .ȝ. ij, .℞. camphore .ȝ. j., opij .ȝ. ß, distemp*ere* hem wiþ þe iuys of' a coold ℞. her*be*, & oile of' violet', & a litil vinegre / **Item anoþer.** ℞, ossa sicca & *com*busta, cerusam,[1] amidu*m*, an*a* .ȝ. ij., temp*ere* hem as it' is forseid / Item anoþer þat' is ꝯmoun þat is recordid *in* manie placis. .℞. ℞, boli armenici .ʒ j., olei ros. ʒ iij., aceti .ʒ j., þat is þat [2 lf. 245, bk.] [2]defensif' þat' is aforeseid *in* manie placis for to kepe a lyme fro corrupcio*n*. ¶ Also enplastris & epithima, þat' ben forseid *in* doloribus iuncturarum of' hoot' cause ben good. Þerfore ioyne hem wiþ þese.

If after the use of repercussives, the place becomes livid, apply a cold resolving medicine.

¶ Herof' þou muste be war, þat' wh*a*nne þou leist' reper*cussiuis* to a place, *þere* þat' *þer* is miche mater, & if' þe place bicome ledi, þan þou schalt' contynue nomore wiþ pure coold þingis; but' do þerto iuys of' coriandre grene & barli mele, for þis makiþ coold & resolueþ.

¶ If' þer be no ledi colour but' þe mater is greet', & nyle not' be doon awei wiþ reper*cussiuis*, wh*a*nne þe flux of' humours is acesid, þan bigi*n*ne for to medle þerwiþ resolutiuis; ȝitt' þou schalt' contynue wiþ reper*cussiuis* *þere* þat' *þer* is greet' akynge / an ensaumple hereof' / If' þe akinge be *in* a m*a*nnes knee, þan þou schalt' first' leie medicyns vpon þe knee, & þan aftirward þou schalt' not' leie it' riȝt' vpon his knee, but' a litil aboue his knee, þat' þe ende of' þe medicyn mowe touche þe firste p*a*rti of' þe akynge.

An example how to use repercussives.

Cold matter must be removed with [3 lf. 246] hot and dry medicine.

¶ Coold mater as it' is aforseid, ne schal not be putt' awei wiþ reper*cussiuis*, but' wiþ medicyns þat' be*n* hoot' and [3]drie *in* temp*ere*, þat' þei mowe wiþ her heete chaunge þe coold complexiou*n*, & wiþ her dreines comforte þe vertu of' þe lyme, & defende þat þer come no more mater to þe lyme, & if' þe mater be litil, putte it' awei, & if' þou ne wolt' not' putte it' awei, defende þe place þat' þer falle nomore mater þerto[4] / And alle þese be*n* hote wiþ a maner bittirnes: as absinthiu*m*, squinantu*m*, abrotanu*m*, poliu*m*, sticados, centaurea maior & minor,[5] aristologia longa & ro*tunda*, mauribium,[6]

[1] MS. *ceresaris.* Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Cerusa. flos plumbi id. G. blonc plome A. wyt lede.*"

[4] Lat.: "materia ne ad membrum veniat prohibetur et etiam plerumque repellitur si sit pauca, sed etsi non omnino repellitur tamen locum ita deffendit, quod tanta non potest in ipso materia congregari."

[5] Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Centaurea. fol terre idem .G. centore .A. cristes laddir.*" ? In Britten and Holland's English Plant-names *Centaury* is at p. 96. *E. P. N.*, p. 37: "eorð-gealle." These names refer to *Centaurea minor*, see *Alphita*, p. 37. Centaurea maior = narca vel gentiana. *Ibid.*

[6] *mauribium*, Corp. Gl. M. 43: "*Marubium. biowryt vel hune.*" Wr.

mirta, mastix, lupini, oleum de masticis, & de absinthio / Herof' þou shalt' take kepe: manie men seien, & it' wole liȝtly be leeued of' lewid men, & þat' is yuel þing' for to leie a repercussif' to ony mater for to driue it' awei, but' it' is bettir to drawe out' þe mater wiþ enplastris, & if' þer comeþ out' þerof' miche quitture, þei seien þat' a mannes bodi is wel purgid þerwiþ, & schal be longe þe holer þerfore / And if' þe mater be doon awei wiþ repercussiuis & þe enpostym be defendid, þan if' þe same man be sijk aftirward, þan men woleu seie þat' it' was defaute in þe leche, for if' þe enpostym hadde be maad maturatif' [1]& þe quitture drawe out', þan þe man hadde be hool, & alle þese opiniouns ben false / And þou schalt' wite þis certeynli: if' þou takist' kepe of' þe .x. consideraciouns þat' ben forseid in enpostyms, & principali whanne his body is maad clene wiþ laxatiuis þat' ben competent' þerfore / It' is bettir to putte awei þe mater wiþ comfortyng' of' þe lyme, þan lete þe mater conferme / for if' þou kepist wel þe condiciouns þat' ben aforseid, the mater mai be putt' awei, & þe man schal not' be peirid //

Many men say, one ought not to remove bad matter by a repercussive, as suppuration purges the body;

Nota

[1 lf. 246, bk.]

but they are wrong,

for it is better to strengthen the limb by removing the matter, than to allow the matter to gather.

## Of þe maner of resolutiuis.

WHanne oon strong', or[2] manye feble of' .x. causis lettiþ repercussiuis, ouþir whanne þou hast' a repercussif', & þou ne miȝt' not' putte awei þe mater, þan þou muste leie þerto resolutiuis. & as it' is aforseid of' repercussiuis, in þe same maner I seie of' resolutiuis: whanne a man haþ akynge ouþir greet' swellynge, þou schalt' leie þerto no resolutiuis, or þou haue maad him a competent' purgacioun. ¶ fforwhi, as it' is aforseid, enpostym ouþer greet' akynge comeþ of' causis wiþinneforþ, þan it' mote [4]nedis come of' replecciouu of' þe bodi. & þan if' þou leist' þerto resolutiuis, þat' wolde drawe to þe place more mater / for þer is no resolutif', þat' ne it' is hoot' / & eueri þing' þat' is hoot', is attractif' / What schal we do in þis caas? ¶ ffirst' þou schalt' lete him blood, ouþir make him a medicyn laxatif', ouþir boþe two, as þou seest' þat' it' wole spede / And þan þou schalt' bigynne for to resolue wiþ medicyns resolutiuis þat' been hoot' & sotil[5] // This is þe difference bitwixe resolutiuis & maturatiuis: ¶ Resolutiuis haueþ tempere hete wiþ sotilnes & open-

¶ co ijo[3] If you cannot use Repercussives, use resolvent medicines.

First give a purgacioun.

[4 lf. 247]

Every resolvent medicine is hot and "attractive," therefore use first bloodletting or purging.

Nota bene.

Wü. 136, 12 (XII. cent.), "*harhune.*" Add. 15,236, lf. 5: *Marubium prassium idem. G. marole. A. horehune. vel horehound.*"

[2] MS. *of.* [3] MS. omits.

[5] Some passages are omitted, in which Lanfranc quotes from his "Chirurgia parva."

Difference between resolving and maturing medicines.

ynge.[1] ¶ Maturatiuis haueþ tempere hete wiþ viscosite / þerfore it' falliþ ofte tyme, þat' whanne þou leist' resolutiuis vpon miche mater & greet', it' makiþ þe mater sotil & hoot', & þan þe kindely hete wiþinne is comfortid wiþ þe hete wiþoutforþ, & it' bifalliþ ofte tyme, þat' medicyns resolutiuis in þis caas makiþ þe mater maturatif' / Also if' þou leist' medicyn maturatif' vpon litil mater & sotil it' hetiþ þe mater, & þe natural hete wiþinne is comfortid þerwiþ, & so þe heete multipliеþ, & in þis maner þe heete [2]mai be resolued. 8

[2 lf. 247, bk.]

¶ The maner of' resoluing' : Make a decoccioun of' herbis of' whiche þow wolt' make þi medicyn, & kepe þe watir þat' þe herbis ben soden yn, & wiþ þe same watir þou schalt' waische þe lyme, til it' bicome reed, & þan leie þervpon þe medicyn resolutif'. ¶ Herof' þou muste be war, þat ofte tyme a medycyn resolutif' resolueþ þe sotil mater, & þat' þat' is greet', bicomeþ hard, & þan þe more þat' þou art' aboute to resolue, þe more it' wole bicome hard / þerfore þou muste be bisi in þis caas & leie þerto mollificatiuis, & þan þou schalt' go to resolutiuis, & in þis maner þou schalt' worche it' til it' be al resolued. ¶ Of' medicyns resolutiuis, summe ben simple : as, camomilla, Mellilotum, paritaria, malua siluestris & alia,[3] volibilis,[4] fumus terre, caulis, anetum, vrtica, enula, borago, sambucus, kebulus, valeriana, & alle herbis þat' ben hoot' in tempere,[5] wiþ sotilnes. ¶ De seminibus / Semina caulium, aneti, vrtice, malue. Semina diuretica : cantabrum,[6] omne,[7] farina ordei, orobi, & fabe / Pinguede porci & anseri, anatis, galline, aquile. ¶ De gummis / [8]Mastix, olibanum, opoponac, asa fetida, mirra, serapinum, armonicum, bdellium, galbanum, & alle maner sotil gummis : lapdanum, ysopus humida, terbentina, cera, swetynge of' bestis, & buttir. ¶ Medicyns resolutif' & compound of' þe forseid, simple þou schalt' fynde in þe nexte chapitre here tofore / þis is an oile resoluinge / & makiþ hoot' & accessiþ akynge / ℞, florum camomille recencium, fenigreci seminis ana .ʒ ij., leie hem in xx .ʒ j. of' oile of' oliue in a glasen vessel, & lete it' stonde to þe sunne .xl. daies in somer, & þan kepe it' for

Use the decoction, made to prepare the resolvent medicine, first as a wash.

Simple resolvent medicines.

[8 lf. 248]

Compound resolvent medicines.

A resolving oil.

℞

[1] Lat. cum subtilitate aperitiua.

[3] The Prints read "siue *alba*." Add. 26,106, siue *alba* corrected to *alia*. The correct reading is either *alta* or *altea*. Add. 15,236, lf. 5: "*Malua viscus. bismalua. Altea idem. G. Wymauve A. mersmauve.*" *Alphita*, p. 110: "Malva silvestris, malva viscus, altea . . . alta malva idem."

[4] MS. volibilis. *Alphita*, p. 192: "*Volubilis, corrigiola idem, arbores parvas et herbas ligat. gall.* [*corrigi*]*ole, angl. berebinde.*"

[5] Lat. temperate calida.

[6] *cantabrum*, bran. Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Cantabrum .i. grossum furfur tritici vel frumenti .G. la grose brene.*" [7] Lat.: omne amilum de ordeo.

þin vss. If þou haddist nede herof & if it[1] were in winter, þan take þe flouris of camomille dried & fenigrec & oile, as it is aforseid, & sette þis glasen vessel *in* a caudroun ful of watir, & make fier vndir, & loke þat þe wat*er* ne boile not, & so it schal stonde al a dai in hoot wat*er* / & wh*a*nne it is coold cole it, & kepe þe oile for þin vss / And i*n* þis maner þou miȝt make oile of ros*is*, if þou hast nede, & oile of absinthium, & of rue, & of oþ*er* mo þat þou hast nede of // **Anoþer oile** þat is resolutif / ℞, olei antiqui .lī. j., sem*in*is aneti nouit*er* in vmbra siccati .ʒ̄ j., putte him *in* a viol fourti daies to þe sunne, ouþ*er* sette it *in* hoot wat*er* [2]as it is aforseid. Another resolving oil. ℞ [2 lf. 248, bk.]

¶ Anoþ*er* oile þat is resoluyng and makiþ hoot & accessiþ akynge, & is good for to achaufe a mannys reynes & a wommans maris, & it is clepid oliu*m* de lilio compositu*m* / ℞, olij antiqui .ʒ̄. xx., flor*um* liliorum alborum, & kutte awei þerof al þat is ȝelowe, cassilaginis,[3] costi, masticis, carpobalsami ana .ʒ̄ i.,[4] cinamoni ana .ʒ̄ ß., putte alle þese in a glasen vessel, & lete hem stonde in þe schadowe al a moneþe, & þan do awey þe lilie flouris of þe oile, & kepe þe oile for þin vss. Oil of lilies. ℞

¶ Anoþ*er* oile þat is clepid oliu*m* mastice, & is swiþe resolutif, & is good for febilnes of þe stomac, & it is good for akynge of a mannes stomac / ℞, oliu*m* oliuarum mediocriter maturarum .lī. ij., masticis .ʒ̄. vj., boile hem togidere in a double vessel, til þe mastix & þe oile be dissolued, & kepe it for þin vss. Nota ℞

¶ This þou muste knowe, þat wh*a*nne þou wolt make þat, þat schal be repercussif & coold & comfortyng for þe lyme, þan þou schalt chese oile þat is not to ripe, as for to make oliu*m* ros*is*, oliu*m* mirtinum, & oþ*er* mo. If þou wolt make oile þat schal be resoluyng, ouþ*er* persyng, þan þou schalt chese oile þat is ripe / And i*n* þis maner þou schalt [5]knowe, wheþer þe oile be ripe or no. Oile þat is not ripe, wole be grene, & þat is ripe wole be whit, & þat þat is *in* þe meene, wole be meene colour bitwixe þe two. How to distinguish ripe and unripe olive-oil. [5 lf. 249]

¶ Oynementis þat ben resolutif ben maad *in* þis maner: of iiij .ʒ̄ of[6] oile of camomille ouþ*er* of sum oþ*er* oile & ʒ̄ j. of wex in somer, & ʒ̄ ß. in winter, & ʒ̄ j. of poudre of seedis of aneti, caulium, flouris of camomille. ¶ Ysopus humida is a good oynement resolutif, & is maad *in* þis maner: / **Take** of þe smal wolle þat is bitwixe þe schepis leggis, & take þerof a good quantite, & take as miche wat*er*, ysopus humeda. ℞

[1] *if it*, above line.

[3] Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Cassilago, Iusquiamus idem G. geliner A. henebel. vel heneban.*" The Lat. has *Cassio lignea*, see *Alphita*, p. 35.

[4] *carpobalsamum*, "balsames bloed." Wr. Wü., 199, 41 (X cent.).

[6] MS. *of* twice.

& lete þe wolle ligge *in* þe watir adai & anyȝt', & þan boile hem a litil wiþ lent' fier, & þan cole hem, & whanne þei ben coold, wrynge hem þoruȝ a clooþ, & do þe water þerof' into a leden vessel, & boile it' wiþ lent' fier, & algate meeue it' wiþ a spature til it' bicome þicke as it' were an oynement'. ¶ Of' enplastris þe beste þat' is diaculon Rasis þat' resolueþ scrophulas & glandulas, & makiþ carbunculis maturatif' & is swiþe comoun / ℞, olij antiqui de oliuis maturis vncias quinque, litargiri .ʒ j., & þou schalt' poudre þe litarge *in* a morter & do þerto [1] þin oile & medle hem togidere, & þan do hem *in* a vessel & boile hem togidere, & meeue hem algatis wiþ a spature, & do þerto de muscillagine seminis lini, fenigreci, ana .ʒ ij, & muscillaginem malue visci .ʒ j, & þan boile hem til þei bicome þicke, & make þerof gobetis & kepe hem to þin vss, & if' þou wolt' worche þerwiþ, take þerof' as miche as þou wolt', & plane it' vpon leþer or vpon lynnen clooþ, & leie vpon þe place. ¶ Diaculon Iohannis Mesue is better þan þis / & worchiþ more strongli. Þat þou schalt' finde *in* paruo compendio. ¶ Also anoþer plastre þat' is resolutif' / ℞, maluarum siluestrum, paritarie, flouris of' camomille, Melliloti ana ℥. j., boile hem *in* watir til þei be wel soden, & þan stampe hem, & take of' þe same watir .iij. partis, & of' sum oile þat is resolutif' oon parti, seminis caulium, aneti partem ß., furfuris, farine ordei, ana partem j., boile hem alle togidere & make þerof' as it were pultes, & þan do þerto of' þe herbis þat' ben soden as miche as of' al þe remenaunt', & leie it' vpon þe place þat' þou wolt', sumdel hoot' as it' is aforseid, & seke medicins resolutiuis [2] þat' ben *in* paruo compendio, & do it' to, & þan þou miȝt' haue medicyns resolutiuis ynowe /

[1 lf. 249, bk.]

[2 lf. 250]

A resolving plaster.

℞

Iohannes Mesue

℞

Another resolving plaster.

## Of þe tretis of þe foure maturatiuis.

c° iij° 3

If resolving and repercussive medicines have no effect, then bring the matter to maturation.

WHanne þou hast' resolued mani daies ouþer leid þerto repercussiuis, & ne is nouȝt' worth, saue þe mater wole bicome maturatif', þan if' his bodi be avoidid as it' is aforseid, þan [begynne] [4] for to leie þerto maturatiuis / Euery medicyn þat' is maturatif' is hoot' *in tempere* wiþ a maner viscosite þat' wole not' suffre þe vapour to goon out', but' it' holdiþ him wiþinne til it' be maturid ; & ben þese : Malua viscus, branca vrcina, radix brionie, radix lappacii

Maturing Simples:

[3] MS. om.

[4] Lat.: "Quando pluribus resoluisti diebus aut forte repercussisti, nec valet, sed materia desiderat maturari, tunc premissis evacuationibus necessariis vel possibilibus, *incipe* maturare."

acuti,[1] baucie[2] Radix, farine frumenti, semen lini, fenigreci, ficus sicce, & alle þat' ben forseid *in* þe nexte chapitre tofore, if' þat' þei beþ medlid herwiþ. ¶ **This is a good maturatif' *com*pound of manie þingis** þat' **makiþ hoot' mater maturatif'.** ℞, foliorum malue nigre, *id est* comoun malue pinguis seu ortolane, brance vrcine, radix brioni, radicis malue visci an*a*. ℥ .j., seþe hem alle *in* watir & stampe hem, & þan do þerto malua visci, & þan take of' þe same watir a pound [3]& freisch grese .ʒ ij., & sotil mele of' whete .ʒ iij., & sotil mele of' lynseed & of' fenigrec an*a* .ʒ j. & ß., medle hem togidere & boile hem *perfiʒtli*, & make þerof' cataplasma, & þan do þerto of' þe foreseid herbis & rootis wel grounde, & medle hem togidere, & loke þat' þei be not' to þicke / for it' schal be algate þin entencioun, þat' cataplasma, þat' schal be resolutif' or maturatif' or mundificatif', ne schal not' be hard ; for if' it' be hard, it' wole make akynge to þe lyme, & þan it' wole anoie more þan profite. ¶ Item, if' þou dredist' woodnes of' mater, þan þou ne schalt' do þerto no fenigrec ; for it' is swiþe hoot', & þerwiþ þe mater wole be as it' were a feuere.[4] & þerfore I counseile þee þat' þou do no fenigrec þerto / If' þou dredist', þat' þe mater is swiþe hoot' / if' þer be wiþ þat' mater ony gretnes or ony coold mater, þan make of' þe forseid cataplasma .ij. partis, fermenti de frumento[5] *partem* j., & medle hem togidere. & Isaac seiþ : þat' þis is good for mater þat' is medlid wiþ hoot' cause & coold cause togidere. ¶ Also a good maturatif' / Take hony & butter an*a*, & medle hem *with* mele til þei be as þicke as it' were pultes. [6]¶ Item embrocaciouns *in* resolucioun*s* & maturacioun, & is good for akynge of' woundis of' concussioun *in* þe heed / concussioun is as miche to seie as smiten wiþ a staf' / ℞, olij ʒ ij., cere alb*e* ʒ j., cimini, rute, arthemesie an*a*. ʒ ß., absinth*i*, paritarie, brance vrcine, an*a* ʒ ij., grinde wel þe herbis & þe grese togidere *in* a morter, & þan do þerto poudre of' comyn, & oile, & medle hem wel togidere. ¶ Also pultes þat' wole make an enpostym maturatif' : ℞, foliorum malue, bismalue, paritorie, volubilis maioris, iusquiami an*a* ʒ ij., seþe hem in a litil watir, & þan presse hem & staumpe hem wel, & þan medle hem wiþ ʒ iij of' þe same watir þat' þei weren soden ynne, & medle þerwiþ ʒ j. of' grese, þat' it' be cold, & barli mele þat' suffisiþ / In þis maner þou schalt' make a coold

A compound maturing medicine. ℞

[3 lf. 250, bk.]

**Nota.** Caution against Fennil, if there is any danger, that the matter may get inflamed.

Isaac.

℞

℞

[6 lf. 251]

℞

℞

[1] MS. *lappa acuta.*
[2] *baucia. Alphita*, p. 21 : "pastinaca, angl. widleskirwit."
[4] Lat. : et cito per illum inflammatur materia.
[5] MS. *fermento.*

℞ mater maturatif / ℞, cepe unum[1] album, item de capitibus allij, & sette hem vndir askis, & distempere hem wiþ þe .iij. part' of' buttir, & do þerto mele of' fenigrek, & of' lynseed, & make þerof' an enplastre. & do þerto .ij. ȝelkis of' eiren soden hard, & ℥ j. off' malui visci preparati, & ℥ ij. of' fermenti. ¶ Also a maturatif' of' ℞ greet' mater & coold & hard. ℞, bdellij, serapini ana ℥ j. & ß, & [2 lf. 251, bk.] dissolue hem in vinegre / [2]& stampe hem wel, & do þerto ℥ j. of' terbentyne, & dissolue hem to þe fier / But' loke þat' it' ne boile not', & do þerto oile of' lilie ℥ ij., & make it' þicke wiþ sutil mele ℞ of' lupinis, & of' fenigrec / Item ℥ ß. of' olibani, & fenigrec maad to poudre sotili poudrid, & medle hem wiþ ℥ß. ß of' hony ; þis wole be a good maturatif' for coold causis. ¶ Also vnguentum tetrafarmacum,[3] & it' is clepid of' Auicenne basilicon,[4] & þus manie men preisiþ þis medicyn. Galen, Auicen, Serapion, Iohannes Mesue, & Haly þe abbot' ; & it' makiþ enpostyms maturatif', & it' is good for woundis, & for vlcera þat' ben bicome hard / ℞, cere, resine, picis, cepi vaccini,[5] ana, & olij quod suffisiþ / Summen in stide of' cepum, þei putten buttir, & summen in winter þei doon þerto oon parti of' bdellium, & summen taken oonli ceram, picem, & rasinam ana, & olium ; & þis is basilicon minus. ¶ Also a good maturatif' for antracem / & is good for to make a wickid enpostym maturatif', as I haue aforseid in his place / ℞, ficus siccas bene pingues, numero .vj., vue passe[6] de corinthio ℥ j., duas spicas allij mundatas, piperis grana .xij., salis nitri ℨ .ij., stampe alle þese & do þerto oold oile [7 lf. 252] ℥ ij., aceti [7]℥ j., fermenti acerimi as miche as is þe half' of' alle togidere. ¶ Also a maturatif' for antracem / but' if' he be swiþe hard & malicious, an enplastre maad of' hony is good þerfore & of' oile of' violet'. ¶ Also for to make antracem & carbunculum ℞ maturatif' / ℞, fermenti acris, lactis mulieris, mellis, vitellorum ouorum ana, medle hem togidere. If' þou wolt' worche more strongeli, do þerto galbanum dissolued as myche as þe haluendel of' oon. & if' þou wolt' make it' more strong', for to make it' maturatif', & for to make it' breke, þan do þerto culueris doung' & of' hennis ana, as miche as wole be .iiij. part' of' oon, as it' is aforseid / baunac,

Basilicum maius. Auicen.

Basilicum minus.

A maturing medicine for anthrax and malignant apostemas.

[1] MS. *vinum*. Add. 26,106, fol. 103 *b*.: "cepe unum album."

[3] MS. *cetrafarozatum*.

[4] Phillips : "*Basilicon*, a Royal Ointment or Plaister, otherwise called Tetrapharmacon, because it is made up of four Ingredients, viz., Pitch, Rosin, Wax, and Oil."

[5] Lat. : sepi vaccini.

[6] *vue passe*, dried grapes, *i. e.* raisins.

vj. p*ar*t' of' oon & ß.; þese .iij. maturatiuis suffisiþ þee / ¶ Also þis is a rule þat' is ful p*ro*fitable for þee / wh*a*nne þou wolt' leie ony maturatif' to a place: first' þou schalt' make embrocam[1] to þe lyme wiþ a decoccioun of' herbis maturat*iuis*, soden *in* watir, & wiþ þat' hoot' watir þou schalt' baþe þe lyme til þe lyme bicome reed, & þan leie þ*er*on a plastre of' maturatiuis þat' ben forseid oon þ*er*of', for þou hast' sufficiently ynowe, & loke þat' þe enplastre be not' to hard, [2] & [2 lf. 252, bk.] as hoot' as he mai suffre it' þou schalt' leie it' þ*er*to / ¶ Thou hast' herd sufficientli of' maturatiuis, ynow it' is nede to speke of' mundificat*iuis*. For wh*a*nne an hard matir is m*a*ad maturatif', it' is nede for to leie þ*er*to mundificatiuis as it' is forseid in þe worchinge of' enpostyms /

## ¶ Of þe tretis of mundificatiuis /

MUndificatum is as miche to seie as cl*e*nsyng', & doiþ awei hore. & eueri þ*ing*' þat' doiþ awei hore *in* woundis & super-fluite, may be seid a mundificatif' / A mundificatif' may be seid *in* .ij. maners / As a medicyn þat' is take*n* bi þe mouþ, ouþ*er* þat' is putt' *in* bineþe wiþ a clisterie, ouþ*er* wiþ a pessarie[3] for to make clene a m*a*nnes lymes wiþ*in*ne. & of' þis kinde ben sirupis maad of' seedis þat' makiþ clene a m*a*nnes lymes, & weies of' þe vrine / And þ*er* ben su*m*me medicyns þat' makiþ clene a m*a*nnes blood as cassia fistula, manna,[4] tamarindi; & al medicyns laxatiuis mowen be clepid mu*n*dificatiuis, & herof is not' e*n*tencioun in þis caas / ¶ Anoþir. I wole speke of' medicyns mundificatif' in cirurgie.[5] & þat' is p*ro*pirli seid a medicyn, þat' doiþ awei greet' super*fluite* ouþ*er* gret' greuance [6] of' quitture, ouþ*er* remeueþ[7] awei harde crustis [6 lf. 253] *in* woundis, ouþir *in* vlceribu*s*, & makiþ clene wou*n*dis & vlcera of' þat' super*fluite* / ffor as it' is seid *in* anoþ*er* place: In eueri wounde þat' is holow, þat' is as miche to seie as wh*a*nne it' haþ lost' sub-staunce of' fleisch þ*er*on, þan bi skille[8] þ*er* schulde be engendrid þ*er*on .ij. super*fluites*, þat' oon schal be greet', & þat' oþ*er* schal be sotil. & þese wollen lette þe souding' of' a wounde, & þei wolen

A mundificative medicine, may either be taken inwardly or applied by a clyster or pessary.

[1] Lat.: prius locum embrocas. Matth. Sylv.: "*Embroca* id est infusio quam nos dicimus fomentum & embrocatio id est infusio sed quando ab alto infunditur." See p. 331, note 5.

[3] Traheron, Vigo. Interpret.: "*Pessarie.* Pessus is woll tossed, and made rounde after the fassyon of a fynger wherewith medicines are receyued and conueyed into the matrice." [4] MS. *manci.*

[5] Lat.: Alio modo loquimur de medicina mundificatiua in cyrurgia.

[7] MS. *remeued.* [8] Lat. necessario.

lette þat' þe fleisch mai not' wexe. ¶ Þan medicyn mundificatif' remeueþ greet' super*fluite*. Of' driynge medicyns, we wolen speke *in* þe chapitre next' / This maner medicyn schal go bifore regenera*cioun* & consolidacio*un*, of' whiche we wolliþ speke hera*fter*; þou3 aggregatiua or conglutinatiua come sumtyme for to soude wiþ*outen* þat', þat' þis medicyns ne goiþ not' tofore, as wha*nne* woundis ben sewid & ben ma*a*d hool wiþ*outen* regene*racioun* of' quitture. Þis medicyn makiþ clene, & drieþ sum*w*hat', as wat*er* & hony wha*nne* vlcera virulenta beþ waischen þ*er*wiþ, ouþir woundis *in* which agendriþ miche quitture; & sum*t*yme it' is more strong', as

[1 lf. 253, bk.] wha*nne* þ*er* beþ medlid þ*er*wiþ poudris corosiuis þat' han litil [1]v*er*tu of' corosiuis, & helpiþ for to make clene, & wha*nne* corosiuis ben seid for to take awey yuel fleisch þat' ne mai not' be taken awei w*ith* medicyns /

Therfore I wole sette medicyns bi rule, & first' I wole speke of' medicyns þat' be*n* simple / ffor as me seiþ .x. siþis rehersid like*th* a man.[2] ¶ Thou schalt' wite þis þat' woundis þat' ben freisch, þ*er* it' is no nede for to engendre quitture wha*nne* þ*er* is noon concussio*un*, neiþ*er* of' nerues, ne of' boon, ne p*ri*ckynge, ne þ*er* is noon akynge þ*er*wiþ / þan it' is no nede for to leie þ*er*to mundificatiuis, but oonli consolidatiuis / But' wha*nne* a wou[n]de is chaungid wiþ þe eir or enpostymed, or greet' akynge, þan þou muste leie þ*er*to maturatiuis; & wha*nne* þe akynge & þe o*pere* accidentis ben awei, þan þou schalt' bigynne for to leie þ*er*to mundificatiuis as it' is aforseid *in* his chapitre / This is a coold mundificatif' for to make clene wo*un*dis þat' ben freisch *in* which is good quitture. ℞, mellis rosati colati ℥. iij., farine subtillissime ordei ℥ j., & do þ*er*to a litil wat*er*, &

[3 lf. 254] seþe hem softli þat' þei ne bre*nne* not', & algate þou schalt' [3]meue it' wiþ a spature, & þan make it' abrood vpon a clooþ, & leie it' vpon

*Nota* þe wo*un*de / This makiþ clene & comfortiþ / If' it' so be þat' a wounde be *in* nerues placis, þan it' is good for to do þ*er*to a litil terbentyn waischen, wha*nne* it' is doon adou*n* fro þe fier / for terbentyn schal not' boile, wha*nne* itt' schal be putt' *into* enplastris, for it' wole lese his worching' *in* þe boilyng'. ¶ **Anoþir mundificatif' þat' makiþ clene dura*m* m*at*rem wh*anne* a man is hurt' *in* þe heed, & wh*anne* dura mater is bicome blac** / ℞, mellis rosati colati ℥ j., oliȝ ℥ ß., medle hem togidere. ¶ Anoþ*er* mundificatif'

[2] Add. 26,106, fol. 104: "et quum medicine simplices raro ponuntur ad mundificandum, ideo ponam medicamina composita per ordinem, denumerando medicinas simplices, non curando, quoniam decies repetita placebunt."

If a wound is fresh and not complicated with any contusion, apply only a consolidative medicine.

In any other case apply first a maturing and then a "mundificative" medicine.

℞

℞

þat' makiþ wo*u*ndis maturatif' þat' ben to-swolle & ben not' to bren-
nyn*g*' hoot', but' su*m*what' toward cooldnes / ℞, mellis rosati colati ℞
.lī. ß., farine fenigreci .ʒ ij., farine ordei .ʒ j. ¶ **Ano**þ*er* **mundifi-**
**catif' for vlcera** þ*at*' **beþ newe** *in* **enpostyms** / Take ȝelkis of' eir*en* ℞
rawe, & medle þ*er*wiþ whete mele as miche as wole suffise ; þis wole
make clene & do awei þe akynge, & make þe place coold / ¶ **Also**
**ano**þ*er* **mundificatif' þat' wole make maturatif'** þ*er*wiþ, **& is good**
**wha***n***ne a man wole** [1]kutte an enpostym tofore his tyme. & it' is [1 lf. 254, bk.]
a *p*ro*p*re medicyn for to make clene antrasem & carbunc*u*lo & alle
maner pustulis þat' ben venymous aftir þe tyme þat' þei ben opened,
& it' is good for to make clene, vlcera þat' be*n* oold / ℞ mellis albi ℞
boni .lī. ß., farine subtilissime tritici .ʒ iij, medle he*m* togidere i*n*
a panne. & wh*a*nne þei ben wel medlid, þan do þ*er*to iuys of'
apium .ʒ vij., & þan medle hem wel togidere vpon lent' fier, & boile
he*m* til þei bicome as it' were pultes. & þan do he*m* adou*n* of' þe
fier & stire hem wel, & kepe hem for þ*in* vss / If' it' so be þat' þou
dredist' of' a cancre or of' a festre *in* vlceribus þat' ben oold, & if'
þou wolt' make a mundificatif' þ*er*fore, þan i*n* þe stide of' apium do
absinthium, & it' wole be good. ¶ Ano**þ***er* mundificatif' *in* vlceribus
þat' ben rotid, & wh*a*nne þer engendriþ þ*er*vpon greet' rotyng' / ℞, ℞
mellis lī .j., farine siliginis .ʒ iiij., farine fenigreci, orobi, lupinor*um*,
mirre, an*a* ʒ j., succi absinthij lī .j., medle he*m* alle togidere, &
poudre þ*in*gis þat' schulen be poudrid, & boile he*m* sotilli til þei be
p*er*fiȝtli boilid ; & wh*a*nne þou doist' he*m* adou*n* of' þe fier, þan do
þ*er*to of' terbentyn .ʒ iiij., [2]& medle he*m* wel togid*er*e / Alle þese [2 lf. 255]
mu*n*dificatiuis schulen be maad abrood vpo*n* a cloop of' ly*n*nen, &
leid vpon vlcus for to make it' clene aftir þe tyme þat' þei beþ
waische, as it' is aforseid in þe chapitre de vlceribus / ¶ A poudre
þat' is mundificatif' of' crustis & greet' fleisch þat' is engendrid i*n*
oold vlceribus, & wiþoute greet' violence of' fretyng' / ℞, succi affo- ℞
dillor*um* .ʒ vj., calcis viue .ʒ ij., auripigmenti .ʒ j., medle hem
togidere, & sette he*m* i*n* þe su*n*ne i*n* þe moneþe of' august', & on
ny3tis do it' out' of' þe eir, & i*n* þis maner þou schalt' do til it' be
drie, & make herof' gobetis, & þan drie he*m* in þe schadowe. &
þou schalt' kepe he*m* i*n* a vessel of' tree i*n* a place þat' be not' to
drie, ne to moist'. & wh*a*nne þou hast' nede þ*er*to, grinde oon þ*er*of',
& leie it' vpon þe place. ¶ Also a good mundificatif' for vlcera is
vngue*n*tum viride, þat' is maad of' oon part' of' vert' de grece, & .ij. **vng^m viride**
p*ar*tis of' hony, medlid wel togid*er*e. ¶ Also a good oynement' for
to make clene, vlcera þat' ben hori, & festri, & polipum, & wickid

vlcera, & is clepid vng*uentum* veneris, ouþer vng*uentum* apostolo-
[1 lf. 255, bk.] *rum*. & it' is good for to remeue awei fleisch in vlc*er*is / [1]℞, cere
℞ albe, rasine albe, armoniaci an*a* .3. xiiij., bdellij, astrologie, olibani
gummosi an*a* .3. vj., galbani, mirre an*a* .3. iiij., litargiri .3. viij., 4
opoponac, floris eris an*a*. 3. iij.; þe gummys schulen be maad neische
in vinegre, & dissolued wiþ fier þat' be lent', & þan do þer*to* wex
dissolued wiþ lī. ij. of' oile in somer, & iiij. *in* w*in*ter. & wh*an*ne
þei ben molten, do þer*to* þi poudris, & make þerof' an oynement'. 8
¶ Anoþer oynement' clensiþ wel nerues & drawiþ out' þe quitture, &
Mundificatiuum de rasina. it' is clepid mundificat*iuum* rasina[2] / ℞, rasine, mellis, terbentyn
an*a* .lī. ß., mirre, sarcocolle, fárine fenigreci, sem*in*is lini an*a* ℥ j.,
dissolue þe rosyn, hony & wex togidere, & þan do þer*to* þi poudris, 12
& make þerof' pultes. ¶ Also we moten vse medicyns þat' ben
more strong', & ben clepid medicine cauteriȝ*antes*, for to make clene
vlcera þat' ben yuel *in* ner*uous* place. & þe teching' herof' þou
schalt' fynde *in* þe chapitre de medic*in*is facientib*us* op*us* caut*er*ij. 16

## Of medicyns regeneratiuis & consolidat*iu*is.

Restorative Medicines

IT þinkiþ bi þe maner of' speche þat' þe medicyns þat' ben seid
*in* þis chapitre ben al oon, but' þ*er* is miche difference bi-
[3 lf. 256] twixe / ffor [3]of' sum*m*en alle þei ben clepid consolidat*iu*is. 20
are differently named by different authors. But' aggregatiue & consolidatiue ben al oon / And regenera-
tiue, & incarnatiue, & facientes carnem nasci, ben oon to seie; &
þ*er* is greet' difference bitwixe hem þat' ben forseid & þese / And
sigillatiuis, & cicatriȝatiuis, & consolidatiuis ben al oon; neþeles 24
alle þese names ben not' *pro*pirli take of' alle auctouris / But' oon
herof' is taken for anoþer ofte tyme / But' for to seie þe soþe, a
Auicen. medicyn þat' is clepid aggregat*um* or conglutinat*um*, & A. in diuers
placis taketh diuersli þese names of' medicyns: & I suppose þat' it' 28
were for defaute of' men þat' translatid þe science / But' for to seie
þe soþe, aggregatiua or consolidatiua is a drie medicyne, & haþ
gummosite *in* him; & wh*an*ne it' is leid to þe lyme, it' wole resolue
wiþ his drienes. It' drieþ vp superfluite of' moistnes þat' is bitwixe 32
þe lippis of' a wounde, wiþ a litil ligature or sewing' it' soudiþ
Auicen. togidere.[4] & A. clepiþ þis incarnati*uam*, & sum*m*en clepen it' con-
solidatiu*am*, & ben þese / Sang*uis* drac*onis*, calx, thus masculin*um*

[2] Lat.: mundificatiuum de rasina.

[4] Add. 26,106, fol. 105: "superfluam siccat humiditatem que inter duo vulneris labia, per medicum ligatura sola vel sutura conducta, reperitur."

folia piror*um*, pomor*um*, porri, lilij cortices, palme,[1] arnaglossa, caulis, folia cip*ressi*, folia vit*is* [2]albe, nux recens, folia acetose, puluis molendini, ordeu*m* vstu*m*, flos sorbe, lac acetosu*m*, & o*þere* manie *þat*' ben vnknowen for us / Sum*tyme* me*n* maden grete woundis & leide*n* þervpon manie herbis, & weren hool *in* þe same dai; & þei camen for to take of' þe same her*bis*, & ne miȝten noon fynde *þat*' wolde do so more / **A good medicyn for þis entencioun**: ℞, frankencense p*ar*tem vnam, sangu*is* drac*onis* p*ar*tes duas, calcis viue p*ar*tes tres, & make herof' poudre; & leie ynowȝ vpon þe .ij. lippis of' þe wou*n*de *þat*' is sewid togidere, as it' is aforseid *in* þe chapitre of' woundis. ¶ Ano*þer* poudre *þat*' is good for þis entencioun; but' *in* placis *þat*' is myche fleisch aweie, it' is nede for to leie þerto þi*n*gis to regendre fleisch, *þat*' we wolliþ speke þerof' soone heraftir. ℞, olibani lucidi, aloes, sangu*is* d*raconis* ana, make þerof' poudre. ¶ **Ano*þer* comoun for to streyne blood, & for to soude wo*u*ndis**: ℞, sarcocolle p*ar*tes duas, sangu*is* drac*onis*, balaustie ana p*ar*tem vnum,[3] olibani lucidi p*ar*tem ß, & make her*o*f' poudre.

Consolidative medicines. [2 lf. 256, bk.] Simples. Compound Consolidatives. ℞ ℞ ℞

¶ Medicyns forto rege*n*dre fleisch haueþ *pro*priete forto congile blood, þat' comeþ to þe place wiþ tempe*re* drienes, & makiþ þerof' [4]fleisch, & makiþ clene super*fluite* þat' wexiþ þeron. & þis is *in* diuers maner / ffor whi, if' a lyme be woundid *in* þat' maner þat' it' be nede for to regendre fleisch þeron, & þe place is drie, & þer is miche quitture *in* þe wounde, þan it' is nede þat' þou haue swiþe drijng' medicyns. ¶ If' þat' he haue litil quitture & his bodi be moist', — — alle þese techi*n*gis þou hast' had tofore.[5] ¶ Medicyns þat' be*n* liȝt' þat' þou schalt' vse þere, þat' þer is litil quitture yn moist' bodies: ℞, thus minutu*m*, mastix, farina ordei, fenigreci. And þese beþ sum*w*hat' more drier: aristologie, yreos, & orobu*m*, aloes, mirra, pix g*r*eca, farina fabaru*m*; & more strong' þat' þou schalt' vse *in* bodies: astrologia, yreos, farina lupinoru*n*, dragantu*m* adustu*m*, vitriolu*m* adustu*m*; for if' it' be brent' it' wole be þe lasse bityng', & his dr*ie*nes ne schal not' be alaskid. ¶ For .vij. causis diuers þi*n*gis ben brent': Sum*m*e ben bre*n*t', for sum ver*tu* *in* hem schulde wexe / And sum*m*e þat' þe malice þerof' schulde goon awei: as mirabolani, þat' haueþ ver*tu* of' laxatif', & virtute*m* stiptica*m*, for wh*a*nne it' is brent' his ver*tu* laxatif' is maad lasse; & his ver*tu* þat' is clepid stiptica, is neuer þe lasse, but' it' is þe more. In þe same

Medicines which promote the regeneration of flesh. [4 lf. 257] Simple incarnative medicines, mild medicines, strong medicines. *Nota* Substances are burnt for medical use for several reasons. .1.

[1] MS. *pullme.* [3] *sic.*

[5] Lat.: si vero pauca fuerit sanies, & membrum & corpus fuerint humida, medicina tunc indiges minus sicca, sicut superius habuisti.

[3 lf. 257, bk.] maner [1]vitriolum lesiþ his scharpnes, & his drienes is not' lost' /
.2. The .ij. is þis, þat' his greet' substaunce mowe be maad sutil, as
.3. cancri *id est* crabbis þat' ben brent' / The .iij. cause is þis, þat' it' mowe
gadere scharpnes, as stoonys, oistris, & schellis of' eiren, þat' ben
.4. brent' þat' me mai make lyme of' hem / The .iiij. is, þat' it' mowe be
aparailid for to be grounden, as seta sericum[2] / & among' alle
medicyns þat' ben for þe herte þat' mowe be grounde, ben þe beste
as gold & siluir[3] / In þis maner þou schalt' diȝte hem for to grinde /
Seþe hem *in* sulfur *in* leed, þat' þei mowe þe bettir be grounde /
.5. The .v. cause is þis, þat' þe wickidnes þerof' mowe be take awei:
as of' scorpiouns þat' ben brent', þat' we mowe vse hem in medicyns,
.6. þat' ben for þe stoon. The .vj. cause is þis, þat' his vertu mowe be
maad þe more, as squillis whanne þei ben brent', her vertu wole be
.7. þe more / The .vij. cause is þis, þat' his vertu mowe be take fro
him: as psillium, whanne it' is brent' / his vertu wole be þe lasse //
In what' maner þou schalt' go fro medicyn to medicyn, þou hast' it'
[4 lf. 258] pleynerli ynowȝ *in* þe first' tretis, [4]boþe simple medicyns & also
compound / þe whiche þou miȝt' vse as þou seest' best' to done / If'
The best incarnative medicine is thus. þou wolt' regendre fleisch in a deep put' þat' vlcus is, take poudre
of' thuris, whanne vlcus is[5] maad clene, & fille ful þe hole þerof', for
it' wole engendre fleisch wel. ¶ In þes vertues, & it' is moost'
One uses its bark, competent' to consolidatif' medicyns.[6] & his gummosite þat' is clepid
its gum; thus masculinum ouþer olibanum, & þat' is best' for medicyns þat' is
it is further used as a powder, conglutinatif', þat' ben forseid *in* þe bigynnyng' of' þis chapitre. &
Minutum thuris þe poudre of' him, whanne it' is maad smal & falliþ adoun of' a
sarce, is clepid minutum thuris, & þat' is best' to regendre fleisch.

Three kinds of consolidating medicines. Bi þis maner distinccioun þou schalt' gadere þe difference of' þre
medicyns þat' ben *in* þis chapitre, & of' summen þei ben clepid alle
.1 Conglutinatives, [consolidatiues]. ¶ The .j. þerof' þat' is seid conglutinatif', þat'
makiþ þe lippis of' a wounde soude togidere / The .ij. it' drieþ &
.2. Incarnatives, makiþ clene, & helpiþ blood for to turne into fleisch / The .iij. it'
.3. remedies producing cicatrization. drieþ wiþ vertu þat' is clepid stiptica, þat' makiþ hard fleisch to
arise in þe stide of' skyn. ¶ This is a good medicyn for to regendre
[7 lf. 258, bk.] fleisch, þat' is clepid litargirum nutritum, þat' is norischid [7]as it' is

[2] Lat.: sicut seta aut sericum.

[3] Add. 26,106, fol. 105, bk.: quod inter medicinas cordiales fit, quod assatur ut teri possit, et aurum & argentum, que decoquuntur cum sulphure . . .

[5] *is*, above line.

[6] Lat.; Et nota quod de thure tria sunt, sive cortex, & illud est siccius omnibus, & convenit plus in consolidatiuis medicinis facientibus pellem & cicatrizantibus, quas ita habebis.

aforseid i*n* þe chapitre de vlceribu*s*. ¶ **Anoþer poudre þat engendriþ fleisch** / Take thuris minute, masticis, fenigreci ana, fiat puluis. Þis poudre regendriþ fleisch wel & drawiþ, & nyle not suffre þat vlcus schal stynke, but it makiþ for to haue a good sauour. ¶ **Also an oynement þat is good for to regendre fleisch** / ℞, litargiri nutriti ʒ .ij, puluis thuris, sarcocolle, galbani, colofonie,[1] ana ʒ .j, medle hem alle togidere, & make þerof an oynement. ¶ **Anoþer poudre**, ℞, radicem malui visci, þat summen clepen[2] sanaticlam,[3] & sumen clepiþ it vngaria ; & waische it & drie it i*n* a furneis in sich maner þat þou ne brenne it not. & þan grinde it & make þerof poudre, & leie þerof a good quantite i*n* vlceribus þat ben holow / for off his owne propriete it engendriþ fleisch, boþe bi him-silf & also whanne it is medlid wiþ oþere þingis / **Also** take of þe forseid poudre ʒ .j, of thus þat be smal ʒ ß, vernicis,[4] aloes, sarcocolle, masticis, fenigreci ana ʒ .ij, medle hem wiþ þe þingis aforseid, & þou miʒt make þerof an oynement wiþ oile & wex ; & do ʒ j. of þe poudre i*n* ʒ .iiij. of oile, & ʒ ß. of wex. [5]And þis þou schalt knowe, þat þere þou puttist poudris, þou schalt putte none oynementis for to regendre fleisch / But whanne poudre ne mai not come þerto to þe botme þerof, þan þou muste leie þeron oynementis, for þe moisture of þe oile makiþ þe poudre peerse to þe botme. ¶ **Also þis oynement is good, for it drawiþ out quitture** / ℞, oliȝ lī. ß, resine ʒ .j, cere ʒ .ß, minute thuris, fenigreci ana ʒ .ß, make herof an oynement & cole it. ¶ **Also anoþer oynement þat is good for þis entencioun.** ℞, consolide maioris & minoris, cinoglosse, pilocelle,[6] plantaginis maioris & minoris, ana. ℔ .j, vermes terrestres longos, qui dicuntur lumbrici, lī. ß ; kutte alle þes smale,[7] & leie hem i*n* lī. j & ß. of oile of oliue, & lete hem ligge þere .viij. daies, & þan boile hem a litil & þan cole hem, & do þerto schepis talow maad clene *id est* molten & colid, picis naualis lī. ß, picis grece ʒ .iiij, armoniaci, galbanum, opoponaci, terbentine, masticis communis minuti, ana ʒ. ß. In þis maner

An incarnative powder and ointment.

[5 lf. 259]

[1] *colofonie*, see *Alphita*, p. 42.

[2] *clepen*, above line.

[3] *sanaticla*. See Wr. Wül., 554, 8: "Saniculum, i. sanicle, i. wudemerch." *Minsheu* quotes the following proverb: "Celuy qui sanicle a. de Mire affaire il n'a. Et qui a du bugle & du sanicle, fait au chirurgien la nique. He that hath Sanicle, respects not the Poticarie, and he that hath Sanicle and Cumfrie, makes a iest of the Surgeon."

[4] Halle, *Table*, p. 134: "Out of the Iuniper tree sweateth certéine teares, in the spring tyme chiefly and therefore called *Vernix*, quasi Vernus ros."

[6] Lat. pilosella. See Wr. Wül., p. 556, 18.

[7] MS. *þesmale*.

℞ þou schalt make hem: Take armoniaci, galbanum, opoponaci, &
[1 lf. 259, bk.] dissolue hem in vinegre, & aftirward dis[1]solue hem in caʒiola.[2] &
whanne þei ben dissolued, do þerto oile, wex & pich, & þan do
þerto alle þe opere þat ben maad to poudre, & þan cole hem & kepe
hem for þin vss. ¶ If þou leist þis oynement in þe botme of a
wounde, it wole drawe out þe quitture & aswage þe akynge, & it
The physician has to use his own discretion as to the doses. wole make clene & regendre fleisch in vlcera. ¶ This þou muste
knowe, þat þouʒ I sette proporcioun of poudris, & oile, & wex,
nebeles þou schalt proporcioun þi þingis more or lasse as þou seest
Remedies which produce cicatrization. þat þou hast nede þerto. ¶ If a wounde haue miche quitture, &
be in a drie place, þan þou schalt do þerto þe more poudre, & þe
lasse oile & wex / If it so be þat a wounde be in a moist place,
þan þou schalt do þerto þe lasse of þe poudre, & more of þe oile &
of þe wex, as it is aforseid. ¶ Medicina consolidatiua, cicatriʒatiua,
& sigillatiua ben al oon; & þat ben medicyns þat drieþ þe moisture
of a wounde, & makiþ a rynde aboue vpon þe fleisch, & makiþ a
**Auicen** strong keueryng for[3] to defende þe fleisch fro harm / And A. seiþ,
[4 lf. 260] þat in vlcera þat is holow, þat þere [4]ne schal neuere be no skyn
engendrid þeron, for þe skyn in a man is engendrid of þe spermis
Skin which has been destroyed cannot be reproduced. of þe fadir & of þe modir / And alle þe partijs of a man þat ben
engendrid oonli of sperme, & þei be kutt awei, þei schulen neuere
wexe aʒen / And alle þese þingis in a man ben engendrid oonli of
sperme, as a mannes skyn, & boonys & senewis; & þerfor & þer be
ony gobet kutt awei of þese, þei ne mowe neuere be regendrid
**Auicen** aʒen, as .A. seiþ, & it is sooþ / But in þis caas medicynes mowe
It may be replaced by a hard substance. helpe for to engendre hard fleisch aboue, & schal be in þe place of
skyn, vpon which place nyle neuer wexe here afterward[5] / ¶ Simple
medicyns þat ben in þis caas makyng skyn vpon a soor þat is
Simple medicines. clene / **Cortices** arboris, pini, cortices thuris, centaurea combusta,
ossa combusta, abrotanum combustum, balaustie, galle, cipressi,
psidie, cucurma, rubea maioris combusta, lumbrici terestris adusti,
cathinia argenti & auri, alumen sissum, folia fici, stercus canis
comedentis ossa siccatum,[6] aristologia longa & rotunda combuste, es
[5 lf. 260, bk.] vstum lauatum, & ius medicina[7] / [8]Sumtyme we medlide medicyns

[2] Matth. Sylv.: "*Cazola* est quoddam vas." See Ital. cazzuola. *Tomm. Dict.* [3] MS. *fro.*

[5] Lat.: "medicina ista namque adiuuat, vt nascatur caro calosa dura, que est loco cutis, super quam non nascitur pilus."

[6] MS. *sucatum.*

[7] Lat.: "et omnis (abbr. *oīs*) medicina, que fit in duabus actiuis propter temperamentum."

conglutiuas wiþ a fewe corrosiuis, þat schulen be seid in þe nexte chapitre here aftir / But for to medle medicyns *in* þis maner, þer mote be miche kunnynge for to *pro*porcioun*e* hem, & sum*m*e þerof þou muste haue bi experience, & sum*m*e of þe knowing of þe mannes complexioun, boþe of his bodi & also of his lyme / Of þe forseid simple medicyns þou miȝt vse hem *in* powdre, & if þou wolt þou miȝt make oynemen*t*is of hem, as it is aforseid / But þe oile þat þou wolt make þese oynementis wiþ, schal algate be stipticum, as oleum rosaceum & mirtinum. ¶ A good composicioun þat þou schalt vse *in* somer *in* woundis & in vlceribus þat ben hote, & *in* euery place þere þe skyn is aweie *in* a mannes bodi, of riding, eiþir of pustulis, or of fier, or off hoot watir, & it is clepid vnguentum Rasis Rasis, þat is maad *in* þis maner: ℞, oliȷ ro. ℥ iiij, cere ℥ ß, in þese regiouns þat ben hoot & [1] *in* somer ℥ .ij, & aftir þe regioun þou schalt do þerto dyuers quantite of wex, ceruse ℥ .j, camphore ʒ .j, þe whitis of ij. eggis. Þou schalt make it *in* þis maner / ffirst þou schalt grinde .ij almaun[2]dis blaunchid & stampid *in* a morter, & þan do out þe almaundis þat ben to-broke of þe morter, & make clene þe morter; & þan leie þeron camphore, & grinde it smal; & þan do þerto ceruse, & grinde it smal; & þan do þerto oile, & grinde hem wel togidere wiþ þe pestel. & whanne it is almoost coold, þan do þerto .ij. whitis of eiren, & meue hem wiþ a sclise longe, for þe more þat þei ben stirid togidere þe bettir it wole be / Summen doon þerto ceruse wiþ þe forseid quantite of oile & wex, and camphore & whitis of eiren ʒ .v, litargiri ʒ .iij. & þis is a good consolidatif, but it makiþ coold. & if þou wolt do þerto litarge, do more or lasse as þou seest þat it is to done // ¶ **This is a good poudre for þis entencioun** / ℞, aloes, balaustiarum, cathinie argenti, eris vsti triti,[3] & lauati partes equales; make herof sutil poudre, & herof leie vpon þe place þere þou wolt haue þe skyn. ¶ **Anoþer poudre þat is more strong þan þis** / ℞, aloes, cucurmie, vermium terestrium combustorum, balaustiarum, mirre, gallarum. ¶ **A good oynement** / ℞, fecem argenti ʒ .xxx, merdam ferri, cymolie ana ʒ .vij [4] & ß, cathinie argenti, ceruse, litargiri, plumbi vsti ana ʒ .v, argille rubie ʒ .x; medle hem alle wiþ oile of ro., & make an oynement, & it is clepid vnguentum de palma. ¶ **Also anoþer þat G. made, þat wole soude vlcera þat ben oold & yuel for to hele** / ℞, adipis porci antiqui sine sale id est freisch swynys grese molten, & colid þoruȝ a clooþ / oliȷ lī. j & ß,

Compound medicines.

An ointment to be used in hot countries and in summer.

vng[m] Rasis ℞

Direction how to make it. [2 lf. 261]

Two powders. ℞ ℞

[4 lf. 261, bk.]

Consolidating ointment prescribed by Galien. ℞

[1] MS. om. &. [3] MS. *certis*.

litargiri lī. ß, calamenti[1] ℥ .iiij; make it *in* þis maner: grinde
℞ litargirum & calamentum *in* a morter, & do þerto a litil & a litil of
oile & grese, molten togidere / ¶ Also: ℞, spatulam *id est* quæ fit de
palma viridi, & þe middil þerof aboue kutt smal to gobetis, & do it 4
in þi medicyn, & wiþ þe half of þe oþere medicyns medle þis
A regenerative ointment prescribed by Johannes Mesue. medicyn; þis is good for to regendre & soude togidere. ¶ **Anoþir medicyn þat is good for to regendre fleisch & make clene & soude, & is clepid medicamen Ioh*ann*is Mesue, þat is** m*a*ad *in* 8
℞ **þis maner** / ℞, pistatiue & resine,[2] p*a*nni albi vetusti ℥ .j, opopo-
nacum ℥ .ij, vini, mellis, oliȝ ro. v*el* mirtini ℥ .x, litargiri, aloes,
sarcocolle, mirre, an*a* ℥ .ß, make herof an oynement; þis wole
[3 lf. 262] regendre & hele wo*u*ndis þat ben [3]wickid & yuel for to hele, & þis 12
medicyn is as good as þat, þat is sett *in* þe chapitre de vlceribus
virulentis; þis makiþ clene, & driep & regendriþ fleisch. þerfore
ioyne þat & þis togidere. ¶ **Also an oynement** þ*a*t **Maister**
℞ **william someris**[4] **made** / ℞, rasinam alb*a*m & liquef*a*ctam in vino 16
Ointment of resin. acerimo, & cole þe wijn & þe rosyn togidere *in*to coold watir, &
anoynte þin hondis, & temp*e*re it wel *in* þin hondis, & kepe it, &
if it be *in* som*e*r do þerto half so miche of whit wex; make þis
abrood vpon a ly*nn*en cloþ, & leie it vpon þe wounde, & þis wole 20
℞ drie wel. ¶ **Item:** ℞, oliȝ ro. ℥ .iij, rasine ℥ .ij, cere ℥ j, nucis
cip*rei*ssi, cucurmie an*a* ℥ .j, make herof a gobet & kepe it; þis
Direction for the application of consolidative and regenerative medicines. is more worþ þan apostolicon Nicholai. ¶ The maner of worching
of þese medicyns, þat of su*mm*en b*e*n clepid consolidatiuis, schal 24
be do *in* þis maner / The firste dai þat a wounde is m*a*ad, & þou
hast brouȝt þe lippis of þe wounde togidere *with* sewinge ouþir wiþ
sum oþer maner, þan leie þerto of þe firste medicyn, þat is clepid
co*n*glutinatif, vpon þe place þat is sewid, & leie þerof ynowȝ; & 28
[5 lf. 262, bk.] þan þervpon leie a ly*nn*en cloþ [5]wet *in* whitis of eiren, & þan leie
þerto defens*iu*is & oþere necessarijs til þe lippis of þe wo*u*nde be
soudid togidere faste. ¶ The .ij. medicyn, þat is clepid regenera-
tiuum, þat schal be leid *in* vlceribus & in depe wo*u*ndis, for to 32
regendre fleisch. ¶ At þe laste þou schalt leie consolidatiuis, or þe
fleisch wexe to hiȝe; & but if þou do þus, þou muste leie corosiuis
for to frete awei þat fleisch þat is woxe to hiȝe, & þat is double
trauaile & also vnkunnyng of þe leche. ¶ Thou muste knowe wel 36

[1] *calamentum*, a mistake for *calcantum*. Phillips: "Calcanth a Chymical word, being the same as Vitriol."

[2] Lat.: rasure vel pistature.

[4] I cannot find a physician of this name. Perhaps it is *Gulielmo Corvi*, author of the *Tractica*, who was a friend of Lanfranc. *Hæser* I., p. 710.

where & wh*a*nne þou schalt vse þese medicyns, & i*n* þis maner þou schalt folowe þe riȝt rule of medicyns, & þan þi medicyns woliþ worche as þei schulde /

## ¶ Of medicyns cauteratiuis & corrosiuis /

Simple caustics.

COrosiuis & cauteriȝatiuis we vsiþ in cirurgie i*n* manie causis, & of corosiuis su*m*me ben feble, & su*m*me ben strong, & su*m*me beþ more stronger / These be*n* feble, hermodactilis, aristologia, brionia, gencina,[1] vitriolu*m* adustu*m*, & þese haueþ moost vertu i*n* moist bodies. ¶ More strong be*n* þes: vitriolu*m* not combustu*m*, tapsia, pees milui,[2] [3] apiu*m* rampnum,[4] cortex viticelle[5] / And þese be*n* more strong: flos eris, viride eris, es vstu*m*, arsenicu*m*, sulphur. ¶ Also þese be*n* more strong: calx viua maad of stoonis, & of schellis of eiren & oistris, & strong lye, & arsenicu*m* sublimatu*m*, & watir maad of þese þingis; & of þese medicyns þou miȝt make medicyns boþe simple & compound, whiche þou miȝt vse wh*a*nne þou wolt take awei deed fleisch, more strong & lasse strong as þou seest þat it is nede þerto. ¶ Of medici*n*s þat ben compound I wole telle þee a fewe, for of simple medicyns þou miȝt *com*pou*n*d manie. ¶ **A poudre þat wiþouten ony greuau*n*ce & liȝtli fretiþ awei deed fleisch** / ℞, viride eris, hermodactulor*um*, aristologia rotu*n*da, make þerof poudre & kepe it in a drie place, & wh*a*nne þou wolt do awei deed fleisch / Take lynet eiþer lynnen clooþ, & wete it w*i*th þi spotil & leie it in þe poudre, & turne it vp & doun, & leie it vpon þe place. ¶ Thou schalt attende super*fluite* of fleisch[6] in .ij. maners / In oon maner super*fluite* of fleisch as of clene fleisch þat wexiþ tofore aboue a wou*n*de, & þis is [7]clepid super*fluite* of good fleisch / In an oþer maner we clepiþ super*fluite* of fleisch þat is medlid wiþ quitture, & is liquide, & þis comeþ in defaute of þe leche, wh*a*nne he leiþ regeneratiuis to a wounde ouþir to ony þing til it be *per*fitli clene, so þat þe newe fleisch & þe quitture wexiþ forþwiþ / In þe firste cause is noon nede of oþer medicyn, but a simple corosif[8] þat fretiþ wiþouten violence awei þe fleisch þat is woxen to hiȝ aboue þe wounde. ¶ **In þe .ij.** cause it is necessarie for to haue a medicyn corosif & clensynge as it is

Mild caustics.

Strong caustics. [3 lf. 263]

Compound caustics.

℞

Innocent excrescences.

[7 lf. 263, bk.]

Malignant excrescences.

Each requires its own treatment.

[1] Lat.: gentiana. [2] MS. *vulpi*. Pes milui "crow-foot."
[4] *Alphita*, p. 11: "*Apium ranarum* siue *apium rampnum* crescit in pratis . . ." See *rampinus*. uncus.—Dufr.
[5] Wr. Wül., 138, 28: "Viticella, wiþwinde." [6] *fleisch* in margin.
[8] MS. *corosiþ*.

A corrosive powder of caustic lime and arsenic.

aforseid in þe chapitre off mundificatiuis. ¶ **Anoþir good poudre þat remeueþ awei superfluite of fleisch & rotid fleisch & crustons**[1] / ℞, calcis viue ℥. ij, arsenici ℥. ij., succi affodillo*rum* radicis ℥. vj., medle hem togidere & make þerof gobetis & kepe hem & drie hem *in* schadowe & kepe he*m* in a drie place, for *in* a moist place it wole rotie anoon. & wh*a*nne þou hast nede for to vse ony herof, þan make þerof poudre & leie it vpon þe place. ¶ Also an oynement þat is cleþid vnguentu*m* viride & is a liȝt corrosif, & makiþ [2]superfluite of rotid fleisch & is m*a*ad *in* þis maner. ℞, mellis p*a*rtes .ij., viride eris p*a*rtem vna*m*, & medle hem togidere.

vng^m viride [2 lf. 264]

An ointment to cleanse ulcers.

¶ **Also anoþer vnguentum viride þat makiþ clene & regendriþ good fleisch *in* vlceribus þat ben olde, & fretiþ awei wickid fleisch wiþouten violence** / ℞, celidoyne radicis, alleluya,[3] folia centru*m*[4] galli, leuistici agrestis, scabiose, an*a* ℳ. j., grynde wel alle þese herbis togidere wiþ .lī. j. of schepis talowe & .lī. j. of oile, medle hem togidere, & lete hem ligge .x. daies & rotie, & þan do hem to seþing on þe fier til þe herbis falle to þe botme, & þan cole he*m*, & do þerto wex, terbentyne, an*a* ℥. ij., colofonie ℨ. j., masticis, olibani, an*a* ℨ. ß., viridis eris ℥. j. þat schal be do in *in* þe ende of þe boilyng, & medle he*m* wel togidere, & make þerof an oynement.

An ointment to be applied on fistulous and cancerous sores.

¶ **If þou wolt make a stronger medicyn for to slee a festre & a cancre** / ℞, vitri albi combusti, sulphuris viui, viridis eris, galle, att*ra*menti, vitriole viridis, an*a* ℥ ß., auripigmenti foliati ℥. ij., make herof poudre, & distemp*e*re he*m* wiþ strong vinegre & lacte anabulle[5] til it be as þicke as it were hony, & sette it to þe su*m*me [6]in somer, & lete it drie. & if it be in wintir þou miȝt drie it wiþ lent fier, and wh*a*nne it is drie poudre it aȝen, & tempere wiþ þe forseid licour, & þan drie it aȝen, & þus þou schalt do .iij. siþis ouþir .iiij. & þan make poudre þerof & kepe it *in* a drie place.

[6 lf. 264, bk.]

A corrosive powder.

¶ **Anoþer poudre þat drieþ a cancre & a festre, & remeueþ superfluite of fleisch** / ℞, radices brionie ℥. v., tapcie, laureole, esule, an*a* ℥. ij., ciclaminis, yreos, aristol*o*chie, longe & r*o*tunde, hermodactulo*rum*, affodillo*rum* radi*cis* ℨ j., & herba*rum* celidonie, leuistice agrestis, buglosse, su*m*mitates oliua*rum*, & mirte an*a* ℥. j., tempere þe herbis & þe rotis *in* vinegre bi .iiij. daies, & þan seþe hem & cole hem, & take þat licour þat comeþ þerof, & seþe it & caste þeron quik lyme

[1] *crustons*, O.Fr. *crouston*.

[3] *Sin. Bart.*, p. 10: "Alleluia. i. *wodesour*."

[4] *Alphita*, p. 38: "*Centrum galli* gallitricum . . . nux muscata." Wild Sage, Cancerweed.

[5] *Matth. Sylv.*: "Anabulla est species titimalli." Compare *Alphita*, p. 9.

poudrid sotilli lī. j., & medle hem wel togidere, & at̄ þe laste do þerto auripigmenti ℥. iij., & medle hem wel togidere, & make þerof̄ gobetis & kepe hem in a drie place, & whanne þou hast̄ nede þerto, grynde oon þerof̄, & leie þe poudre þerof̄ vpon þe place þat̄ þou wolt̄ haue frete. ¶ **Anoþir poudre** of̄ **þe same kynde.** ℞, arsenici rubri & citrini, calcis viue, aluminis[1] de pluma, gallarum nouarum ana, grynde hem with vinegre [2]& medle hem & drie hem, & kepe hem as it is aforseid / ¶ A stronḡ medicyn þat̄ is as stronḡ as oni fier, & vnquenta ruptoria þat̄ mortifieþ quyk fleisch & etiþ it̄, & oon herof is riȝtt̄ stronḡ & is a poudre maad bi sublimacioun. ℞, limature ferri, vitrioli viridis, alumen iamini, antymonij ana ℥., ij. salis armoniaci, arsenici citrini, sulphuris viui[3] extincti cum saliua, & tempere hem wiþ vinegre, ouþir wiþ watir, ouþir wiþ stronḡ lye, & þe lie wole be þe bettir if̄ it̄ be maad wiþ bene scelis, & þan drie it̄ & putte it̄ in alutel[4] & sublime it̄ / This is þe maner of̄ sublimacioun / loke þou haue a stronḡ vessel maad of glas þat̄ it̄ mowe dure in þe fier, ouþir a vessel of̄ erþe wel glasid wiþinne, & loke þat̄ þe couercle þerof̄ & þe bodi be wel closynḡ, & do þerin þi poudre, & lute it̄ wiþ good lute, & sette it̄ in a furneis & make liȝt̄ fier half̄ adai, & þan do out̄ thi fier, & whanne it̄ is coold opene it̄, & þat̄, þat̄ leueþ in þe botme of̄ þe vessel caste it̄ out̄, & þat̄, þat̄ cleueþ faste to þe couercle aboue, take it̄ & kepe it̄, & if̄ þou wolt̄ worche þerwiþ þou muste worche ful quentliche, for it̄ wole [5]brenne as strongli as fier, & wole make impressioun in depnes þan fier. Þis poudre wole corrumpe & brenne þe place þat̄ it̄ is leid vpon, & þe same doiþ realgar sublimed, & if̄ þow wolt̄ ouercome þe wickidnes of̄ it̄, make poudre of̄ it̄ & distempere it̄ wiþ þe iuys of̄ lactuce & plaunteyn til it̄ be in þickenesse of̄ hony, & þan drie it̄, & þus þou schalt̄ do manye tymes / & in þis maner þou schalt̄ take awei greet̄ malice, & it̄ wole worche neuer þe worse. ¶ Also an oynement̄ ruptorie for to breke fleisch þat̄ is hool & maketh blak & brenneþ it̄, & wole make it̄ falle awei, & þan þer wole leeue þere vlcus. Manie men vsiþ þis in diuers maner, for to opene an enpostym, & for to do awei superfluite of̄ fleisch. ℞, **quik lyme** as miche as þou wolt̄, & resolue it̄ in ℞

Nota bene. Escharotics, medicines as strong as fire.

A corrosive sublimate.

Nota The process of sublimation.

[5 lf. 265, bk.]

A burning ointment made of quick-lime.

[2 lf. 265]

[1] *Halle Table*, p. 9. *Alumen de pluma* = Alumen Liquidum.

[3] a caret is placed here and this added later, but does not follow on :—
ffios eris ana ℥ j ſs
calsis viue G ℥
argenti viu. ℥ j. [in margin.]

[4] Castelli : "*Aludel* vel *Alutel* vocatur Vitrum sublimatorium." Arab. al-outhal (*Devic. Dict.*). A vessel used in sublimation.

strongᵗ lie þatᵗ is aforseid, and make þerofᵗ þe maner ofᵗ an oynementᵗ, & whanne itᵗ is maad, al freisch leie itᵗ þerto, for þe more freisch þatᵗ itᵗ is þe bettir itᵗ is / In þis maner þou schaltᵗ make þe lie / ffille a vessel ful ofᵗ askis ofᵗ bene scelis, & þe .iij. partᵗ ofᵗ quik lyme, & poudre hem alle togidere & leie hem in [1]a vessel & presse hem þatᵗ þei bicome fastᵗ togidere, & make a putᵗ in þe middil aboue, in þe same putᵗ caste hootᵗ watir seþingᵗ, & þis vessel schal be holowe þatᵗ þe lie mowe passe þorwȝ. & vndir þis vessel sette anoþir vessel for to resseyue þe lie. ¶ **Also anoþir good ruptorie** / ℞, calcis viue, partem vnam, arsenici, partem ß., poudre hem & medle hem wiþ sope & hony, & summen doiþ þerto lī .ß. ofᵗ tartre / Also mel anacardi is swiþe strongᵗ for to make vlcera. & ifᵗ it be do to oþere medicyns itᵗ worchiþ þe more strongli / In þis maner þou schaltᵗ do / whanne þou ne miȝtᵗ fynde mel anacardi, þan grinde anacardos greetᵗ & leie hem in vinegre adai & anyȝtᵗ, & þan boile hem wel, & þan presse outᵗ þe licour þerofᵗ, & þatᵗ, þatᵗ goiþ outᵗ þerofᵗ is a medicyn þatᵗ wole make vlcera. / Ouþir take anacardos & seþe hem in hootᵗ tenaclis þatᵗ smiþis vsen, & streyne hem, & þer wole distille þerofᵗ hony. ¶ **Also** take þe wombis ofᵗ cantarides & grinde hem wiþ leueyne & leie hem in whatᵗ place þou woltᵗ & itᵗ wole make vlcera / Butᵗ herofᵗ þou muste be war þatᵗ in whatᵗ place þou settistᵗ cantarides þer [2]wole come greetᵗ brennynge ofᵗ vrine, & sumtyme itᵗ makiþ so greetᵗ brennyngᵗ þatᵗ a mannes vrine is stoppid þerwiþ. & þe cure þerofᵗ is þis / Seþe malue, paritorie, violetᵗ, watir-cressen in watir, & lete þe patient sitte þeron anoon to þe naueie, & herwiþ þe akyngᵗ schal be taken awei, & also he schal make vrine liȝtlich / & herofᵗ þou schaltᵗ take hede, þatᵗ in whatᵗ place of a mannes bodi þou makistᵗ a cauterie, anoon þeraftir þou schaltᵗ leie a mitigatifᵗ þatᵗ schal make þe cruste falle awei þatᵗ was brentᵗ, & þou ne schaltᵗ in no maner take awei þe cruste wiþ violence, butᵗ þou schaltᵗ leie þerto a mitigatifᵗ, & lete þe cruste falle awei liȝtli. ¶ Medicyns þatᵗ wolen make þe cruste falle awei, & do awei þe akingᵗ, ben þese: ȝelkis ofᵗ eiren wiþ oile ofᵗ rosis, þatᵗ is þe besteᵗ ofᵗ alle medicyns / Also, take þe leeues & grinde wiþ grese, ouþer wiþ buttir & leie þervpon / Also grese ouþir buttir is good þerfore. ¶ Also pultes maad ofᵗ mele, oile & watir, ben good þerfore & aceessiþ wel þe akynge & makiþ þe crustis falle. ¶ Also wiþ þe cauterie ofᵗ an hootᵗ iren þou miȝtᵗ [3]do awei deed fleisch, ouþir wiþ oon ofᵗ þe medicyns þatᵗ ben forseid. ¶ Also ifᵗ þou woltᵗ

[1 lf. 266]

℞ A caustic ointment made of quick-lime and arsenic.

Cantarides.

[2 lf. 266, bk.] The application of cantharides excites strangury. dubium Treatment.

[3 lf. 267]

[3] MS. *do awei*, twice, the second one marked for erasure.

vse medicyns for to make cauterijs, þou muste take kepe of þis caas / In feble men & in a litil cause þou muste vse feble medicyns, & þou muste be war þat þou brenne no nerue ne no greet veyne ne noon arterie wiþ þi cauterie, ne wiþ þi medicyns þat makiþ cauterijs. ¶ Also in a strong man & in a boistous man, þou miȝt worche at oonys þat þou muste worche at manye tymes in a feble man / ffor in euery medicyns þat a leche doiþ he schal take kepe of the strenkþe & of þe vertu of þe pacient //

Nerves and great blood-vessels must not be cauterized.

Use caustics according to the patient's strength.

## Of mollificatif medicyns or softenyng.

WE vsiþ þese medicyns þat ben .iiij. in eueri cause.[1] Oon cause is þis, whanne þe mater þat þou wolt resolue is swiþe hard, for þan oonli wiþ resolutiuis as it is aforseid þe sotil mater wole resolue, & þat oþir part wole bicome hard, & þan þou muste make mollificatiuis. ¶ The .ij. cause is þis, whanne ony lyme is to-broke ouþir out of þe ioyncte, þouȝ it be broȝt [2]yn aȝen, þe place wole be hard, & þe patient mai not meue þerwiþ, þan þou muste do[3] þerto mollificatiuis til þe lyme be bettere as it is aforseid. ¶ The .iij. cause is þis, whanne ony lyme þat haþ ben out of ioynct longe tyme, þan þou muste make þingis forto make þe place moist aȝen, þat þe boon mowe come into his ioynt aȝen. ¶ The .iiij. cause is, whanne a lyme is corrupt & is yuel ioyned, & makiþ al þe lyme foul, as whanne a boon is to-broken & is not ioyned, þan þou muste breke þe boon aȝen, & bringe it into his propre place as it schulde be / In alle þese causis we mote vse medicyns þat ben mollificatiuis, as ben þese: camomille, mellilotum, fenigreci, semen lini, & almaner fatnes, & marowe, & manie gummis, & euery medicyn þat is hoot & moist wole make a lyme mollificatif / **A good composicioun for þe firste cause** / Take oold oile .iiij. partis, wex partem .j., & make þerof an oynement, and anoynte þerwiþ a lyme þat þou wolt resolue þe mater þat is þeron / ffor it wole make þe mater mollificatif, & make þe poris [4]open to resolucioun // **Anoþer þat is more strong** / Rȝ, radicis malua visci ℥ .j., & kutte it to smale gobetis, & putte hem in a morter wiþ ℥ .iiij. of oile of lilie. & þou schalt sett þis vessel of glas in hoot boilyng watir, & þere it schal stonde til þe iuys of þe herbe be consumed. Wiþ þis oile þou schalt anoynte þe place, & leie þervpon lanam succidam *id est* wolle vnwaischen. & þis

.1. Emollients are used if other medicines prove insufficient, to relieve tension ensuing

.2. the fracture [2 lf. 267, bk.]

.3. or dislocation of a limb,

.4. and if re-breaking becomes necessary.

An ointment of oil and wax.

Rȝ

[4 lf. 268]

A stronger emollient.

Rȝ

[1] Lat.: Mollificatiuis vtimur medicinis in quatuor casibus.
[3] *do*, above line.

Directions for fomentation.

þou schalt' wite, þat' wh*a*nne þou wolt' make þese oynementis, first' þou shalt' make a fomentacio*u*n wiþ hoot' watir til þe place bicome reed. & if' þe place be swithe hard, þan take a stoon þat' is clepid lapis molaris, & make hi*m* hoot' i*n* þe fier, ouþir a greet' gobet' of' iren, & do it' in strong' vineg*re*. & þe place of' a m*a*nnes lyme þat' is hard, holde ouer þe fume þat' come*þ* out' of' þe vinegre, & þan anoynte hi*m* aftirward / Þis is þe maner for to make a lyme mollificatif', & þer ben .iij. maners.[1] .1. Þe .j. maner is þis: þou schalt' make a decocciou*n* of' flouris of' camomille;.mellilote, fenigrec, semen lini, & rootis of' malua visci, soden i*n* wat*er*. & þou schalt' [2]make a fomentacio*u*n to þe lyme i*n* þis watir longe tyme, & frote þe lyme softli. & þan anoynte þe lyme wiþ oon of' þese oynement*is* / ℞, auxu*n*gie porci antique s*i*ne sale ℥ .iij, pinguedinis anseris, anatis & galline an*a* ℥ .j., melte hem alle togidere & cole he*m*, & do þ*er*to ℥. j. of' wex. Þis wole make mollificatif', & restore moistnes. & if' þou wolt' make it' for to be good for drienes of' a m*a*nnes brest', & good for men þat' ben etik, do þ*er*to ℥ .j of' clene dragag*a*nt*i*, & þan it' wole be a good oynement' restoratif'. ¶ **Anoþir oyneme***n*t'. ℞, adipis porci antique s*i*ne sale ℥ .iiij., fecis oli*j* de semine lini, bdellij an*a* ℥ .ij., storacis, calamite, galbani, oppopanac*is*, armo*n*iaci, an*a* ℥ .j. putte þe gu*m*mys i*n* wijn for to t*em*p*er*e, & wh*a*nne þei ben temp*er*id, putte he*m* i*n* a mort*er*, & stampe hem wel, melte þe remenau*n*t', & do hem togidere, & medle hem togid*er*e. ¶ **Also an oyneme***n*t' **mollificatif' & comfortiþ** / ℞, auxu*n*gie porci ℥ .iij., pinguedinis anseris, anatis, galline, an*a* ℥ .j. olis co*mmun*is antiqu*i* ℥ .iiij. farine fenigreci, sem*in*is lini, an*a* ℥ .j., bdellij, oppoponacis, masticis, thuris ℥ .ß., t*em*p*er*e þe gu*m*mis [3]i*n* wijn, & þan aftirward medle he*m* wiþ grese, wex, & oile, & melte hem alle togidere & cole hem. & of' þese þingis þat' schule*n* be grou*n*de make poudre þ*er*of', & medle it' þerwiþ & kepe it' for þin vss. & wh*a*nne þou hast' maad a stuwe as it' is aforseid ouþir a fomentacioun, þan anoynte hi*m* bi þe fier, & þis is clepid vnguentu*m* Rasis. & I it' haue ofte pr*e*ued euermore goddis gr*a*ce goinge tofore wiþout' which grace is no þing' fulendid ne no sijknes do awei / But' eu*e*ri good ende & eueri good dede al it' come*þ* of' þe miȝt' of' god / And þe help of' god I bad in þe firste bigy*n*nyng' of' þe book / ffor of' goddis grace I am þat' I am, & goddis grace was neuere voide in me / And þe ende of' þis book was fulfillid þe noumbre of ȝeeris from goddis beyng' .M.CC. nonagesimo sexto. & god of' his swete gr*a*ce ne wernede me not' to make

An ointment to be applied on consumptive people.

vng*m* Ras*is*

God has helped me throughout my work, and this book has been finished in 1296.

[1] Lat.: modus autem mollificandi membra in 2°, 3° & 4° casu est unus.

[2 lf. 268, bk.]

[3 lf. 269]

an ende of þis book. & ful ofte I haue bede goddis grace þerto / wherfore god haþ grauntid, & god for his blessid name blesse þis book & alle werkis þat ben wrouȝt in his name / [1]And god for his miche grace lete hem wel worche þat takiþ þis werk on honde, & bringe erroures out of her herte, & bringe hem & us to a good ende / To þe worschip of his blessid name & profit of his seruauntis, & me to forȝeuenes of my synnes, god it graunte et imperat per omnia secula seculorum AmeN.

God may bless this book and those who use it. [1 lf. 269, bk.]

Explicit.

**Here endiþ þe book of lankfrank.**[2]

[2] In red ink, but nearly erased.

**Here bigynneþ a table of þe chapitris of þe book of lankfrank //** [leaf 270]

**The firste book conteyneþ .xv. chapitris /**


**The .i. c°.** is maad of alle vniuersal woundis & vlcers [p. 31]
**The .ij. c°.** is of woundis maad in þe fleisch / [p. 33]
**The .iij. c°.** is of woundis maad in senewis / [p. 39]
**The .iiij. c°.** is of woundis maad in boonys / [p. 47]
**The .v. c°.** is of woundis maad with strokis or kutting / [p. 50]
**The .vj. c°.** is of woundis with postyms, & yuel discrasiam / [p. 54]
**The .vij. c°.** of woundis maad of arauyschyng hound, or oþir venymous beest / [p. 59]
**The .viij. c°.** is of curis of woundis which folowiþ brekyng of boonys / [p. 62]
**The .ix. c°.** is of flux of blood of woundis / [p. 64]
**The .x. c°.** is of dietyng of woundid men / [p. 72]
**The .xj. c°.** is of vlceris / [p. 77]
**The .xij. c°.** is of fistulis / [p. 89]
**The .xiij. c°.** is of cancris / [p. 92]
**The .xiiij. c°.** is of causis & lettyngis of sowdynge of woundis & vlceris / [p. 97]
**The .xv. c°.** is of spasmus aboue comynge on woundis // [p. 99]


**The .ij. book conteyneþ vndir o summe .x. c°.**


**The .i. c°.** is of woundis of þe heed, & his anothamia / [p. 106]
**The .ij. c°.** of curis of woundis in þe face & of membris þat ben conteyned in hem / [leaf 270, bk.] [p. 141]
**The .iij. c°.** is of woundis in þe necke, and of anothamia [p. 145]
**The .iiij. c°.** is of woundis of þe splet boonys of þe arme & of þe hondis, & anothami / [p. 155]
**The .v. c°.** is of woundis in thoracis & membris conteyned in hem / [p. 161]

**The .vj. c°.** is of' curis of' woundis of' þe spine ouþir spondilium. [p. 166]
**The .vij. c°.** is of' woundis of' þe stomac & entrailis & wombe, & anothamia / [p. 167]
**The .viij. c°.** is of' woundis of' þe lyuere, splen, reynes, & þe bladdre & anothamie / [p. 171]
**The .ix. c°.** is of' woundis of' þe ȝerde and placis aboute it' [p. 173]
**The .x. c°.** is of' woundis of' þe haunche & grynde & feet, & anothamie / [p. 176]

**The .iij. book conteyneþ .viij. chapitris /**

**The .i. c°.** is of' makyng' of' fair heer / [p. 178]
**The .ij. c°.** is of' lesynge of' heer, or calowȝnes or allopucie [p. 180]
**The .iij. c°** is of' smale puschis and scalis and crustis / [p. 188]
[leaf 271] **The .iiij. c°.** is of' clooþ and fraclis, & gowte roset' & ȝolowisch / [p. 189]
**The .v. c°.** is of' smirtyng', scabbe, & icche / [p. 191]
**The. vj. c°.** is of' þe morphu & impetigine / [p. 193]
**The vij. c°.** is of' lepre & of' domys of' lepre / [p. 196]
**The .viij. c°.** is of' smelnes of' membris & leene / [p. 199]

**The .iij bok þe ij doctrinis, þat' is of' enpostyms, & conteyneþ .xviij. chapitris.**

**The .i. c°.** is of' generacioun of' humours and her kyndis / [p. 201]
**The .ij. c°.** is of' enpostyms & of' sermouns þerof' / [p. 204]
**The .iij. c°.** is of' enpostyms in þe heed, & of' gaderynge in þe hedis of' children / [p. 214]
**The .iiij. c°.** is of' enpostyms of' rotis of' þe eeris [p. 216]
**The .v. c°.** is of' enpostyms of' þe necke, and of' þe þrote / [p. 217]
**The .vj. c°.** is of' enpostym subtitilico / [p. 222]
**The .vij. c°.** is of' enpostym of' þe helpers aboute þe spondilia / [p. 223]
**The .viij. c°.** folowiþ of' þe same tofore / [p. 224]
**The .ix. c°.** of' enpostym appering' in þe mouþ of' þe stomak / [p. 226]
**The .x. c°.** is of' an enpostym in i[n]guine .i.[1] grindis. [p. 226]
**The .xj. c°.** is of' enpostyme of' þe haunche & ¶ of' þe core / [p. 227]
**The .xij. c°.** is of' enpostym of' þe ȝerde & ballok / [p. 228]
[leaf 271, bk.] **The .xiij. c°.** is of scrophulis & glandulis / [p. 229]

[1] = *i. e.*

**The .xiiij. c°.** is of' þe cure of' þe canc*re* no*n* vlc*er*at' / [p. 231]
**The .xv. c°.** is of' Boos / [p. 232]
**The .xvj. c°.** is of' akyng' of' ioynctis. [p. 233]
**The .xvij. c°.** is of' akynge of' haunchis / [p. 238]
**The .xviij. c°.** is of' dieti*ng*' of' m*en* þatt' han ache in ioynctis / [p. 240]

**The .iij. boke and the .iij. doctri*n*, and co*n*teyneþ xix. chapitris //**

**The .i. c°.** is of' egrenes of' yȝen / [p. 240]
**The .ii. c°.** is of' egrenes of' eeris / [p. 254]
**The .iij.** is of' disese of' þe nose / [p. 258]
**The .iiij. c°.** is of' disese of' þe mouþ / [p. 260]
**The .v. c°.** is of' disese of' þe brest', and off' swellyng' and greetnes / [1]and coagulasion off' milke.[1] [p. 265]
**The .vj. c°.** is of' ruptorie of' þe siphac, and releuynge aȝen / [p. 268]
**The .vij. c°.** is of' hernia of' þe ballokis / [p. 269]
**The .viij. c°.** is of' þe stoon in þe bladdre / [p. 273]
**The .ix. c°.** is of' an yuel þat' is clepid he*r*mofrodito[2] [p. 281]
**The .x. c°.** is of' watri dropesies. [p. 287]
**The .xj. c°.** is of' canc*er* & vlcers *in* þe ȝerde / [p. 289]
**The .xij. c°.** is of' emoroidis & fistula *in* ano. [p. 293]
**The xiij. c°.** is of' cancrene & mormals / [p. 295]
**The .xiiij. c°.** is of' vngribus and stykynge in handis and feet'. [leaf 272]
¶ Elephancia / [p. 296]
**The .xv. c°.** is of' wertis *in* handis & feet' / [p. 298]
**The .xvj. c°.** is of' blood letyng' / [p. 303]
**The .xvij.** is of' kutti*ng*' & bledi*ng*', & wat*er* lechis [p. 305]
**The .xviij.** is of' cauterie large & of' streite / [p. 312]

**The .iiij. book schal be algebra, & conteyneþ ij. doctrines /**
**The firste doctrine of' þe .iiij. book conteyneþ .viij. chapitris //**

**The .i. c°.** is of' brekyng' of' boonis, or o. word ¶ for al / [p. 314]
**The .ij. c°.** is of' breki*ng*' of' þe face / [p. 316]
**The .iij. c°.** is of' brekyng' of' þe forkid boo*n* of' þe brest' / [p. 317]
**The .iiij. c°.** is of' brekyng' of' boonys off' þe spaudis // [p. 318]
**The .v. c°.** is of' brekynge of' þe adiutorie / [p. 319]

[1–1] added in different hand.
[2] This chapter is omitted; see note 8 on p. 281.

**The vj. c°.** is of' brekyng' of' boonys þat' is clepid coxe // [p. 320]
**The .vii. c°.** is of' brusyng' or brekyng' of' tendir boonys wiþ þe .viij. chapitre / [p. 321 & 322]

**The secunde doctrine** of' þe fourþe **book, & conteyneþ .v. chapitris** //

[leaf 272, bk.] **The first' c°.** is of' failyng' of' place, word for al /
**The .ij. c°.** is of' failyng' of' place of' þe chekeboon /
**Tho .iij. c°.** is of' lacking' of' place of' þe spaude /[1]
**The .iiij. c°.** is of' goyng' out' of' þe ioynct' of' þe schuldre / [p. 323]
**The .v. c°.** is of' þe coniuncciouu of' þe goyng' out of þe haunche / [p. 326]

**The antidotarie is** þe **.v. book, and conteyneþ seuene chapitris** //

**The .i. c°.** is of' repercussiuis & þe maner þerof' / [p. 328]
**The .ij. c°.** is of' þe maner of' resolutif' medicins / [p. 333]
**The .iij. c°.** is of' þe iiij. maturatiuis & þe maner þerof' / [p. 336]
**The .iiij. c°.** is of' mundificatiuis & þe maner þerof' // [p. 339]
**The .v. c°.** is of' regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis // [p. 342]
**The .vj. c°.** is of' corrosiuis & cauterisatiuis // [p. 349]
**The .vij. c°.** is of' mollificatiuis or softenyng' medicyns // [p. 353]

[1] **These three chapters are left out.**